POINT-OF-USE
WATER TREATMENT

CONTINUING EDUCATION
PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT COURSE

Technical
Learning
College

Printing and Saving Instructions

The best thing to do is to download this pdf document to your computer desktop and open it with Adobe Acrobat reader.

Abode Acrobat reader is a free computer software program and you can find it at Abode Acrobat's website.

You can complete the course by viewing the course materials on your computer or you can print it out. We give you permission to print this document.

Printing Instructions: If you are going to print this document, this document is designed to be printed double-sided or duplexed but can be single-sided.

This course booklet does not have the assignment. Please visit our website and download the assignment also.

Internet Link to Assignment…
http://www.abctlc.com/PDF/RO%20Assignment.pdf

State Approval Listing Link, check to see if your State accepts or has pre-approved this course. Not all States are listed. Not all courses are listed. If the course is not accepted for CEU credit, we will give you the course free if you ask your State to accept it for credit.

Professional Engineers; Most states will accept our courses for credit but we do not officially list the States or Agencies acceptance or approvals.

State Approval Listing URL…
http://www.tlch2o.com/PDF/CEU%20State%20Approvals.pdf

You can obtain a printed version from TLC for an additional $49.95 plus shipping charges.

Contributing Editors

Joseph Camerata has a BS in Management with honors (magna cum laude). He retired as a Chemist in 2006 having worked in the field of chemical, environmental, and industrial hygiene sampling and analysis for 40 years. He has been a professional presenter at an EPA analytical conference at the Biosphere in Arizona and a presenter at an AWWA conference in Mesa, Arizona. He also taught safety classes at the Honeywell and City of Phoenix, and is a motivational/inspirational speaker nationally and internationally.

Dr. Eric Pearce S.M.E., chemistry and biological review.

Dr. Pete Greer S.M.E., retired biology instructor.

Jack White, Environmental, Health, Safety expert, City of Phoenix. Art Credits.

Technical Learning College's Scope and Function

Technical Learning College (TLC) offers affordable continuing education for today's working professionals who need to maintain licenses or certifications. TLC holds approximately eighty different governmental approvals for granting of continuing education credit.

TLC's delivery method of continuing education can include traditional types of classroom lectures and distance-based courses or independent study. Most TLC's distance based or independent study courses are offered in a print based format and you are welcome to examine this material on your computer with no obligation. Our courses are designed to be flexible and for you do finish the material on your leisure. Students can also receive course materials through the mail. The CEU course or e-manual will contain all your lessons, activities and assignments. Most CEU courses allow students to submit lessons using e-mail or fax, however some courses require students to submit lessons by postal mail. (See the course description for more information.) Students have direct contact with their instructor—primarily by e-mail. TLC's CEU courses may use such technologies as the World Wide Web, e-mail, CD-ROMs, videotapes and hard copies. (See the course description.) Make sure you have access to the necessary equipment before enrolling, i.e., printer, Microsoft Word and/or Adobe Acrobat Reader. Some courses may require proctored exams depending upon your state requirements.

Flexible Learning

At TLC, there are no scheduled online sessions you need contend with, nor are you required to participate in learning teams or groups designed for the "typical" younger campus based student. You will work at your own pace, completing assignments in time frames that work best for you. TLC's method of flexible individualized instruction is designed to provide each student the guidance and support needed for successful course completion.

We will beat any other training competitor's price for the same CEU material or classroom training. Student satisfaction is guaranteed.

Course Structure

TLC's online courses combine the best of online delivery and traditional university textbooks. Online you will find the course syllabus, course content, assignments, and online open book exams. This student friendly course design allows you the most flexibility in choosing when and where you will study.

Classroom of One

TLC Online offers you the best of both worlds. You learn on your own terms, on your own time, but you are never on your own. Once enrolled, you will be assigned a personal Student Service Representative who works with you on an individualized basis throughout your program of study. Course specific faculty members are assigned at the beginning of each course providing the academic support you need to successfully complete each course.

Satisfaction Guaranteed

Our Iron-Clad, Risk-Free Guarantee ensures you will be another satisfied TLC student.

We have many years of experience, dealing with thousands of students. We assure you, our customer satisfaction is second to none. This is one reason we have taught more than 20,000 students.

Our administrative staff is trained to provide the best customer service in town. Part of that training is knowing how to solve most problems on the spot with an exchange or refund.

TLC Continuing Education Course Material Development

Technical Learning College (TLC's) continuing education course material development was based upon several factors; extensive academic research, advice from subject matter experts, data analysis, task analysis and training needs assessment process information gathered from other states.

Most of our students will complete the Word version of the assignment and when finished, simply e-mail it to us. Make sure you include the registration page. Give us about two weeks to grade it and mail you a certificate of completion.

Rush Service

If you need the assignment graded within 48 hours, prepare to pay an additional rush service fee of $50.00 for processing.

CEU Course Description

Point-of-Use Water Treatment CEU Training Course

This course will review various point-of-use water treatment devices and methods including Ozone and Reverse Osmosis. This course will also cover water fundamentals/principles including chemistry and math. This course is general in nature and not state specific. You will not need any other materials for this course. Task Analysis and Training Needs Assessments have been conducted to determine or set Needs-To-Know for this course. The following is a listing of some of those who have conducted extensive valid studies from which TLC has based this program upon: the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Arizona Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ), the Texas Commission of Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and the American Boards of Certification (ABC).

Prerequisites: None

Course Procedures for Registration and Support:

All of Technical Learning College correspondence courses have complete registration and support services offered. Delivery of services will include, e-mail, web site, telephone, fax and mail support. TLC will attempt immediate and prompt service.

When a student registers for a distance or correspondence course, he/she is assigned a start date and an end date. It is the student's responsibility to note dates for assignments and keep up with the course work. If a student falls behind, he/she must contact TLC and request an end date extension in order to complete the course. It is the prerogative of TLC to decide whether to grant the request. All students will be tracked by their social security number or a unique number will be assigned to the student.

Instructions for Written Assignments
The Point-Of-Use Water Treatment CEU training course uses a multiple choice style answer key.

You can write your answers in this manual or type out your own answer key. TLC would prefer that you type out and e-mail the final assignment to TLC..

Feedback Mechanism (examination procedures)
Each student will receive a feedback form as part of his or her study packet. You will be able to find this form in the rear of the course or lesson.

Security and Integrity
All students are required to do their own work. All lesson sheets and final exams are not returned to the student to discourage the sharing of answers. Any fraud or deceit and the student will forfeit all fees and the appropriate agency will be notified.

Grading Criteria
TLC will offer the student either pass/fail or a standard letter grading assignment. If TLC is not notified, you will only receive a pass/fail notice.

Required Texts
The course will not require any other materials. This course comes complete. No other materials are needed.

Environmental Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms
TLC provides a glossary that defines in non-technical language commonly used environmental terms appearing in publications and materials. It also explains abbreviations and acronyms used throughout the EPA and other agencies. You can find the glossary this in the rear of the manual.

Recordkeeping and Reporting Practices
TLC will keep all student records for a minimum of seven years. It is your responsibility to give the completion certificate to the appropriate agencies. We will send the required information to Texas, Indiana and Pennsylvania for your certificate renewals.

ADA Compliance
TLC will make reasonable accommodations for persons with documented disabilities. Students should notify TLC and their instructors of any special needs. Course content may vary from this outline to meet the needs of this particular group.

You will have 90 days from receipt of this manual to complete the course in order to receive your Continuing Education Units (**CEUs**) or Professional Development Hours (**PDHs**). A score of 70 % is necessary to pass this course. If you should need any assistance, please email all concerns and the final test to info@tlch2o.com.

There are 100 total points possible for the course. This course will be graded on a "P" (credit) or "Z" (no credit) basis. If you desire a letter grade for this course, you must inform the instructor prior to submitting any of the assignments.

Credit/no credit option (**P**/**Z**) - None Available

Note to students: Keep a copy of everything that you submit. That way if your work is lost you can submit your copy for grading. If you do not receive your graded assignment or quiz results within two or three weeks after submitting it, please contact your instructor.

We expect every student to produce his/her original, independent work. Any student whose work indicates a violation of the Academic Misconduct Policy (cheating, plagiarism) can expect penalties as specified in the Student Handbook, which is available through Student Services; contact them at (928) 468-0665.

A student who registers for a Distance Learning course is assigned a **"start date"** and an **"end date."** It is the student's responsibility to note due dates for assignments and to keep up with the course work.

If a student falls behind, she/he must contact the instructor and request an extension of her/his ***end date*** in order to complete the course.

It is the prerogative of the instructor to decide whether to grant the request.

You will have 90 days from receipt of this manual to complete in order to receive your Continuing Education Units (**CEUs**) or Professional Development Hours (**PDHs**). A score of 70 % is necessary to pass this course.

If you should need any assistance, please email all concerns and the final test to info@tlch2o.com.

Educational Mission

The educational mission of TLC is:

To provide TLC students with comprehensive and ongoing training in the theory and skills needed for the environmental education field,

To provide TLC students opportunities to apply and understand the theory and skills needed for operator certification,

To provide opportunities for TLC students to learn and practice environmental educational skills with members of the community for the purpose of sharing diverse perspectives and experience,

To provide a forum in which students can exchange experiences and ideas related to environmental education,

To provide a forum for the collection and dissemination of current information related to environmental education, and to maintain an environment that nurtures academic and personal growth.

Course Objective: To provide education in effective and efficient ***Point-of-Use Water Treatment*** methods and related procedures.

Reverse Osmosis and Nano filtration processes work in a similar way to an extremely fine filter but use a ***"membrane"*** to remove atoms which are larger than water molecules. The mechanism requires sophisticated pumping and control. RO is therefore used to remove a wide range of contaminants, typically salts, hardness and large organic molecules where a very high level of purity is required. It is, of course, more expensive than conventional filtration and is used only where high purity is essential.

Waterborne Disease Chart

Name	**Causative organism**	**Source of organism**	**Disease**
Viral gastroenteritis	**Rotavirus** (mostly in young children)	Human feces	Diarrhea or vomiting
Norwalk Agent	**Noroviruses** (genus *Norovirus*, family *Caliciviridae*) [*1]	Human feces; also, shellfish; lives in polluted waters	Diarrhea and vomiting
Salmonellosis	***Salmonella*** (bacterium)	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea or vomiting
Gastroenteritis Escherichia *coli*	-- ***E. coli* O1 57:H7** (bacterium): Other *E. coli* organisms:	Human feces	Symptoms vary with type caused
Typhoid	***Salmonella typhi*** (bacterium)	Human feces, urine	Inflamed intestine, enlarged spleen, high temperature-sometimes fatal
Shigellosis	***Shigella*** (bacterium)	Human feces	Diarrhea
Cholera	***Vibrio choleras*** (bacterium)	Human feces; also, shellfish; lives in many coastal waters	Vomiting, severe diarrhea, rapid dehydration, mineral loss-high mortality
Hepatitis A	**Hepatitis A** virus	Human feces; shellfish grown in polluted waters	Yellowed skin, enlarged liver, fever, vomiting, weight loss, abdominal pain-low mortality, lasts up to four months
Amebiasis	***Entamoeba histolytica*** (protozoan)	Human feces	Mild diarrhea, dysentery, extra intestinal infection
Giardiasis	***Giardia lamblia*** (protozoan)	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea, cramps, nausea, and general weakness — lasts one week to months
Cryptosporidiosis	***Cryptosporidium parvum***	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea, stomach pain — lasts (protozoan) days to weeks

Notes:

*1 **http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/revb/gastro/norovirus.htm**
http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5009a1.htm

Table of Contents

Important Information about this Manual

This manual has been prepared to educate operators in the general awareness of dealing with the often-complex and various water treatment devices and methods.

This manual will cover general laws, regulations, required procedures and accepted policies relating to point-of-use water treatment devices. It should be noted, however, that the regulation of water treatment and hazardous materials is an ongoing process and subject to change over time. For this reason, a list of resources is provided to assist in obtaining the most up-to-date information on various subjects.

This manual is a not a guidance document for operators who are involved with water treatment. It is not designed to meet the requirements of the United States Environmental Protection Agency or your local State environmental protection agency or health department.

This course manual will provide general Point-of-Use Water Treatment awareness and should not be used as a basis for water treatment methods/devices guidance. This document is not a detailed plumbing code or a source or remedy for water treatment or water quality improvement.

Technical Learning College or Technical Learning Consultants, Inc. make no warranty, guarantee or representation as to the absolute correctness or appropriateness of the information in this manual and assumes no responsibility in connection with the implementation of this information. It cannot be assumed that this manual contains all measures and concepts required for specific conditions or circumstances.

This document should be used for educational purposes only and is not considered a legal document. Individuals who are responsible for water treatment, water quality and water distribution should obtain and comply with the most recent federal, state, and local regulations relevant to these sites and are urged to consult with the EPA and other appropriate federal, state and local agencies.

Copyright Notice

Every possible effort is made to ensure that all information provided in this course is accurate. All written, graphic, photographic or other material is provided for information only. Therefore, Technical Learning College accepts no responsibility or liability whatsoever for the application or misuse of any information included herein. Requests for permission to make copies should be made to the following address:

TLC
P.O. Box 420
Payson, AZ 85547-0420

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. TLC is not liable for errors or omissions appearing in this document.

Key Words

ACTIVATED CARBON FILTRATION**:** Can remove organic chemicals that produce off-taste and odor. These compounds are not dangerous to health but can make the water unpleasant to drink. Carbon filtration comes in several forms, from small filters that attach to sink faucets to large tanks that contain removable cartridges. Activated carbon filters require regular maintenance or they can become a health hazard.

AIR GAP SEPARATION: A physical separation space that is present between the discharge vessel and the receiving vessel, for an example, a kitchen faucet.

ALTERNATIVE DISINFECTANTS: Disinfectants - other than chlorination (halogens) - used to treat water, e.g. ozone, ultraviolet radiation, chlorine dioxide, and chloramines. There is limited experience and scientific knowledge about the by-products and risks associated with the use of alternatives.

ALGAE**:** Are microscopic plants that are free-living and usually live in water. They occur as single cells floating in water, or as multicellular plants like seaweed or strands of algae that attach to rocks.

ALPHA AND BETA RADIOACTIVITY: Represent two common forms of radioactive decay. Radioactive elements have atomic nuclei so heavy that the nucleus will break apart, or disintegrate, spontaneously. When decay occurs, high-energy particles are released. These high-energy particles are called radioactivity. Although radioactivity from refined radioactive elements can be dangerous, it is rare to find dangerous levels of radioactivity in natural waters.

An alpha particle is a doubly-charged helium nucleus comprised of two protons, two neutrons, and no electrons. A beta particle is a high-speed electron. Alpha particles do not penetrate matter easily, and are stopped by a piece of paper. Beta particles are much more penetrating and can pass through a millimeter of lead.

AMMONIA: A chemical made with Nitrogen and Hydrogen and used with chlorine to disinfect water.

AQUIFER: An underground geologic formation capable of storing significant amounts of water.

AS NITROGEN: Is an expression that tells how the concentration of a chemical is expressed mathematically. The chemical formula for the nitrate ion is NO3, with a mass of 62. The concentration of nitrate can be expressed either in terms of the nitrate ion or in terms of the principal element, nitrogen. The mass of the nitrogen atom is 14. The ratio of the nitrate ion mass to the nitrogen atom mass is 4.43. Thus a concentration of 10 mg/L nitrate expressed as nitrogen would be equivalent to a concentration of 44.3 mg/L nitrate expressed as nitrate ion. When dealing with nitrate numbers it is very important to know how numeric values are expressed.

A concentration of 22 mg/L nitrate expressed as nitrate ion sounds very high compared to a standard of 10 mg/L, but the standard is expressed as nitrogen. Converting 22 mg/L nitrate expressed as nitrate is only 4.9 mg/L nitrate expressed as nitrogen, less than half the drinking water standard. Older nitrate data (pre-1980) were commonly reported as nitrate, and that makes comparison with the drinking water standard difficult. For purposes of drinking water regulations, standards are expressed in the form of the principal element.

BACKFLOW: To reverse the natural and normal directional flow of a liquid, gases, or solid substances back in to the public potable (drinking) water supply. This is normally an undesirable effect.

BACKFLOW PREVENTION: To stop or prevent the occurrence of, the unnatural act of reversing the normal direction of the flow of liquid, gases, or solid substances back in to the public potable (drinking) water supply. See Cross-connection control.

BACKSIPHONAGE: A liquid substance that is carried over a higher point. It is the method by which the liquid substance may be forced by excess pressure over or into a higher point.

BACTERIA: Are small, one-celled animals too small to be seen by the naked eye. Bacteria are found everywhere, including on and in the human body. Humans would be unable to live without the bacteria that inhabit the intestines and assist in digesting food. Only a small percentage of bacteria cause disease in normal, healthy humans. Other bacteria can cause infections if they get into a cut or wound. Bacteria are the principal concern in evaluating the microbiological quality of drinking water, because some of the bacteria-caused diseases that can be transmitted by drinking water are potentially life-threatening.

BEST AVAILABLE TECHNOLOGY ECONOMICALLY ACHIEVABLE (BAT): A level of technology based on the best existing control and treatment measures that are economically achievable within the given industrial category or subcategory.

BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES (BMPs): Schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and other management practices to prevent or reduce the pollution of waters of the U.S. BMPs also include treatment requirements, operating procedures and practices to control plant site runoff, spillage or leaks, sludge or waste disposal, or drainage from raw material storage.

BLOWDOWN: The discharge of water with high concentrations of accumulated solids from boilers to prevent plugging of the boiler tubes and/or steam lines. In cooling towers, blowdown is discharged to reduce the concentration of dissolved salts in the re-circulating cooling water.

BREAK POINT CHLORINATION: The process of chlorinating the water with significant quantities of chlorine to oxidize all contaminants and organic wastes and leave all remaining chlorine as free chlorine.

BROMINE: Chemical disinfectant (HALOGEN) that kills bacteria and algae.

BUFFER: Chemical that resists pH change, e.g. sodium bicarbonate

BYPASS *[40 CFR §403.17(a)]:* The intentional diversion of wastestreams from any portion of an Industrial User's treatment facility.

CALCIUM HARDNESS: A measure of the calcium salts dissolved in water.

CAUSTIC SODA: Also known as sodium hydroxide and is used to raise pH.

CHAIN OF CUSTODY (COC): A record of each person involved in the possession of a sample from the person who collects the sample to the person who analyzes the sample in the laboratory.

CHLORAMINES: A group of chlorine ammonia compounds formed when chlorine combines with organic wastes in the water. Chloramines are not effective as disinfectants and are responsible for eye and skin irritation as well as strong chlorine odors (also known as Combined Chlorine).

CHLORINE: Is a chemical used to disinfect water. Chlorine is extremely reactive, and when it comes in contact with microorganisms in water it kills them. Chlorine is added to swimming pools to keep the water safe for swimming. Chlorine is available as solid tablets for swimming pools. Some public water system's drinking water treatment plants use chlorine in a gas form because of the large volumes required. Chlorine is very effective against algae, bacteria and viruses. Protozoa are resistant to chlorine because they have thick coats. Protozoa are removed from drinking water by filtration.

CHRONIC: A stimulus that lingers or continues for a relatively long period of time, often one-tenth of the life span or more. Chronic should be considered a relative term depending on the life span of an organism. The measurement of chronic effect can be reduced growth, reduced reproduction, etc., in addition to lethality.

COMBINED CHLORINE: The reaction product of chlorine with ammonia or other pollutants, also known as chloramines.

CHLORINE DEMAND: Amount of chlorine required to react on various water impurities before a residual is obtained. Also, means the amount of chlorine required to produce a free chlorine residual of 0.1 mg/l after a contact time of fifteen minutes as measured by iodmetic method of a sample at a temperature of twenty degrees in conformance with Standard methods.

CHLORINE, FREE: Chlorine available to kill bacteria or algae. The amount of chlorine available for sanitization after the chlorine demand has been met. Also known as chlorine residual.

CHLORAMINATION: Treating drinking water by applying chlorine before or after ammonia. This creates a persistent disinfectant residual.

CHLORINATION: The process in water treatment of adding chlorine (gas or solid hypochlorite) for purposes of disinfection.

CHLORINE: A chemical which destroys small organisms in water.

COLIFORM: Are bacteria normally found in the intestines of warm-blooded animals. Coliform bacteria are present in high numbers in animal feces. They are an indicator of potential contamination of water. Adequate and appropriate disinfection effectively destroys coliform bacteria.

CONTAMINANT: Any natural or man-made physical, chemical, biological, or radiological substance or matter in water, which is at a level that may have an adverse effect on public health, and which is known or anticipated to occur in public water systems.

CONTAMINATION: To make something bad. To pollute or infect something. To reduce the quality of the potable (drinking) water and create an actual hazard to the water supply by poisoning or through spread of diseases.

CONVENTIONAL POLLUTANTS: BOD, TSS, fecal coliform, oil and grease, and pH

CORROSION: The removal of metal from copper, other metal surfaces and concrete surfaces in a destructive manner. Corrosion is caused by improperly balanced water or excessive water velocity through piping or heat exchangers.

CROSS-CONTAMINATION: The mixing of two unlike qualities of water. For example the mixing of good water with a polluting substance like a chemical substance.

CRYPTOSPORIDIUM: A disease-causing parasite, resistant to chlorine disinfection. It may be found in fecal matter or contaminated drinking water.

CYANURIC ACID: Chemical used to prevent the decomposition of chlorine by ultraviolet (UV) light.

DISINFECT: Is the application of a chemical to kill most, but not all, microorganisms that may be present. Chlorine is added to public water drinking systems drinking water for disinfection. Depending on your state rule, drinking water must contain a minimum of 0.2 mg/L free chlorine. Disinfection makes drinking water safe to consume from the standpoint of killing pathogenic microorganisms including bacteria and viruses. Disinfection does not remove all bacteria from drinking water, but the bacteria that can survive disinfection with chlorine are not pathogenic bacteria that can cause disease in normal healthy humans.

DISINFECTION: The treatment of water to inactivate, destroy, and/or remove pathogenic bacteria, viruses, protozoa, and other parasites.

DISINFECTION BY-PRODUCTS (DBPs): The products created due to the reaction of chlorine with organic materials (e.g. leaves, soil) present in raw water during the water treatment process. The EPA has determined that these DBPs can cause cancer.

DRY ACID: A granular chemical used to lower pH and or total alkalinity.

FILTRATION: Is the process of passing water through materials with very small holes to strain out particles. Most conventional water treatment plants used filters composed of gravel, sand, and anthracite. These materials settle into a compact mass that forms very small holes. Particles are filtered out as treated water passes through these holes. These holes are small enough to remove microorganisms including algae, bacteria, and protozoans, but not viruses. Viruses are eliminated from drinking water through the process of disinfection using chlorine.

GRAB SAMPLE: A sample which is taken from a water or wastestream on a one-time basis with no regard to the flow of the water or wastestream and without consideration of time. A single grab sample should be taken over a period of time not to exceed 15 minutes.

HARDNESS: Is a measure of the amount of calcium and magnesium salts in water. More calcium and magnesium lead to greater hardness. The term "***hardness***" comes from the fact that it is hard to get soap suds from soap or detergents in hard water. This happens because calcium and magnesium react strongly with negatively-charged chemicals like soap to form insoluble compounds.

HETEROTROPHIC PLATE COUNT: Is a test performed on drinking water to determine the total number of all types of bacteria in the water.

INORGANIC IONS: Are present in all waters. Inorganic ions are essential for human health in small quantities, but in larger quantities they can cause unpleasant taste and odor or even illness. Most community water systems will commonly tests the concentrations of seven inorganic ions: nitrate, nitrite, fluoride, phosphate, sulfate, chloride, and bromide. Nitrate and nitrite can cause an illness in infants called methemoglobinemia. Fluoride is actually added to the drinking water in some public water systems to promote dental health. Phosphate, sulfate, chloride, and bromide have little direct effect on health, but high concentrations of inorganic ions can give water a salty or briny taste.

mg: Stands for "**milligrams per liter**." This is a common unit of chemical concentration. It expresses the mass of a chemical that is present in a given volume of water. A milligram (one one-thousandth of a gram) is equivalent to about 18 grains of table salt. A liter is equivalent to about one quart.

MICROORGANISMS: Are very small animals and plants that are too small to be seen by the naked eye and must be observed using a microscope. Microorganisms in water include algae, bacteria, viruses, and protozoa. Algae growing in surface waters can cause off-taste and odor by producing the chemicals MIB and geosmin. Certain types of bacteria, viruses, and protozoa can cause disease in humans. Bacteria are the most common microorganisms found in treated drinking water. The great majority of bacteria are not harmful. In fact, humans would not be able to live without the bacteria that inhabit the intestines. However, certain types of bacteria called coliform bacteria can signal the presence of possible drinking water contamination.

MILLILITER: Is one one-thousandth of a liter. A liter is a little more than a quart. A milliliter is about two drops from an eye dropper.

pH: A measure of the acidity of water. The pH scale runs from 0 to 14 with 7 being the mid-point or neutral. A pH of less than 7 is on the acid side of the scale with 0 as the point of greatest acid activity. A pH of more than 7 is on the basic (alkaline) side of the scale with 14 as the point of greatest basic activity. pH = (**Power of Hydroxyl Ion Activity**).

pH OF SATURATION: The ideal pH for perfect water balance in relation to a particular total alkalinity level and a particular calcium hardness level, at a particular temperature. The pH where the Langelier Index equals zero.

PHENOL RED: Chemical reagent used for testing pH in the range of 6.8 - 8.4.

POLLUTION: To make something unclean or impure. See Contaminated.

PATHOGENS: Disease-causing pathogens; waterborne pathogens A pathogen is a bacterium, virus or parasite that causes or is capable of causing disease. Pathogens may contaminate water and cause waterborne disease.

PICOCURIE: Is a unit of radioactivity. "Pico" is a metric prefix that means one one-millionth of one one-millionth. A picocurie is one one-millionth of one one-millionth of a Curie. A Curie is that quantity of any radioactive substance that undergoes 37 billion nuclear disintegrations per second. Thus a picocurie is that quantity of any radioactive substance that undergoes 0.037 nuclear disintegrations per second.

pCi/L: picocuries per liter A curie is the amount of radiation released by a set amount of a certain compound. A picocurie is one quadrillionth of a curie.

PIPELINE APPURTENANCE: Pressure reducers, bends, valves, regulators (which are a type of valve), etc.

POINT SOURCE [*40 CFR 122.2]:* Any discernible, confined, and discrete conveyance, including but not limited to any pipe, ditch, channel, tunnel, conduit, well, discrete fixture, container, rolling stock concentrated animal feeding operation vessel, or other floating craft from which pollutants are or may be discharged.

POLLUTANT *[40 CFR 122.2]:* Dredged spoil, solid waste, incinerator residue, filter backwash, sewage, garbage, sewage sludge, munitions, chemical wastes, biological materials, radioactive materials (except those regulated under the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.)), heat, wrecked or discarded equipment, rock, sand, cellar dirt, and industrial, municipal and agricultural waste discharged into water.

POTABLE: Good water which is safe for drinking or cooking purposes. Non-Potable: A liquid or water that is not approved for drinking.

PROTOZOA: Are microscopic animals that occur as single cells. Some protozoa can cause disease in humans. Protozoa form cysts, which are specialized cells like eggs that are very resistant to chlorine. Cysts can survive the disinfection process, then "hatch" into normal cells that can cause disease. Protozoa must be removed from drinking water by filtration, because they cannot be effectively killed by chlorine.

PUBLICLY OWNED TREATMENT WORKS (POTW) *[40 CFR §403.3(o)]:* A treatment works as

REPRESENTATIVE SAMPLE: A sample from a water or wastestream that is as nearly identical as

SODA ASH: Chemical used to raise pH and total alkalinity (sodium carbonate)

SODIUM BICARBONATE: Commonly used to increase alkalinity of water and stabilize pH.

SODIUM BISULFATE: Chemical used to lower pH and total alkalinity (dry acid).

SODIUM HYDROXIDE: Also known as caustic soda, A by-product chlorine generation and often used to raise pH.

SOLDER: A fusible alloy used to join metallic parts.

TCE, *trichloroethylene* : A solvent and degreaser used for many purposes; for example dry cleaning, it is a common groundwater contaminant.

TITRATION: Method of testing by adding a reagent of known strength to a water sample until a specific color change indicates the completion of the reaction.

TOTAL ALKALINITY: A measure of the acid-neutralizing capacity of water which indicates its buffering ability, i.e. measure of its resistance to a change in pH. Generally, the higher the total alkalinity, the greater the resistance to pH change.

TOTAL DISSOLVED SOLIDS (**TDS**): The accumulated total of all solids that might be dissolved in water.

TREATED WATER: Disinfected and/or filtered water served to water system customers. It must meet or surpass all drinking water standards to be considered safe to drink.

TRIHALOMETHANES (**THM**): Four separate compounds including chloroform, dichlorobromomethane, dibromochloromethane, and bromoform. The most common class of disinfection by-products created when chemical disinfectants react with organic matter in water during the disinfection process. ***See Disinfectant Byproducts.***

TURBIDITY: A measure of the cloudiness of water caused by suspended particles.

RADIOCHEMICALS: Or radioactive chemicals, occur in natural waters. Naturally radioactive ores are particularly common in the Southwestern United States, and some streams and wells can have dangerously high levels of radioactivity. Total alpha and beta radioactivity and isotopes of radium and strontium are the major tests performed for radiochemicals. The federal drinking water standard for gross alpha radioactivity is set at 5 picocuries per liter.

REVERSE OSMOSIS: Forces water through membranes that contain holes so small that even salts cannot pass through. Reverse osmosis removes microorganisms, organic chemicals, and inorganic chemicals, producing very pure water. For some people, drinking highly purified water exclusively can upset the natural balance of salts in the body. Reverse osmosis units require regular maintenance or they can become a health hazard.

VIRUSES: Are very small disease-causing microorganisms that are too small to be seen even with microscopes. Viruses cannot multiply or produce disease outside of a living cell.

VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUNDS: (**VOCs**) are solvents used as degreasers or cleaning agents. Improper disposal of VOCs can lead to contamination of natural waters. VOCs tend to evaporate very easily. This characteristic gives VOCs very distinct chemical odors like gasoline, kerosene, lighter fluid, or dry cleaning fluid. Some VOCs are suspected cancer-causing agents.

Point-of-Use Water Treatment Introduction

For thousands of years, people have treated water intended for drinking to remove particles of solid matter, reduce health risks, and improve aesthetic qualities such as appearance, odor, color, and taste. As early as 2000 B.C., medical lore of India advised, ***"Impure water should be purified by being boiled over a fire, or being heated in the sun, or by dipping a heated iron into it, or it may be purified by filtration through sand and coarse gravel and then allowed to cool."***

The treatment needs of a water system are likely to differ depending on whether the system uses a groundwater or surface water source. Common surface water contaminants include turbidity, microbiological contaminants (***Giardia***, viruses and bacteria) and low levels of a large number of organic chemicals.

Groundwater contaminants include naturally occurring inorganic chemicals (such as arsenic, fluoride, radium, radon and nitrate) and a number of volatile organic chemicals (**VOCs**) that have recently been detected in localized areas. When selecting among the different treatment options, the water supplier must consider a number of factors. These include regulatory requirements, characteristics of the raw water, configuration of the existing system, cost, operating requirements and future needs of the service area. In recent years, the public has shown increasing interest in installing special devices on their water service to further treat water supplied to them by a public water system. One reason is that they are not satisfied with the aesthetic qualities of the water, such as hardness, taste, and odor, and wish to improve the quality for their own use.

Another major reason is fear that the water is harmfully contaminated. This idea is fostered primarily by media stories of water contamination at specific locations and advertising by some bottled water and point-of-use device companies. Home treatment devices are also widely used by owners of private wells to improve water quality. All of this public interest in improving water quality has led to many new companies entering the field of providing small treatment units.

Aesthetic Objectives

Certain contaminants, such as iron and manganese, impart undesirable qualities to drinking water but do not represent a health threat. These are classified as secondary contaminants and do not have enforceable maximum contaminant levels.

Using titration to check the chlorine level, you can also use the DPD method which will be discussed later.

POU Terminology

It is necessary to define the terms associated with these treatment devices. The term home drinking water treatment is fairly descriptive of the field. It covers the vast majority of uses, but many individual treatment devices are also installed in factories, offices, and other buildings. There is a need to differentiable between units installed to treat all of the water at a building and those at just one water tap, so the following definitions have come into general use.

Point-of-Entry (POE) devices are treatment units that are connected so they treat all of the water entering a building. A common example is a water softener installed to treat all of the water used in a building.

Point-of-Use (POU) devices are units connected to treat water at a single location in a building. POU devices can be further subdivided into the following categories:

- ***Stationary.*** An example is a treatment unit mounted under a kitchen sink to treat all water to the cold-water faucet.
- ***Line bypass.*** An example is a treatment unit, mounted under a kitchen sink, that takes water from the cold-water pipe but delivers into a separate, third faucet.
- ***Countertop****.* This generally refers to a small treatment unit that rests on the counter near the sink and is connected to the regular faucet by a hose when it is needed.
- ***Faucet mounted****.* This refers to a small treatment units that are clamped on the spout of the regular faucet. These units usually have a bypass valve to select either treated or untreated water.
- ***Pour-through***. These are portable, self-contained units, similar to a coffee maker. Water is poured through the unit for treatment.

Before we go in to detail about treatment let's examine water quality including pathogens and disinfection.

Small RO commercial unit

POU Definitions **Larger Glossary in the rear.**

As used in EPA's 40 CFR 141, the term:

Best available technology* or *BAT means the best technology, treatment techniques, or other means which the Administrator finds, after examination for efficacy under field conditions and not solely under laboratory conditions, are available (taking cost into consideration). For the purposes of setting MCLs for synthetic organic chemicals, any BAT must be at least as effective as granular activated carbon.

Community water system is a public water system which serves at least 15 service connections used by year-round residents or regularly serves at least 25 year-round residents.

Compliance cycle is the nine-year calendar year cycle during which public water systems must monitor. Each compliance cycle consists of three three-year compliance periods. The first calendar year cycle began January 1, 1993 and ends December 31, 2001; the second begins January 1, 2002 and ends December 31, 2010; the third begins January 1, 2011 and ends December 31, 2019.

Compliance period is a three-year calendar year period within a compliance cycle. Each compliance cycle has three three-year compliance periods. Within the first compliance cycle, the first compliance period ran from January 1, 1993 to December 31, 1995; the second from January 1, 1996 to December 31, 1998; the third from January 1, 1999 to December 31, 2001. ***We will update this section soon.***

Contaminant is any physical, chemical, biological, or radiological substance or matter in water.

Maximum contaminant level is the maximum permissible level of a contaminant in water which is delivered to any user of a public water system.

Maximum contaminant level goal* or *MCLG is the maximum level of a contaminant in drinking water at which no known or anticipated adverse effect on the health of persons would occur, and which allows an adequate margin of safety. Maximum contaminant level goals are non-enforceable health goals.

Non-transient non-community water system* or *NTNCWS is a public water system that is not a community water system and that regularly serves at least 25 of the same persons over 6 months per year.

Point-of-entry treatment device (POE) is a treatment device applied to the drinking water entering a house or building for the purpose of reducing contaminants in the drinking water distributed throughout the house or building.

Point-of-use treatment device (POU) is a treatment device applied to a single tap used for the purpose of reducing contaminants in drinking water at that one tap.

Public water system is a system for the provision to the public of water for human consumption through pipes or, after August 5, 1998, other constructed conveyances, if such system has at least fifteen service connections or regularly serves an average of at least twenty-five individuals daily at least 60 days out of the year. Such term includes: any collection, treatment, storage, and distribution facilities under control of the operator of such system and used primarily in connection with such system; and any collection or pretreatment storage facilities not under such control which are used primarily in connection with such system. Such term does not include any **"*special irrigation district*."**

A public water system is either a ***"community water system"*** or a ***"noncommunity water system."***

State means the agency of the State or Tribal government which has jurisdiction over public water systems. During any period when a State or Tribal government does not have primary enforcement responsibility pursuant to section 1413 of the Act, the term ***"State"*** means the Regional Administrator, of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Surface water means all water which is open to the atmosphere and subject to surface runoff.

Ion Exchange Units

New EPA Rules

Arsenic

Arsenic is a chemical that occurs naturally in the earth's crust. When rocks, minerals, and soil erode, they release arsenic into water supplies. When people either drink this water or eat animals and plants that drink it, they are exposed to arsenic. For most people in the U.S., eating and drinking are the most common ways that people are exposed to arsenic, although it can also come from industrial sources. Studies have linked long-term exposure of arsenic in drinking water to a variety of cancers in humans.

To protect human health, an EPA standard limits the amount of arsenic in drinking water. Back in January 2001, EPA revised the standard from 50 parts per billion (**ppb**), ordering that it fall to 10 ppb by 2006. After adopting 10ppb as the new standard for arsenic in drinking water, EPA decided to review the decision to ensure that the final standard was based on sound science and accurate estimates of costs and benefits. In October 2001, the EPA decided to move forward with implementing the 10ppb standard for arsenic in drinking water. More information on the rulemaking process and the costs and benefits of setting the arsenic limit in drinking water at 10ppb can be found at **www.epa.gov/safewater/arsenic.html**.

ICR

The EPA has collected data required by the Information Collection Rule (**ICR**) to support future regulation of microbial contaminants, disinfectants, and disinfection byproducts. The rule is intended to provide the EPA with information on chemical byproducts that form when disinfectants used for microbial control react with chemicals already present in source water (disinfection byproducts (**DBPs**); disease-causing microorganisms (pathogens), including Cryptosporidium; and engineering data to control these contaminants. Drinking water microbial and disinfection byproduct information collected for the ICR is now available in EPA's website Envirofacts Warehouse.

Gathering a water sample in the distribution system at a designated sample site.

Microbes

Bac-T bottles, once the laboratory obtains the sample, they will use Colilert to find the presence of bacteria. The yellow color indicates Coliform bacteria is present. If the sample fluoresces under a black light, this will indicate that the sample will contain fecal or E. Coli bacteria.

Coliform bacteria are common in the environment and are generally not harmful. However, the presence of these bacteria in drinking water is usually a result of a problem with the treatment system or the pipes which distribute water, and indicates that the water may be contaminated with germs that can cause disease.

Fecal Coliform and E coli are bacteria whose presence indicates that the water may be contaminated with human or animal wastes. Microbes in these wastes can cause short-term effects, such as diarrhea, cramps, nausea, headaches, or other symptoms.

Turbidity has no health effects. However, turbidity can interfere with disinfection and provide a medium for microbial growth. Turbidity may indicate the presence of disease causing organisms. These organisms include bacteria, viruses, and parasites that can cause symptoms such as nausea, cramps, diarrhea, and associated headaches.

Cryptosporidium is a parasite that enters lakes and rivers through sewage and animal waste. It causes cryptosporidiosis, a mild gastrointestinal disease. However, the disease can be severe or fatal for people with severely weakened immune systems. The EPA and CDC have prepared **advice for those with severely compromised immune systems** who are concerned about *Cryptosporidium*.

Giardia lamblia is a parasite that enters lakes and rivers through sewage and animal waste. It causes gastrointestinal illness (e.g. diarrhea, vomiting, and cramps).

Radionuclides

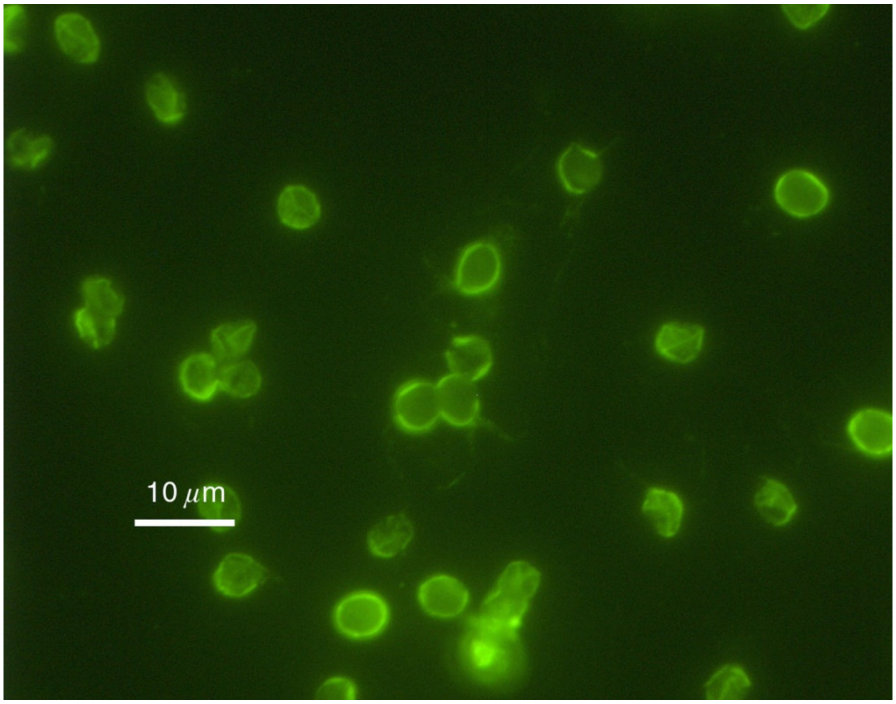
Alpha Emitters. Certain minerals are radioactive and may emit a form of radiation known as alpha radiation. Some people who drink water containing alpha emitters in excess of the EPA's standard over many years may have an increased risk of getting cancer.

Beta/photon Emitters. Certain minerals are radioactive and may emit forms of radiation known as photons and beta radiation. Some people who drink water containing beta and photon emitters in excess of the EPA's standard over many years may have an increased risk of getting cancer.

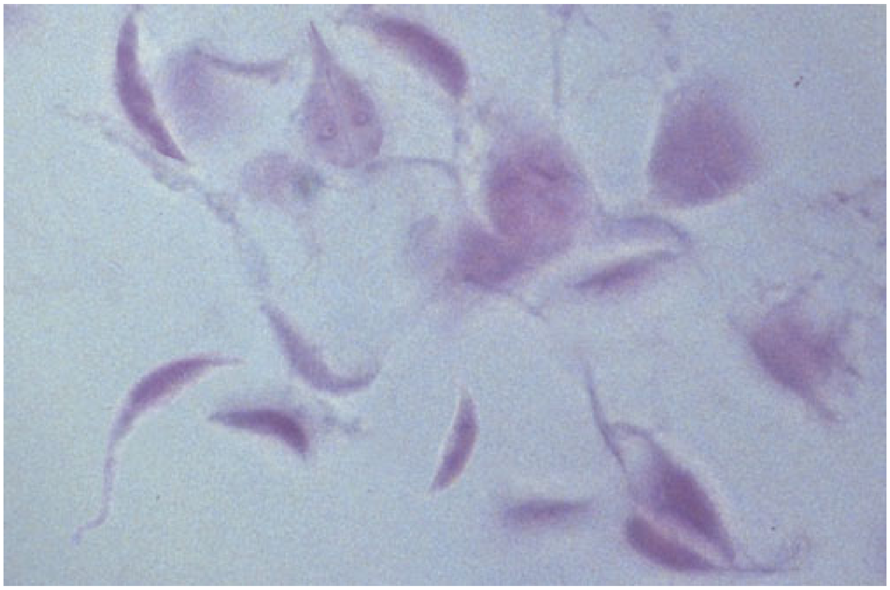
Combined Radium 226/228. Some people who drink water containing radium 226 or 228 in excess of the EPA's standard over many years may have an increased risk of getting cancer.

Radon gas can dissolve and accumulate in underground water sources, such as wells, and in the air in your home. Breathing radon can cause lung cancer. Drinking water containing radon presents a risk of developing cancer. Radon in air is more dangerous than radon in water.

Legionella



Cryptosporidium



Giardia

Disinfection Byproduct Regulations

In December 1998, the EPA established the **Stage 1 Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule** that requires public water systems to use treatment measures that reduce the formation of disinfection byproducts and to meet the following specific standards:

Total trihalomethanes (TTHM)	80 parts per billion (ppb)
Haloacetic acids (HAA5)	60 ppb
Bromate	10 ppb
Chlorite	1.0 parts per million (ppm)

Currently trihalomethanes are regulated at a maximum allowable annual average level of 100 parts per billion for water systems serving over 10,000 people under the Total Trihalomethane Rule finalized by the EPA in 1979. The **Stage 1 Disinfectant/Disinfection Byproduct Rule** standards became effective for trihalomethanes and other disinfection byproducts listed above in December 2001 for large surface water public water systems. Those standards will become effective in December 2003 for small surface water and all ground water public water systems.

Disinfection byproducts are formed when disinfectants used in water treatment plants react with bromide and/or natural organic matter (i.e., decaying vegetation) present in the source water. Different disinfectants produce different types or amounts of disinfection byproducts. Disinfection byproducts for which regulations have been established have been identified in drinking water, including trihalomethanes, haloacetic acids, bromate, and chlorite.

Trihalomethanes (THM) are a group of four chemicals that are formed along with other disinfection byproducts when chlorine or other disinfectants used to control microbial contaminants in drinking water react with naturally occurring organic and inorganic matter in water. The trihalomethanes are chloroform, bromodichloromethane, dibromochloromethane, and bromoform. The EPA has published the **Stage 1 Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule** to regulate total trihalomethanes (**TTHM**) at a maximum allowable annual average level of **80 parts per billion**. This standard did replace the current standard of a maximum allowable annual average level of 100 parts per billion in December 2001 for large surface water **public water systems**. The standard will become effective for the first time in December 2003 for small surface water and all ground water systems.

Haloacetic Acids (HAA5) are a group of chemicals that are formed along with other disinfection byproducts when chlorine or other disinfectants used to control microbial contaminants in drinking water react with naturally occurring organic and inorganic matter in water. The regulated haloacetic acids, known as HAA5, are: monochloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, monobromoacetic acid, and dibromoacetic acid. The EPA has published the **Stage 1 Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule** to regulate HAA5 at **60 parts per billion** annual average.

This standard became effective for large surface water **public water systems** in December 2001 and for small surface water and all ground water public water systems in December 2003.

Bromate

Bromate is a chemical that is formed when ozone used to disinfect drinking water reacts with naturally occurring bromide found in source water. The EPA has established the **Stage 1**

Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule to regulate bromate at an annual average of **10 parts per billion** in drinking water. This standard became effective for large **public water systems** December 2001 and for small surface water and all ground public water systems in December 2003.

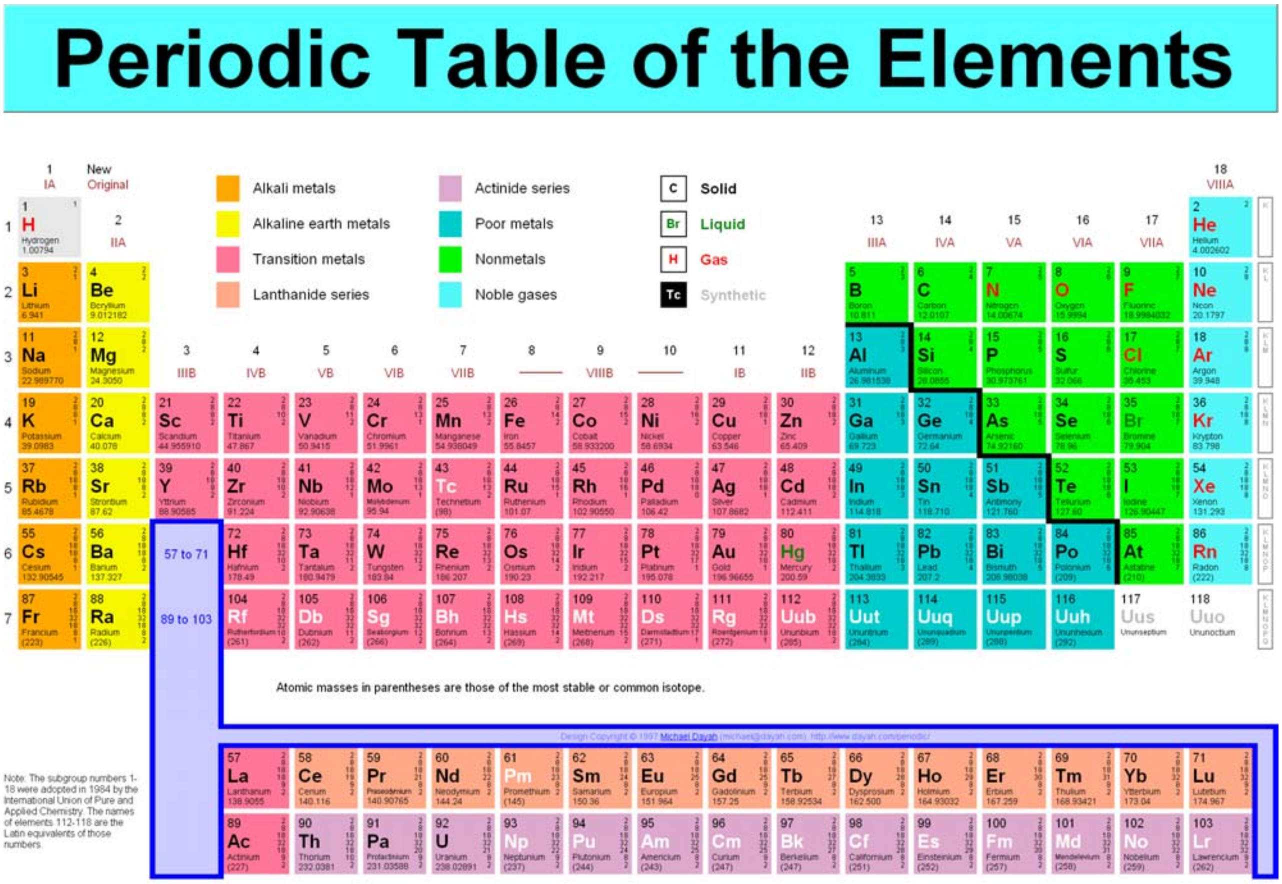
Chlorite is a byproduct formed when chlorine dioxide is used to disinfect water. The EPA has published the **Stage 1 Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule** to regulate chlorite at a monthly average level of 1 part per million in drinking water. This standard became effective for large surface water **public water systems** in December 2001 and small surface water and all ground water public water systems in December 2003.

Microbial Regulations

One of the key regulations developed and implemented by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (**USEPA**) to counter pathogens in drinking water is the **Surface Water Treatment Rule**. Among its provisions, the rule requires that a public water system, using surface water (or ground water under the direct influence of surface water) as its source, have sufficient treatment to reduce the source water concentration of ***Giardia*** and viruses by at least 99.9% and 99.99%, respectively. The Surface Water Treatment Rule specifies treatment criteria to assure that these performance requirements are met; they include turbidity limits, disinfectant residual, and disinfectant contact time conditions.

The **Interim Enhanced Surface Water Treatment Rule** was established in December 1998 to control ***Cryptosporidium***, and to maintain control of pathogens while systems lower disinfection byproduct levels to comply with the **Stage 1 Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule**. EPA established a Maximum Contaminant Level Goal (**MCLG**) of zero for all public water systems and a 99% removal requirement for Cryptosporidium in filtered public water systems that serve at least 10,000 people. The new rule tightened turbidity standards in December 2001. Turbidity is an indicator of the physical removal of particulates, including pathogens.

The EPA is also planning to develop other rules to further control pathogens. The EPA promulgated a Long Term 1 Enhanced Surface Water Treatment Rule, for systems serving fewer than 10,000 people, in November 2000 to improve physical removal of *Cryptosporidium*, and to maintain control of pathogens while systems comply with **Stage 1 Disinfectants/Disinfection Byproducts Rule**.



Periodic Table of the Elements

New Original	1 IA	2 IIA	3 IIIB	4 IVB	5 VB	6 VIB	7 VIIB	8 —	9 VIIIB	10 —	11 IB	12 IIB	13 IIIA	14 IVA	15 VA	16 VIA	17 VIIA	18 VIIIA	
1	1 H Hydrogen 1.00794																	2 He Helium 4.002602	K
2	3 Li Lithium 6.941	4 Be Beryllium 9.012182											5 B Boron 10.811	6 C Carbon 12.0107	7 N Nitrogen 14.00674	8 O Oxygen 15.9994	9 F Fluorine 18.9984032	10 Ne Neon 20.1797	K L
3	11 Na Sodium 22.989770	12 Mg Magnesium 24.3050											13 Al Aluminum 26.981538	14 Si Silicon 28.0855	15 P Phosphorus 30.973761	16 S Sulfur 32.066	17 Cl Chlorine 35.453	18 Ar Argon 39.948	K L M
4	19 K Potassium 39.0983	20 Ca Calcium 40.078	21 Sc Scandium 44.955910	22 Ti Titanium 47.867	23 V Vanadium 50.9415	24 Cr Chromium 51.9961	25 Mn Manganese 54.938049	26 Fe Iron 55.8457	27 Co Cobalt 58.933200	28 Ni Nickel 58.6934	29 Cu Copper 63.546	30 Zn Zinc 65.409	31 Ga Gallium 69.723	32 Ge Germanium 72.64	33 As Arsenic 74.92160	34 Se Selenium 78.96	35 Br Bromine 79.904	36 Kr Krypton 83.798	K L M N
5	37 Rb Rubidium 85.4678	38 Sr Strontium 87.62	39 Y Yttrium 88.90585	40 Zr Zirconium 91.224	41 Nb Niobium 92.90638	42 Mo Molybdenum 95.94	43 Tc Technetium (98)	44 Ru Ruthenium 101.07	45 Rh Rhodium 102.90550	46 Pd Palladium 106.42	47 Ag Silver 107.8682	48 Cd Cadmium 112.411	49 In Indium 114.818	50 Sn Tin 118.710	51 Sb Antimony 121.760	52 Te Tellurium 127.60	53 I Iodine 126.90447	54 Xe Xenon 131.293	K L M N O
6	55 Cs Cesium 132.90545	56 Ba Barium 137.327	57 to 71	72 Hf Hafnium 178.49	73 Ta Tantalum 180.9479	74 W Tungsten 183.84	75 Re Rhenium 186.207	76 Os Osmium 190.23	77 Ir Iridium 192.217	78 Pt Platinum 195.078	79 Au Gold 196.96655	80 Hg Mercury 200.59	81 Tl Thallium 204.3833	82 Pb Lead 207.2	83 Bi Bismuth 208.98038	84 Po Polonium (209)	85 At Astatine (210)	86 Rn Radon (222)	K L M N O P
7	87 Fr Francium (223)	88 Ra Radium (226)	89 to 103	104 Rf Rutherfordium (261)	105 Db Dubnium (262)	106 Sg Seaborgium (266)	107 Bh Bohrium (264)	108 Hs Hassium (269)	109 Mt Meitnerium (268)	110 Ds Darmstadtium (271)	111 Rg Roentgenium (272)	112 Uub Ununbium (285)	113 Uut Ununtrium (284)	114 Uuq Ununquadium (289)	115 Uup Ununpentium (288)	116 Uuh Ununhexium (292)	117 Uus Ununseptium	118 Uuo Ununoctium	K L M N O P Q

57 La Lanthanum 138.9055	58 Ce Cerium 140.116	59 Pr Praseodymium 140.90765	60 Nd Neodymium 144.24	61 Pm Promethium (145)	62 Sm Samarium 150.36	63 Eu Europium 151.964	64 Gd Gadolinium 157.25	65 Tb Terbium 158.92534	66 Dy Dysprosium 162.500	67 Ho Holmium 164.93032	68 Er Erbium 167.259	69 Tm Thulium 168.93421	70 Yb Ytterbium 173.04	71 Lu Lutetium 174.967
89 Ac Actinium (227)	90 Th Thorium 232.0381	91 Pa Protactinium 231.03588	92 U Uranium 238.02891	93 Np Neptunium (237)	94 Pu Plutonium (244)	95 Am Americium (243)	96 Cm Curium (247)	97 Bk Berkelium (247)	98 Cf Californium (251)	99 Es Einsteinium (252)	100 Fm Fermium (257)	101 Md Mendelevium (258)	102 No Nobelium (259)	103 Lr Lawrencium (262)

🟧	Alkali metals	▨	Actinide series	C	Solid
🟨	Alkaline earth metals	▨	Poor metals	Br	Liquid
🟥	Transition metals	🟩	Nonmetals	H	Gas
▨	Lanthanide series	▨	Noble gases	Tc	Synthetic

Atomic masses in parentheses are those of the most stable or common isotope.

Design Copyright © 1997 Michael Dayah (michael@dayah.com) http://www.dayah.com/periodic/

Note: The subgroup numbers 1-18 were adopted in 1984 by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry. The names of elements 112-118 are the Latin equivalents of those numbers.

Left, Tellurium, right Astatine with Fluorine

Common water sample bottles for distribution systems.

Radiochems, VOCs, (Volatile Organic Compounds), TTHMs, Total Trihalomethanes), Nitrate, Nitrite.

Most of these sample bottles will come with the preservative already inside the bottle.

Some bottles will come with a separate preservative (acid) for the field preservation.

Slowly add the acid or other preservative to the water sample; not water to the acid or preservative.

Inorganic Chemicals

Contaminant	MCLG[1] (mg/L)[2]	MCL or TT[1] (mg/L)[2]	Potential Health Effects from Long-Term Exposure Above the MCL (unless specified as short-term)	Sources of Contaminant in Drinking Water
Antimony	0.006	0.006	Increase in blood cholesterol; decrease in blood sugar	Discharge from petroleum refineries; fire retardants; ceramics; electronics; solder
Arsenic	0[7]	0.010 as of 01/23/06	Skin damage or problems with circulatory systems, and may have increased risk of getting cancer	Erosion of natural deposits; runoff from orchards, runoff from glass & electronics production wastes
Asbestos (fiber >10 micrometers)	7 million fibers per liter	7 MFL	Increased risk of developing benign intestinal polyps	Decay of asbestos cement in water mains; erosion of natural deposits
Barium	2	2	Increase in blood pressure	Discharge of drilling wastes; discharge from metal refineries; erosion of natural deposits
Beryllium	0.004	0.004	Intestinal lesions	Discharge from metal refineries and coal-burning factories; discharge from electrical, aerospace, and defense industries
Cadmium	0.005	0.005	Kidney damage	Corrosion of galvanized pipes; erosion of natural deposits; discharge from metal refineries; runoff from waste batteries and paints
Chromium (total)	0.1	0.1	Allergic dermatitis	Discharge from steel and pulp mills; erosion of natural deposits
Copper	1.3	TT[7]; Action Level=1.3	Short term exposure: Gastrointestinal distress Long term exposure: Liver or kidney damage People with Wilson's Disease should consult their personal doctor if the amount of copper in their water exceeds the action level	Corrosion of household plumbing systems; erosion of natural deposits
Cyanide (as	0.2	0.2	Nerve damage or thyroid problems	Discharge from

Inorganic Chemicals

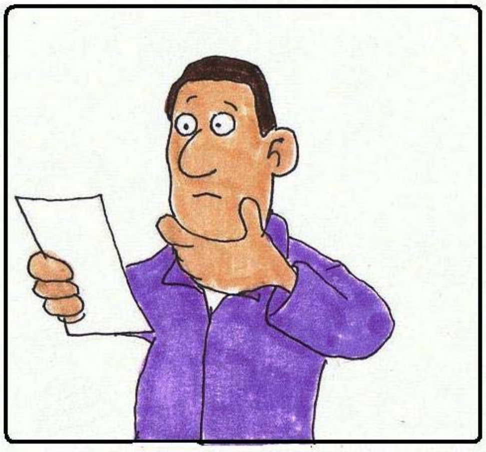
Contaminant	MCLG[1] (mg/L)[2]	MCL or TT[1] (mg/L)[2]	Potential Health Effects from Long-Term Exposure Above the MCL (unless specified as short-term)	Sources of Contaminant in Drinking Water
free cyanide)				steel/metal factories; discharge from plastic and fertilizer factories
Fluoride	4.0	4.0	Bone disease (pain and tenderness of the bones); Children may get mottled teeth	Water additive which promotes strong teeth; erosion of natural deposits; discharge from fertilizer and aluminum factories
Lead	zero	TT[7]; Action Level=0.015	Infants and children: Delays in physical or mental development; children could show slight deficits in attention span and learning abilities Adults: Kidney problems; high blood pressure	Corrosion of household plumbing systems; erosion of natural deposits
Mercury (inorganic)	0.002	0.002	Kidney damage	Erosion of natural deposits; discharge from refineries and factories; runoff from landfills and croplands
Nitrate (measured as Nitrogen)	10	10	Infants below the age of six months who drink water containing nitrate in excess of the MCL could become seriously ill and, if untreated, may die. Symptoms include shortness of breath and blue-baby syndrome.	Runoff from fertilizer use; leaking from septic tanks, sewage; erosion of natural deposits
Nitrite (measured as Nitrogen)	1	1	Infants below the age of six months who drink water containing nitrite in excess of the MCL could become seriously ill and, if untreated, may die. Symptoms include shortness of breath and blue-baby syndrome.	Runoff from fertilizer use; leaking from septic tanks, sewage; erosion of natural deposits
Selenium	0.05	0.05	Hair or fingernail loss; numbness in fingers or toes; circulatory problems	Discharge from petroleum refineries; erosion of natural deposits; discharge from mines
Thallium	0.0005	0.002	Hair loss; changes in blood; kidney, intestine, or liver problems	Leaching from ore-processing sites; discharge from electronics, glass, and drug factories

IOC Sample Collection – Things to Remember

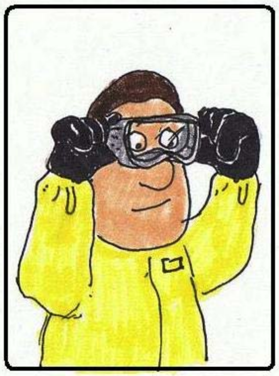
Sample instructions should be supplied with the sample containers from the laboratory. If the laboratory fails to include sample instructions, contact the laboratory and request sample instructions.

Some general practices to remember:

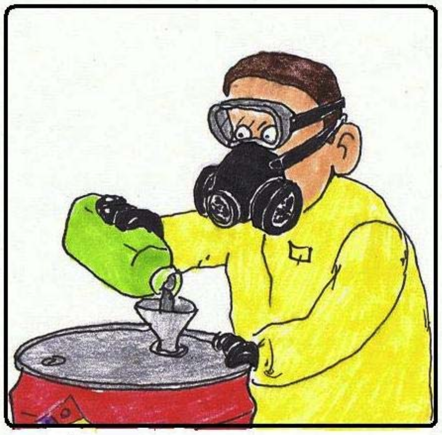
- Samples should be collected at the entry point to the distribution system after all treatment(finished water)
- Select a sampling faucet that does NOT have an aerator (sampling must be done with minimum aeration
- Run the water until the temperature is as cold as it gets
- Just before sample collection, adjust to a very low flow. Do not change the flow while collecting the sample
- Routine nitrate and nitrite samples should be collected on a Monday or a Tuesday
- When filling sample bottle, tip bottle slightly so that water flows down the side wall of the container. Bring bottle to an upright position as it fills
- Call the laboratory if bottles are received broken (or break while collecting samples)
- The owner or operator of a water supply must maintain chemical analysis reports (results) or a summary of those reports for at least 10 years



READ THE SAFETY DATA SHEET



WEAR PROPER PPE



HANDLING CHEMICALS

Chemical Monitoring

The final federal rules regarding Phase II and V contaminants were promulgated by the U.S. EPA in 1992 and initial monitoring began in January 1993. This group of contaminants consists of Inorganic Chemicals (**IOC**), Volatile Organic Chemicals (**VOC**) and Synthetic Organic Chemicals (**SOC**) and the rule applies to all community and non-transient non-community public water systems.

The monitoring schedule for these contaminants is phased in by water system population size according to a "**standardized monitoring framework**" established by the U.S. EPA. This standardized monitoring framework establishes nine-year compliance cycles consisting of three 3-year compliance periods. The first compliance cycle began in January 1993 and ended December 31, 2001, with subsequent compliance cycles following the nine-year timeframe. The three-year compliance period of each cycle is the standard monitoring period for the water system.

Turbidity Monitoring

Monitoring for turbidity is applicable to all public water systems using surface water sources or ground water sources under the direct influence of surface water in whole or part. Check with your state drinking water section or health department for further instructions.

The maximum contaminant level for turbidity for systems that provide filtration treatment:

1. Conventional or direct filtration: less than or equal to 0.5 NTU in at least 95% of the measurements taken each month. Conventional filtration treatment plants should be able to achieve a level of 0.1 NTU with proper chemical addition and operation.
2. Slow sand filtration, cartridge and alternative filtration: less than or equal to 1 NTU in at least 95% of the measurements taken each month. The turbidity levels must not exceed 5 NTU at any turbidity measurements must be performed on representative samples of the filtered water every four (4) hours that the system serves water to the public. A water system may substitute continuous turbidity monitoring for grab sample monitoring if it validates the continuous measurement for accuracy on a regular basis using a protocol approved by the Health or Drinking Water Agency, such as confirmation by a bench top turbidimeter. For systems using slow sand filtration, cartridge, or alternative filtration treatment the Health or Drinking Water Agency may reduce the sampling frequency to once per day if it determines that less frequent monitoring is sufficient to indicate effective filtration performance.

Inorganic Chemical Monitoring

All systems must monitor for inorganics. The monitoring for these contaminants is also complex with reductions, waivers and detections affecting the sampling frequency. Please refer to the monitoring schedules provided by your state health or drinking water sections for assistance in determining individual requirements. All transient non-community water systems are required to complete a one-time inorganic chemical analysis. The sample is to be collected at entry points (**POE**) to the distribution system representative of each source after any application of treatment.

Nitrates

Nitrate is an inorganic chemical that occurs naturally in some groundwater but most often is introduced into ground and surface waters by man. The most common sources are from fertilizers and treated sewage or septic systems. At high levels (over 10 mg/l) it can cause the "**blue baby**" syndrome in young infants, which can lead to serious illness and even death. It is regarded as an "**acute health risk**" because it can quickly cause illness.

Every water system must test for ***Nitrate*** at least yearly. Systems that use ground water only must test yearly. Systems that use surface water and those that mix surface and ground water must test every quarter. A surface water system may go to yearly testing if community and nontransient noncommunity water must do quarterly monitoring whenever they exceed 5 mg/l in a test. After 4 quarters of testing and the results show that the nitrate level is not going up, they may go back to yearly testing.

Radiological Contaminants

All community water systems shall monitor for gross alpha activity every four years for each source. Depending on your state rules, compliance will be based on the annual composite of 4 consecutive quarters or the average of the analyses of 4 quarterly samples. If the average annual concentration is less than one half the MCL, an analysis of a single sample may be substituted for the quarterly sampling procedure.

Total Trihalomethanes (TTHM)

All community water systems serving a population of 10,000 or more and which add a disinfectant in any part of the drinking water treatment process shall monitor for total trihalomethanes (**TTHM**). The MCL is 0.1 mg/l and consists of a calculation of the running average of quarterly analyses of the sum of the concentrations of bromodichloromethane, di-bromochloromethane, bromoform and chloroform.

Lead and Copper Rule

The Lead and Copper Rule was promulgated by the U.S. EPA on June 7, 1991, with monitoring to begin in January 1992 for larger water systems. This rule applies to all community and nontransient, noncommunity water systems and establishes action levels for these two contaminants at the consumer's tap. Action levels of 0.015 mg/l for lead and 1.3 mg/l for copper have been established.

This rule establishes maximum contaminant level goals (**MCLGs**) for lead and copper, treatment technique requirements for optimal corrosion control, source water treatment, public education and lead service line replacement. Whenever an action level is exceeded, the corrosion control treatment requirement is triggered. This is determined by the concentration measured in the 90th percentile highest sample from the samples collected at consumers' taps. Sample results are assembled in ascending order (lowest to highest) with the result at the 90th percentile being the action level for the system. For example, if a water system collected 20 samples, the result of the 18th highest sample would be the action level for the system.

The rule also includes the best available technology (**BAT**) for complying with the treatment technique requirements, mandatory health effects language for public notification of violations and analytical methods and laboratory performance requirements.

Initial monitoring began in January 1992 for systems with a population of 50,000 or more, in July 1992 for medium-sized systems (3,300 to 50,000 population) and in July 1993 for small-sized systems (less than 3,300 population),

One-liter tap water samples are to be collected at high-risk locations by either water system personnel or residents. Generally, high-risk locations are homes with lead-based solder installed after 1982 or with lead pipes or service lines. If not enough of these locations exist in the water system, the rule provides specific guidelines for selecting other sample sites.

The water must be allowed to stand motionless in the plumbing pipes for at least six (6) hours and collected from a cold water tap in the kitchen or bathroom. It is a first draw sample, which means the line is not to be flushed prior to sample collection. The number of sampling sites is determined by the population of the system and sample collection consists of two, six-month monitoring periods; check with your state rule or drinking water section for more information.

Sampling Sites by Population
System size - No. of sites - No. of sites
(no. of persons served) (standard monitoring) (reduced monitoring)

>100,000	100	50
10,001-100,000	60	30
3,301 to 10,000	40	20
501 to 3,300	20	10
101 to 500	10	5
< 100	5	5

If a system meets the lead and copper action levels or maintains optimal corrosion control treatment for two consecutive six-month monitoring periods, then reduced monitoring is allowed and sampling frequency drops to once per year. After three consecutive years of reduced monitoring, sample frequency drops to once every three years. In addition to lead and copper testing, all large water systems and those medium- and small-sized systems that exceed the lead or copper action levels will be required to monitor for the following water quality parameters: pH, alkalinity, calcium, conductivity, orthophosphate, silica and water temperature.

These parameters are used to identify optimal corrosion control treatment and determine compliance with the rule once treatment is installed. The sampling locations for monitoring water quality parameters are at entry points and representative taps throughout the distribution system.

Coliform sampling sites can be used for distribution system sampling. The number of sites required for monitoring water quality during each six-month period is shown below.

Number of Water Quality Parameters per Population
System size # of sites for water (no. of persons served) quality parameters

>100,000	25
10,001-100,000	10
3,301 to 10,000	3
501 to 3,300	2
101 to 500	1
<100	1

Water systems which maintain water quality parameters reflecting optimal corrosion control for two consecutive six-month monitoring periods qualify for reduced monitoring. After three consecutive years, the monitoring frequency can drop to once per year.

All large water systems must demonstrate that their water is minimally corrosive or install corrosion control treatment regardless of lead and copper sampling results.

Antimony - Inorganic Contaminant 0.006 mg/L MCL
Metalloid

Antimony is a toxic chemical element with symbol **Sb** and atomic number 51. A lustrous gray metalloid, it is found in nature mainly as the sulfide mineral stibnite (Sb_2S_3). Antimony compounds have been known since ancient times and were used for cosmetics; metallic antimony was also known, but it was erroneously identified as lead. It was established to be an element around the 17th century.

For some time, China has been the largest producer of antimony and its compounds, with most production coming from the Xikuangshan Mine in Hunan. The industrial methods to produce antimony are roasting and subsequent carbothermal reduction or direct reduction of stibnite with iron.

What are EPA's drinking water regulations for antimony?

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for antimony is 0.006 mg/L or 6 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for antimony, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.006 mg/L or 6 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase V Rule, the regulation for antimony, became effective in 1994. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed antimony as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.006 mg/L or 6 ppb MCLG and 0.006 mg/L or 6 ppb MCL for antimony are still protective of human health.

Applications

The largest applications for metallic antimony are as alloying material for lead and tin and for lead antimony plates in lead-acid batteries. Alloying lead and tin with antimony improves the properties of the alloys which are used in solders, bullets and plain bearings. Antimony compounds are prominent additives for chlorine- and bromine-containing fire retardants found in many commercial and domestic products. An emerging application is the use of antimony in microelectronics.

Antimony is in the nitrogen group (group 15) and has an electronegativity of 2.05. As expected by periodic trends, it is more electronegative than tin or bismuth, and less electronegative than tellurium or arsenic. Antimony is stable in air at room temperature, but reacts with oxygen if heated to form antimony trioxide, Sb_2O_3. Antimony is a silvery, lustrous gray metal that has a Mohs scale hardness of 3. Therefore, pure antimony is not used to make hard objects: coins made of antimony were issued in China's Guizhou province in 1931, but because of their rapid wear, their minting was discontinued. Antimony is resistant to attack by acids.

Four allotropes of antimony are known, a stable metallic form and three metastable forms, explosive, black and yellow. Metallic antimony is a brittle, silver-white shiny metal. When molten antimony is slowly cooled, metallic antimony crystallizes in a trigonal cell, isomorphic with that of the gray allotrope of arsenic. A rare explosive form of antimony can be formed from the electrolysis of antimony (III) trichloride. When scratched with a sharp implement, an exothermic reaction occurs and white fumes are given off as metallic antimony is formed; when rubbed with a pestle in a mortar, a strong detonation occurs.

Black antimony is formed upon rapid cooling of vapor derived from metallic antimony. It has the same crystal structure as red phosphorus and black arsenic; it oxidizes in air and may ignite spontaneously. At 100 °C, it gradually transforms into the stable form. The yellow allotrope of antimony is the most unstable. It has only been generated by oxidation of stibine (SbH_3) at −90 °C. Above this temperature and in ambient light, this metastable allotrope transforms into the more stable black allotrope.

Metallic antimony adopts a layered structure (space group R3m No. 166) in which layers consist of fused ruffled six-membered rings. The nearest and next-nearest neighbors form a distorted octahedral complex, with the three atoms in the same double-layer being slightly closer than the three atoms in the next. This relatively close packing leads to a high density of 6.697 g/cm^3, but the weak bonding between the layers leads to the low hardness and brittleness of antimony.

Isotopes

Antimony exists as two stable isotopes, ^{121}Sb with a natural abundance of 57.36% and ^{123}Sb with a natural abundance of 42.64%. It also has 35 radioisotopes, of which the longest-lived is ^{125}Sb with a half-life of 2.75 years. In addition, 29 metastable states have been characterized. The most stable of these is ^{124}Sb with a half-life of 60.20 days, which has an application in some neutron sources. Isotopes that are lighter than the stable ^{123}Sb tend to decay by β^+ decay, and those that are heavier tend to decay by β^- decay, with some exceptions.

Occurrence

The abundance of antimony in the Earth's crust is estimated at 0.2 to 0.5 parts per million, comparable to thallium at 0.5 parts per million and silver at 0.07 ppm. Even though this element is not abundant, it is found in over 100 mineral species. Antimony is sometimes found natively, but more frequently it is found in the sulfide stibnite (Sb_2S_3) which is the predominant ore mineral.

Antimony compounds are often classified into those of Sb(III) and Sb(V). Relative to its congener arsenic, the +5 oxidation state is more stable.

Oxides and hydroxides

Antimony trioxide (Sb_4O_6) is formed when antimony is burnt in air. In the gas phase, this compound exists as Sb_4O_6, but it polymerizes upon condensing. Antimony pentoxide (Sb_4O_{10}) can only be formed by oxidation by concentrated nitric acid. Antimony also forms a mixed-valence oxide, antimony tetroxide (Sb_2O_4), which features both Sb(III) and Sb(V). Unlike phosphorus and arsenic, these various oxides are amphoteric, do not form well-defined oxoacids and react with acids to form antimony salts.

Antimonous acid $Sb(OH)_3$ is unknown, but the conjugate base sodium antimonite ($[Na_3SbO_3]_4$) forms upon fusing sodium oxide and Sb_4O_6. Transition metal antimonites are also known. Antimonic acid exists only as the hydrate $HSb(OH)_6$, forming salts containing the antimonate anion Sb(OH)−6. Dehydrating metal salts containing this anion yields mixed oxides. Many antimony ores are sulfides, including stibnite (Sb_2S_3), pyrargyrite (Ag_3SbS_3), zinkenite, jamesonite, and boulangerite. Antimony pentasulfide is non-stoichiometric and features antimony in the +3 oxidation state and S-S bonds. Several thioantimonides are known, such as $[Sb_6S_{10}]^{2-}$ and $[Sb_8S_{13}]^{2-}$.

Halides

Antimony forms two series of halides, SbX_3 and SbX_5. The trihalides SbF_3, $SbCl_3$, $SbBr_3$, and SbI_3 are all molecular compounds having trigonal pyramidal molecular geometry. The trifluoride SbF_3 is prepared by the reaction of Sb_2O_3 with HF:

$$Sb_2O_3 + 6\ HF \rightarrow 2\ SbF_3 + 3\ H_2O$$

It is Lewis acidic and readily accepts fluoride ions to form the complex anions SbF−4 and SbF2−5. Molten SbF_3 is a weak electrical conductor. The trichloride $SbCl_3$ is prepared by dissolving Sb_2S_3 in hydrochloric acid:

$$Sb_2S_3 + 6\ HCl \rightarrow 2\ SbCl_3 + 3\ H_2S$$

The pentahalides SbF_5 and $SbCl_5$ have trigonal bipyramidal molecular geometry in the gas phase, but in the liquid phase, SbF_5 is polymeric, whereas $SbCl_5$ is monomeric. SbF_5 is a powerful Lewis acid used to make the super acid fluoroantimonic acid ("$HSbF_6$").

Oxyhalides are more common for antimony than arsenic and phosphorus. Antimony trioxide dissolves in concentrated acid to form oxoantimonyl compounds such as SbOCl and $(SbO)_2SO_4$.

Antimonides, hydrides, and organoantimony compounds

Compounds in this class generally are described as derivatives of Sb^{3-}. Antimony forms antimonides with metals, such as indium antimonide (InSb) and silver antimonide (Ag_3Sb). The alkali metal and zinc antimonides, such as Na_3Sb and Zn_3Sb_2, are more reactive. Treating these antimonides with acid produces the unstable gas stibine, SbH_3:

$$Sb^{3-} + 3\ H^+ \rightarrow SbH_3$$

Stibine can also be produced by treating Sb^{3+} salts with hydride reagents such as sodium borohydride. Stibine decomposes spontaneously at room temperature. Because stibine has a positive heat of formation, it is thermodynamically unstable and thus antimony does not react with hydrogen directly.

Organoantimony compounds are typically prepared by alkylation of antimony halides with Grignard reagents. A large variety of compounds are known with both Sb(III) and Sb(V) centers, including mixed chloro-organic derivatives, anions, and cations. Examples include $Sb(C_6H_5)_3$ (triphenylstibine), $Sb_2(C_6H_5)_4$ (with an Sb-Sb bond), and cyclic $[Sb(C_6H_5)]_n$. Pentacoordinated organoantimony compounds are common, examples being $Sb(C_6H_5)_5$ and several related halides.

History

Antimony(III) sulfide, Sb_2S_3, was recognized in predynastic Egypt as an eye cosmetic (kohl) as early as about 3100 BC, when the cosmetic palette was invented.

An artifact, said to be part of a vase, made of antimony dating to about 3000 BC was found at Telloh, Chaldea (part of present-day Iraq), and a copper object plated with antimony dating between 2500 BC and 2200 BC has been found in Egypt. Austen, at a lecture by Herbert Gladstone in 1892 commented that "we only know of antimony at the present day as a highly brittle and crystalline metal, which could hardly be fashioned into a useful vase, and therefore this remarkable 'find' (artifact mentioned above) must represent the lost art of rendering antimony malleable."

Moorey was unconvinced the artifact was indeed a vase, mentioning that Selimkhanov, after his analysis of the Tello object (published in 1975), "attempted to relate the metal to Transcaucasian natural antimony" (i.e. native metal) and that "the antimony objects from Transcaucasia are all small personal ornaments." This weakens the evidence for a lost art "of rendering antimony malleable."

The first European description of a procedure for isolating antimony is in the book *De la pirotechnia* of 1540 by Vannoccio Biringuccio; this predates the more famous 1556 book by Agricola, *De re metallica*. In this context Agricola has been often incorrectly credited with the discovery of metallic antimony. The book *Currus Triumphalis Antimonii* (The Triumphal Chariot of Antimony), describing the preparation of metallic antimony, was published in Germany in 1604. It was purported to have been written by a Benedictine monk, writing under the name Basilius Valentinus, in the 15th century; if it were authentic, which it is not, it would predate Biringuccio.

The first natural occurrence of pure antimony in the Earth's crust was described by the Swedish scientist and local mine district engineer Anton von Swab in 1783; the type-sample was collected from the Sala Silver Mine in the Bergslagen mining district of Sala, Västmanland, Sweden.

Arsenic- Inorganic Contaminant 0.010 mg/L MCL
Metalloid

Arsenic is a chemical element with symbol **As** and the atomic number is 33. Arsenic occurs in many minerals, usually in conjunction with sulfur and metals, and also as a pure elemental crystal. It was first documented by Albertus Magnus in 1250. Arsenic is a metalloid. It can exist in various allotropes, although only the gray form has important use in industry.

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for arsenic is zero. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. Based on the MCLG, EPA has set an enforceable regulation for arsenic, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.010 mg/L or 10 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies.

The Arsenic and Clarifications to Compliance and New Source Contaminants Monitoring Final Rule, the regulation for arsenic, became effective in 2002. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review and revise contaminants, if appropriate, based on new scientific data. The regulation for arsenic will be included in a future review cycle.

The main uses of metallic arsenic is for strengthening alloys of copper and especially lead (for example, in car batteries). Arsenic is a common n-type dopant in semiconductor electronic devices, and the optoelectronic compound gallium arsenide is the most common semiconductor in use after doped silicon. Arsenic and its compounds, especially the trioxide, are used in the production of pesticides (treated wood products), herbicides, and insecticides. These applications are declining, however.

Arsenic is notoriously poisonous to multicellular life, although a few species of bacteria are able to use arsenic compounds as respiratory metabolites. Arsenic contamination of groundwater is a problem that affects millions of people across the world.

Arsenic, a naturally occurring element, is found throughout the environment; for most people, food is the major source of exposure. Acute (short-term) high-level inhalation exposure to arsenic dust or fumes has resulted in gastrointestinal effects (nausea, diarrhea, abdominal pain); central and peripheral nervous system disorders have occurred in workers acutely exposed to inorganic arsenic. Chronic (long-term) inhalation exposure to inorganic arsenic in humans is associated with irritation of the skin and mucous membranes. Chronic oral exposure has resulted in gastrointestinal effects, anemia, peripheral neuropathy, skin lesions, hyperpigmentation, and liver or kidney damage in humans. Inorganic arsenic exposure in humans, by the inhalation route, has been shown to be strongly associated with lung cancer, while ingestion of inorganic arsenic in humans has been linked to a form of skin cancer and also to bladder, liver, and lung cancer. EPA has classified inorganic arsenic as a Group A, human carcinogen.

Contamination of Groundwater

Arsenic contamination of groundwater is often due to naturally occurring high concentrations of arsenic in deeper levels of groundwater. It is a high-profile problem due to the use of deep tubewells for water supply in the Ganges Delta, causing serious arsenic poisoning to large numbers of people. In addition, mining techniques such as hydraulic fracturing mobilize arsenic in groundwater and aquifers due to enhanced methane 28 transport and resulting changes in redox conditions, and inject fluid containing additional arsenic.

A 2007 study found that over 137 million people in more than 70 countries are probably affected by arsenic poisoning of drinking water. Arsenic contamination of ground water is found in many countries throughout the world, including the USA.

Approximately 20 incidents of groundwater arsenic contamination have been reported from all over the world. Of these, four major incidents were in Asia, including locations in Thailand, Taiwan, and Mainland China. In South America, Argentina and Chile are affected. There are also many locations in the United States where the groundwater contains arsenic concentrations in excess of the Environmental Protection Agency standard of 10 parts per billion adopted in 2001. Millions of private wells have unknown arsenic levels, and in some areas of the US, over 20% of wells may contain levels that are not safe.

Arsine

Arsine is a gas consisting of arsenic and hydrogen. It is extremely toxic to humans, with headaches, vomiting, and abdominal pains occurring within a few hours of exposure. EPA has not classified arsine for carcinogenicity.

Drinking water regulations require public water systems to monitor for arsenic at the entry point to the distribution system. There is no federal requirement for systems to monitor for arsenic within the distribution system. You may, however, want to test your distribution system water for arsenic to be sure that the water being delivered has arsenic levels below the MCL. If you decide to monitor your distribution system, consider testing for arsenic at locations where the settling and accumulation of iron solids or pipe scales are likely (i.e., areas with cast iron pipe, ductile iron pipe, or galvanized iron pipe).

If your water system has installed some form of arsenic treatment, keep in mind that the treatment you installed may change the water quality in other ways. It might cause the water to react differently in the distribution system. Depending on the kind of treatment you've installed, consider what distribution system problems might result.

A change in the taste, odor or appearance of the water at customers' taps may be the first indication of a problem. Some water quality parameters to consider monitoring, depending on your arsenic treatment technology, include iron, pH, manganese, alkalinity, and aluminum.

The current drinking water standard or Maximum Contaminant Level (MCL) set by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) is 0.010 mg/L or parts per million (ppm). This is equivalent to 10 ug/L (micrograms per liter) or 10 ppb. In 2001, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) reduced the regulatory MCL from 50 ppb to 10 ppb on the basis on bladder and lung cancer risks. The MCL is based on the average individual consuming 2 liters of water a day for a lifetime. Long term exposure to drinking water containing arsenic at levels higher than 10 ppb increases the chances of getting cancer, while for lower arsenic water levels the chances are less.

If your water has arsenic levels above 10 ppb, you should obtain drinking water from another source or install a home treatment device. Concentrations above 10 ppb will increase the risk of long-term or chronic health problems, the higher the level and length of exposure, the greater the risk. It is especially important to reduce arsenic water concentrations if you have children or are pregnant. Children are at greater risk (to any agent in water) because of their greater water consumption on a per unit body weight basis.

Pregnant women may wish to reduce their arsenic exposures because arsenic has been found at low levels in mother's milk and will cross the placenta, increasing exposures and risks for the fetus. If your water has arsenic levels above 200 ppb, you should immediately stop drinking the water until you can either obtain water from another source or install and maintain treatment.

Physical Characteristics

The three most common arsenic allotropes are *metallic gray*, *yellow* and *black arsenic*, with gray being the most common. *Gray arsenic* (α-As, space group R3m No. 166) adopts a double-layered structure consisting of many interlocked ruffled six-membered rings. Because of weak bonding between the layers, gray arsenic is brittle and has a relatively low Mohs hardness of 3.5. Nearest and next-nearest neighbors form a distorted octahedral complex, with the three atoms in the same double-layer being slightly closer than the three atoms in the next. This relatively close packing leads to a high density of 5.73 g/cm^3. Gray arsenic is a semimetal, but becomes a semiconductor with a bandgap of 1.2–1.4 eV if amorphized. *Yellow arsenic* is soft and waxy, and somewhat similar to tetraphosphorus (P_4). Both have four atoms arranged in a tetrahedral structure in which each atom is bound to each of the other three atoms by a single bond. This unstable allotrope, being molecular, is the most volatile, least dense and most toxic. Solid yellow arsenic is produced by rapid cooling of arsenic vapor, As_4. It is rapidly transformed into the gray arsenic by light. The yellow form has a density of 1.97 g/cm^3. *Black arsenic* is similar in structure to red phosphorus.

Isotopes

Naturally occurring arsenic is composed of one stable isotope, ^{75}As. As of 2003, at least 33 radioisotopes have also been synthesized, ranging in atomic mass from 60 to 92. The most stable of these is ^{73}As with a half-life of 80.3 days. Isotopes that are lighter than the stable ^{75}As tend to decay by β^+ decay, and those that are heavier tend to decay by β^- decay, with some exceptions.

At least 10 nuclear isomers have been described, ranging in atomic mass from 66 to 84. The most stable of arsenic's isomers is ^{68m}As with a half-life of 111 seconds.

Chemistry

When heated in air, arsenic oxidizes to arsenic trioxide; the fumes from this reaction have an odor resembling garlic. This odor can be detected on striking arsenide minerals such as arsenopyrite with a hammer. Arsenic (and some arsenic compounds) sublimes upon heating at atmospheric pressure, converting directly to a gaseous form without an intervening liquid state at 887 K (614 °C). The triple point is 3.63 MPa and 1,090 K (820 °C). Arsenic makes arsenic acid with concentrated nitric acid, arsenious acid with dilute nitric acid, and arsenic trioxide with concentrated sulfuric acid.

Compounds

Arsenic compounds resemble in some respects those of phosphorus, which occupies the same group (column) of the periodic table. Arsenic is less commonly observed in the pentavalent state, however. The most common oxidation states for arsenic are: −3 in the arsenides, such as alloy-like intermetallic compounds; and +3 in the arsenites, arsenates (III), and most organoarsenic compounds. Arsenic also bonds readily to itself as seen in the square As3− 4 ions in the mineral skutterudite. In the +3 oxidation state, arsenic is typically pyramidal, owing to the influence of the lone pair of electrons.

Inorganic

Arsenic forms colorless, odorless, crystalline oxides As_2O_3 ("white arsenic") and As_2O_5, which are hygroscopic and readily soluble in water to form acidic solutions. Arsenic (V) acid is a weak acid. Its salts are called arsenates, which is the basis of arsenic contamination of groundwater, a problem that affects many people. Synthetic arsenates include Paris Green (copper(II) acetoarsenite), calcium arsenate, and lead hydrogen arsenate. The latter three have been used as agricultural insecticides and poisons.

The protonation steps between the arsenate and arsenic acid are similar to those between phosphate and phosphoric acid. Unlike phosphorus acid, arsenous acid is genuinely tribasic, with the formula $As(OH)_3$.

A broad variety of sulfur compounds of arsenic are known. Orpiment (As_2S_3) and realgar (As_4S_4) are somewhat abundant and were formerly used as painting pigments. In As_4S_{10}, arsenic has a formal oxidation state of +2 in As_4S_4, which features As-As bonds so that the total covalency of As is still three.

The trifluoride, trichloride, tribromide, and triiodide of arsenic (III) are well known, whereas only Arsenic pentafluoride (AsF_5) is the only important pentahalide. Again reflecting the lower stability of the 5+ oxidation state, the pentachloride is stable only below −50 °C.

Organoarsenic Compounds

A large variety of organoarsenic compounds are known. Several were developed as chemical warfare agents during World War I, including vesicants such as lewisite and vomiting agents such as adamsite. Cacodylic acid, which is of historic and practical interest, arises from the methylation of arsenic trioxide, a reaction that has no analogy in phosphorus chemistry.

Alloys

Arsenic is used as the group 5 element in the III-V semiconductors gallium arsenide, indium arsenide, and aluminum arsenide. The valence electron count of GaAs is the same as a pair of Si atoms, but the band structure is completely different, which results distinct bulk properties. Other arsenic alloys include the II-IV semiconductor cadmium arsenide.

Occurrence and Production

Minerals with the formula MAsS and MAs_2 (M = Fe, Ni, Co) are the dominant commercial sources of arsenic, together with realgar (an arsenic sulfide mineral) and native arsenic. An illustrative mineral is arsenopyrite (FeAsS), which is structurally related to iron pyrite. Many minor As-containing minerals are known. Arsenic also occurs in various organic forms in the environment. Inorganic arsenic and its compounds, upon entering the food chain, are progressively metabolized to a less toxic form of arsenic through a process of methylation.

Other naturally occurring pathways of exposure include volcanic ash, weathering of arsenic-containing minerals and ores, and dissolved in groundwater. It is also found in food, water, soil, and air. Arsenic is absorbed by all plants, but is more concentrated in leafy vegetables, rice, apple and grape juice, and seafood. An additional route of exposure is through inhalation.

In 2005, China was the top producer of white arsenic with almost 50% world share, followed by Chile, Peru, and Morocco, according to the British Geological Survey and the United States Geological Survey. Most operations in the US and Europe have closed for environmental reasons. The arsenic is recovered mainly as a side product from the purification of copper. Arsenic is part of the smelter dust from copper, gold, and lead smelters.

On roasting in air of arsenopyrite, arsenic sublimes as arsenic (III) oxide leaving iron oxides, while roasting without air results in the production of metallic arsenic. Further purification from sulfur and other chalcogens is achieved by sublimation in vacuum or in a hydrogen atmosphere or by distillation from molten lead-arsenic mixture.

Health Hazard Information

Arsenic

Arsenic is known to cause cancer, as well as many other serious health problems. Here we review the hazards of arsenic exposure and ways people can protect themselves from these hazards.

Arsenic is an element in the environment that can be found naturally in rocks and soil, water, air, and in plants and animals. It can also be released into the environment from some agricultural and industrial sources.

Arsenic has no taste or smell. Although sometimes found in its pure form as a steel grey metal, arsenic is usually part of chemical compounds. These compounds are divided into 2 groups:

- Inorganic compounds (combined with oxygen, iron, chlorine, and sulfur)

- Organic compounds (combined with carbon and other atoms)

Inorganic arsenic compounds are found in industry, in building products (in some "pressure-treated" woods), and in arsenic-contaminated water. This is the form of arsenic that tends to be more toxic and has been linked to cancer.

Organic arsenic compounds are much less toxic than the inorganic arsenic compounds and are not thought to be linked to cancer. These compounds are found in some foods, such as fish and shellfish.

While arsenic levels may fluctuate over time, what is most significant from the standpoint of cancer risk is long-term exposure.

For water systems in the 25 states that reported arsenic data to the EPA, we have calculated two estimates of average long-term levels: one is a very conservative estimate, the other our best estimate, based on what we believe to be the most reasonable analytical techniques (details on how we arrived at the estimates are included with the charts).

The table below shows the lifetime risks of dying of cancer from arsenic in tap water, based on the National Academy of Sciences' 1999 risk estimates.

Arsenic Level in Tap Water (in parts per billion, or ppb)	Approximate Total Cancer Risk (assuming 2 liters consumed/day)
0.5 ppb	1 in 10,000
1 ppb	1 in 5,000
3 ppb	1 in 1,667
4 ppb	1 in 1,250
5 ppb	1 in 1,000
10 ppb	1 in 500
20 ppb	1 in 250
25 ppb	1 in 200
50 ppb	1 in 100

Arsenic Diabetes

New research findings from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey suggest that exposure to levels of arsenic commonly found in drinking water may be a risk factor for type 2 diabetes. The findings suggest that millions of Americans may be at increased risk for type 2 diabetes based on the level of arsenic in their drinking water.

Data on the nearly 800 participants in the study for which urinary arsenic concentrations were available, indicated that urine levels of arsenic were significantly associated with the prevalence of type 2 diabetes. After splitting the subjects into 5 groups based on the level of arsenic in their urine, the researchers determined that those in the highest category were more than three and one-half times more likely to have diabetes. The strength of arsenic as a risk factor for diabetes is similar to other factors such as obesity.

Inorganic arsenic in drinking water at concentrations higher than 100 parts per million has been linked to type 2 diabetes in studies that took place in Taiwan, Mexico, and Bangladesh where drinking water is commonly contaminated with high levels of arsenic. The US drinking water standard is currently 10 parts per million, but most people on private wells have not had their water tested and aren’t required to. The researchers estimate that about 13 million Americans live in areas where public water systems exceed the EPA standard for arsenic and this number does not included private wells and water systems.

Animal studies have shown that arsenic affects the production of glucose, insulin secretion and can cause insulin resistance. The current findings reinforce the need to evaluate the role of arsenic in diabetes development in prospective epidemiologic studies conducted in populations exposed to a wide range of arsenic levels.

Acute Effects:

Inorganic Arsenic

- Acute inhalation exposure of workers to high levels of arsenic dusts or fumes has resulted in gastrointestinal effects (nausea, diarrhea, abdominal pain), while acute exposure of workers to inorganic arsenic has also resulted in central and peripheral nervous system disorders.

- Acute oral exposure to inorganic arsenic, at doses of approximately 600 micrograms per kilogram body weight per day (µg/kg/d) or higher in humans, has resulted in death. Oral exposure to lower levels of inorganic arsenic has resulted in effects on the gastrointestinal tract (nausea, vomiting), central nervous system (CNS) (headaches, weakness, delirium), cardiovascular system (hypotension, shock), liver, kidney, and blood (anemia, leukopenia).

- Acute animal tests in rats and mice have shown inorganic arsenic to have moderate to high acute toxicity.

Arsine

- Acute inhalation exposure to arsine by humans has resulted in death; it has been reported that a half-hour exposure to 25 to 50 parts per million (ppm) can be lethal.

- The major effects from acute arsine exposure in humans include headaches, vomiting, abdominal pains, hemolytic anemia, hemoglobinuria, and jaundice; these effects can lead to kidney failure.

- Arsine has been shown to have extreme acute toxicity from acute animal tests.

Chronic Effects (Non-cancer):

Inorganic arsenic

- Chronic inhalation exposure to inorganic arsenic in humans is associated with irritation of the skin and mucous membranes (dermatitis, conjunctivitis, pharyngitis, and rhinitis).

- Chronic oral exposure to inorganic arsenic in humans has resulted in gastrointestinal effects, anemia, peripheral neuropathy, skin lesions, hyperpigmentation, gangrene of the extremities, vascular lesions, and liver or kidney damage.

- No chronic inhalation exposure studies have been performed in animals for any inorganic arsenic compound.

- Some studies have suggested that inorganic arsenic is an essential dietary nutrient in goats, chicks, and rats. However, no comparable data are available for humans. EPA has concluded that essentiality, although not rigorously established, is plausible.

- EPA has not established a Reference Concentration (RfC) for inorganic arsenic.

- The California Environmental Protection Agency (CalEPA) has established a chronic inhalation reference level of 0.00003 milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m^3) based on developmental effects in mice. The CalEPA reference exposure level is a concentration at or below which adverse health effects are not likely to occur. It is not a direct estimator of risk, but rather a reference point to gauge the potential effects. At lifetime exposures increasingly greater than the reference exposure level, the potential for adverse health effects increases.

- The Reference Dose (RfD) for inorganic arsenic is 0.0003 milligrams per kilogram body weight per day (mg/kg/d) based on hyperpigmentation, keratosis, and possible vascular complications in humans. The RfD is an estimate (with uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a daily oral exposure to the human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without appreciable risk of deleterious noncancer effects during a lifetime.

- EPA has medium confidence in the study on which the RfD for inorganic arsenic was based because, although an extremely large number of people were included in the assessment (>40,000), the doses were not well characterized and other contaminants were present. The supporting human toxicity database, while extensive, is somewhat flawed and, consequently, EPA has assigned medium confidence to the RfD.

Arsine

- No information is available on the chronic effects of arsine in humans.

- The RfC for arsine is 0.00005 mg/m^3 based on increased hemolysis, abnormal red blood cell morphology, and increased spleen weight in rats, mice, and hamsters.

- EPA has medium confidence in the RfC based on: (1) high confidence in the studies on which the RfC for arsine was based because the sample sizes were adequate, statistical significance was reported, concentration dose-response relationships were documented, three species were investigated, and both a no-observed-adverse-effect level (NOAEL) and a lowest-observed-adverse-effect level (LOAEL) were identified, and (2) medium confidence in the database because while there were three inhalation animal studies and a developmental/reproductive study, there were no data available on human exposure.

Reproductive/Developmental Effects:

Inorganic arsenic

- Several studies have suggested that women who work in, or live near, metal smelters may have higher than normal spontaneous abortion rates, and their children may exhibit lower than normal birth weights. However, these studies are limited because they were designed to evaluate the effects of smelter pollutants in general, and are not specific for inorganic arsenic.

- Ingested inorganic arsenic can cross the placenta in humans, exposing the fetus to the chemical.

- Oral animal studies have reported inorganic arsenic at very high doses to be fetotoxic and to cause birth defects.

Arsine

- Human studies have indicated higher than expected spontaneous abortion rates in women in the microelectronics industry who were exposed to arsine. However, these studies have several limitations, including small sample size and exposure to other chemicals in addition to arsine.

Cancer Risk:

Inorganic arsenic

- Human, inhalation studies have reported inorganic arsenic exposure to be strongly associated with lung cancer.

- Ingestion of inorganic arsenic in humans has been associated with an increased risk of nonmelanoma skin cancer and also to an increased risk of bladder, liver, and lung cancer.

- Animal studies have not associated inorganic arsenic exposure via the oral route with cancer, and no cancer inhalation studies have been performed in animals for inorganic arsenic.

- EPA has classified inorganic arsenic as a Group A, human carcinogen.

- EPA used a mathematical model, using data from an occupational study of arsenic-exposed copper smelter workers, to estimate the probability of a person developing cancer from continuously breathing air containing a specified concentration of inorganic arsenic. EPA calculated an inhalation unit risk estimate of $4.3 \times 10^{-3} (\mu g/m^3)^{-1}$. EPA estimates that, if an individual were to continuously breathe air containing inorganic arsenic at an average of 0.0002 $\mu g/m^3$ (2×10^{-7} mg/m^3) over his or her entire lifetime, that person would theoretically have no more than a one-in-a-million increased chance of developing cancer as a direct result of breathing air containing this chemical. Similarly, EPA estimates that continuously breathing air containing 0.002 $\mu g/m^3$ (2×10^{-6} mg/m^3) would result in not greater than a one-in-a-hundred thousand increased chance of developing cancer, and air containing 0.02 $\mu g/m^3$ (2×10^{-5} mg/m^3) would result in not greater than a one-in-ten thousand increased chance of developing cancer. For a detailed discussion of confidence in the potency estimates, please see IRIS.

- EPA has calculated an oral cancer slope factor of 1.5 $(mg/kg/d)^{-1}$ for inorganic arsenic.

Arsine

- No cancer inhalation studies in humans or animals are available for arsine.
- EPA has not classified arsine for carcinogenicity.

Physical Properties

- Inorganic arsenic is a naturally occurring element in the earth's crust.
- Pure inorganic arsenic is a gray-colored metal, but inorganic arsenic is usually found combined with other elements such as oxygen, chlorine, and sulfur.
- The chemical symbol for inorganic arsenic is As, and it has an atomic weight of 74.92 g/mol.
- The chemical formula for arsine is AsH_3, and it has a molecular weight of 77.95 g/mol.
- Arsine is a colorless gas with a disagreeable garlic odor.
- Arsenic combined with elements such as oxygen, chlorine, and sulfur forms inorganic arsenic; inorganic arsenic compounds include arsenic pentoxide, arsenic trioxide, and arsenic acid. Arsenic combined with carbon and hydrogen forms organic arsenic; organic arsenic compounds include arsanilic acid, arsenobetaine, and dimethylarsinic acid.

History

The word “Arsenic“ was adopted in Latin *arsenicum* and Old French *arsenic,* from which the English word *arsenic* is derived. Arsenic sulfides (orpiment, realgar) and oxides have been known and used since ancient times. Zosimos (circa 300 AD) describes roasting *sandarach* (realgar) to obtain *cloud of arsenic* (arsenious oxide), which he then reduces to metallic arsenic. As the symptoms of arsenic poisoning were somewhat ill-defined, it was frequently used for murder until the advent of the Marsh test, a sensitive chemical test for its presence. (Another less sensitive but more general test is the Reinsch test.) Owing to its use by the ruling class to murder one another and its potency and discreetness, arsenic has been called the *Poison of Kings* and the *King of Poisons*.

During the Bronze Age, arsenic was often included in bronze, which made the alloy harder (so-called "arsenical bronze"). Albertus Magnus (Albert the Great, 1193–1280) is believed to have been the first to isolate the element from a compound in 1250, by heating soap together with arsenic trisulfide. In 1649, Johann Schröder published two ways of preparing arsenic. Crystals of elemental (native) arsenic are found in nature, although rare. Cadet's fuming liquid (impure cacodyl), often claimed as the first synthetic organometallic compound, was synthesized in 1760 by Louis Claude Cadet de Gassicourt by the reaction of potassium acetate with arsenic trioxide.

In the Victorian era, "arsenic" ("white arsenic" or arsenic trioxide) was mixed with vinegar and chalk and eaten by women to improve the complexion of their faces, making their skin paler to show they did not work in the fields. Arsenic was also rubbed into the faces and arms of women to "improve their complexion". The accidental use of arsenic in the adulteration of foodstuffs led to the Bradford sweet poisoning in 1858, which resulted in approximately 20 deaths.

Arsenic Applications

Agricultural

The toxicity of arsenic to insects, bacteria and fungi led to its use as a wood preservative. In the 1950s a process of treating wood with chromated copper arsenate (also known as CCA or Tanalith) was invented, and for decades this treatment was the most extensive industrial use of arsenic. An increased appreciation of the toxicity of arsenic resulted in a ban for the use of CCA in consumer products; the European Union and United States initiated this process in 2004. CCA remains in heavy use in other countries however, e.g. Malaysian rubber plantations.

Arsenic was also used in various agricultural insecticides, termination and poisons. For example, lead hydrogen arsenate was a common insecticide on fruit trees, but contact with the compound sometimes resulted in brain damage among those working the sprayers. In the second half of the 20th century, monosodium methyl arsenate (MSMA) and disodium methyl arsenate (DSMA) – less toxic organic forms of arsenic – have replaced lead arsenate in agriculture.

Arsenic is still added to animal food, in particular in the US as a method of disease prevention and growth stimulation. One example is roxarsone, which is used as a broiler starter by about 70% of the broiler growers since 1995. The Poison-Free Poultry Act of 2009 proposes to ban the use of roxarsone in industrial swine and poultry production. Alpharma, a subsidiary of Pfizer Inc., which produces Roxarsone, has voluntarily suspended sales of the drug in response to studies showing elevated levels of arsenic in treated chickens.

Medical use

During the 18th, 19th, and 20th centuries, a number of arsenic compounds have been used as medicines, including arsphenamine (by Paul Ehrlich) and arsenic trioxide (by Thomas Fowler). Arsphenamine as well as neosalvarsan was indicated for syphilis and trypanosomiasis, but has been superseded by modern antibiotics. Arsenic trioxide has been used in a variety of ways over the past 500 years, but most commonly in the treatment of cancer. The US Food and Drug Administration in 2000 approved this compound for the treatment of patients with acute promyelocytic leukemia that is resistant to ATRA.

It was also used as Fowler's solution in psoriasis. Recently new research has been done in locating tumors using arsenic-74 (a positron emitter). The advantages of using this isotope instead of the previously used iodine-124 is that the signal in the PET scan is clearer as the body tends to transport iodine to the thyroid gland producing a lot of noise. In subtoxic doses, soluble arsenic compounds act as stimulants, and were once popular in small doses as medicine by people in the mid-18th century.

Alloys

The main use of metallic arsenic is for alloying with lead. Lead components in car batteries are strengthened by the presence of a few percent of arsenic. Dezincification can be strongly reduced by adding arsenic to brass, a copper-zinc alloy. Gallium arsenide is an important semiconductor material, used in integrated circuits. Circuits made from GaAs are much faster (but also much more expensive) than those made in silicon. Unlike silicon it has a direct bandgap, and so can be used in laser diodes and LEDs to directly convert electricity into light.

Military

After World War I, the United States built up a stockpile of 20,000 tons of lewisite ($ClCH=CHAsCl_2$), a chemical weapon that is a vesicant (blister agent) and lung irritant. The stockpile was neutralized with bleach and dumped into the Gulf of Mexico after the 1950s. During the Vietnam War the United States used Agent Blue, a mixture of sodium cacodylate and its acid form, as one of the rainbow herbicides to deprive invading North Vietnamese soldiers of foliage cover and rice.

Other uses

- Copper acetoarsenite was used as a green pigment known under many names, including 'Paris Green' and 'Emerald Green'. It caused numerous arsenic poisonings. Scheele's Green, a copper arsenate, was used in the 19th century as a coloring agent in sweets.

- Also used in bronzing and pyrotechnics.

- Up to 2% of arsenic is used in lead alloys for lead shots and bullets.

- Arsenic is added in small quantities to alpha-brass to make it dezincification resistant. This grade of brass is used to make plumbing fittings or other items that are in constant contact with water.

- Arsenic is also used for taxonomic sample preservation.

- Until recently arsenic was used in optical glass. Modern glass manufacturers, under pressure from environmentalists, have removed it, along with lead.

Bacteria

Some species of bacteria obtain their energy by oxidizing various fuels while reducing arsenate to arsenite. Under oxidative environmental conditions some bacteria use arsenite, which is oxidized to arsenate as fuel for their metabolism. The enzymes involved are known as arsenate reductases (Arr).

In 2008, bacteria were discovered that employ a version of photosynthesis in the absence of oxygen with arsenites as electron donors, producing arsenates (just as ordinary photosynthesis uses water as electron donor, producing molecular oxygen). Researchers conjecture that, over the course of history, these photosynthesizing organisms produced the arsenates that allowed the arsenate-reducing bacteria to thrive. One strain PHS-1 has been isolated and is related to the Gammaproteobacterium *Ectothiorhodospira shaposhnikovii*. The mechanism is unknown, but an encoded Arr enzyme may function in reverse to its known homologues. Although the arsenate and phosphate anions are similar structurally, no evidence exists for the replacement of phosphate in ATP or nucleic acids by arsenic.

It is known that even if your water has detectable levels of arsenic that are below the 0.010 mg/L MCL, and you have iron pipes or components in your distribution system, your system's pipes may have arsenic-rich scales attached to them. As long as the scales are not disturbed, they will remain attached to the pipes or other distribution system components. Certain conditions, such as flushing of mains or fire flow conditions, may result in those scales being sloughed off and suspended in the water, releasing the arsenic. Other conditions, such as changes in water chemistry, may result in some of the arsenic dissolving back into the water. Both of these situations could cause high arsenic levels at consumers' taps.

Arsenic Control Measures Can Affect Finished Water Quality

Public water systems installing arsenic treatment should be informed about possible changes to their finished water that may result from the arsenic treatment they install. For example, systems may need to adjust their finished water quality to address new concerns about corrosion. Changes in water chemistry due to using new sources, blending different source waters, or installing arsenic treatment are some of the factors that can affect distribution system water quality. In some cases, this may cause an increase in arsenic levels in the distribution system or create simultaneous compliance issues with other drinking water regulations.

Water systems may also find deposits of arsenic-rich particles in their storage tanks or at locations in their distribution system with low flows. If the flow is increased or a storage tank is drawn down to a low level, these arsenic-rich particles can get stirred up and transported to consumers' taps. This situation occurs primarily when iron media used in treatment are released into the distribution system, or when iron particles are not properly filtered out during iron removal treatment. If these treatment technologies are operated correctly, this should not be a problem for most water systems.

Is Arsenic in your Storage Tank?

Is Your Ground Water System Installing Disinfection for Pathogen Control?

Water systems that disinfect their water should be aware of the possibility of an increase in arsenic concentrations in their distribution system, particularly if the water contains high concentrations of dissolved iron. When chlorinated, the dissolved iron forms particles on which arsenic can accumulate. As a result, high arsenic concentrations may occur in distribution system water even if arsenic concentrations in the raw water are below the MCL.

This happened to a small community water system in the Midwest that began chlorinating water from a series of wells that had raw water arsenic levels between 0.003 and 0.008 mg/L and iron concentrations up to 0.4 mg/L. At the same time, the system installed a polyphosphate feed system for corrosion control. Soon after chlorination began, the system received intermittent colored-water complaints from its customers with increasing frequency across the distribution system.

Samples collected from several representative locations throughout the service area had a reddish-brown color and contained particles. A metals analysis showed high levels of copper and iron oxides in the finished water, along with arsenic concentrations approaching 5 mg/L. Because of the water's colored appearance, it was considered unlikely that customers would consume the water. Doctors and health care professionals were notified of the situation and instructed to watch for signs of arsenic poisoning.

Researchers found that chlorinating the water caused the formation of ferri-hydroxide solids. The minimal arsenic present in the groundwater was being concentrated as it absorbed onto the solids. Copper oxide particulates also formed and were released. To some extent, the polyphosphates served a useful role by keeping iron in solution and counteracting the tendency for the iron oxides to form, but additional steps were needed. For six months the system alternated their chlorination schedule: on for one day then off two days. The system then returned to full-time chlorination, starting with a low distribution system residual of0.2 mg/L and gradually increasing it to 0.5 mg/L. The system continued to flush water mains on a semi-annual schedule using a unidirectional approach. In the last year, the system received only one colored water complaint.

Heredity

Arsenic has been linked to epigenetic changes, heritable changes in gene expression that occur without changes in DNA sequence. These include DNA methylation, histone modification, and RNA interference. Toxic levels of arsenic cause significant DNA hypermethylation of tumor suppressor genes p16 and p53, thus increasing risk of carcinogenesis. These epigenetic events have been studied *in vitro* using human kidney cells and *in vivo* using rat liver cells and peripheral blood leukocytes in humans. Inductive coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) is used to detect precise levels of intracellular arsenic and its other bases involved in epigenetic modification of DNA. Studies investigating arsenic as an epigenetic factor will help in developing precise biomarkers of exposure and susceptibility.

The Chinese brake fern (*Pteris vittata*) hyperaccumulates arsenic present in the soil into its leaves and has a proposed use in phytoremediation.

Biomethylation

Inorganic arsenic and its compounds, upon entering the food chain, are progressively metabolized through a process of methylation. For example, the mold Scopulariopsis brevicaulis produce significant amounts of trimethylarsine if inorganic arsenic is present. The organic compound arsenobetaine is found in some marine foods such as fish and algae, and also in mushrooms in larger concentrations. The average person's intake is about 10–50 µg/day. Values about 1000 µg are not unusual following consumption of fish or mushrooms, but there is little danger in eating fish because this arsenic compound is nearly non-toxic.

Arsenic Environmental Issues

Arsenic Control Measures Can Affect Finished Water Quality

Public water systems installing arsenic treatment should be informed about possible changes to their finished water that may result from the arsenic treatment they install. For example, systems may need to adjust their finished water quality to address new concerns about corrosion. Changes in water chemistry due to using new sources, blending different source waters, or installing arsenic treatment are some of the factors that can affect distribution system water quality. In some cases, this may cause an increase in arsenic levels in the distribution system or create simultaneous compliance issues with other drinking water regulations.

Occurrence in drinking water

Widespread arsenic contamination of groundwater has led to a massive epidemic of arsenic poisoning in Bangladesh and neighboring countries. It is estimated that approximately 57 million people in the Bengal basin are drinking groundwater with arsenic concentrations elevated above the World Health Organization's standard of 10 parts per billion (ppb). However, a study of cancer rates in Taiwan suggested that significant increases in cancer mortality appear only at levels above 150 ppb.

The arsenic in the groundwater is of natural origin, and is released from the sediment into the groundwater, owing to the anoxic conditions of the subsurface. This groundwater began to be used after local and western NGOs and the Bangladeshi government undertook a massive shallow tube well drinking-water program in the late twentieth century. This program was designed to prevent drinking of bacteria-contaminated surface waters, but failed to test for arsenic in the groundwater. Many other countries and districts in Southeast Asia, such as Vietnam and Cambodia have geological environments conducive to generation of high-arsenic groundwaters. Arsenicosis was reported in Nakhon Si Thammarat, Thailand in 1987, and the dissolved arsenic in the Chao Phraya River is suspected of containing high levels of naturally occurring arsenic, but has not been a public health problem owing to the use of bottled water.

In the United States, arsenic is most commonly found in the ground waters of the southwest. Parts of New England, Michigan, Wisconsin, Minnesota and the Dakotas are also known to have significant concentrations of arsenic in ground water. Increased levels of skin cancer have been associated with arsenic exposure in Wisconsin, even at levels below the 10 part per billion drinking water standard, although this link has not been proven. According to a recent film funded by the US Superfund, millions of private wells have unknown arsenic levels, and in some areas of the US, over 20% of wells may contain levels that exceed established limits.

Low-level exposure to arsenic at concentrations found commonly in US drinking water compromises the initial immune response to H1N1 or swine flu infection according to NIEHS-supported scientists. The study, conducted in laboratory mice, suggests that people exposed to arsenic in their drinking water may be at increased risk for more serious illness or death in response to infection from the virus.

Some Canadians are drinking water that contains inorganic arsenic. Private dug well waters are most at risk for containing inorganic arsenic. Preliminary well water analyses typically does not test for arsenic. Researchers at the Geological Survey of Canada have modeled relative variation in natural arsenic hazard potential for the province of New Brunswick. This study has important implications for potable water and health concerns relating to inorganic arsenic.

Epidemiological evidence from Chile shows a dose-dependent connection between chronic arsenic exposure and various forms of cancer, in particular when other risk factors, such as cigarette smoking, are present. These effects have been demonstrated to persist below 50 ppb.
Analyzing multiple epidemiological studies on inorganic arsenic exposure suggests a small but measurable risk increase for bladder cancer at 10 ppb. According to Peter Ravenscroft of the Department of Geography at the University of Cambridge, roughly 80 million people worldwide consume between 10 and 50 ppb arsenic in their drinking water. If they all consumed exactly 10 ppb arsenic in their drinking water, the previously cited multiple epidemiological study analysis would predict an additional 2,000 cases of bladder cancer alone. This represents a clear underestimate of the overall impact, since it does not include lung or skin cancer, and explicitly underestimates the exposure. Those exposed to levels of arsenic above the current WHO standard should weigh the costs and benefits of arsenic remediation.

Early (1973) evaluations of the removal of dissolved arsenic by drinking water treatment processes demonstrated that arsenic is very effectively removed by co-precipitation with either iron or aluminum oxides. The use of iron as a coagulant, in particular, was found to remove arsenic with efficiencies exceeding 90%. Several adsorptive media systems have been approved for point-of-service use in a study funded by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) and the National Science Foundation (NSF).

A team of European and Indian scientists and engineers have set up six arsenic treatment plants in West Bengal based on in-situ remediation method (SAR Technology). This technology does not use any chemicals and arsenic is left as an insoluble form (+5 state) in the subterranean zone by recharging aerated water into the aquifer and thus developing an oxidation zone to support arsenic oxidizing micro-organisms. This process does not produce any waste stream or sludge and is relatively cheap.

Another effective and inexpensive method to remove arsenic from contaminated well water is to sink wells 500 feet or deeper to reach purer waters. A recent 2011 study funded by the US National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences' Superfund Research Program shows that deep sediments can remove arsenic and take it out of circulation.

Through this process called adsorption in which arsenic sticks to the surfaces of deep sediment articles, arsenic can be naturally removed from well water.

Magnetic separations of arsenic at very low magnetic field gradients have been demonstrated in point-of-use water purification with high-surface-area and monodisperse magnetite (Fe_3O_4) nanocrystals. Using the high specific surface area of Fe_3O_4 nanocrystals the mass of waste associated with arsenic removal from water has been dramatically reduced.

Epidemiological studies have suggested a correlation between chronic consumption of drinking water contaminated with arsenic and the incidence of all leading causes of mortality. The literature provides reason to believe arsenic exposure is causative in the pathogenesis of diabetes.

Hungarian engineer László Schremmer has recently discovered that by the use of chaff-based filters it is possible to reduce the arsenic content of water to 3 µg/L. This is especially important in areas where the potable water is provided by filtering the water extracted from the underground aquifer.

Wood Preservation in the US

As of 2002, US-based industries consumed 19,600 metric tons of arsenic. Ninety percent of this was used for treatment of wood with chromated copper arsenate (CCA). In 2007, 50% of the 5,280 metric tons of consumption was still used for this purpose. In the United States, the use of arsenic in consumer products was discontinued for residential and general consumer construction on December 31, 2003 and alternative chemicals are now used, such as Alkaline Copper Quaternary, borates, copper azole, cyproconazole, and propiconazole.

Although discontinued, this application is also one of the most concerns to the general public. The vast majority of older pressure-treated wood was treated with CCA. CCA lumber is still in widespread use in many countries, and was heavily used during the latter half of the 20th century as a structural and outdoor building material. Although the use of CCA lumber was banned in many areas after studies showed that arsenic could leach out of the wood into the surrounding soil (from playground equipment, for instance), a risk is also presented by the burning of older CCA timber. The direct or indirect ingestion of wood ash from burnt CCA lumber has caused fatalities in animals and serious poisonings in humans; the lethal human dose is approximately 20 grams of ash. Scrap CCA lumber from construction and demolition sites may be inadvertently used in commercial and domestic fires. Protocols for safe disposal of CCA lumber do not exist evenly throughout the world; there is also concern in some quarters about the widespread landfill disposal of such timber.

Water Purification Solutions

Small-scale water treatment

A review of methods to remove arsenic from groundwater in Pakistan summarizes the most technically viable inexpensive methods. A simpler and less expensive form of arsenic removal is known as the Sono arsenic filter, using three pitchers containing cast iron turnings and sand in the first pitcher and wood activated carbon and sand in the second. Plastic buckets can also be used as filter containers. It is claimed that thousands of these systems are in use and can last for years while avoiding the toxic waste disposal problem inherent to conventional arsenic removal plants. Although novel, this filter has not been certified by any sanitary standards such as NSF, ANSI, WQA and does not avoid toxic waste disposal similar to any other iron removal process.

In the United States small "under the sink" units have been used to remove arsenic from drinking water. This option is called "point of use" treatment. The most common types of domestic treatment use the technologies of adsorption (using media such as Bayoxide E33, GFH, or titanium dioxide) or reverse osmosis. Ion exchange and activated alumina have been considered but not commonly used.

Arsenic Large-scale water treatment

In some places, such as the United States, all the water supplied to residences by utilities must meet primary (health-based) drinking water standards. Regulations may necessitate large-scale treatment systems to remove arsenic from the water supply. The effectiveness of any method depends on the chemical makeup of a particular water supply. The aqueous chemistry of arsenic is complex, and may affect the removal rate that can be achieved by a particular process.

Some large utilities with multiple water supply wells could shut down those wells with high arsenic concentrations, and produce only from wells or surface water sources that meet the arsenic standard. Other utilities, however, especially small utilities with only a few wells, may have no available water supply that meets the arsenic standard.

Coagulation/filtration (also known as flocculation) removes arsenic by coprecipitation and adsorption using iron coagulants. Coagulation/filtration using alum is already used by some utilities to remove suspended solids and may be adjusted to remove arsenic. But the problem of this type of filtration system is that it gets clogged very easily, mostly within two to three months. The toxic arsenic sludge are disposed of by concrete stabilization, but there is no guarantee that they won't leach out in future.

Iron oxide adsorption filters the water through a granular medium containing ferric oxide. Ferric oxide has a high affinity for adsorbing dissolved metals such as arsenic. The iron oxide medium eventually becomes saturated, and must be replaced. The sludge disposal is a problem here too.

Activated alumina is an adsorbent that effectively removes arsenic. Activated alumina columns connected to shallow tube wells in India and Bangladesh have successfully removed both As(III) and As(V) from groundwater for decades. Long-term column performance has been possible through the efforts of community-elected water committees that collect a local water tax for funding operations and maintenance. It has also been used to remove undesirably high concentrations of fluoride.

Ion Exchange has long been used as a water-softening process, although usually on a single-home basis. Traditional anion exchange is effective in removing As(V), but not As (III), or arsenic trioxide, which doesn't have a net charge. Effective long-term ion exchange removal of arsenic requires a trained operator to maintain the column.

Both **Reverse osmosis** and **electrodialysis** (also called *electrodialysis reversal*) can remove arsenic with a net ionic charge. (Note that arsenic oxide, As_2O_3, is a common form of arsenic in groundwater that is soluble, but has no net charge.) Some utilities presently use one of these methods to reduce total dissolved solids and therefore improve taste. A problem with both methods is the production of high-salinity waste water, called brine, or concentrate, which then must be disposed of.

Subterranean Arsenic Removal (SAR) Technology

In subterranean arsenic removal (SAR), aerated groundwater is recharged back into the aquifer to create an oxidation zone which can trap iron and arsenic on the soil particles through adsorption process. The oxidation zone created by aerated water boosts the activity of the arsenic-oxidizing microorganisms which can oxidize arsenic from +3 to +5 state SAR Technology.

No chemicals are used and almost no sludge is produced during operational stage since iron and arsenic compounds are rendered inactive in the aquifer itself. Thus toxic waste disposal and the risk of its future mobilization is prevented. Also, it has very long operational life, similar to the long lasting tube wells drawing water from the shallow aquifers.

Six such SAR plants, funded by the World Bank and constructed by Ramakrishna Vivekananda Mission, Barrackpore & Queen's University Belfast, UK are operating in West Bengal. Each plant has been delivering more than 3,000 liters of arsenic and iron-free water daily to the rural community. The first community water treatment plant based on SAR technology was set up at Kashimpore near Kolkata in 2004 by a team of European and Indian engineers led by Dr. Bhaskar Sen Gupta of Queen's University Belfast for TiPOT.

SAR technology had been awarded Dhirubhai Ambani Award, 2010 from IChemE UK for Chemical Innovation. Again, SAR was the winner of the St. Andrews Award for Environment, 2010. The SAR Project was selected by the Blacksmith Institute - New York & Green Cross-Switzerland as one of the "12 Cases of Cleanup & Success" in the World's Worst Polluted Places Report 2009.

The Hungarian Solution

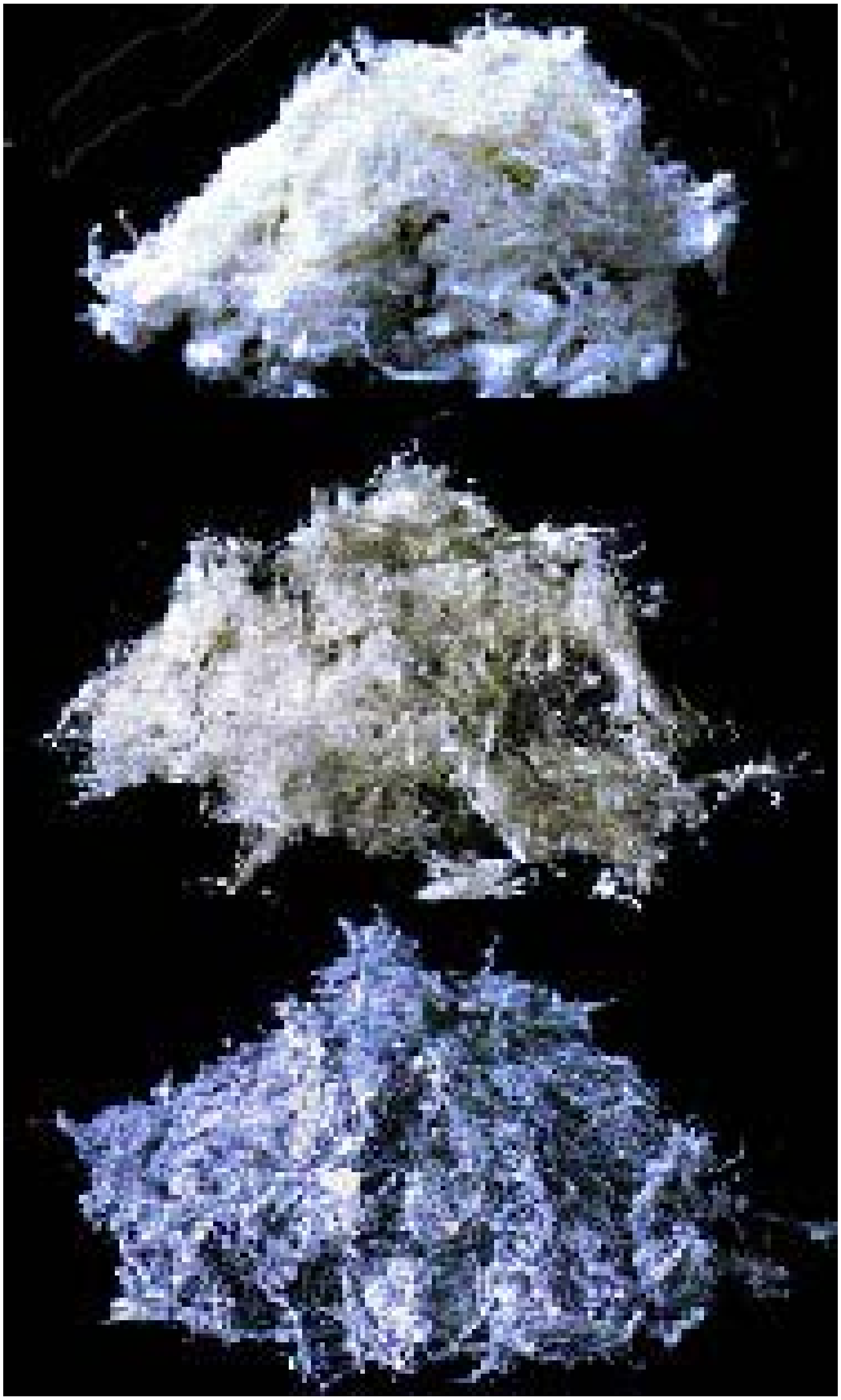
Hungarian engineer László Schremmer has recently discovered that by the use of chaff-based filters it is possible to reduce the arsenic content of water to 3 microgram/liter. This is especially important in areas where the potable water is provided by filtering the water extracted from the underground aquifer.

Arsenic Can Build Up on and Release in Pipes and Storage Tanks

Water systems may also find deposits of arsenic-rich particles in their storage tanks or at locations in their distribution system with low flows. If the flow is increased or a storage tank is drawn down to a low level, these arsenic-rich particles can get stirred up and transported to consumers' taps. This situation occurs primarily when iron media used in treatment are released into the distribution system, or when iron particles are not properly filtered out during iron removal treatment. If these treatment technologies are operated correctly, this should not be a problem for most water systems.

Public water systems with arsenic in their raw water may find that scales on pipes and other components in their distribution systems contain relatively high arsenic concentrations. These arsenic-rich scales can become dislodged and suspended in the water, and may be ultimately delivered to consumers.

Arsenic has been shown to attach to iron in distribution system pipes. Because iron is so effective at binding with arsenic, corrosion deposits can have high concentrations of arsenic solids. In a recent study, arsenic levels found in solids that were collected after pipe sections and hydrants were flushed were as high as 13.65 milligrams of arsenic per gram of solid.



Asbestos minerals which have been used commercially from the top: chrysotile, amosite and crocidolite.

Asbestos - Inorganic Contaminant 7 MFL

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for asbestos is 7 MFL. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for asbestos, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 7 MFL. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase II Rule, the regulation for asbestos, became effective in 1992. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed asbestos as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 7 MFL MCLG and 7 MFL MCL for asbestos are still protective of human health.

How does Asbestos get into my Drinking Water?

The major sources of asbestos in drinking water are decay of asbestos cement water mains; and erosion of natural deposits.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Asbestos is in my Drinking Water?

When routine monitoring indicates that asbestos levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of asbestos so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

How will Asbestos be removed from my Drinking Water?

The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing asbestos to below 7 MFL: coagulation/filtration, direct and diatomite filtration, and corrosion control.

Asbestos Cement Pipe (ACP)

Common water distribution pipe, notice that both pipes have been cut with a power saw. You are not allowed to cut this type of pipe with a power saw, because it will spread the Asbestos.

Wetting agents may be applied with garden sprayers or hoses. Garden sprayers are hand-held, portable, and have a one- to five-gallon capacity. Water hoses are usually attached to a faucet tap, fire hydrant or water tank. Generally, the hose has a nozzle attached which spreads the water stream so that a fine mist is created.

Asbestos-Cement Products

Asbestos-cement products (such as transite) are commonly used for duct insulation, pipes, and siding. Being a Category II nonfriable ACM, asbestos-cement products need to be removed prior to demolition if they have a high probability of becoming crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder during demolition activities. EPA believes that most demolition activities will subject such Category II nonfriable ACM to the regulation.

Asbestos is an Excellent …

Heat Stability

Asbestos will maintain its structural integrity at temperatures well above 800 F. The melting point is at about 2800 F

Thermal Insulation

The fibers have a relatively large surface area, along with numerous pores, and cracks. This allows for a low heat transfer. This makes it useful as an insulator in homes and machinery. The large surface area also absorbs water making it practical as pipe insulator to prevent sweating.

Chemical Resistance

The amphiboles are resistant to aqueous media and chemical attack. They also show high resistance to acids. This makes this class of asbestos useful for battery packing. Chrysotile is significantly less resistant to chemical destruction.

Sound Absorption
Asbestos have a large internal volume, large surface area, and the fibers are flexible. This makes it ideal for the absorption of sound energy. It is often uses to help acoustics.

Serpent

Asbestos

OSHA requires that employees who may be exposed to dangerous levels of asbestos must be made aware of the hazards and how to protect themselves. Employees must be told where in their workplace they can find copies of all applicable asbestos standards. Employers must provide any employee with the opportunity to review the regulations if they so desire. It is an employee's right to have access to the regulations.

What Is Asbestos?
Asbestos is the name given to a number of naturally occurring fibrous silicate minerals that have been mined for their useful properties such as thermal insulation, chemical and thermal stability, and high tensile strength. The three most common types of asbestos are: a) chrysotile, b) amosite and c) crocidolite. Chrysotile, also known as white asbestos and a member of the Serpentine mineral group is the commonest. Asbestos can only be identified under a microscope.
Asbestos differs from other minerals in its crystal development. The crystal formation of asbestos is in the form of long thin fibers. Asbestos is divided into two mineral groups

Serpentine and **Amphibole**. The division between the two types of asbestos is based upon the crystalline structure.

Serpentines have a sheet or layered structure where amphiboles have a chain-like structure. As the only member of the serpentine group, Chrysotile (A, B) is the most common type of asbestos found in buildings. Chrysotile makes up approximately 90%-95% of all asbestos contained in buildings in the United States.

Unlike most minerals, which turn into dust particles when crushed, asbestos breaks up into fine fibers that are too small to be seen by the human eye. Often, individual fibers are mixed with a material that binds them together, producing asbestos-containing material (**ACM**).

Health Effects of Asbestos Exposure

Asbestos is the largest single cause of fatal disease and ill-health caused by work in Great Britain. Although almost all the deaths and ill health related to asbestos today are due to exposures that happened several decades ago, if you work with asbestos, or come into contact with it as a result of repair and maintenance work, you need to be particularly careful. Asbestos can be found in most buildings built between 1950 and 1980, as insulation and lagging. It is still used in some brake pads and clutch linings and can be met in vehicle servicing and repair.

Asbestos-Related Health Problems

Some people exposed to asbestos develop asbestos-related health problems; some do not. Once inhaled, asbestos fibers can easily penetrate body tissues. They may be deposited and retained in the airways and lung tissue. Because asbestos fibers remain in the body, each exposure increases the likelihood of developing an asbestos-related disease. Asbestos-related diseases may not appear until years after exposure. A medical examination that includes a medical history, breathing capacity test, and chest X ray may detect problems early.

Many substances have a "**safe dose**" or an exposure that is unlikely to cause any harm. Above the safe dose, a health effect is expected. This concept is known as a dose response. As the dose increases, so does the expected severity of the health effect. However, in the case of asbestos, scientists have not determined a "**safe dose**" or threshold level for exposure to airborne asbestos. Still, the less exposure a person receives over a lifetime, the less likely it is that that person will develop an asbestos-related health problem.

In addition to breathing it, ingesting asbestos may also be harmful to you, but the consequences of this type of exposure have not been clearly documented. People who touch asbestos may get a rash similar to the rash caused by fiberglass. While the effects of skin exposure to asbestos have not been scientifically documented, it is best to minimize all contact with asbestos.

Asbestos was used in approximately 3,000 products. Two-thirds of this total (2,000) was used in construction products. Appendix A includes a short list of products where asbestos may be found.

Common Asbestos Questions

IS ASBESTOS CURRENTLY USED IN ANY NEW PRODUCTS?
Probably not. As you can imagine there has been tremendous liability for any company that manufactured asbestos-containing materials. Manufacturers have found substitutes for asbestos, thus it is not likely that you would encounter new products that contain asbestos. Manufacturers started to phase out the use of asbestos in products during the mid-1970s to early-1980s.

WHAT IS A CARCINOGEN? IS ASBESTOS A CARCINOGEN?
A carcinogen is a substance capable of causing cancer. Asbestos is a recognized carcinogen. If fact, asbestos is one of a few substances recognized as being a "***true***" human carcinogen.

HOW ABOUT DOSE-RESPONSE? WHAT DOES THIS MEAN AND HOW IMPORTANT IS IT?
Understanding the concept of dose-response is extremely important in the role of environmental contaminants. The term "**dose**" applies to a person's exposure to a substance. Dose is a measure of how much of a substance a person's body absorbs. In this case, the number of fibers that are in the air, and how much time is spent breathing these fibers. The term "**response**" refers to a health outcome from the dose and generally refers to disease.

Many people are under the false impression that any exposure to an environmental contaminant can cause harm and should be avoided. However, it is impossible to live in a world without contaminants. We are exposed to pollutant, allergens, contaminants and toxic materials every day in our lives in the water we drink, the food we eat and the substances we encounter. Generally these contaminants are found in extremely small quantities and do not pose a threat to our health. Even when we are exposed to higher levels there are mechanisms in the body for detoxification of the contaminants.

It is only when we are exposed to high concentrations (**dose**) for long periods of time that health problems (**response**) become likely. The terms "**high**" and "**long**" vary for each particular substance in the environmental. If exposure can't be avoided, an employees' exposure to asbestos should be for a short duration and at very low levels. This will lower their risk of disease. Even a single exposure to high levels of asbestos most likely would not be a problem.

HOW CAN ASBESTOS HURT ME?
Unless the asbestos is disturbed, it does not present a hazard. Generally it is necessary to inhale the asbestos fibers for a prolonged period of time before any damaged occurs.

WHAT CAN I DO TO PROTECT MYSELF AGAINST ASBESTOS?
First and foremost it is important to recognize asbestos or the many products that may contain asbestos. Asbestos was often used for insulation purposes. It generally appears as small fibers that break lengthwise and generally not in half. If you encounter asbestos, or a material that you think contains asbestos, contact your supervisor. At the present time no UT employees are trained to remove or handle asbestos. Since asbestos is primarily a hazard to the lungs, avoid breathing it. If it is impossible to avoid, or if you feel safer, a respirator equipped with HEPA filters is acceptable. Another method of controlling exposure is to use good dust control procedures. Water is frequently used to control dust.

ARE THERE ANY ACUTE SYMPTOMS OF ASBESTOS EXPOSURE?

Generally there are no short-term (**acute**) symptoms of asbestos exposure, until the exposure level is extremely high. Inhalation of extremely high levels of asbestos can result in shortness of breath, chest or abdominal pain and irritation of the skin and mucous membranes.

HOW IS ASBESTOS MEASURED IN THE AIR?

The number of asbestos fibers in the air can be measured by a process known as air sampling or, as it is sometimes called, air monitoring. Basically it is simple. Air is drawn through a small filter where the fibers are trapped. The volume of air sampled is calculated based on the flow rate of the pump and the how long the pump operates. After the sample is collected the filter is sent to a laboratory where the number of fibers are counted.

Note that only fibers are counted. There are other airborne fibers, similar to asbestos that can cause the sample to be artificially high. The laboratory reports the results as the number of fibers per volume of air. Generally the volume of air is expressed as cubic centimeters or cc. Thus, the results are expressed at fibers/cc. There are other lab procedures that can more precisely determine which fibers are asbestos.

Barium - Inorganic Contaminant 2 mg/L MCL

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for barium is 2 mg/L or 2 ppm. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for barium, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 2 mg/L or 2 ppm. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase IIB Rule, the regulation for barium, became effective in 1993. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed barium as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 2 mg/L or 2 ppm MCLG and 2 mg/L or 2 ppm MCL for barium are still protective of human health.

The major sources of barium in drinking water are discharge of drilling wastes; discharge from metal refineries; and erosion of natural deposits.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

When routine monitoring indicates that barium levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of barium so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

How will barium be removed from my Drinking Water?
The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing barium to below 2 mg/L or 2 ppm: ion exchange, reverse osmosis, lime softening, and electrodialysis.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?
EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Barium Explained

Barium is a chemical element with symbol **Ba** and atomic number 56. It is the fifth element in Group 2, a soft silvery metallic alkaline earth metal. Because of its high chemical reactivity barium is never found in nature as a free element. Its hydroxide was known in pre-modern history as baryta; this substance does not occur as a mineral, but can be prepared by heating barium carbonate.

The most common naturally occurring minerals of barium are barite (barium sulfate, $BaSO_4$) and witherite (barium carbonate, $BaCO_3$), both being insoluble in water. Barium's name originates from the alchemical derivative "baryta", which itself comes from Greek βαρύς (*barys*), meaning "heavy." Barium was identified as a new element in 1774, but not reduced to a metal until 1808, shortly after electrolytic isolation techniques became available.

Barium has only a few industrial applications. The metal has been historically used to scavenge air in vacuum tubes. It is a component of YBCO (high-temperature superconductors) and electroceramics, and is added to steel and cast iron to reduce the size of carbon grains within the microstructure of the metal. Barium compounds are added to fireworks to impart a green color. For instance, barium sulfate is used as an insoluble heavy additive to oil well drilling fluid, and in purer form, as X-ray radiocontrast agents for imaging the human gastrointestinal tract. Soluble barium compounds are poisonous due to release of the soluble barium ion, and therefore have been used as rodenticides.

Physical Properties

Barium is a soft, silvery-white metal, with a slight golden shade when ultrapure. The silvery-white color of barium metal rapidly vanishes upon oxidation in air yielding a dark gray oxide layer. Barium has a medium specific weight and good electrical conductivity. Ultrapure barium is very hard to prepare, and therefore many properties of barium have not been accurately measured yet.

At room temperature and pressure, barium has a body-centered cubic structure, with a barium–barium distance of 503 picometers, expanding with heating at a rate of approximately $1.8\times10^{-5}/°C$. It is a very soft metal with a Mohs hardness of 1.25. Its melting temperature of 1000 K (727 °C, 1341 °F) is intermediate between those of the lighter strontium (1050 K) and heavier radium (973 K); however, its boiling point of 2170 K (1897 °C, 3447 °F) exceeds that of strontium (1655 K). The density ($3.62\ g\cdot cm^{-3}$) is again intermediate between those of strontium ($2.36\ g\cdot cm^{-3}$) and radium ($\sim5\ g\cdot cm^{-3}$).

Chemical Reactivity

Barium is chemically similar to magnesium, calcium, and strontium, being even more reactive. It always exhibits the oxidation state of +2. Reactions with chalcogens are highly exothermic (release energy); the reaction with oxygen or air occurs at room temperature, and therefore barium is stored under oil or inert gas atmosphere. Reactions with other nonmetals, such as carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, silicon, and hydrogen, are generally exothermic and proceed upon heating. Reactions with water and alcohols are also very exothermic and release hydrogen gas:

$$Ba + 2\ ROH \rightarrow Ba(OR)_2 + H_2\uparrow \text{ (R is an alkyl or a hydrogen atom)}$$

Additionally, barium reacts with ammonia to form complexes such as $Ba(NH_3)_6$.

The metal is readily attacked by most acids. Sulfuric acid is a notable exception, as passivation stops the reaction by forming the insoluble barium sulfate. Barium combines with several metals, including aluminum, zinc, lead, and tin, forming intermetallic phases and alloys.

Compounds

Selected alkaline earth and zinc salts densities, g·cm^{-3}

	O^{2-}	S^{2-}	F^{-}	Cl^{-}	SO2− 4	CO2− 3	O2− 2	H^{-}
Ca^{2+}[9]	3.34	2.59	3.18	2.15	2.96	2.83	2.9	1.7
Sr^{2+}[10]	5.1	3.7	4.24	3.05	3.96	3.5	4.78	3.26
Ba^{2+}[11]	*5.72*	*4.3*	*2.1*	*1.9*	*4.49*	*4.29*	*4.96*	*4.16*
Zn^{2+}[12]	5.6	4.09	4.9	2.09	3.8	4.4	1.57	—

Barium salts are typically white when solid and colorless when dissolved, as barium ions provide no specific coloring. They are also denser than their strontium or calcium analogs, except for the halides.

Barium hydroxide ("baryta") was known to alchemists who produced it by heating barium carbonate. Unlike calcium hydroxide, it absorbs very little CO_2 in aqueous solutions and is therefore insensitive to atmospheric fluctuations. This property is used in calibrating pH equipment.

Volatile barium compounds burn with a green to pale green flame, which is an efficient test to detect a barium compound. The color results from spectral lines at 455.4, 493.4, 553.6, and 611.1 nm.

Organobarium compounds are a growing class of compounds: for example, dialkylbariums are known, as are alkylhalobariums.

Isotopes of Barium

Barium occurs naturally on Earth as a mixture of seven primordial nuclides, barium-130, 132, and 134 through 138. The first two are thought to be radioactive: barium-130 should decay to xenon-130 via double beta plus decay, and barium-132 should similarly decay to xenon-132. The corresponding half-lives should exceed the age of the Universe by at least thousand times. Their abundances are ~0.1% relative to that of natural barium. Their radioactivity is so weak that they pose no danger to life. Out of the stable isotopes, barium-138 makes up 71.7% of all barium, and the lighter the isotope, the less it is abundant. In total, barium has about 50 known isotopes, ranging in mass between 114 and 153. The most stable metastable isotope is barium-133, which has a half-life of approximately 10.51 years, and five more isotopes have their half-lives longer than a day. Barium also has 10 meta states, out of which barium-133m1 is the most stable, having a half-live of about 39 hours.

Biological Dangers and Precautions

Because of the high reactivity of the metal toxicological data are available only for compounds. Water-soluble barium compounds are poisonous. At low doses, barium ions act as a muscle stimulant, whereas higher doses affect the nervous system, causing cardiac irregularities, tremors, weakness, anxiety, dyspnea and paralysis. This may be due to the ability of Ba^{2+} to block potassium ion channels, which are critical to the proper function of the nervous system. Other target organs for water-soluble barium compounds (i.e., barium ions) are eyes, immune system, heart, respiratory system, and skin. They affect the body strongly, causing, for example, blindness and sensitization.

Barium is not carcinogenic, and it does not bioaccumulate. However, inhaled dust containing insoluble barium compounds can accumulate in the lungs, causing a benign condition called baritosis. For comparison to the soluble poisons, the insoluble sulfate is nontoxic and is thus not classified as a dangerous good.

To avoid a potentially vigorous chemical reaction, barium metal is kept under argon or mineral oils. Contact with air is dangerous, as it may cause ignition. Moisture, friction, heat, sparks, flames, shocks, static electricity, reactions with oxidizers and acids should be avoided. Everything that may make contact with barium should be grounded. Those who work with the metal should wear pre-cleaned non-sparking shoes, flame-resistant rubber clothes, rubber gloves, apron, goggles, and a gas mask; they are not allowed to smoke in the working area and must wash themselves after handling barium.

Beryllium - Inorganic Contaminant 0.004 mg/L MCL

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for beryllium is 0.004 mg/L or 4 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for beryllium, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.004 mg/L or 4 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase V Rule, the regulation for beryllium, became effective in 1994. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed beryllium as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.004 mg/L or 4 ppb MCLG and 0.004 mg/L or 4 ppb MCL for beryllium are still protective of human health.

How does Beryllium get into my Drinking Water?

Beryllium naturally enters surface water and ground water through the weathering of rocks and soils or from industrial wastewater discharges. The major source of environmental releases from human activities are coal and fuel oil combustion.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Beryllium is in my Drinking Water?

When routine monitoring indicates that beryllium levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of beryllium so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

Beryllium Explained

Beryllium is the chemical element with the symbol **Be** and atomic number 4. Because any beryllium synthesized in stars is short-lived, it is a relatively rare element in both the universe and in the crust of the Earth. It is a divalent element which occurs naturally only in combination with other elements in minerals. Notable gemstones which contain beryllium include beryl (aquamarine, emerald) and chrysoberyl. As a free element it is a steel-gray, strong, lightweight and brittle alkaline earth metal.

Beryllium increases hardness and resistance to corrosion when alloyed to aluminum, cobalt, copper (notably beryllium copper), iron and nickel. In structural applications, high flexural rigidity, thermal stability, thermal conductivity and low density (1.85 times that of water) make beryllium a quality aerospace material for high-speed aircraft, missiles, space vehicles and communication satellites. Because of its low density and atomic mass, beryllium is relatively transparent to X-rays and other forms of ionizing radiation; therefore, it is the most common window material for X-ray equipment and in particle physics experiments. The high thermal conductivities of beryllium and beryllium oxide have led to their use in heat transport and heat sinking applications.

The commercial use of beryllium metal presents technical challenges due to the toxicity (especially by inhalation) of beryllium-containing dusts. Beryllium is corrosive to tissue, and can cause a chronic life-threatening allergic disease called berylliosis in some people. The element is not known to be necessary or useful for either plant or animal life

Characteristics

Physical Properties

Beryllium is a steel gray and hard metal that is brittle at room temperature and has a close-packed hexagonal crystal structure. It has exceptional flexural rigidity (Young's modulus 287 GPa) and a reasonably high melting point. The modulus of elasticity of beryllium is approximately 50% greater than that of steel. The combination of this modulus and a relatively low density results in an unusually fast sound conduction speed in beryllium – about 12.9 km/s at ambient conditions. Other significant properties are high specific heat (1925 $J{\cdot}kg^{-1}{\cdot}K^{-1}$) and thermal conductivity (216 $W{\cdot}m^{-1}{\cdot}K^{-1}$), which make beryllium the metal with the best heat dissipation characteristics per unit weight. In combination with the relatively low coefficient of linear thermal expansion (11.4×10^{-6} K^{-1}), these characteristics result in a unique stability under conditions of thermal loading.

Nuclear Properties

Natural beryllium, save for slight contamination by cosmogenic radioisotopes, is essentially beryllium-9, which has a nuclear spin of 3/2-. Beryllium has a large scattering cross section for high-energy neutrons, about 6 barns for energies above ~0.01 MeV. Therefore, it works as a neutron reflector and neutron moderator, effectively slowing the neutrons to the thermal energy range of below 0.03 eV, where the total cross section is at least an order of magnitude lower – exact value strongly depends on the purity and size of the crystallites in the material.

The single primordial beryllium isotope ^{9}Be also undergoes a (n,2n) neutron reaction with neutron energies over about 1.9 MeV, to produce ^{8}Be, which almost immediately breaks into two alpha particles. Thus, for high-energy neutrons beryllium is a neutron multiplier, releasing more neutrons than it absorbs.

This nuclear reaction is:

9
4Be + n → 2(4
2He) + 2n
Neutrons are liberated when beryllium nuclei are struck by energetic alpha particles producing the nuclear reaction

9
4Be + 4
2He → 12
6C + n , where 4
2He is an alpha particle and 12
6C is a carbon-12 nucleus.

Beryllium also releases neutrons under bombardment by gamma rays. Thus, natural beryllium bombarded either by alphas or gammas from a suitable radioisotope is a key component of most radioisotope-powered nuclear reaction neutron sources for the laboratory production of free neutrons.

As a metal, beryllium is transparent to most wavelengths of X-rays and gamma rays, making it useful for the output windows of X-ray tubes and other such apparatus.

Isotopes and Nucleosynthesis

Both stable and unstable isotopes of beryllium are created in stars, but these do not last long. It is believed that most of the stable beryllium in the universe was originally created in the interstellar medium when cosmic rays induced fission in heavier elements found in interstellar gas and dust. Primordial beryllium contains only one stable isotope, ^{9}Be, and therefore beryllium is a monoisotopic element.

Plot showing variations in solar activity, including variation in ^{10}Be concentration. Note that the beryllium scale is inverted, so increases on this scale indicate lower ^{10}Be levels

Radioactive cosmogenic ^{10}Be is produced in the atmosphere of the Earth by the cosmic ray spallation of oxygen. ^{10}Be accumulates at the soil surface, where its relatively long half-life (1.36 million years) permits a long residence time before decaying to boron-10. Thus, ^{10}Be and its daughter products are used to examine natural soil erosion, soil formation and the development of lateritic soils, and as a proxy for measurement of the variations in solar activity and the age of ice cores. The production of ^{10}Be is inversely proportional to solar activity, because increased solar wind during periods of high solar activity decreases the flux of galactic cosmic rays that reach the Earth. Nuclear explosions also form ^{10}Be by the reaction of fast neutrons with ^{13}C in the carbon dioxide in air. This is one of the indicators of past activity at nuclear weapon test sites. The isotope ^{7}Be (half-life 53 days) is also cosmogenic, and shows an atmospheric abundance linked to sunspots, much like ^{10}Be.

^{8}Be has a very short half-life of about 7×10^{-17} s that contributes to its significant cosmological role, as elements heavier than beryllium could not have been produced by nuclear fusion in the Big Bang. This is due to the lack of sufficient time during the Big Bang's nucleosynthesis phase to produce carbon by the fusion of ^{4}He nuclei and the very low concentrations of available beryllium-8.

The British astronomer Sir Fred Hoyle first showed that the energy levels of ^{8}Be and ^{12}C allow carbon production by the so-called triple-alpha process in helium-fueled stars where more nucleosynthesis time is available. This process allows carbon to be produced in stars, but not in the Big Bang. Star-created carbon (the basis of carbon-based life) is thus a component in the elements in the gas and dust ejected by AGB stars and supernovae (see also Big Bang nucleosynthesis), as well as the creation of all other elements with atomic numbers larger than that of carbon.

The innermost electrons of beryllium may contribute to chemical bonding. Therefore, when ^{7}Be decays by electron capture, it does so by taking electrons from atomic orbitals that may participate in bonding. This makes its decay rate dependent to a measurable degree upon its electron configuration – a rare occurrence in nuclear decay.

The shortest-lived known isotope of beryllium is ^{13}Be which decays through neutron emission. It has a half-life of 2.7×10^{-21} s. ^{6}Be is also very short-lived with a half-life of 5.0×10^{-21} s. The exotic isotopes ^{11}Be and ^{14}Be are known to exhibit a nuclear halo. This phenomenon can be understood as the nuclei of ^{11}Be and ^{14}Be have, respectively, 1 and 4 neutrons orbiting substantially outside the classical Fermi 'water drop' model of the nucleus.

Occurrence

Beryllium has a concentration of 2 to 6 parts per million (ppm) in the Earth's crust. The Sun has a concentration of 0.1 parts per billion (ppb) of beryllium, similar to that of rhenium. It is most concentrated in the soils, 6 ppm, and is found in 0.2 parts per trillion (ppt) of sea water. Trace amounts of ^{9}Be are found in the Earth's atmosphere. In sea water, beryllium is exceedingly rare, more so than even scandium, comprising only 0.0006 ppb by weight. In stream water, however, beryllium is more abundant with 0.1 ppb by weight.

Beryllium is found in over 100 minerals, but most are uncommon to rare. The more common beryllium containing minerals include: bertrandite ($Be_4Si_2O_7(OH)_2$), beryl ($Al_2Be_3Si_6O_{18}$), chrysoberyl (Al_2BeO_4) and phenakite (Be_2SiO_4). Precious forms of beryl are aquamarine, bixbite and emerald. The green color in gem-quality forms of beryl comes from varying amounts of chromium (about 2% for emerald).

The two main ores of beryllium, beryl and bertrandite, are found in Argentina, Brazil, India, Madagascar, Russia and the United States. Total world reserves of beryllium ore are greater than 400,000 tons.

Production

The extraction of beryllium from its compounds is a difficult process due to its high affinity for oxygen at elevated temperatures, and its ability to reduce water when its oxide film is removed. The United States, China and Kazakhstan are the only three countries involved in the industrial scale extraction of beryllium.

Beryllium is most-commonly extracted from beryl, which is either sintered using an extraction agent or melted into a soluble mixture. The sintering process involves mixing beryl with sodium fluorosilicate and soda at 770°C to form sodium fluoroberyllate, aluminum oxide and silicon dioxide. Beryllium hydroxide is precipitated from a solution of sodium fluoroberyllate and sodium hydroxide in water. Extraction of beryllium using the melt method involves grinding beryl into a powder and heating it to 1650°C. The melt is quickly cooled with water and then reheated 250 to 300°C in concentrated sulfuric acid, mostly yielding beryllium sulfate and aluminum sulfate.

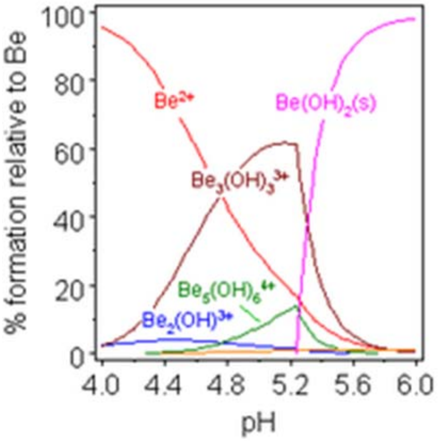
Aqueous ammonia is then used to remove the aluminum and sulfur, leaving beryllium hydroxide.

Beryllium hydroxide created using either the sinter or melt method is then converted into beryllium fluoride or beryllium chloride. To form the fluoride, aqueous ammonium hydrogen fluoride is added to beryllium hydroxide to yield a precipitate of ammonium tetrafluoroberyllate, which is heated to 1000°C to form beryllium fluoride.

Heating the fluoride to 900°C with magnesium forms finely divided beryllium and additional heating to 1300°C creates the compact metal. Heating beryllium hydroxide forms the oxide which becomes beryllium chloride when mixed with carbon and chloride. Electrolysis of molten beryllium chloride is then used to obtain the metal.

Chemical Properties
Beryllium's chemical behavior is largely a result of its small atomic and ionic radii. It thus has very high ionization potentials and strong polarization while bonded to other atoms, which is why all of its compounds are covalent. It is more chemically similar to aluminum than its close neighbors in the periodic table due to having a similar charge-to-radius ratio. An oxide layer forms around beryllium that prevents further reactions with air unless heated above 1000°C.

Once ignited, beryllium burns brilliantly forming a mixture of beryllium oxide and beryllium nitride. Beryllium dissolves readily in non-oxidizing acids, such as HCl and diluted H_2SO_4, but not in nitric acid or water as this forms the oxide. This behavior is similar to that of aluminum metal. Beryllium also dissolves in alkali solutions.



Beryllium hydrolysis as a function of pH
Water molecules attached to Be are omitted

The beryllium atom has the electronic configuration [He] $2s^2$. The two valence electrons give beryllium a +2 oxidation state and the thus the ability to form two covalent bonds; the only evidence of lower valence of beryllium is in the solubility of the metal in $BeCl_2$. Due to the octet rule, atoms tend to seek a valence of 8 in order to resemble a noble gas. Beryllium tries to achieve a coordination number of 4 because its two covalent bonds fill half of this octet. A coordination of 4 allows beryllium compounds, such as the fluoride or chloride, to form polymers.

This characteristic is employed in analytical techniques using EDTA as a ligand. EDTA preferentially forms octahedral complexes – thus absorbing other cations such as Al^{3+} which might interfere – for example, in the solvent extraction of a complex formed between Be^{2+} and acetylacetone. Beryllium(II) readily forms complexes with strong donating ligands such as phosphine oxides and arsine oxides. There have been extensive studies of these complexes which show the stability of the O-Be bond.

Solutions of beryllium salts, e.g. beryllium sulfate and beryllium nitrate, are acidic because of hydrolysis of the $[Be(H_2O)_4]^{2+}$ ion.

$$[Be(H_2O)_4]^{2+} + H_2O \rightleftharpoons [Be(H_2O)_3(OH)]^{+} + H_3O^{+}$$

Other products of hydrolysis include the trimeric ion $[Be_3(OH)_3(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$. Beryllium hydroxide, $Be(OH)_2$, is insoluble even in acidic solutions with pH less than 6, that is at biological pH. It is amphoteric and dissolves in strongly alkaline solutions.

Beryllium forms binary compounds with many non-metals. Anhydrous halides are known for F, Cl, Br and I. BeF_2 has a silica-like structure with corner-shared BeF_4 tetrahedra. $BeCl_2$ and $BeBr_2$ have chain structures with edge-shared tetrahedra. All beryllium halides have a linear monomeric molecular structure in the gas phase.

Beryllium difluoride, BeF_2, is different than the other difluorides. In general, beryllium has a tendency to bond covalently, much more so than the other alkaline earths and its fluoride is partially covalent (although still more ionic than its other halides). BeF_2 has many similarities to SiO_2 (quartz) a mostly covalently bonded network solid. BeF_2 has tetrahedrally coordinated metal and forms glasses (is difficult to crystallize). When crystalline, beryllium fluoride has the same room temperature crystal structure as quartz and shares many higher temperatures structures also. Beryllium difluoride is very soluble in water, unlike the other alkaline earths. (Although they are strongly ionic, they do not dissolve because of the especially strong lattice energy of the fluorite structure.) However, BeF_2 has much lower electrical conductivity when in solution or when molten than would be expected if it were fully ionic.

Beryllium Oxide

Beryllium oxide, BeO, is a white refractory solid, which has the wurtzite crystal structure and a thermal conductivity as high as in some metals. BeO is amphoteric. Salts of beryllium can be produced by treating $Be(OH)_2$ with acid. Beryllium sulfide, selenide and telluride are known, all having the zincblende structure.

Beryllium Nitride

Beryllium nitride, Be_3N_2 is a high-melting-point compound which is readily hydrolyzed. Beryllium azide, BeN_6 is known and beryllium phosphide, Be_3P_2 has a similar structure to Be_3N_2. Basic beryllium nitrate and basic beryllium acetate have similar tetrahedral structures with four beryllium atoms coordinated to a central oxide ion. A number of beryllium borides are known, such as Be_5B, Be_4B, Be_2B, BeB_2, BeB_6 and BeB_{12}. Beryllium carbide, Be_2C, is a refractory brick-red compound that reacts with water to give methane. No beryllium silicide has been identified.

Approximately 35 micrograms of beryllium is found in the human body, but this amount is not considered harmful. Beryllium is chemically similar to magnesium and therefore can displace it from enzymes, which causes them to malfunction.

Chronic berylliosis is a pulmonary and systemic granulomatous disease caused by inhalation of dust or fumes contaminated with beryllium; either large amounts over a short time or small amounts over a long time can lead to this ailment. Symptoms of the disease can take up to 5 years to develop; about a third of patients with it die and the survivors are left disabled. The International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) lists beryllium and beryllium compounds as Category 1 carcinogens.

Acute beryllium disease in the form of chemical pneumonitis was first reported in Europe in 1933 and in the United States in 1943. A survey found that about 5% of workers in plants manufacturing fluorescent lamps in 1949 in the United States had beryllium-related lung diseases. Chronic berylliosis resembles sarcoidosis in many respects, and the differential diagnosis is often difficult. It killed some early workers in nuclear weapons design, such as Herbert L. Anderson.

Early researchers tasted beryllium and its various compounds for sweetness in order to verify its presence. Modern diagnostic equipment no longer necessitates this highly risky procedure and no attempt should be made to ingest this highly toxic substance. Beryllium and its compounds should be handled with great care and special precautions must be taken when carrying out any activity which could result in the release of beryllium dust (lung cancer is a possible result of prolonged exposure to beryllium laden dust). Although the use of beryllium compounds in fluorescent lighting tubes was discontinued in 1949, potential for exposure to beryllium exists in the nuclear and aerospace industries and in the refining of beryllium metal and melting of beryllium-containing alloys, the manufacturing of electronic devices, and the handling of other beryllium-containing material.

A successful test for beryllium in air and on surfaces has been recently developed and published as an international voluntary consensus standard ASTM D7202. The procedure uses dilute ammonium bifluoride for dissolution and fluorescence detection with beryllium bound to sulfonated hydroxybenzoquinoline, allowing up to 100 times more sensitive detection than the recommended limit for beryllium concentration in the workplace. Fluorescence increases with increasing beryllium concentration. The new procedure has been successfully tested on a variety of surfaces and is effective for the dissolution and ultratrace detection of refractory beryllium oxide and siliceous beryllium (ASTM D7458).

Cadmium - Inorganic Contaminant 0.005 mg/L MCL

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for cadmium is 0.005 mg/L or 5 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for cadmium, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.005 mg/L or 5 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase II Rule, the regulation for cadmium, became effective in 1992. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed cadmium as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.005 mg/L or 5 ppb MCLG and 0.005 mg/L or 5 ppb MCL for cadmium are still protective of human health.

How does cadmium get into my drinking water?
The major sources of cadmium in drinking water are corrosion of galvanized pipes; erosion of natural deposits; discharge from metal refineries; runoff from waste batteries and paints.
A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if cadmium is in my drinking water?
When routine monitoring indicates that cadmium levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of cadmium so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.
How will cadmium be removed from my drinking water?

The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing cadmium to below 0.005 mg/L or 5 ppb: coagulation/filtration, ion exchange, lime softening, and reverse osmosis.

Cadmium Explained

Cadmium is a chemical element with the symbol **Cd** and atomic number 48. This soft, bluish-white metal is chemically similar to the two other stable metals in group 12, zinc and mercury. Like zinc, it prefers oxidation state +2 in most of its compounds and like mercury it shows a low melting point compared to transition metals. Cadmium and its congeners are not always considered transition metals, in that they do not have partly filled d or f electron shells in the elemental or common oxidation states. The average concentration of cadmium in the Earth's crust is between 0.1 and 0.5 parts per million (ppm). It was discovered in 1817 simultaneously by Stromeyer and Hermann, both in Germany, as an impurity in zinc carbonate.

Cadmium occurs as a minor component in most zinc ores and therefore is a byproduct of zinc production. It was used for a long time as a pigment and for corrosion resistant plating on steel while cadmium compounds were used to stabilize plastic. With the exception of its use in nickel–cadmium batteries and cadmium telluride solar panels, the use of cadmium is generally decreasing. These declines have been due to competing technologies, cadmium’s toxicity in certain forms and concentration and resulting regulations. Although cadmium has no known biological function in higher organisms, a cadmium-dependent carbonic anhydrase has been found in marine diatoms.

Characteristics

Physical Properties

Cadmium is a soft, malleable, ductile, bluish-white divalent metal. It is similar in many respects to zinc but forms complex compounds. Unlike other metals, cadmium is resistant to corrosion and as a result it is used as a protective layer when deposited on other metals. As a bulk metal, cadmium is insoluble in water and is not flammable; however, in its powdered form it may burn and release toxic fumes.

Chemical Properties

Although cadmium usually has an oxidation state of +2, it also exists in the +1 state. Cadmium and its congeners are not always considered transition metals, in that they do not have partly filled d or f electron shells in the elemental or common oxidation states. Cadmium burns in air to form brown amorphous cadmium oxide (CdO); the crystalline form of this compound is a dark red which changes color when heated, similar to zinc oxide. Hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid and nitric acid dissolve cadmium by forming cadmium chloride ($CdCl_2$), cadmium sulfate ($CdSO_4$), or cadmium nitrate ($Cd(NO_3)_2$). The oxidation state +1 can be reached by dissolving cadmium in a mixture of cadmium chloride and aluminum chloride, forming the Cd_2^{2+} cation, which is similar to the Hg_2^{2+} cation in mercury(I) chloride.

$$Cd + CdCl_2 + 2\ AlCl_3 \rightarrow Cd_2(AlCl_4)_2$$

Isotopes

Naturally occurring cadmium is composed of 8 isotopes. Two of them are naturally radioactive, and three are expected to decay but have not been experimentally confirmed to do so. The two natural radioactive isotopes are ^{113}Cd (beta decay, half-life is 7.7 × 10^{15} years) and ^{116}Cd (two-neutrino double beta decay, half-life is 2.9 × 10^{19} years). The other three are ^{106}Cd, ^{108}Cd (both double electron capture), and ^{114}Cd (double beta decay); only lower limits on their half-life times have been set. At least three isotopes – ^{110}Cd, ^{111}Cd, and ^{112}Cd – are stable.

Among the isotopes that do not occur naturally, the most long-lived are ^{109}Cd with a half-life of 462.6 days, and ^{115}Cd with a half-life of 53.46 hours. All of the remaining radioactive isotopes have half-lives that are less than 2.5 hours, and the majority of these have half-lives that are less than 5 minutes. Cadmium has 8 known meta states, with the most stable being ^{113m}Cd ($t_{½}$ = 14.1 years), ^{115m}Cd ($t_{½}$ = 44.6 days), and ^{117m}Cd ($t_{½}$ = 3.36 hours).

The known isotopes of cadmium range in atomic mass from 94.950 u (^{95}Cd) to 131.946 u (^{132}Cd). For isotopes lighter than 112 u, the primary decay mode is electron capture and the dominant decay product is element 47 (silver). Heavier isotopes decay mostly through beta emission producing element 49 (indium).

One isotope of cadmium, ^{113}Cd, absorbs neutrons with very high probability if they have an energy below the *cadmium cut-off* and transmits them otherwise. The cadmium cut-off is about 0.5 eV. Neutrons with energy below the cut-off are deemed slow neutrons, distinguishing them from intermediate and fast neutrons.

Cadmium is created via the long s-process in low-medium mass stars with masses of 0.6 to 10 solar masses, which lasts thousands of years. It requires a silver atom to capture a neutron and then undergo beta decay.

Cadmium makes up about 0.1 ppm of the Earth's crust. Compared with the more abundant 65 ppm zinc, cadmium is rare. No significant deposits of cadmium-containing ores are known. Greenockite (CdS), the only cadmium mineral of importance, is nearly always associated with sphalerite (ZnS). This association is caused by the geochemical similarity between zinc and cadmium which makes geological separation unlikely. As a consequence, cadmium is produced mainly as a byproduct from mining, smelting, and refining sulfidic ores of zinc, and, to a lesser degree, lead and copper.

Small amounts of cadmium, about 10% of consumption, are produced from secondary sources, mainly from dust generated by recycling iron and steel scrap. Production in the United States began in 1907, but it was not until after World War I that cadmium came into wide use. One place where metallic cadmium can be found is the Vilyuy River basin in Siberia.

Rocks mined to produce phosphate fertilizers contain varying amounts of cadmium, leading to a cadmium concentration of up to 300 mg/kg in the produced phosphate fertilizers and thus in the high cadmium content in agricultural soils. Coal can contain significant amounts of cadmium, which ends up mostly in the flue dust.

Chromium- Inorganic Contaminant 0.1 mg/L MCL

The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based on possible health risks from exposure over a lifetime, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG).

EPA sets enforceable standards for drinking water contaminants based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. In most cases, the enforceable standard is known as a maximum contaminant level (MCL), the maximum permissible level of a contaminant in water which is delivered to any user of a public water system. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible after considering costs, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies.

The national primary drinking water regulation that established the MCL for total chromium was promulgated in 1991. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed total chromium as part of the second six-year review that was announced in March 2010. The Agency noted in March 2010 that it had initiated a reassessment of the health risks associated with chromium exposure and that the Agency did not believe it was appropriate to revise the national primary drinking water regulation while that effort was in process. In 2008, EPA began a rigorous and comprehensive review of chromium-6 health effects based on new science. When this human health assessment is finalized EPA will carefully review the conclusions and consider all relevant information to determine if the current chromium standard should be revised

Ensuring safe drinking water for all Americans is a top priority for EPA. EPA has an enforceable drinking water standard of 0.1 milligrams per liter (mg/L) for total chromium, which includes chromium-6 and chromium-3. This standard was established in 1991 and was based on the best available science at the time which indicated that some people who use water containing chromium in excess of the drinking water standard over many years could experience allergic dermatitis (skin reactions).

EPA regularly re-evaluates drinking water standards and, based on new science on chromium-6, had begun a rigorous and comprehensive review of its health effects in 2008. In September 2010, EPA released a draft of that scientific assessment for public comment. When this human health assessment is finalized, EPA will carefully review the conclusions and consider all relevant information to determine if a new drinking water standard for chromium-6 or a revision to the current total chromium standard is warranted.

Chromium is an odorless and tasteless metallic element. Chromium is found naturally in rocks, plants, soil and volcanic dust, humans and animals.

The most common forms of chromium that occur in natural waters in the environment are trivalent chromium (chromium-3), and hexavalent chromium (chromium-6).

Chromium-3 is an essential human dietary element and occurs naturally in many vegetables, fruits, meats, grains and yeast. Chromium-6 occurs naturally in the environment from the erosion of natural chromium deposits but it can also be produced by industrial processes. There are demonstrated instances of chromium being released to the environment by leakage, poor storage, or inadequate industrial waste disposal practices.

What are some uses for Chromium?
Metallic chromium is used mainly for making steel and other alloys. Chromium compounds in either the chromium-3 or chromium-6 forms are used for chrome plating, dyes and pigments, leather and wood preservation.

What are Chromium's Health Effects?
Chromium-3 is a nutritionally essential element in humans and is often added to vitamins as a dietary supplement. Chromium-3 has relatively low toxicity and would be a concern in drinking water only at very high levels of contamination; Chromium-6 is more toxic and poses potential health risks. People who use water containing total chromium in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) over many years could experience allergic dermatitis.

EPA proposed to classify chromium-6 as likely to be carcinogenic to humans when ingested. The Agency continues to work towards completing the human health assessment and making a final determination about the carcinogenicity of chromium-6. When the assessment is completed, EPA will determine whether the drinking water standard for total chromium needs to be revised.

What are EPA's drinking water regulations for Chromium?
The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based on possible health risks from exposure over a lifetime are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG).

The MCLG for total chromium is 0.1 mg/L or 100 parts per billion (ppb). EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science at the time the rule was promulgated. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for total chromium, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.1 mg/L or 100 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for total chromium than EPA.

Why are Chromium-6 and Chromium-3 covered in the same Standard?
Chromium-6 and chromium-3 are covered under the total chromium drinking water standard because these forms of chromium can convert back and forth in water and in the human body, depending on environmental conditions.
Measuring just one form may not capture all of the chromium that is present. In order to ensure that the greatest potential risk is addressed, EPA's regulation assumes that a measurement of total chromium is 100 percent chromium-6, the more toxic form.

How often does the EPA update the Total Chromium Drinking Water Standard?

The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed total chromium as part of the second six-year review that was announced in March 2010 . The Agency noted in March 2010 that it had initiated a reassessment of the health risks associated with chromium exposure and that the Agency did not believe it was appropriate to revise the national primary drinking water regulation while that effort was in process.

In 2008, EPA began a rigorous and comprehensive review of chromium-6 health effects based on new science. When this human health assessment is finalized EPA will carefully review the conclusions and consider all relevant information to determine if the current chromium standard should be revised.

Chromium Explained

Chromium Description

Chromium is a chemical element which has the symbol **Cr** and atomic number 24. It is the first element in Group 6. It is a steely-gray, lustrous, hard metal that takes a high polish and has a high melting point. It is also odorless, tasteless, and malleable. The name of the element is derived from the Greek word "chrōma" (χρώμα), meaning color, because many of its compounds are intensely colored.

Chromium oxide was used by the Chinese in the Qin dynasty over 2,000 years ago to coat metal weapons found with the Terracotta Army. Chromium was discovered as an element after it came to the attention of the western world in the red crystalline mineral crocoite (lead(II) chromate), discovered in 1761 and initially used as a pigment. Louis Nicolas Vauquelin first isolated chromium metal from this mineral in 1797. Since Vauquelin's first production of metallic chromium, small amounts of native (free) chromium metal have been discovered in rare minerals, but these are not used commercially. Instead, nearly all chromium is commercially extracted from the single commercially viable ore chromite, which is iron chromium oxide ($FeCr_2O_4$). Chromite is also now the chief source of chromium for chromium pigments.

Chromium metal and ferrochromium alloy are commercially produced from chromite by silicothermic or aluminothermic reactions, or by roasting and leaching processes.

Chromium metal has proven of high value due to its high corrosion resistance and hardness. A major development was the discovery that steel could be made highly resistant to corrosion and discoloration by adding metallic chromium to form stainless steel. This application, along with chrome plating (electroplating with chromium) currently comprise 85% of the commercial use for the element, with applications for chromium compounds forming the remainder.

Trivalent chromium (Cr(III)) ion is possibly required in trace amounts for sugar and lipid metabolism, although the issue remains in debate. In larger amounts and in different forms, chromium can be toxic and carcinogenic. The most prominent example of toxic chromium is hexavalent chromium (Cr(VI)). Abandoned chromium production sites often require environmental cleanup.

Characteristics

Physical

Chromium is remarkable for its magnetic properties: it is the only elemental solid which shows antiferromagnetic ordering at room temperature (and below). Above 38 °C, it transforms into a paramagnetic state.

Passivation

Chromium metal left standing in air is passivated by oxygen, forming a thin protective oxide surface layer. This layer is a spinel structure only a few atoms thick. It is very dense, and prevents the diffusion of oxygen into the underlying material. This barrier is in contrast to iron or plain carbon steels, where the oxygen migrates into the underlying material and causes rusting.

The passivation can be enhanced by short contact with oxidizing acids like nitric acid. Passivated chromium is stable against acids. The opposite effect can be achieved by treatment with a strong reducing agent that destroys the protective oxide layer on the metal. Chromium metal treated in this way readily dissolves in weak acids.

Chromium, unlike metals such as iron and nickel, does not suffer from hydrogen embrittlement. However, it does suffer from nitrogen embrittlement, reacting with nitrogen from air and forming brittle nitrides at the high temperatures necessary to work the metal parts.

Occurrence

Chromium is the 24th most abundant element in Earth's crust with an average concentration of 100 ppm. Chromium compounds are found in the environment, due to erosion of chromium-containing rocks and can be distributed by volcanic eruptions. The concentrations range in soil is between 1 and 3000 mg/kg, in sea water 5 to 800 µg/liter, and in rivers and lakes 26 µg/liter to 5.2 mg/liter. Chromium is mined as chromite ($FeCr_2O_4$) ore. About two-fifths of the chromite ores and concentrates in the world are produced in South Africa, while Kazakhstan, India, Russia, and Turkey are also substantial producers. Untapped chromite deposits are plentiful, but geographically concentrated in Kazakhstan and southern Africa.

Although rare, deposits of native chromium exist. The Udachnaya Pipe in Russia produces samples of the native metal. This mine is a kimberlite pipe, rich in diamonds, and the reducing environment helped produce both elemental chromium and diamond.

The relation between Cr(III) and Cr(VI) strongly depends on pH and oxidative properties of the location, but in most cases, the Cr(III) is the dominating species, although in some areas the ground water can contain up to 39 µg/liter of total chromium of which 30 µg/liter is present as Cr(VI).

Isotopes

Naturally occurring chromium is composed of three stable isotopes; ^{52}Cr, ^{53}Cr and ^{54}Cr with ^{52}Cr being the most abundant (83.789% natural abundance). 19 radioisotopes have been characterized with the most stable being ^{50}Cr with a half-life of (more than) 1.8×10^{17} years, and ^{51}Cr with a half-life of 27.7 days. All of the remaining radioactive isotopes have half-lives that are less than 24 hours and the majority of these have half-lives that are less than 1 minute. This element also has 2 meta states.

^{53}Cr is the radiogenic decay product of ^{53}Mn. Chromium isotopic contents are typically combined with manganese isotopic contents and have found application in isotope geology.

Mn-Cr isotope ratios reinforce the evidence from ^{26}Al and ^{107}Pd for the early history of the solar system. Variations in $^{53}Cr/^{52}Cr$ and Mn/Cr ratios from several meteorites indicate an initial $^{53}Mn/^{55}Mn$ ratio that suggests Mn-Cr isotopic composition must result from in-situ decay of ^{53}Mn in differentiated planetary bodies. Hence ^{53}Cr provides additional evidence for nucleosynthetic processes immediately before coalescence of the solar system.

The isotopes of chromium range in atomic mass from 43 u (^{43}Cr) to 67 u (^{67}Cr). The primary decay mode before the most abundant stable isotope, ^{52}Cr, is electron capture and the primary mode after is beta decay. ^{53}Cr has been posited as a proxy for atmospheric oxygen concentration

Chromium(III)

A large number of chromium(III) compounds are known. Chromium(III) can be obtained by dissolving elemental chromium in acids like hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid. The Cr^{3+} ion has a similar radius (63 pm) to the Al^{3+} ion (radius 50 pm), so they can replace each other in some compounds, such as in chrome alum and alum. When a trace amount of Cr^{3+} replaces Al^{3+} in corundum (aluminum oxide, Al_2O_3), the red-colored ruby is formed.

Chromium(III) ions tend to form octahedral complexes. The colors of these complexes is determined by the ligands attached to the Cr center. The commercially available chromium(III) chloride hydrate is the dark green complex $[CrCl_2(H_2O)_4]Cl$. Closely related compounds have different colors: pale green $[CrCl(H_2O)_5]Cl_2$ and the violet $[Cr(H_2O)_6]Cl_3$.

If water-free green chromium(III) chloride is dissolved in water then the green solution turns violet after some time, due to the substitution of water by chloride in the inner coordination sphere. This kind of reaction is also observed with solutions of chrome alum and other water-soluble chromium(III) salts.

Chromium(III) hydroxide ($Cr(OH)_3$) is amphoteric, dissolving in acidic solutions to form $[Cr(H_2O)_6]^{3+}$, and in basic solutions to form $[Cr(OH)_6]^{3-}$. It is dehydrated by heating to form the green chromium(III) oxide (Cr_2O_3), which is the stable oxide with a crystal structure identical to that of corundum.

Chromium(VI)

Chromium(VI) compounds are powerful oxidants at low or neutral pH. Most important are chromate anion (CrO2−4) and dichromate ($Cr_2O_7^{2-}$) anions, which exist in equilibrium:

$$2\ [CrO_4]^{2-} + 2\ H^+ \rightleftarrows [Cr_2O_7]^{2-} + H_2O$$

Chromium(VI) halides are known also and include the hexafluoride CrF_6 and chromyl chloride (CrO_2Cl_2).

Sodium chromate is produced industrially by the oxidative roasting of chromite ore with calcium or sodium carbonate. The dominant species is therefore, by the law of mass action, determined by the pH of the solution. The change in equilibrium is visible by a change from yellow (chromate) to orange (dichromate), such as when an acid is added to a neutral solution of potassium chromate. At yet lower pH values, further condensation to more complex oxyanions of chromium is possible.

Both the chromate and dichromate anions are strong oxidizing reagents at low pH:
Sodium chromate (Na_2CrO_4)

$$Cr_2O2-\ 7 + 14\ H_3O^+ + 6\ e^- \rightarrow 2\ Cr^{3+} + 21\ H_2O\ (\varepsilon_0 = 1.33\ V)$$

They are, however, only moderately oxidizing at high pH:

$$CrO2{-}4 + 4\ H_2O + 3\ e^- \rightarrow Cr(OH)_3 + 5\ OH^-\ (\varepsilon_0 = -0.13\ V)$$

Chromium(VI) compounds in solution can be detected by adding an acidic hydrogen peroxide solution. The unstable dark blue chromium(VI) peroxide (CrO_5) is formed, which can be stabilized as an ether adduct $CrO_5 \cdot OR_2$.

Chromic acid has the hypothetical formula H_2CrO_4. It is a vaguely described chemical, despite many well-defined chromates and dichromates are known. The dark red chromium(VI) oxide CrO_3, the acid anhydride of chromic acid, is sold industrially as "chromic acid". It can be produced by mixing sulfuric acid with dichromate, and is a strong oxidizing agent.

Chromium(V) and chromium(IV)

The oxidation state +5 is only realized in few compounds but are intermediates in many reactions involving oxidations by chromate. The only binary compound is the volatile chromium(V) fluoride (CrF_5). This red solid has a melting point of 30 °C and a boiling point of 117 °C. It can be synthesized by treating chromium metal with fluorine at 400 °C and 200 bar pressure. The peroxochromate(V) is another example of the +5 oxidation state. Potassium peroxochromate ($K_3[Cr(O_2)_4]$) is made by reacting potassium chromate with hydrogen peroxide at low temperatures. This red brown compound is stable at room temperature but decomposes spontaneously at 150–170 °C.

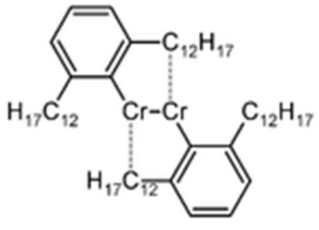
Compounds of chromium(IV) (in the +4 oxidation state) are slightly more common than those of chromium(V). The tetrahalides, CrF_4, $CrCl_4$, and $CrBr_4$, can be produced by treating the trihalides (CrX_3) with the corresponding halogen at elevated temperatures. Such compounds are susceptible to disproportionation reactions and are not stable in water.

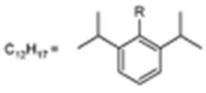
Chromium(II)

Many chromium(II) compounds are known, including the water-stable chromium(II) chloride, $CrCl_2$, which can be made by reduction of chromium(III) chloride with zinc. The resulting bright blue solution is only stable at neutral pH. Many chromous carboxylates are also known, most famously, the red chromous acetate ($Cr_2(O_2CCH_3)_4$), which features a quadruple bond.

Chromium(I)

Most Cr(I) compounds are obtained by oxidation of electron-rich, octahedral Cr(0) complexes. Other Cr(I) complexes contain cyclopentadienyl ligands. As verified by X-ray diffraction, a Cr-Cr quintuple bond (length 183.51(4) pm) has also been described. Extremely bulky monodentate ligands stabilize this compound by shielding the quintuple bond from further reactions.





Chromium compound determined experimentally to contain a Cr-Cr quintuple bond

Chromium(0)

Many chromium(0) compounds are known. Most are derivatives of chromium hexacarbonyl or bis(benzene)chromium.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Chromium (total)?

EPA has a drinking water standard of 0.1 milligrams per liter (mg/L) or 100 parts per billion (ppb) for total chromium, which includes all forms of chromium including chromium-6. Water systems are required to test for total chromium. The current standard is based on potential adverse dermatological effects over many years, such as allergic dermatitis (skin reactions). EPA regularly re-evaluates drinking water standards and, based on new science on chromium-6, began a rigorous and comprehensive review of its health effects in 2008.

Is Total Chromium or Chromium-6 in Drinking Water a Health Concern?

The current federal drinking water standard for total chromium is 0.1 mg/L or 100 ppb. Chromium-6 and chromium-3 are covered under the total chromium drinking water standard because these forms of chromium can convert back and forth in water and in the human body, depending on environmental conditions. Measuring just one form may not capture all of the chromium that is present. In order to ensure that the greatest potential risk is addressed, EPA's regulation assumes that a measurement of total chromium is 100 percent chromium-6, the more toxic form. If tap water from a public water system exceeds this federal standard, consumers will be notified.

The MCL for total chromium was established in 1991 and is based on the best available science at the time which indicated that continued exposure to chromium-6 could result in allergic dermatitis (skin reactions). EPA is now reviewing data from a 2008 long-term animal study by the Department of Health and Human Service's National Toxicology Program, which suggested that chromium-6 may be a human carcinogen if ingested. When the review is completed, EPA will consider this and other information to determine whether the drinking water standard for total chromium needs to be revised.

If EPA decides to revise the Regulation that includes Chromium-6 in Drinking Water, what is the process the agency will follow?

Prior to EPA making any decisions about revising the chromium drinking water regulation, EPA must issue its final human health assessment for chromium-6. EPA will carefully review the final assessment and consider all other relevant information to determine if a new drinking water regulation for chromium-6 or a revision to the current total chromium standard is warranted.

How does Chromium get into my Drinking Water?

The most common forms of chromium that occur in natural waters in the environment are chromium-3 and chromium-6. Chromium-3 and chromium-6 occur naturally in the environment, and are present in water from the erosion of chromium deposits found in rocks and soils. Chromium-6 is also produced by industrial processes and manufacturing activities including discharges from steel and pulp mills among others. At many locations, chromium compounds have been released to the environment via leakage, poor storage, or improper disposal practices. Chromium compounds are very persistent in water as sediments.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the community right-to-know hotline at (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if there is Chromium in my Drinking Water?

Your public water system's annual water quality report will provide information if total chromium is detected in the drinking water it delivers. The water quality report is sent to customers by July 1 of each year and may also be found on your public water system's website. Some water utilities have conducted monitoring specifically for chromium-6. Contact your public water system to find out if this information is available.

Consumers served by private wells can have their water tested by a state certified laboratory. You can find information on how to sample for chromium-6 and where to send samples by contacting your state water laboratory certification officer.

What should I do if I am concerned about the Presence of Chromium-6 in my Drinking Water while EPA is reviewing the Science and the Regulation?

If you remain concerned after finding out more about the chromium-6 levels in your drinking water, you may consider taking additional steps.

Can home treatment devices remove chromium-6?

Some home treatment devices are certified by organizations to remove chromium-6. Two certification organizations are: NSF International and the Water Quality Association. These certification programs are based on current drinking water standards and home treatment devices are only certified to remove chromium-6 to either 50 or 100 parts per billion. Contact the device's manufacturer for specific information about how effective the product is, given your water and treatment goal. Your public water system's water quality report and your water system's staff can help you understand the characteristics of your water.

If you choose to use a home treatment device, it is very important to follow the manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions carefully in order to make sure the device works properly.

Consumers should be aware that the current EPA drinking water standard for chromium requires that public water systems provide drinking water that does not exceed a total chromium concentration of 100 ppb.

Can I avoid exposure to chromium-6 if I only Drink Bottled Water? (Is there Chromium-6 in bottled water?)

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) establishes standards for bottled water and has adopted EPA's total chromium standard of 100 ppb. Contact bottled water manufacturers for specific information about levels of chromium-6 in their products.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?

EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to provide safe drinking water. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information. Check your water system provider's website or contact your water provider. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report, sometimes called a water quality report, to their customers by July 1 of each year.

Copper - Inorganic Contaminant 1.3 mg/L MCLG

What are Copper's Health Effects?

Some people who drink water containing copper in excess of the action level may, with short term exposure, experience gastrointestinal distress, and with long-term exposure may experience liver or kidney damage. People with Wilson's Disease should consult their personal doctor if the amount of copper in their water exceeds the action level.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for copper. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with copper in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Copper?

In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for copper is 1.3 mg/L or 1.3 ppm. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems.

For most contaminants, EPA sets an enforceable regulation called a maximum contaminant level (MCL) based on the MCLG. MCLs are set as close to the MCLGs as feasible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. However, because copper contamination of drinking water often results from corrosion of the plumbing materials belonging to water system customers, EPA established a treatment technique rather than an MCL for copper.

A treatment technique is an enforceable procedure or level of technological performance which water systems must follow to ensure control of a contaminant. The treatment technique regulation for copper (referred to as the Lead and Copper rule) requires water systems to control the corrosivity of the water. The regulation also requires systems to collect tap samples from sites served by the system that are more likely to have plumbing materials containing lead. If more than 10 percent of tap water samples exceed the copper action level of 1.3 milligrams per Liter (mg/L), water systems must take additional steps to reduce corrosiveness.

EPA promulgated the Lead and Copper Rule in 1991, and revised the regulation in 2000 and in 2007. States may set a more stringent regulation for copper in drinking water than EPA.

How does Copper get into my Drinking Water?

The major sources of copper in drinking water are corrosion of household plumbing systems; and erosion of natural deposits. Copper enters the water ("leaches") through contact with the plumbing. Copper leaches into water through corrosion – a dissolving or wearing away of metal caused by a chemical reaction between water and your plumbing. Copper can leach into water primarily from pipes, but fixtures and faucets (brass), and fittings can also be a source. The amount of copper in your water also depends on the types and amounts of minerals in the water, how long the water stays in the pipes, the amount of wear in the pipes, the water's acidity and its temperature.

How will I know if Copper is in my Drinking Water?

If you are concerned about copper in your drinking water, have the water tested for copper by a certified laboratory. (Lists are available from your state or local drinking water authority.) Since you cannot see, taste, or smell copper dissolved in water, testing is the only sure way of telling whether there are harmful quantities of lead in your drinking water. You should be particularly suspicious if your home has copper pipes. if you see signs of corrosion (frequent leaks, rust-colored water, stained dishes or laundry, or if your non-plastic plumbing is less than five years old. Your water supplier may have useful information, including whether the service connector used in your home or area is made of copper. Testing is especially important in high-rise buildings where flushing might not work.

If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How will Copper be removed from my Drinking Water?

The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing copper to below the action level of 1.3 mg/L or 1.3 ppm: corrosion control.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?

EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Copper Explained

Copper is a chemical element with the symbol **Cu** (from Latin: *cuprum*) and atomic number 29. It is a ductile metal with very high thermal and electrical conductivity. Pure copper is soft and malleable; a freshly exposed surface has a reddish-orange color. It is used as a conductor of heat and electricity, a building material, and a constituent of various metal alloys.

The metal and its alloys have been used for thousands of years. In the Roman era, copper was principally mined on Cyprus, hence the origin of the name of the metal as *cyprium* (metal of Cyprus), later shortened to *cuprum.*

Its compounds are commonly encountered as copper(II) salts, which often impart blue or green colors to minerals such as turquoise and have been widely used historically as pigments.

Architectural structures built with copper corrode to give green verdigris (or patina). Decorative art prominently features copper, both by itself and as part of pigments.

Copper(II) ions are water-soluble, where they function at low concentration as bacteriostatic substances, fungicides, and wood preservatives. In sufficient amounts, they are poisonous to higher organisms; at lower concentrations it is an essential trace nutrient to all higher plant and animal life. The main areas where copper is found in animals are liver, muscle and bone.

Characteristics

Physical

Copper, silver and gold are in group 11 of the periodic table, and they share certain attributes: they have one s-orbital electron on top of a filled d-electron shell and are characterized by high ductility and electrical conductivity. The filled d-shells in these elements do not contribute much to the interatomic interactions, which are dominated by the s-electrons through metallic bonds. Contrary to metals with incomplete d-shells, metallic bonds in copper are lacking a covalent character and are relatively weak. This explains the low hardness and high ductility of single crystals of copper. At the macroscopic scale, introduction of extended defects to the crystal lattice, such as grain boundaries, hinders flow of the material under applied stress thereby increasing its hardness. For this reason, copper is usually supplied in a fine-grained polycrystalline form, which has greater strength than monocrystalline forms.

The low hardness of copper partly explains its high electrical (59.6×10^6 S/m) and thus also high thermal conductivity, which are the second highest among pure metals at room temperature. This is because the resistivity to electron transport in metals at room temperature mostly originates from scattering of electrons on thermal vibrations of the lattice, which are relatively weak for a soft metal. The maximum permissible current density of copper in open air is approximately 3.1×10^6 A/m^2 of cross-sectional area, above which it begins to heat excessively. As with other metals, if copper is placed against another metal, galvanic corrosion will occur.

Together with caesium and gold (both yellow), copper is one of only three elemental metals with a natural color other than gray or silver. Pure copper is orange-red and acquires a reddish tarnish when exposed to air. The characteristic color of copper results from the electronic transitions between the filled 3d and half-empty 4s atomic shells – the energy difference between these shells is such that it corresponds to orange light. The same mechanism accounts for the yellow color of gold and caesium.

Chemical

Copper forms a rich variety of compounds with oxidation states +1 and +2, which are often called *cuprous* and *cupric*, respectively. It does not react with water, but it slowly reacts with atmospheric oxygen forming a layer of brown-black copper oxide. In contrast to the oxidation of iron by wet air, this oxide layer stops the further, bulk corrosion. A green layer of verdigris (copper carbonate) can often be seen on old copper constructions, such as the Statue of Liberty, the largest copper statue in the world built using repoussé and chasing. Hydrogen sulfides and sulfides react with copper to form various copper sulfides on the surface. In the latter case, the copper corrodes, as is seen when copper is exposed to air containing sulfur compounds.

Oxygen-containing ammonia solutions give water-soluble complexes with copper, as do oxygen and hydrochloric acid to form copper chlorides and acidified hydrogen peroxide to form copper(II) salts. Copper(II) chloride and copper comproportionate to form copper(I) chloride.

Isotopes

There are 29 isotopes of copper. ^{63}Cu and ^{65}Cu are stable, with ^{63}Cu comprising approximately 69% of naturally occurring copper; they both have a spin of 3/2. The other isotopes are radioactive, with the most stable being ^{67}Cu with a half-life of 61.83 hours. Seven metastable isotopes have been characterized, with ^{68m}Cu the longest-lived with a half-life of 3.8 minutes. Isotopes with a mass number above 64 decay by β^-, whereas those with a mass number below 64 decay by β^+. ^{64}Cu, which has a half-life of 12.7 hours, decays both ways.

^{62}Cu and ^{64}Cu have significant applications. ^{64}Cu is a radiocontrast for X-ray imaging, and complexed with a chelate can be used for treating cancer. ^{62}Cu is used in ^{62}Cu-PTSM that is a radioactive tracer for positron emission tomography.

Occurrence

Copper can be found as either native copper or as part of minerals. Native copper is a polycrystal, with the largest described single crystal measuring 4.4×3.2×3.2 cm. The largest mass of elemental copper weighed 420 tons and was found in 1857 on the Keweenaw Peninsula in Michigan, US. There are many examples of copper-containing minerals: chalcopyrite and chalcocite are copper sulfides, azurite and malachite are copper carbonates and cuprite is a copper oxide. Copper is present in the Earth's crust at a concentration of about 50 parts per million (ppm), and is also synthesized in massive stars.

Compounds

Binary Compounds

As for other elements, the simplest compounds of copper are binary compounds, i.e. those containing only two elements. The principal ones are the oxides, sulfides and halides. Both cuprous and cupric oxides are known. Among the numerous copper sulfides, important examples include copper(I) sulfide and copper(II) sulfide.

The cuprous halides with chlorine, bromine, and iodine are known, as are the cupric halides with fluorine, chlorine, and bromine. Attempts to prepare copper(II) iodide give cuprous iodide and iodine.

$$2\ \mathrm{Cu}^{2+} + 4\ \mathrm{I}^- \rightarrow 2\ \mathrm{CuI} + \mathrm{I}_2$$

Coordination Chemistry

Copper, like all metals, forms coordination complexes with ligands. In aqueous solution, copper(II) exists as $[\mathrm{Cu(H_2O)_6}]^{2+}$. This complex exhibits the fastest water exchange rate (speed of water ligands attaching and detaching) for any transition metal aquo complex. Adding aqueous sodium hydroxide causes the precipitation of light blue solid copper(II) hydroxide. A simplified equation is:

$$\mathrm{Cu}^{2+} + 2\ \mathrm{OH}^- \rightarrow \mathrm{Cu(OH)_2}$$

Aqueous ammonia results in the same precipitate. Upon adding excess ammonia, the precipitate dissolves, forming tetraamminecopper(II):

$$Cu(H_2O)_4(OH)_2 + 4\ NH_3 \rightarrow [Cu(H_2O)_2(NH_3)_4]^{2+} + 2\ H_2O + 2\ OH^-$$

Many other oxyanions form complexes; these include copper(II) acetate, copper(II) nitrate, and copper(II) carbonate. Copper(II) sulfate forms a blue crystalline pentahydrate, which is the most familiar copper compound in the laboratory. It is used in a fungicide called the Bordeaux mixture.

Polyols, compounds containing more than one alcohol functional group, generally interact with cupric salts. For example, copper salts are used to test for reducing sugars. Specifically, using Benedict's reagent and Fehling's solution the presence of the sugar is signaled by a color change from blue Cu(II) to reddish copper(I) oxide. Schweizer's reagent and related complexes with ethylenediamine and other amines dissolve cellulose. Amino acids form very stable chelate complexes with copper(II). Many wet-chemical tests for copper ions exist, one involving potassium ferrocyanide, which gives a brown precipitate with copper(II) salts.

Organocopper Chemistry

Compounds that contain a carbon-copper bond are known as organocopper compounds. They are very reactive towards oxygen to form copper(I) oxide and have many uses in chemistry. They are synthesized by treating copper(I) compounds with Grignard reagents, terminal alkynes or organolithium reagents; in particular, the last reaction described produces a Gilman reagent. These can undergo substitution with alkyl halides to form coupling products; as such, they are important in the field of organic synthesis.

Copper(I) acetylide is highly shock-sensitive but is an intermediate in reactions such as the Cadiot-Chodkiewicz coupling and the Sonogashira coupling. Conjugate addition to enones and carbocupration of alkynes can also be achieved with organocopper compounds. Copper(I) forms a variety of weak complexes with alkenes and carbon monoxide, especially in the presence of amine ligands.

Copper (III) and Copper (IV)

Copper(III) is most characteristically found in oxides. A simple example is potassium cuprate, $KCuO_2$, a blue-black solid. The best studied copper(III) compounds are the cuprate superconductors. Yttrium barium copper oxide ($YBa_2Cu_3O_7$) consists of both Cu(II) and Cu(III) centers. Like oxide, fluoride is a highly basic anion and is known to stabilize metal ions in high oxidation states. Indeed, both copper(III) and even copper(IV) fluorides are known, K_3CuF_6 and Cs_2CuF_6, respectively.

Some copper proteins form oxo complexes, which also feature copper(III). With di- and tripeptides, purple-colored copper(III) complexes are stabilized by the deprotonated amide ligands.

Complexes of copper(III) are also observed as intermediates in reactions of organocopper compounds.

Biological Role

Rich sources of copper include oysters, beef and lamb liver, Brazil nuts, blackstrap molasses, cocoa, and black pepper. Good sources include lobster, nuts and sunflower seeds, green olives, avocados, and wheat bran.

Copper proteins have diverse roles in biological electron transport and oxygen transportation, processes that exploit the easy interconversion of Cu(I) and Cu(II). The biological role for copper commenced with the appearance of oxygen in earth's atmosphere. The protein hemocyanin is the oxygen carrier in most mollusks and some arthropods such as the horseshoe crab (*Limulus polyphemus*). Because hemocyanin is blue, these organisms have blue blood, not the red blood found in organisms that rely on hemoglobin for this purpose. Structurally related to hemocyanin are the laccases and tyrosinases. Instead of reversibly binding oxygen, these proteins hydroxylate substrates, illustrated by their role in the formation of lacquers.

Copper is also a component of other proteins associated with the processing of oxygen. In cytochrome c oxidase, which is required for aerobic respiration, copper and iron cooperate in the reduction of oxygen. Copper is also found in many superoxide dismutases, proteins that catalyze the decomposition of superoxides, by converting it (by disproportionation) to oxygen and hydrogen peroxide:

$$2\ HO_2 \rightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2$$

Several copper proteins, such as the "blue copper proteins", do not interact directly with substrates, hence they are not enzymes. These proteins relay electrons by the process called electron transfer.

Photosynthesis functions by an elaborate electron transport chain within the thylakoid membrane. A central "link" in this chain is plastocyanin, a blue copper protein.

Dietary Needs

Copper is an essential trace element in plants and animals, but not some microorganisms. The human body contains copper at a level of about 1.4 to 2.1 mg per kg of body mass. Stated differently, the RDA for copper in normal healthy adults is quoted as 0.97 mg/day and as 3.0 mg/day. Copper is absorbed in the gut, then transported to the liver bound to albumin. After processing in the liver, copper is distributed to other tissues in a second phase.

Copper transport here involves the protein ceruloplasmin, which carries the majority of copper in blood. Ceruloplasmin also carries copper that is excreted in milk, and is particularly well-absorbed as a copper source. Copper in the body normally undergoes enterohepatic circulation (about 5 mg a day, vs. about 1 mg per day absorbed in the diet and excreted from the body), and the body is able to excrete some excess copper, if needed, via bile, which carries some copper out of the liver that is not then reabsorbed by the intestine.

Copper-based Disorders

Because of its role in facilitating iron uptake, copper deficiency can produce anemia-like symptoms, neutropenia, bone abnormalities, hypopigmentation, impaired growth, increased incidence of infections, osteoporosis, hyperthyroidism, and abnormalities in glucose and cholesterol metabolism. Conversely, Wilson's disease causes an accumulation of copper in body tissues.

Severe deficiency can be found by testing for low plasma or serum copper levels, low ceruloplasmin, and low red blood cell superoxide dismutase levels; these are not sensitive to marginal copper status. The "cytochrome c oxidase activity of leucocytes and platelets" has been stated as another factor in deficiency, but the results have not been confirmed by replication.

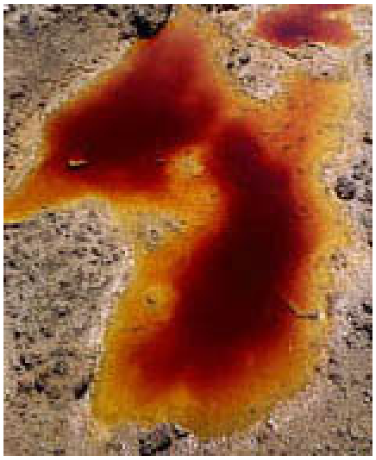
Copper Toxicity

Gram quantities of various copper salts have been taken in suicide attempts and produced acute copper toxicity in humans, possibly due to redox cycling and the generation of reactive oxygen species that damage DNA. Corresponding amounts of copper salts (30 mg/kg) are toxic in animals. A minimum dietary value for healthy growth in rabbits has been reported to be at least 3 ppm in the diet. However, higher concentrations of copper (100 ppm, 200 ppm, or 500 ppm) in the diet of rabbits may favorably influence feed conversion efficiency, growth rates, and carcass dressing percentages.

Chronic copper toxicity does not normally occur in humans because of transport systems that regulate absorption and excretion. Autosomal recessive mutations in copper transport proteins can disable these systems, leading to Wilson's disease with copper accumulation and cirrhosis of the liver in persons who have inherited two defective genes.

Cyanide - Inorganic Contaminant 0.2 mg/L MCL

Cyanide is a carbon-nitrogen chemical unit which combines with many organic and inorganic compounds.



Uses for Cyanide.
The most commonly used form, hydrogen cyanide, is mainly used to make compounds and other synthetic fibers and resins.

What are Cyanide's Health Effects?
Some people who drink water containing cyanide well in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) for many years could experience nerve damage or problems with their thyroid.
This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for cyanide. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with cyanide in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Cyanide?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for cyanide is 0.2 mg/L or 200 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for cyanide, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.2 mg/L or 200 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase V Rule, the regulation for cyanide, became effective in 1994. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed cyanide as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.2 mg/L or 200 ppb MCLG and 0.2 mg/L or 200 ppb MCL for cyanide are still protective of human health.

States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for cyanide than EPA.

How does Cyanide get into my Drinking Water?
The major source of cyanide in drinking water is discharge from industrial chemical factories.
A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Cyanide is in my Drinking Water?
When routine monitoring indicates that cyanide levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of cyanide so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How will Cyanide be Removed from my Drinking Water?
The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing cyanide to below 0.2 mg/L or 200 ppb: granular activated carbon in combination with packed tower aeration.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?
EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Cyanide Explained

A **cyanide** is a chemical compound that contains the **cyano group**, -C≡N, which consists of a carbon atom triple-bonded to a nitrogen atom. Cyanides most commonly refer to salts of the anion CN^-, which is isoelectronic with carbon monoxide and with molecular nitrogen. Most cyanides are highly toxic.

Nomenclature and Etymology

In IUPAC nomenclature, organic compounds that have a –C≡N functional group are called nitriles. Thus, nitriles are organic compounds. An example of a nitrile is CH_3CN, acetonitrile, also known as methyl cyanide. Nitriles usually do not release cyanide ions. A functional group with a hydroxyl and cyanide bonded to the same carbon is called cyanohydrin. Unlike nitriles, cyanohydridins do release hydrogen cyanide. In inorganic chemistry, salts containing the $C{\equiv}N^-$ ion are referred to as **cyanides**.

Occurrence and Reactions

Cyanides are produced by certain bacteria, fungi, and algae and are found in a number of plants. Cyanides are found, although in small amounts, in certain seeds and fruit stones, e.g., those of apple, mango, peach, and bitter almonds. In plants, cyanides are usually bound to sugar molecules in the form of cyanogenic glycosides and defend the plant against herbivores. Cassava roots (also called manioc), an important potato-like food grown in tropical countries (and the base from which tapioca is made), also contain cyanogenic glycosides.

Interstellar Medium

The cyanide radical CN· has been identified in interstellar space. The cyanide radical (called cyanogen) is used to measure the temperature of interstellar gas clouds.

Pyrolysis and Combustion Product

Hydrogen cyanide is produced by the combustion or pyrolysis of certain materials under oxygen-deficient conditions. For example, it can be detected in the exhaust of internal combustion engines and tobacco smoke. Certain plastics, especially those derived from acrylonitrile, release hydrogen cyanide when heated or burnt.

Coordination Chemistry

The cyanide anion is a ligand for many transition metals. The high affinities of metals for this anion can be attributed to its negative charge, compactness, and ability to engage in π-bonding.

Well-known complexes include:

- hexacyanides $[M(CN)_6]^{3-}$ (M = Ti, V, Cr, Mn, Fe, Co), which are octahedral in shape;
- the tetracyanides, $[M(CN)_4]^{2-}$ (M = Ni, Pd, Pt), which are square planar in their geometry;
- the dicyanides $[M(CN)_2]^{-}$ (M = Cu, Ag, Au), which are linear in geometry.

The dye Prussian blue was first accidentally made around 1706, by heating substances containing iron and carbon and nitrogen. Prussian blue consists of an iron-containing compound called "ferrocyanide" ($\{Fe(CN)_6]^{4-}$) meaning "blue substance with iron", from Latin *ferrum* = "iron" and Greek *kyanos* = "(dark) blue”. Prussian blue is the deep-blue pigment used in the making of blueprints.

The enzymes called hydrogenases contain cyanide ligands attached to iron in their active sites. The biosynthesis of cyanide in the [NiFe]-hydrogenases proceeds from carbamoylphosphate, which converts to cysteinyl thiocyanate, the CN^- donor.

Organic Derivatives

Because of the cyanide anion's high nucleophilicity, cyano groups are readily introduced into organic molecules by displacement of a halide group (e.g., the chloride on methyl chloride). In general, organic cyanides are called nitriles. Thus, CH_3CN can be called methyl cyanide but more commonly is referred to as acetonitrile. In organic synthesis, cyanide is a C-1 synthon; i.e., it can be used to lengthen a carbon chain by one, while retaining the ability to be functionalized.

$RX + CN^- \rightarrow RCN + X^-$ (nucleophilic substitution) followed by

1. $RCN + 2\ H_2O \rightarrow RCOOH + NH_3$ (hydrolysis under reflux with mineral acid catalyst), or
2. $2\ RCN + LiAlH_4 +$ (second step) $4\ H_2O \rightarrow 2\ RCH_2NH_2 + LiAl(OH)_4$ (under reflux in dry ether, followed by addition of H_2O)

Manufacture

The principal process used to manufacture cyanides is the Andrussow process in which gaseous hydrogen cyanide is produced from methane and ammonia in the presence of oxygen and a platinum catalyst.

$$2\ CH_4 + 2\ NH_3 + 3\ O_2 \rightarrow 2\ HCN + 6\ H_2O$$

Gaseous hydrogen cyanide may be dissolved in aqueous sodium hydroxide solution to produce sodium cyanide.

Toxicity

Many cyanides are highly toxic. The cyanide anion is an inhibitor of the enzyme cytochrome c oxidase (also known as aa_3) in the fourth complex of the electron transport chain (found in the membrane of the mitochondria of eukaryotic cells). It attaches to the iron within this protein. The binding of cyanide to this cytochrome prevents transport of electrons from cytochrome c oxidase to oxygen. As a result, the electron transport chain is disrupted, meaning that the cell can no longer aerobically produce ATP for energy. Tissues that depend highly on aerobic respiration, such as the central nervous system and the heart, are particularly affected. This is an example of histotoxic hypoxia.

The most hazardous compound is hydrogen cyanide, which is a gas at ambient temperatures and pressure and can therefore be inhaled. For this reason, an air respirator supplied by an external oxygen source must be worn when working with hydrogen cyanide. Hydrogen cyanide is produced when a solution containing a labile cyanide is made acidic, because HCN is a weak acid. Alkaline solutions are safer to use because they do not evolve hydrogen cyanide gas. Hydrogen cyanide may be produced in the combustion of polyurethanes; for this reason, polyurethanes are not recommended for use in domestic and aircraft furniture. Oral ingestion of a small quantity of solid cyanide or a cyanide solution as little as 200 mg, or to airborne cyanide of 270 ppm is sufficient to cause death within minutes.

Organic nitriles do not readily release cyanide ions, and so have low toxicities. By contrast, compounds such as trimethylsilyl cyanide $(CH_3)_3SiCN$ readily release HCN or the cyanide ion upon contact with water.

Antidote

Hydroxocobalamin reacts with cyanide to form cyanocobalamin, which can be safely eliminated by the kidneys. This method has the advantage of avoiding the formation of methemoglobin.

An older cyanide antidote kit included administration of three substances: amyl nitrite pearls (administered by inhalation), sodium nitrite, and sodium thiosulfate (administered by infusion). The goal of the antidote was to generate a large pool of ferric iron (Fe^{3+}) to compete with cyanide cytochrome a_3 (so that cyanide will bind to the antidote rather that the enzyme). The nitrites oxidize hemoglobin to methemoglobin, which competes with cytochrome oxidase for the cyanide ion. Cyanmethemoglobin is formed and the cytochrome oxidase enzyme is restored. The major mechanism to remove the cyanide from the body is by enzymatic conversion to thiocyanate by the mitochondrial enzyme rhodanese. Thiocyanate is a relatively non-toxic molecule and is excreted by the kidneys. To accelerate this detoxification, sodium thiosulfate is administered to provide a sulfur donor for rhodanese, needed in order to produce thiocyanate.

Sensitivity

Minimum risk levels (MRLs) may not protect for delayed health effects or health effects acquired following repeated sublethal exposure, such as hypersensitivity, asthma, or bronchitis. MRLs may be revised after sufficient data accumulates (Toxicological Profile for Cyanide, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2006).

Chemical Tests for Cyanide

Prussian Blue

Iron (II) sulfate is added to a solution suspected of containing cyanide, such as the filtrate from the sodium fusion test. The resulting mixture is acidified with mineral acid. The formation of Prussian blue is a positive result for cyanide.

Para-Benzoquinone in DMSO

A solution of *para*-benzoquinone in DMSO reacts with inorganic cyanide to form a cyanophenol, which is fluorescent. Illumination with a UV light gives a green/blue glow if the test is positive.

Copper and an Aromatic Amine

As used by fumigators to detect hydrogen cyanide, copper (II) salt and an aromatic amine such as benzidine is added to the sample; as an alternative to benzidine an alternative amine di-(4,4-*bis*-dimethylaminophenyl) methane can be used. A positive test gives a blue color. Copper (I) cyanide is poorly soluble. By sequestering the copper(I) the copper(II) is rendered a stronger oxidant. The copper, in a cyanide facilitated oxidation, converts the amine into a colored compound. The Nernst equation explains this process. Another good example of such chemistry is the way in which the saturated calomel reference electrode (SCE) works. The copper, in a cyanide-facilitated oxidation, converts the amine into a colored compound.

Pyridine-Barbituric Acid Colorimetry

A sample containing inorganic cyanide is purged with air from a boiling acid solution into a basic absorber solution. The cyanide salt absorbed in the basic solution is buffered at pH 4.5 and then reacted with chlorine to form cyanogen chloride. The cyanogen chloride formed couples pyridine with barbituric acid to form a strongly colored red dye that is proportional to the cyanide concentration.

This colorimetric method following distillation is the basis for most regulatory methods (for instance EPA 335.4) used to analyze cyanide in water, wastewater, and contaminated soils. Distillation followed by colorimetric methods, however, have been found to be prone to interferences from thiocyanate, nitrate, thiosulfate, sulfite, and sulfide that can result in both positive and negative bias. It has been recommended by the USEPA (MUR March 12, 2007) that samples containing these compounds be analyzed by Gas-Diffusion Flow Injection Analysis — Amperometry.

Gas Diffusion Flow Injection Analysis — Amperometry

Instead of distilling, the sample is injected into an acidic stream where the HCN formed is passed under a hydrophobic gas diffusion membrane that selectively allows only HCN to pass through. The HCN that passes through the membrane is absorbed into a basic carrier solution that transports the CN to an amperometric detector that accurately measures cyanide concentration with high sensitivity.

Sample pretreatment determined by acid reagents, ligands, or preliminary UV irradiation allow cyanide speciation of free cyanide, available cyanide, and total cyanide respectively. The relative simplicity of these flow injection analysis methods limit the interference experienced by the high heat of distillation and also prove to be cost effective since time consuming distillations are not required.

Fluoride. Many communities add fluoride to their drinking water to promote dental health. Each community makes its own decision about whether or not to add fluoride. The EPA has set an enforceable drinking water standard for fluoride of 4 mg/L (some people who drink water containing fluoride in excess of this level over many years could develop bone disease, including pain and tenderness of the bones). The EPA has also set a secondary fluoride standard of 2 mg/L to protect against dental fluorosis.

Fluoride - Inorganic Contaminant 4.0 mg/L MCL

Fluoride compounds are salts that form when the element, fluorine, combines with minerals in soil or rocks.

Uses for Fluoride.
Many communities add fluoride to their drinking water to promote dental health.

What are Fluoride's Health Effects?
Exposure to excessive consumption of fluoride over a lifetime may lead to increased likelihood of bone fractures in adults, and may result in effects on bone leading to pain and tenderness. Children aged 8 years and younger exposed to excessive amounts of fluoride have an increased chance of developing pits in the tooth enamel, along with a range of cosmetic effects to teeth.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for fluoride. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with fluoride in drinking water.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Fluoride?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for fluoride is 4.0 mg/L or 4.0 ppm. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for fluoride, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 4.0 mg/L or 4.0 ppm. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

EPA has also set a secondary standard (SMCL) for fluoride at 2.0 mg/L or 2.0 ppm. Secondary standards are non-enforceable guidelines regulating contaminants that may cause cosmetic effects (such as skin or tooth discoloration) or aesthetic effects (such as taste, odor, or color) in drinking water. EPA recommends secondary standards to water systems but does not require systems to comply. However, states may choose to adopt them as enforceable standards.

Tooth discoloration and/or pitting is caused by excess fluoride exposures during the formative period prior to eruption of the teeth in children. The secondary standard of 2.0 mg/L is intended as a guideline for an upper bound level in areas which have high levels of naturally occurring fluoride. The level of the SMCL was set based upon a balancing of the beneficial effects of protection from tooth decay and the undesirable effects of excessive exposures leading to discoloration.

Fluoride is voluntarily added to some drinking water systems as a public health measure for reducing the incidence of cavities among the treated population.

The decision to fluoridate a water supply is made by the State or local municipality, and is not mandated by EPA or any other Federal entity. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) provides recommendations about the optimal levels of fluoride in drinking water in order to prevent tooth decay. Information about CDC's recommendations can be found at: http://www.cdc.gov/fluoridation/

States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for fluoride than EPA.

The drinking water standards are currently under review. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. In 2003 and as part of the first Six Year Review, EPA reviewed the drinking water standard for fluoride and found that new health and exposure data were available on orally ingested fluoride. EPA requested that the National Research Council (NRC) of the National Academies of Science (NAS) conduct a review of this data and in 2006, the NRC published their evaluation in a report entitled, Fluoride in Drinking Water: A Scientific Review of EPA's Standards. The NRC recommended that EPA update its fluoride risk assessment to include new data on health risks and better estimates of total exposure.

In March 2010 and as part of the second Six Year Review, the Agency indicated that the Office of Water was in the process of developing its health and exposure assessments to address the NRC's recommendations. The Agency finalized the risk and exposure assessments for fluoride in January 2011 and announced its intent to review the drinking water regulations for fluoride to determine whether revisions are appropriate.

How does Fluoride get into my Drinking Water?

Some fluoride compounds, such as sodium fluoride and fluorosilicates, dissolve easily into ground water as it moves through gaps and pore spaces between rocks. Most water supplies contain some naturally occurring fluoride. Fluoride also enters drinking water in discharge from fertilizer or aluminum factories. Also, many communities add fluoride to their drinking water to promote dental health.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Fluoride is in my Drinking Water?

When routine monitoring indicates that fluoride levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of fluoride so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

If your water comes from a household or private well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How will Fluoride be removed from my Drinking Water?

The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing fluoride to below 4.0 mg/L or 4.0 ppm: distillation or reverse osmosis.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?

EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Fluoride Explained

Fluoride is the anion F^-, the reduced form of fluorine when as an ion and when bonded to another element. Inorganic fluorine containing compounds are called fluorides. Fluoride, like other halides, is a monovalent ion (−1 charge). Its compounds often have properties that are distinct relative to other halides. Structurally, and to some extent chemically, the fluoride ion resembles the hydroxide ion.

Occurrence

Solutions of inorganic fluorides in water contain F^- and bifluoride HF−2. Few inorganic fluorides are soluble in water without undergoing significant hydrolysis. In terms of its reactivity, fluoride differs significantly from chloride and other halides, and is more strongly solvated due to its smaller radius/charge ratio. Its closest chemical relative is hydroxide. When relatively unsolvated, fluoride anions are called "naked". Naked fluoride is a very strong lewis base. The presence of fluoride and its compounds can be detected by F NMR spectroscopy.

Natural Occurrence

Many fluoride minerals are known, but of paramount commercial importance are fluorite and fluorapatite.

Fluoride is usually found naturally in low concentration in drinking water and foods. The concentration in seawater averages 1.3 parts per million (ppm). Fresh water supplies generally contain between 0.01–0.3 ppm, whereas the ocean contains between 1.2 and 1.5 ppm. In some locations, the fresh water contains dangerously high levels of fluoride, leading to serious health problems.

Applications

Fluorides are pervasive in modern technology. Hydrofluoric acid is the fluoride synthesized on the largest scale. It is produced by treating fluoride minerals with sulfuric acid. Hydrofluoric acid and its anhydrous form hydrogen fluoride are used in the production of fluorocarbons and aluminum fluorides. Hydrofluoric acid has a variety of specialized applications, including its ability to dissolve glass.

Inorganic Chemicals

Fluoride salts are used in the manufacture of many inorganic chemicals, many of which contain fluoride covalently bonded to the metal or nonmetal in question. Some examples of these are:

- Cryolite (Na_3AlF_6) is a pesticide that can leave fluoride on agricultural commodities. Cryolite was originally utilized in the preparation of aluminum.

- Sulfuryl fluoride (SO_2F_2) is used as a pesticide and fumigant on agricultural crops. In 2010, the United States Environmental Protection Agency proposed to withdraw the use of sulfuryl fluoride on food. Sulfuryl fluoride releases fluoride when metabolized.

- Sulfur hexafluoride is an inert, nontoxic insulator gas that is used in electrical transformers and as a tracer gas in indoor air quality investigations.

- Uranium hexafluoride, although not ionic, is prepared from fluoride reagents. It is utilized in the separation of isotopes of uranium between the fissile isotope U-235 and the non-fissile isotope U-238 in preparation of nuclear reactor fuel and atomic bombs. This is due to the volatility of fluorides of uranium.

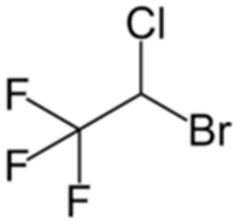
Organic Chemicals

Fluoride reagents are significant in synthetic organic chemistry. Organofluorine chemistry has produced many useful compounds over the last 50 years. Included in this area are polytetrafluorethylene (Teflon), polychlorotrifluoroethylene (moisture barriers), efavirenz (pharmaceutical used for treatment of HIV), fluoxetine (an antidepressant), 5-fluorouracil (an anticancer drug), hydrochlorofluorocarbons and hydrofluorcarbons (refrigerants, blowing agents and propellants).

Due to the affinity of silicon for fluoride, and the ability of silicon to expand its coordination number, silyl ether protecting groups can be easily removed by the fluoride sources such as sodium fluoride and tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride (TBAF). This is quite useful for organic synthesis and the production of fine chemicals. The Si-F linkage is one of the strongest single bonds. In contrast, other silyl halides are easily hydrolyzed.

Cavity Prevention

Fluoride-containing compounds are used in topical and systemic fluoride therapy for preventing tooth decay. They are used for water fluoridation and in many products associated with oral hygiene. Originally, sodium fluoride was used to fluoridate water; hexafluorosilicic acid (H_2SiF_6) and its salt sodium hexafluorosilicate (Na_2SiF_6) are more commonly used additives, especially in the United States. The fluoridation of water is known to prevent tooth decay and is considered by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention as "one of 10 great public health achievements of the 20th century". In some countries where large, centralized water systems are uncommon, fluoride is delivered to the populace by fluoridating table salt. Fluoridation of water has its critics (see Water fluoridation controversy).



Structure of halothane.

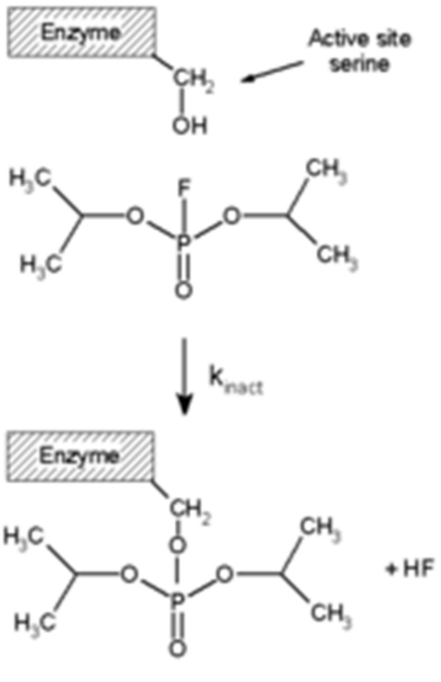
Biomedical Applications

Positron emission tomography is commonly carried out using fluoride-containing pharmaceuticals such as fluorodeoxyglucose, which is labeled with the radioactive isotope fluorine-18, which emits positrons when it decays into ^{18}O.

Numerous drugs contain fluorine including antipsychotics such as fluphenazine, HIV protease inhibitors such as tipranavir, antibiotics such as ofloxacin and trovafloxacin, and anesthetics such as halothane. Fluorine is incorporated in the drug structures to reduce drug metabolism, as the strong C-F bond resists deactivation in the liver by cytochrome P450 oxidases.

Fluoride salts are commonly used to inhibit the activity of phosphatases, such as serine/threonine phosphatases. Fluoride mimics the nucleophilic hydroxyl ion in these enzymes' active sites. Beryllium fluoride and aluminum fluoride are also used as phosphatase inhibitors, since these compounds are structural mimics of the phosphate group and can act as analogues of the transition state of the reaction.

Toxicology



Reaction of the irreversible inhibitor diisopropylfluorophosphate with a serine protease.

Fluoride-containing compounds are so diverse that it is not possible to generalize on their toxicity, which depends on their reactivity and structure, and in the case of salts, their solubility and ability to release fluoride ions.

Soluble fluoride salts, of which sodium fluoride is the most common, are mildly toxic but have resulted in both accidental and suicidal deaths from acute poisoning. While the minimum fatal dose in humans is not known, the lethal dose for most adult humans is estimated at 5 to 10 g (which is equivalent to 32 to 64 mg/kg elemental fluoride/kg body weight). However, a case of a fatal poisoning of an adult with 4 grams of sodium fluoride is documented, while a dose of 120 g sodium fluoride has been survived.

A toxic dose that may lead to adverse health effects is estimated at 3 to 5 mg/kg of elemental fluoride. For Sodium fluorosilicate (Na_2SiF_6), the median lethal dose (LD_{50}) orally in rats is 0.125 g/kg, corresponding to 12.5 g for a 100 kg adult. The fatal period ranges from 5 min to 12 hours. The mechanism of toxicity involves the combination of the fluoride anion with the calcium ions in the blood to form insoluble calcium fluoride, resulting in hypocalcemia; calcium is indispensable for the function of the nervous system, and the condition can be fatal. Treatment may involve oral administration of dilute calcium hydroxide or calcium chloride to prevent further absorption, and injection of calcium gluconate to increase the calcium levels in the blood. Hydrogen fluoride is more dangerous than salts such as NaF because it is corrosive and volatile, and can result in fatal exposure through inhalation or upon contact with the skin; calcium gluconate gel is the usual antidote.

In the higher doses used to treat osteoporosis, sodium fluoride can cause pain in the legs and incomplete stress fractures when the doses are too high; it also irritates the stomach, sometimes so severely as to cause ulcers. Slow-release and enteric-coated versions of sodium fluoride do not have gastric side effects in any significant way, and have milder and less frequent complications in the bones. In the lower doses used for water fluoridation, the only clear adverse effect is dental fluorosis, which can alter the appearance of children's teeth during tooth development; this is mostly mild and is unlikely to represent any real effect on aesthetic appearance or on public health.

Lead- Inorganic Contaminant 0.015 Action Level

The United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) regulates lead in drinking water to protect public health. Lead may cause health problems if present in public or private water supplies in amounts greater than the drinking water standard set by EPA.

What is Lead?
Lead is a toxic metal that was used for many years in products found in and around homes. Even at low levels, lead may cause a range of health effects including behavioral problems and learning disabilities. Children six years old and under are most at risk because this is when the brain is developing. The primary source of lead exposure for most children is lead-based paint in older homes. Lead in drinking water can add to that exposure.

Uses for Lead.
Lead is sometimes used in household plumbing materials or in water service lines used to bring water from the main to the home. A prohibition on lead in plumbing materials has been in effect since 1986. The lead ban, which was included in the 1986 Amendments of the Safe Drinking Water Act, states that only “lead free” pipe, solder, or flux may be used in the installation or repair of (1) public water systems, or (2) any plumbing in a residential or non-residential facility providing water for human consumption, which is connected to a public water system. But even “lead free” plumbing may contain traces of lead. The term “lead free” means that solders and flux may not contain more than 0.2 percent lead, and that pipes and pipe fittings may not contain more than 8.0 percent lead. Faucets and other end use devices must be tested and certified against the ANSI – NSF Standard 61 to be considered lead free.

What are Lead’s Health Effects?
Infants and children who drink water containing lead in excess of the action level could experience delays in their physical or mental development. Children could show slight deficits in attention span and learning abilities. Adults who drink this water over many years could develop kidney problems or high blood pressure.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for lead. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of the most significant and probable health effects, associated with lead in drinking water.

What are EPA’s Drinking Water Regulations for Lead?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur with an adequate margin of safety. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG) The MCLG for lead is zero.

EPA has set this level based on the best available science which shows there is no safe level of exposure to lead.

For most contaminants, EPA sets an enforceable regulation called a maximum contaminant level (MCL) based on the MCLG. MCLs are set as close to the MCLGs as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. However, because lead contamination of drinking water often results from corrosion of the plumbing materials belonging to water system customers, EPA established a treatment technique rather than an MCL for lead.

A treatment technique is an enforceable procedure or level of technological performance which water systems must follow to ensure control of a contaminant. The treatment technique regulation for lead (referred to as the Lead and Copper rule) requires water systems to control the corrosivity of the water. The regulation also requires systems to collect tap samples from sites served by the system that are more likely to have plumbing materials containing lead.

If more than 10% of tap water samples exceed the lead action level of 15 parts per billion, then water systems are required to take additional actions including:

- Taking further steps optimize their corrosion control treatment (for water systems serving 50,000 people that have not fully optimized their corrosion control) .
- Educating the public about lead in drinking water and actions consumers can take to reduce their exposure to lead.
- Replacing the portions of lead service lines (lines that connect distribution mains to customers) under the water system's control.

EPA promulgated the Lead and Copper Rule in 1991 and revised the regulation in 2000 and 2007. States may set more stringent drinking water regulations than EPA.

How does Lead get into my Drinking Water?

The major sources of lead in drinking water are corrosion of household plumbing systems; and erosion of natural deposits. Lead enters the water ("leaches") through contact with the plumbing. Lead leaches into water through corrosion – a dissolving or wearing away of metal caused by a chemical reaction between water and your plumbing. Lead can leach into water from pipes, solder, fixtures and faucets (brass), and fittings. The amount of lead in your water also depends on the types and amounts of minerals in the water, how long the water stays in the pipes, the amount of wear in the pipes, the water's acidity and its temperature.

Although the main sources of exposure to lead are ingesting paint chips and inhaling dust, EPA estimates that 10 to 20 percent of human exposure to lead may come from lead in drinking water. Infants who consume mostly mixed formula can receive 40 to 60 percent of their exposure to lead from drinking water.

How will I know if Lead is in my Drinking Water?

Have your water tested for lead. A list of certified laboratory of labs are available from your state or local drinking water authority. Testing costs between $20 and $100. Since you cannot see, taste, or smell lead dissolved in water, testing is the only sure way of telling whether there are harmful quantities of lead in your drinking water. You should be particularly suspicious if your home has lead pipes (lead is a dull gray metal that is soft enough to be easily scratched with a house key) or if you see signs of corrosion (frequent leaks, rust-colored water). Your water supplier may have useful information, including whether the service connector used in your home or area is made of lead. Testing is especially important in high-rise buildings where flushing might not work.

If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How can I Reduce Lead in Drinking Water at Home?
Flush your pipes before drinking, and only use cold water for consumption. The more time water has been sitting in your home's pipes, the more lead it may contain. Anytime the water in a particular faucet has not been used for six hours or longer, "flush" your cold-water pipes by running the water until it becomes as cold as it will get.

This could take as little as five to thirty seconds if there has been recent heavy water use such as showering or toilet flushing. Otherwise, it could take two minutes or longer. Your water utility will inform you if longer flushing times are needed to respond to local conditions.

Use only water from the cold-water tap for drinking, cooking, and especially for making baby formula. Hot water is likely to contain higher levels of lead. The two actions recommended above are very important to the health of your family. They will probably be effective in reducing lead levels because most of the lead in household water usually comes from the plumbing in your house, not from the local water supply.

Should I be concerned about Lead in Drinking water in my child's school or child care facility?
Children spend a significant part of their days at school or in a child care facility. The faucets that provide water used for consumption, including drinking, cooking lunch, and preparing juice and infant formula, should be tested.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?
EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect and upgrade the supply of safe drinking water. Your water bill or telephone book’s government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Lead Explained

Lead is a chemical element in the carbon group with symbol **Pb** (from Latin: *plumbum*) and atomic number 82. Lead is a soft, malleable poor metal. It is also counted as one of the heavy metals. Metallic lead has a bluish-white color after being freshly cut, but it soon tarnishes to a dull grayish color when exposed to air. Lead has a shiny chrome-silver luster when it is melted into a liquid.

Lead is used in building construction, lead-acid batteries, bullets and shot, weights, as part of solders, pewters, fusible alloys, and as a radiation shield. Lead has the highest atomic number of all of the stable elements, although the next higher element, bismuth, has a half-life that is so long (much longer than the age of the universe) that it can be considered stable. Its four stable isotopes have 82 protons, a magic number in the nuclear shell model of atomic nuclei.

Lead, at certain contact degrees, is a poisonous substance to animals, including humans. It damages the nervous system and causes brain disorders. Excessive lead also causes blood disorders in mammals. Like the element mercury, another heavy metal, lead is a neurotoxin that accumulates both in soft tissues and the bones. Lead poisoning has been documented from ancient Rome, ancient Greece, and ancient China.

Characteristics
Lead is a bright and silvery metal with a very slight shade of blue in a dry atmosphere. Upon contact with air, it begins to tarnish by forming a complex mixture of compounds depending on the conditions. The color of the compounds can vary. The tarnish layer can contain significant amounts of carbonates and hydroxycarbonates. It has a few characteristic properties: high density, softness, ductility and malleability, poor electrical conductivity compared to other metals, high resistance to corrosion, and ability to react with organic chemicals.

Various traces of other metals change its properties significantly: the addition of small amounts of antimony or copper increases hardness and improves the corrosion reflection from sulfuric acid for lead. A few other metals also improve only hardness and fight metal fatigue, such as cadmium, tin, or tellurium; metals like sodium or calcium also have this ability, but they weaken the chemical stability. Finally, zinc and bismuth simply impair the corrosion resistance (0.1% bismuth content is the industrial usage threshold). In return, lead impurities mostly worsen the quality of industrial materials, although there are exceptions: for example, small amounts of lead improve the ductility of steel.

Lead has only one common allotrope, which is face-centered cubic, with the lead–lead distance being 349 pm. At 327.5 °C (621.5 °F), lead melts; the melting point is above that of tin (232 °C, 449.5 °F), but significantly below that of germanium (938 °C, 1721 °F).[6] The boiling point of lead is 1749 °C (3180 °F), which is below those of both tin (2602 °C, 4716 °F) and germanium (2833 °C, 5131 °F). Densities increase down the group: the Ge and Sn values (5.23 and 7.29 $g \cdot cm^{-3}$, respectively) are significantly below that of lead: 11.32 $g \cdot cm^{-3}$.

A lead atom has 82 electrons, having an electronic configuration of $[Xe]4f^{14}5d^{10}6s^{2}6p^{2}$. In its compounds, lead (unlike the other group 14 elements) most commonly loses its two and not four outermost electrons, becoming lead(II) ions, Pb^{2+}. Such unusual behavior is rationalized by considering the inert pair effect, which occurs because of the stabilization of the 6s-orbital due to relativistic effects, which are stronger closer to the bottom of the periodic table. Tin shows a weaker such effect: tin(II) is still a reducer.

The figures for electrode potential show that lead is only slightly easier to oxidize than hydrogen. Lead thus can dissolve in acids, but this is often impossible due to specific problems (such as the formation of insoluble salts). Powdered lead burns with a bluish-white flame. As with many metals, finely divided powdered lead exhibits pyrophoricity. Toxic fumes are released when lead is burned.

Isotopes
Lead occurs naturally on Earth exclusively in the form of four isotopes: lead-204, -206, -207, and -208. All four can be radioactive as the hypothetical alpha decay of any would be exothermic, but the lower half-life limit has been put only for lead-204: over 1.4×10^{17} years. This effect is, however, so weak that natural lead poses no radiation hazard. Three isotopes are also found in three of the four major decay chains: lead-206, -207 and -208 are final decay products of uranium-238, uranium-235, and thorium-232, respectively.

Since the amounts of them in nature depend also on other elements' presence, the isotopic composition of natural lead varies by sample: in particular, the relative amount of lead-206 varies between 20.84% and 27.78%.

Aside from the stable ones, thirty-four radioisotopes have been synthesized: they have mass numbers of 178–215. Lead-205 is the most stable radioisotope of lead, with a half-life of over 10^7 years. 47 nuclear isomers (long-lived excited nuclear states), corresponding to 24 lead isotopes, have been characterized. The most long-lived isomer is lead-204m2 (half-life of about 1.1 hours).

Chemical Reactivity

Lead is classified as a post-transition metal and is also a member of the carbon group. Lead only forms a protective oxide layer although finely powdered highly purified lead can ignite in air. Melted lead is oxidized in air to lead monoxide. All chalcogens oxidize lead upon heating.

Fluorine does not oxidize cold lead. Hot lead can be oxidized, but the formation of a protective halide layer lowers the intensity of the reaction above 100 °C (210 °F). The reaction with chlorine is similar: thanks to the chloride layer, lead persistence against chlorine surpasses those of copper or steel up to 300 °C (570 °F).

Water in the presence of oxygen attacks lead to start an accelerating reaction. The presence of carbonates or sulfates results in the formation of insoluble lead salts, which protect the metal from corrosion. So does carbon dioxide, as the insoluble lead carbonate is formed; however, an excess of the gas leads to the formation of the soluble bicarbonate; this makes the use of lead pipes dangerous. Lead dissolves in organic acids (in the presence of oxygen) and concentrated (≥80%) sulfuric acid thanks to complexation; however, it is only weakly affected by hydrochloric acid and is stable against hydrofluoric acid, as the corresponding halides are weakly soluble. Lead also dissolves in quite concentrated alkalis (≥10%) because of the amphoteric character and solubility of plumbites.

Compounds

Lead compounds exist mainly in two main oxidation states, +2 and +4. The former is more common. Inorganic lead(IV) compounds are typically strong oxidants or exist only in highly acidic solutions.

Oxides and Sulfides

Three oxides are known: lead(II) oxide or lead monoxide (PbO), lead tetroxide (Pb_3O_4) (sometimes called "minimum"), and lead dioxide (PbO_2). The monoxide exists as two allotropes: α-PbO and β-PbO, both with layer structure and tetracoordinated lead. The alpha polymorph is red-colored and has the Pb–O distance of 230 pm; the beta polymorph is yellow-colored and has the Pb–O distance of 221 and 249 pm (due to asymmetry). Both polymorphs can exist under standard conditions (beta with small (10^{-5} relative) impurities, such as Si, Ge, Mo, etc.). PbO reacts with acids to form salts, and with alkalis to give plumbites, $[Pb(OH)_3]^-$ or $[Pb(OH)_4]^{2-}$.The monoxide oxidizes in air to trilead tetroxide, which at 550 °C (1020 °F) degrades back into PbO.

The dioxide may be prepared by, for example, halogenization of lead(II) salts. Regardless the polymorph, it has a black-brown color. The alpha allotrope is rhombohedral, and the beta allotrope is tetragonal. Both allotropes are black-brown in color and always contain some water, which cannot be removed, as heating also causes decomposition (to PbO and Pb_3O_4).

The dioxide is a powerful oxidizer: it can oxidize hydrochloric and sulfuric acids. It does not react with alkaline solution, but reacts with solid alkalis to give hydroxyplumbates, or with basic oxides to give plumbates.

Reaction of lead salts with hydrogen sulfide yields lead monosulfide. The solid has the rocksalt-like simple cubic structure, which it keeps up to the melting point, 1114 °C (2037 °F). When heated in air, it oxidizes to the sulfate and then the monoxide. Lead monosulfide is almost insoluble in water, weak acids, and $(NH_4)_2S/(NH_4)_2S_2$ solution is the key for separation of lead from analytical groups I to III ions, tin, arsenic, and antimony. However, it dissolves in nitric and hydrochloric acids, to give elemental sulfur and hydrogen sulfide, respectively. Upon heating under high pressures with sulfur, it gives the disulfide. In the compound, the lead atoms are linked octahedrally with the sulfur atoms. It is also a semiconductor. A mixture of the monoxide and the monosulfide when heated forms the metal.

$$2\ PbO + PbS \rightarrow 3\ Pb + SO_2$$

Halides and Other Salts

Heating lead carbonate with hydrogen fluoride yields the hydrofluoride, which decomposes to the difluoride when it melts. This white crystalline powder is more soluble than the diiodide, but less than the dibromide and the dichloride. The tetrafluoride, a yellow crystalline powder, is unstable.

Other dihalides are obtained upon heating lead(II) salts with the halides of other metals; lead dihalides precipitate to give white orthorhombic crystals (diiodide forms yellow hexagonal crystals). They can also be obtained by direct reaction of their constituent elements at temperature exceeding melting points of dihalides. Their solubility increases with temperature; adding more halides first decreases the solubility, but then increases due to complexation, with the maximum coordination number being 6.

The complexation depends on halide ion numbers, atomic number of the alkali metal, the halide of which is added, temperature and solution ionic strength. The tetrachloride is obtained upon dissolving the dioxide in hydrochloric acid; to prevent the exothermic decomposition, it is kept under concentrated sulfuric acid. The tetrabromide may not, and the tetraiodide definitely does not exist. The diastatide has also been prepared.

The metal is not attacked by sulfuric or hydrochloric acids. It dissolves in nitric acid with the evolution of nitric oxide gas to form dissolved $Pb(NO_3)_2$. It is a well-soluble solid in water; it is thus a key to receive the precipitates of halides, sulfate, chromate, carbonate, and basic carbonate $Pb_3(OH)_2(CO_3)_2$ salts of lead.

Organolead

The best-known compounds are the two simplest plumbane derivatives: tetramethyllead (TML) and tetraethyllead (TEL). The homologs of these, as well as hexaethyldilead (HEDL), are of lesser stability. The tetralkyl derivatives contain lead(IV), where the Pb–C bonds are covalent. They thus resemble typical organic compounds.

Lead readily forms an equimolar alloy with sodium metal that reacts with alkyl halides to form organometallic compounds of lead such as tetraethyllead. The Pb–C bond energies in TML and TEL are only 167 and 145 kJ/mol; the compounds thus decompose upon heating, with first signs of TEL composition seen at 100 °C (210 °F).

The pyrolysis yields of elemental lead and alkyl radicals; their interreaction causes the synthesis of HEDL. TML and TEL also decompose upon sunlight or UV light. In presence of chlorine, the alkyls begin to be replaced with chlorides; the R_2PbCl_2 in the presence of HCl (a by-product of the previous reaction) leads to the complete mineralization to give $PbCl_2$. Reaction with bromine follows the same principle.

Applications

Elemental Form

Contrary to popular belief, pencil leads in wooden pencils have never been made from lead. The term comes from the Roman stylus, called the *penicillus*, a small brush used for painting. When the pencil originated as a wrapped graphite writing tool, the particular type of graphite being used was named *plumbago* (lit. *act for lead*, or *lead mockup*).

Lead is used in applications where its low melting point, ductility and high density are advantageous. The low melting point makes casting of lead easy, and therefore small arms ammunition and shotgun pellets can be cast with minimal technical equipment. It is also inexpensive and denser than other common metals.

Because of its high density and resistance from corrosion, lead is used for the ballast keel of sailboats. Its high density allows it to counterbalance the heeling effect of wind on the sails while at the same time occupying a small volume and thus offering the least underwater resistance.

For the same reason it is used in scuba diving weight belts to counteract the diver's natural buoyancy and that of his equipment. It does not have the weight-to-volume ratio of many heavy metals, but its low cost increases its use in these and other applications.

More than half of the US lead production (at least 1.15 million tons in 2000) is used for automobiles, mostly as electrodes in the lead–acid battery, used extensively as a car battery.

Cathode (Reduction)

$PbO_2 + 4\ H^+ + SO2-$
$4 + 2e^- \rightarrow PbSO_4 + 2\ H_2O$

Anode (Oxidation)

$Pb + SO2-$
$4 \rightarrow PbSO_4 + 2e^-$

Lead is used as electrodes in the process of electrolysis. It is used in solder for electronics, although this usage is being phased out by some countries to reduce the amount of environmentally hazardous waste, and in high voltage power cables as sheathing material to prevent water diffusion into insulation. Lead is one of three metals used in the Oddy test for museum materials, helping detect organic acids, aldehydes, and acidic gases. It is also used as shielding from radiation (e.g., in X-ray rooms). Molten lead is used as a coolant (e.g., for lead cooled fast reactors).

Lead is added to brass to reduce machine tool wear. In the form of strips, or tape, lead is used for the customization of tennis rackets. Tennis rackets of the past sometimes had lead added to them by the manufacturer to increase weight. It is also used to form glazing bars for stained glass or other multi-lit windows. The practice has become less common, not for danger but for stylistic reasons.

Lead, or *sheet-lead*, is used as a sound deadening layer in some areas in wall, floor and ceiling design in sound studios where levels of airborne and mechanically produced sound are targeted for reduction or virtual elimination. It is the traditional base metal of organ pipes, mixed with varying amounts of tin to control the tone of the pipe.

Compounds

Lead compounds are used as a coloring element in ceramic glazes, notably in the colors red and yellow. Lead is frequently used in polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic, which coats electrical cords.

Lead is used in some candles to treat the wick to ensure a longer, more even burn. Because of the dangers, European and North American manufacturers use more expensive alternatives such as zinc. Lead glass is composed of 12–28% lead oxide. It changes the optical characteristics of the glass and reduces the transmission of radiation.

Some artists using oil-based paints continue to use lead carbonate white, citing its properties in comparison with the alternatives. Tetra-ethyl lead is used as an anti-knock additive for aviation fuel in piston-driven aircraft. Lead-based semiconductors, such as lead telluride, lead selenide and lead antimonide are finding applications in photovoltaic (solar energy) cells and infrared detectors.

Former Applications

Lead pigments were used in lead paint for white as well as yellow, orange, and red. Most uses have been discontinued due of the dangers of lead poisoning. Beginning April 22, 2010, US federal law requires that contractors performing renovation, repair, and painting projects that disturb more than six square feet of paint in homes, child care facilities, and schools built before 1978 must be certified and trained to follow specific work practices to prevent lead contamination.

Lead chromate is still in industrial use. Lead carbonate (white) is the traditional pigment for the priming medium for oil painting, but it has been largely displaced by the zinc and titanium oxide pigments. It was also quickly replaced in water-based painting mediums. Lead carbonate white was used by the Japanese geisha and in the West for face-whitening make-up, which was detrimental to health.

Lead is the hot metal that was used in hot metal typesetting. It was used for plumbing (hence the name) as well as a preservative for food and drink in Ancient Rome. Until the early 1970s, lead was used for joining cast iron water pipes and used as a material for small diameter water pipes.

Tetraethyllead was used in leaded fuels to reduce engine knocking, but this practice has been phased out across many countries of the world in efforts to reduce toxic pollution that affected humans and the environment.

Lead was used to make bullets for slings. Lead was used for shotgun pellets in the US until about 1992 when it was outlawed (for waterfowl hunting only) and replaced by non-toxic shot, primarily steel pellets. In the Netherlands, the use of lead shot for hunting and sport shooting was banned in 1993, which caused a large drop in lead emission, from 230 tons in 1990 to 47.5 tons in 1995, two years after the ban.

Lead was a component of the paint used on children's toys – now restricted in the United States and across Europe (ROHS Directive). Lead was used in car body filler, which was used in many custom cars in the 1940s–60s. Hence the term Leadsled. Lead is a superconductor with a transition temperature of 7.2 K, and therefore IBM tried to make a Josephson effect computer out of a lead alloy.

Lead was also used in pesticides before the 1950s, when fruit orchards were treated especially against the codling moth. A lead cylinder attached to a long line was used by sailors for the vital navigational task of determining water depth by *heaving the lead* at regular intervals. A soft tallow insert at its base allowed the nature of the sea bed to be determined, further aiding position finding.

Health Effects

Lead is a highly poisonous metal (regardless if inhaled or swallowed), affecting almost every organ and system in the body. The main target for lead toxicity is the nervous system, both in adults and children. Long-term exposure of adults can result in decreased performance in some tests that measure functions of the nervous system. Long-term exposure to lead or its salts (especially soluble salts or the strong oxidant PbO_2) can cause nephropathy, and colic-like abdominal pains. It may also cause weakness in fingers, wrists, or ankles. Lead exposure also causes small increases in blood pressure, particularly in middle-aged and older people and can cause anemia. Exposure to high lead levels can severely damage the brain and kidneys in adults or children and ultimately cause death. In pregnant women, high levels of exposure to lead may cause miscarriage.

Chronic, high-level exposure have shown to reduce fertility in males. Lead also damages nervous connections (especially in young children) and cause blood and brain disorders. Lead poisoning typically results from ingestion of food or water contaminated with lead; but may also occur after accidental ingestion of contaminated soil, dust, or lead-based paint. It is rapidly absorbed into the bloodstream and is believed to have adverse effects on the central nervous system, the cardiovascular system, kidneys, and the immune system. The component limit of lead (1.0 µg/g) is a test benchmark for pharmaceuticals, representing the maximum daily intake an individual should have. However, even at this low level, a prolonged intake can be hazardous to human beings. The treatment for lead poisoning consists of dimercaprol and succimer.

The concern about lead's role in cognitive deficits in children has brought about widespread reduction in its use (lead exposure has been linked to learning disabilities). Most cases of adult elevated blood lead levels are workplace-related. High blood levels are associated with delayed puberty in girls. Lead has been shown many times to permanently reduce the cognitive capacity of children at extremely low levels of exposure.

During the 20th century, the use of lead in paint pigments was sharply reduced because of the danger of lead poisoning, especially to children. By the mid-1980s, a significant shift in lead end-use patterns had taken place. Much of this shift was a result of the U.S. lead consumers' compliance with environmental regulations that significantly reduced or eliminated the use of lead in non-battery products, including gasoline, paints, solders, and water systems. Lead use is being further curtailed by the European Union's RoHS directive. Lead may still be found in harmful quantities in stoneware, vinyl (such as that used for tubing and the insulation of electrical cords), and Chinese brass. Older houses may still contain substantial amounts of lead paint. White lead paint has been withdrawn from sale in industrialized countries, but the yellow lead chromate is still in use. Old paint should not be stripped by sanding, as this produces inhalable dust.

Lead salts used in pottery glazes have on occasion caused poisoning, when acidic drinks, such as fruit juices, have leached lead ions out of the glaze. It has been suggested that what was known as "Devon colic" arose from the use of lead-lined presses to extract apple juice in the manufacture of cider. Lead is considered to be particularly harmful for women's ability to reproduce. Lead(II) acetate (also known as *sugar of lead*) was used in the Roman Empire as a sweetener for wine, and some consider this to be the cause of the dementia that affected many of the Roman Emperors and even be a partial reason for the Roman Empire's fall.

Biochemistry of Poisoning

In the human body, lead inhibits porphobilinogen synthase and ferrochelatase, preventing both porphobilinogen formation and the incorporation of iron into protoporphyrin IX, the final step in heme synthesis. This causes ineffective heme synthesis and subsequent microcytic anemia. At lower levels, it acts as a calcium analog, interfering with ion channels during nerve conduction. This is one of the mechanisms by which it interferes with cognition. Acute lead poisoning is treated using disodium calcium edetate: the calcium chelate of the disodium salt of ethylene-diamine-tetracetic acid (EDTA). This chelating agent has a greater affinity for lead than for calcium and so the lead chelate is formed by exchange. This is then excreted in the urine leaving behind harmless calcium. According to the Agency for Toxic Substance and Disease Registry, a small amount of ingested lead (1%) will store itself in bones, and the rest will be excreted by an adult through urine and feces within a few weeks of exposure. However, only about 32% of lead will be excreted by a child.

Exposure

Exposure to lead and lead chemicals can occur through inhalation, ingestion and dermal contact. Most exposure occurs through ingestion or inhalation; in the U.S. the skin exposure is unlikely as leaded gasoline additives are no longer used. Lead exposure is a global issue as lead mining and lead smelting are common in many countries. Most countries have stopped using lead-containing gasoline by 2007. Lead exposure mostly occurs through ingestion. Lead paint is the major source of lead exposure for children. As lead paint deteriorates, it peels, is pulverized into dust and then enters the body through hand-to-mouth contact or through contaminated food, water or alcohol. Ingesting certain home remedy medicines may also expose people to lead or lead compounds. Lead can be ingested through fruits and vegetables contaminated by high levels of lead in the soils they were grown in.

Soil is contaminated through particulate accumulation from lead in pipes, lead paint and residual emissions from leaded gasoline that was used before the Environment Protection Agency issue the regulation around 1980. The use of lead for water pipes is problematic in areas with soft or (and) acidic water. Hard water forms insoluble layers in the pipes while soft and acidic water dissolves the lead pipes.

Inhalation is the second major pathway of exposure, especially for workers in lead-related occupations. Almost all inhaled lead is absorbed into the body, the rate is 20–70% for ingested lead; children absorb more than adults. Dermal exposure may be significant for a narrow category of people working with organic lead compounds, but is of little concern for general population. The rate of skin absorption is also low for inorganic lead.

Mercury - Inorganic Contaminant 0.002 mg/L MCL

EPA regulates mercury in drinking water to protect public health. Mercury may cause health problems if present in public or private water supplies in amounts greater than the drinking water standard set by EPA.

What is Mercury?
Mercury is a liquid metal found in natural deposits such as ores containing other elements.

Uses for Mercury.
Electrical products such as dry-cell batteries, fluorescent light bulbs, switches, and other control equipment account for 50 percent of mercury used.

What are Mercury's Health Effects?
Some people who drink water containing mercury well in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) for many years could experience kidney damage.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for mercury. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with mercury in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Mercury?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for mercury is 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for mercury, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase II Rule, the regulation for mercury, became effective in 1992. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed mercury as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb MCLG and 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb MCL for mercury are still protective of human health.

States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for mercury than EPA.

How does Mercury get into my Drinking Water?
The major sources of mercury in drinking water are erosion of natural deposits; discharge from refineries and factories; runoff from landfills; and runoff from croplands.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Mercury is in my Drinking Water?
When routine monitoring indicates that mercury levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of mercury so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.
If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How will Mercury be removed from my Drinking Water?
The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing mercury to below 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb: coagulation/filtration, granular activated carbon, lime softening, and reverse osmosis.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?
EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Mercury Explained

Mercury is a chemical element with the symbol **Hg** and atomic number 80. It is also known as **quicksilver** or **hydrargyrum** (< Greek "hydr-" *water* and "argyros" *silver*). A heavy, silvery d-block element, mercury is the only metal that is liquid at standard conditions for temperature and pressure; the only other element that is liquid under these conditions is bromine, though metals such as caesium, gallium, and rubidium melt just above room temperature. With a freezing point of −38.83 °C and boiling point of 356.73 °C, mercury has one of the narrowest ranges of its liquid state of any metal.

Mercury occurs in deposits throughout the world mostly as cinnabar (mercuric sulfide). The red pigment vermilion is mostly obtained by reduction from cinnabar. Cinnabar is highly toxic by ingestion or inhalation of the dust. Mercury poisoning can also result from exposure to water-soluble forms of mercury (such as mercuric chloride or methylmercury), inhalation of mercury vapor, or eating seafood contaminated with mercury.

Mercury is used in thermometers, barometers, manometers, sphygmomanometers, float valves, mercury switches, and other devices though concerns about the element's toxicity have led to mercury thermometers and sphygmomanometers being largely phased out in clinical environments in favor of alcohol-filled, galinstan-filled, digital, or thermistor-based instruments. It remains in use in scientific research applications and in amalgam material for dental restoration. It is used in lighting: electricity passed through mercury vapor in a phosphor tube produces short-wave ultraviolet light which then causes the phosphor to fluoresce, making visible light.

Physical Properties

Mercury is a heavy, silvery-white metal. As compared to other metals, it is a poor conductor of heat, but a fair conductor of electricity. Mercury has an exceptionally low melting temperature for a d-block metal. A complete explanation of this delves deep into the realm of quantum physics, but it can be summarized as follows: mercury has a unique electronic configuration where electrons fill up all the available 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 3d, 4s, 4p, 4d, 4f, 5s, 5p, 5d and 6s subshells. As such configuration strongly resists removal of an electron, mercury behaves similarly to noble gas elements, which form weak bonds and thus easily melting solids. The stability of the 6s shell is due to the presence of a filled 4f shell. An f shell poorly screens the nuclear charge that increases the attractive Coulomb interaction of the 6s shell and the nucleus (see lanthanide contraction).

The absence of a filled inner *f* shell is the reason for the somewhat higher melting temperature of cadmium and zinc, although both these metals still melt easily and, in addition, have unusually low boiling points. On the other hand, gold, which is one space to the left of mercury on the periodic table, has atoms with one less 6s electron than mercury. Those electrons are more easily removed and are shared between the gold atoms forming relatively strong metallic bonds.

Chemical Properties

Mercury does not react with most acids, such as dilute sulfuric acid, although oxidizing acids such as concentrated sulfuric acid and nitric acid or aqua regia dissolve it to give sulfate, nitrate, and chloride salts. Like silver, mercury reacts with atmospheric hydrogen sulfide. Mercury even reacts with solid sulfur flakes, which are used in mercury spill kits to absorb mercury vapors (spill kits also use activated carbon and powdered zinc).

Amalgams

Mercury dissolves to form amalgams with gold, zinc and many other metals. Because iron is an exception, iron flasks have been traditionally used to trade mercury. Other metals that do not form amalgams with mercury include tantalum, tungsten and platinum. Sodium amalgam is a common reducing agent in organic synthesis, and is also used in high-pressure sodium lamps.

Mercury readily combines with aluminum to form a mercury-aluminum amalgam when the two pure metals come into contact. Since the amalgam destroys the aluminum oxide layer which protects metallic aluminum from oxidizing in-depth (as in iron rusting), even small amounts of mercury can seriously corrode aluminum. For this reason, mercury is not allowed aboard an aircraft under most circumstances because of the risk of it forming an amalgam with exposed aluminum parts in the aircraft.

Isotopes

There are seven stable isotopes of mercury with ^{202}Hg being the most abundant (29.86%). The longest-lived radioisotopes are ^{194}Hg with a half-life of 444 years, and ^{203}Hg with a half-life of 46.612 days. Most of the remaining radioisotopes have half-lives that are less than a day. ^{199}Hg and ^{201}Hg are the most often studied NMR-active nuclei, having spins of ½ and ³⁄₂ respectively.

History

The symbol for the planet Mercury (☿) has been used since ancient times to represent the element.

In China and Tibet, mercury use was thought to prolong life, heal fractures, and maintain generally good health, although it is now known that exposure to mercury leads to serious adverse health effects. The first emperor of China, Qín Shǐ Huáng Dì — allegedly buried in a tomb that contained rivers of flowing mercury on a model of the land he ruled, representative of the rivers of China — was killed by drinking a mercury and powdered jade mixture formulated by Qin alchemists (causing liver failure, mercury poisoning, and brain death) who intended to give him eternal life.

The ancient Greeks used mercury in ointments; the ancient Egyptians and the Romans used it in cosmetics which sometimes deformed the face. In Lamanai, once a major city of the Maya civilization, a pool of mercury was found under a marker in a Mesoamerican ballcourt. By 500 BC mercury was used to make amalgams (Medieval Latin amalgama, "alloy of mercury") with other metals.

Alchemists thought of mercury as the First Matter from which all metals were formed. They believed that different metals could be produced by varying the quality and quantity of sulfur contained within the mercury. The purest of these was gold, and mercury was called for in attempts at the transmutation of base (or impure) metals into gold, which was the goal of many alchemists.

Hg is the modern chemical symbol for mercury. It comes from *hydrargyrum*, a Latinized form of the Greek word Ὑδραργυρος (*hydrargyros*), which is a compound word meaning "water-silver" (hydr- = water, argyros = silver) — since it is liquid like water and shiny like silver. The element was named after the Roman god Mercury, known for speed and mobility. It is associated with the planet Mercury; the astrological symbol for the planet is also one of the alchemical symbols for the metal; the Sanskrit word for alchemy is *Rasavātam* which means "the way of mercury". Mercury is the only metal for which the alchemical planetary name became the common name.
The mines in Almadén (Spain), Monte Amiata (Italy), and Idrija (now Slovenia) dominated mercury production from the opening of the mine in Almadén 2500 years ago, until new deposits were found at the end of the 19th century.

Chemistry

Mercury exists in two main oxidation states, I and II. Higher oxidation states are unimportant, but have been detected, e.g., mercury(IV) fluoride (HgF_4) but only under extraordinary conditions.

Compounds of Mercury (I)

Different from its lighter neighbors, cadmium and zinc, mercury forms simple stable compounds with metal-metal bonds. The mercury(I) compounds are diamagnetic and feature the dimeric cation, Hg2+2.

Stable derivatives include the chloride and nitrate. Treatment of Hg(I) compounds complexation with strong ligands such as sulfide, cyanide, etc. induces disproportionation to Hg^{2+} and elemental mercury. Mercury(I) chloride, a colorless solid also known as calomel, is really the compound with the formula Hg_2Cl_2, with the connectivity Cl-Hg-Hg-Cl. It is a standard in electrochemistry. It reacts with chlorine to give mercuric chloride, which resists further oxidation.
Indicative of its tendency to bond to itself, mercury forms mercury polycations, which consist of linear chains of mercury centers, capped with a positive charge. One example is Hg2+ 3(AsF−6)2.

Compounds of Mercury (II)

Mercury(II) is the most common oxidation state and is the main one in nature as well. All four mercuric halides are known. The form tetrahedral complexes with other ligands but the halides adopt linear coordination geometry, somewhat like Ag^+ does. Best known is mercury(II) chloride, an easily sublimating white solid. $HgCl_2$ forms coordination complexes that are typically tetrahedral, e.g. HgCl2−4.

Mercury(II) oxide, the main oxide of mercury, arises when the metal is exposed to air for long periods at elevated temperatures. It reverts to the elements upon heating near 400 °C, as was demonstrated by Priestly in an early synthesis of pure oxygen. Hydroxides of mercury are poorly characterized, as they are for its neighbors gold and silver.

Being a soft metal, mercury forms very stable derivatives with the heavier chalcogens. Preeminent is mercury(II) sulfide, HgS, which occurs in nature as the ore cinnabar and is the brilliant pigment vermillion. Like ZnS, HgS crystallizes in two forms, the reddish cubic form and the black zinc blende form. Mercury(II) selenide (HgSe) and mercury(II) telluride (HgTe) are also known, these as well as various derivatives, e.g. mercury cadmium telluride and mercury zinc telluride being semiconductors useful as infrared detector materials.

Mercury(II) salts form a variety of complex derivatives with ammonia. These include Millon's base (Hg_2N^+), the one-dimensional polymer (salts of HgNH+2) n), and "fusible white precipitate" or $[Hg(NH_3)_2]Cl_2$. Known as Nessler's reagent, potassium tetraiodomercurate(II) (HgI2−4) is still occasionally used to test for ammonia owing to its tendency to form the deeply colored iodide salt of Millon's base.

Higher Oxidation States

Oxidation states above +2 in a non-charged species are extremely rare, although a cyclic mercurinium(IV) cation, with three substituents, is an intermediate in oxymercuration reactions. In 2007, a report of synthesis of a mercury(IV) compound, mercury(IV) fluoride, was published. In the 1970s, there was a claim on synthesis of a mercury(III) compound, but it is now thought to be false.

Organomercury Compounds

Organic mercury compounds are historically important but are of little industrial value in the western world. Mercury(II) salts are a rare examples of simple metal complexes that react directly with aromatic rings. Organomercury compounds are always divalent and usually two-coordinate and linear geometry. Unlike organocadmium and organozinc compounds, organomercury, . compounds do not react with water. They usually have the formula HgR_2, which are often volatile, or HgRX, which are often solids, where R is aryl or alkyl and X is usually halide or acetate. Methylmercury, a generic term for compounds with the formula CH_3HgX, is a dangerous family of compounds that are often found in polluted water. They arise by a process known as biomethylation.

Applications

Mercury is used primarily for the manufacture of industrial chemicals or for electrical and electronic applications. It is used in some thermometers, especially ones which are used to measure high temperatures. A still increasing amount is used as gaseous mercury in fluorescent lamps, while most of the other applications are slowly phased out due to health and safety regulations and is in some applications replaced with less toxic but considerably more expensive Galinstan alloy.

Medicine

Mercury and its compounds have been used in medicine, although they are much less common today than they once were, now that the toxic effects of mercury and its compounds are more widely understood. The element mercury is an ingredient in dental amalgams. Thiomersal (called *Thimerosal* in the United States) is an organic compound used as a preservative in vaccines, though this use is in decline. Another mercury compound Merbromin (Mercurochrome) is a topical antiseptic used for minor cuts and scrapes is still in use in some countries.

Since the 1930s some vaccines have contained the preservative thiomersal, which is metabolized or degraded to ethyl mercury. Although it was widely speculated that this mercury-based preservative can cause or trigger autism in children, scientific studies showed no evidence supporting any such link. Nevertheless thiomersal has been removed from or reduced to trace amounts in all U.S. vaccines recommended for children 6 years of age and under, with the exception of inactivated influenza vaccine.

Mercury in the form of one of its common ores, cinnabar, is used in various traditional medicines, especially in traditional Chinese medicine. Review of its safety has found cinnabar can lead to significant mercury intoxication when heated, consumed in overdose or taken long term, and can have adverse effects at therapeutic doses, though this is typically reversible at therapeutic doses. Although this form of mercury appears less toxic than others, its use in traditional Chinese medicine has not yet been justified as the therapeutic basis for the use of cinnabar is not clear.

Today, the use of mercury in medicine has greatly declined in all respects, especially in developed countries. Thermometers and sphygmomanometers containing mercury were invented in the early 18th and late 19th centuries, respectively. In the early 21st century, their use is declining and has been banned in some countries, states and medical institutions. In 2002, the U.S. Senate passed legislation to phase out the sale of non-prescription mercury thermometers. In 2003, Washington and Maine became the first states to ban mercury blood pressure devices. Mercury compounds are found in some over-the-counter drugs, including topical antiseptics, stimulant laxatives, diaper-rash ointment, eye drops, and nasal sprays.

The FDA has "inadequate data to establish general recognition of the safety and effectiveness", of the mercury ingredients in these products. Mercury is still used in some diuretics, although substitutes now exist for most therapeutic uses.

Production of Chlorine and Caustic Soda

Chlorine is produced from sodium chloride (common salt, NaCl) using electrolysis to separate the metallic sodium from the chlorine gas. Usually the salt is dissolved in water to produce a brine. By-products of any such chloralkali process are hydrogen (H_2) and sodium hydroxide (NaOH), which is commonly called caustic soda or lye. By far the largest use of mercury in the late 20th century was in the mercury cell process (also called the Castner-Kellner process) where metallic sodium is formed as an amalgam at a cathode made from mercury; this sodium is then reacted with water to produce sodium hydroxide. Many of the industrial mercury releases of the 20th century came from this process, although modern plants claimed to be safe in this regard. After about 1985, all new chloralkali production facilities that were built in the United States used either membrane cell or diaphragm cell technologies to produce chlorine.

Laboratory Uses

Some medical thermometers, especially those for high temperatures, are filled with mercury; however, they are gradually disappearing. In the United States, non-prescription sale of mercury fever thermometers has been banned since 2003.

Liquid mercury is a part of popular secondary reference electrode (called the calomel electrode) in electrochemistry as an alternative to the standard hydrogen electrode. The calomel electrode is used to work out the electrode potential of half cells. Last, but not least, the triple point of mercury, −38.8344 °C, is a fixed point used as a temperature standard for the International Temperature Scale (ITS-90).

Toxicity and Safety

Mercury and most of its compounds are extremely toxic and must be handled with care; in cases of spills involving mercury (such as from certain thermometers or fluorescent light bulbs), specific cleaning procedures are used to avoid exposure and contain the spill. Protocols call for physically merging smaller droplets on hard surfaces, combining them into a single larger pool for easier removal with an eyedropper, or for gently pushing the spill into a disposable container. Vacuum cleaners and brooms cause greater dispersal of the mercury and should not be used.

Afterwards, fine sulfur, zinc, or some other powder that readily forms an amalgam (alloy) with mercury at ordinary temperatures is sprinkled over the area before itself being collected and properly disposed of. Cleaning porous surfaces and clothing is not effective at removing all traces of mercury and it is therefore advised to discard these kinds of items should they be exposed to a mercury spill.

Mercury can be absorbed through the skin and mucous membranes and mercury vapors can be inhaled, so containers of mercury are securely sealed to avoid spills and evaporation. Heating of mercury, or of compounds of mercury that may decompose when heated, is always carried out with adequate ventilation in order to avoid exposure to mercury vapor. The most toxic forms of mercury are its organic compounds, such as dimethylmercury and methylmercury. Inorganic compounds, such as cinnabar are also highly toxic by ingestion or inhalation. Mercury can cause both chronic and acute poisoning.

Releases in the Environment

Amount of atmospheric mercury deposited at Wyoming's Upper Fremont Glacier over the last 270 years

Preindustrial deposition rates of mercury from the atmosphere may be about 4 ng /(1 L of ice deposit). Although that can be considered a natural level of exposure, regional or global sources have significant effects. Volcanic eruptions can increase the atmospheric source by 4–6 times. Natural sources, such as volcanoes, are responsible for approximately half of atmospheric mercury emissions.

The human-generated half can be divided into the following estimated percentages:

- 65% from stationary combustion, of which coal-fired power plants are the largest aggregate source (40% of U.S. mercury emissions in 1999). This includes power plants fueled with gas where the mercury has not been removed. Emissions from coal combustion are between one and two orders of magnitude higher than emissions from oil combustion, depending on the country.
- 11% from gold production. The three largest point sources for mercury emissions in the U.S. are the three largest gold mines. Hydrogeochemical release of mercury from gold-mine tailings has been accounted as a significant source of atmospheric mercury in eastern Canada.
- 6.8% from non-ferrous metal production, typically smelters.
- 6.4% from cement production.
- 3.0% from waste disposal, including municipal and hazardous waste, crematoria, and sewage sludge incineration.
- 3.0% from caustic soda production.
- 1.4% from pig iron and steel production.
- 1.1% from mercury production, mainly for batteries.
- 2.0% from other sources.

The above percentages are estimates of the global human-caused mercury emissions in 2000, excluding biomass burning, an important source in some regions.

Mercury also enters into the environment through the improper disposal (e.g., land filling, incineration) of certain products. Products containing mercury include: auto parts, batteries, fluorescent bulbs, medical products, thermometers, and thermostats. Due to health concerns (see below), toxics use reduction efforts are cutting back or eliminating mercury in such products. For example, the amount of mercury sold in thermostats in the United States decreased from 14.5 tons in 2004 to 3.9 tons in 2007. Most thermometers now use pigmented alcohol instead of mercury, and galinstan alloy thermometers are also an option. Mercury thermometers are still occasionally used in the medical field because they are more accurate than alcohol thermometers, though both are commonly being replaced by electronic thermometers and less commonly by galinstan thermometers. Mercury thermometers are still widely used for certain scientific applications because of their greater accuracy and working range.

The United States Clean Air Act, passed in 1990, put mercury on a list of toxic pollutants that need to be controlled to the greatest possible extent. Thus, industries that release high concentrations of mercury into the environment agreed to install maximum achievable control technologies (MACT). In March 2005 EPA rule added power plants to the list of sources that should be controlled and a national cap and trade rule was issued.

States were given until November 2006 to impose stricter controls, and several States are doing so. The rule was being subjected to legal challenges from several States in 2005 and decision was made in 2008. The Clean Air Mercury Rule was struck down by a Federal Appeals Court on February 8, 2008. The rule was deemed not sufficient to protect the health of persons living near coal-fired power plants. The court opinion cited the negative impact on human health from coal-fired power plants' mercury emissions documented in the EPA Study Report to Congress of 1998.

The EPA announced new rules for coal-fired power plants on December 22, 2011. Cement kilns that burn hazardous waste are held to a looser standard than are standard hazardous waste incinerators in the United States, and as a result are a disproportionate source of mercury pollution.

Historically, one of the largest releases was from the Colex plant, a lithium-isotope separation plant at Oak Ridge. The plant operated in the 1950s and 1960s. Records are incomplete and unclear, but government commissions have estimated that some two million pounds of mercury are unaccounted for.

A serious industrial disaster was the dumping of mercury compounds into Minamata Bay, Japan. It is estimated that over 3,000 people suffered various deformities, severe mercury poisoning symptoms or death from what became known as Minamata disease.

Occupational Exposure

Due to the health effects of mercury exposure, industrial and commercial uses are regulated in many countries. The World Health Organization, OSHA, and NIOSH all treat mercury as an occupational hazard, and have established specific occupational exposure limits. Environmental releases and disposal of mercury are regulated in the U.S. primarily by the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Case control studies have shown effects such as tremors, impaired cognitive skills, and sleep disturbance in workers with chronic exposure to mercury vapor even at low concentrations in the range 0.7–42 μg/m^3. A study has shown that acute exposure (4 – 8 hours) to calculated elemental mercury levels of 1.1 to 44 mg/m^3 resulted in chest pain, dyspnea, cough, hemoptysis, impairment of pulmonary function, and evidence of interstitial pneumonitis. Acute exposure to mercury vapor has been shown to result in profound central nervous system effects, including psychotic reactions characterized by delirium, hallucinations, and suicidal tendency.

Occupational exposure has resulted in broad-ranging functional disturbance, including erethism, irritability, excitability, excessive shyness, and insomnia. With continuing exposure, a fine tremor develops and may escalate to violent muscular spasms. Tremor initially involves the hands and later spreads to the eyelids, lips, and tongue. Long-term, low-level exposure has been associated with more subtle symptoms of erethism, including fatigue, irritability, loss of memory, vivid dreams and depression.

Treatment

Research on the treatment of mercury poisoning is limited. Currently available drugs for acute mercurial poisoning include chelators N-acetyl-D, L-penicillamine (NAP), British Anti-Lewisite (BAL), 2,3-dimercapto-1-propanesulfonic acid (DMPS), and dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA). In one small study including 11 construction workers exposed to elemental mercury, patients were treated with DMSA and NAP. Chelation therapy with both drugs resulted in the mobilization of a small fraction of the total estimated body mercury. DMSA was able to increase the excretion of mercury to a greater extent than NAP.

Fish

Fish and shellfish have a natural tendency to concentrate mercury in their bodies, often in the form of methylmercury, a highly toxic organic compound of mercury. Species of fish that are high on the food chain, such as shark, swordfish, king mackerel, bluefin tuna, albacore tuna, and tilefish contain higher concentrations of mercury than others. As mercury and methylmercury are fat soluble, they primarily accumulate in the viscera, although they are also found throughout the muscle tissue. When this fish is consumed by a predator, the mercury level is accumulated. Since fish are less efficient at depurating than accumulating methylmercury, fish-tissue concentrations increase over time. Thus species that are high on the food chain amass body burdens of mercury that can be ten times higher than the species they consume. This process is called biomagnification. Mercury poisoning happened this way in Minamata, Japan, now called Minamata disease.

Regulations

United States

In the United States, the Environmental Protection Agency is charged with regulating and managing mercury contamination. Several laws give the EPA this authority, including the Clean Air Act, the Clean Water Act, the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, and the Safe Drinking Water Act. Additionally, the Mercury-Containing and Rechargeable Battery Management Act, passed in 1996, phases out the use of mercury in batteries, and provides for the efficient and cost-effective disposal of many types of used batteries. North America contributed approximately 11% of the total global anthropogenic mercury emissions in 1995.

Nitrate (Measured as Nitrogen) - Inorganic Contaminant 10 mg/L MCL

EPA regulates nitrate in drinking water to protect public health. Nitrate may cause health problems if present in public or private water supplies in amounts greater than the drinking water standard set by EPA.

What is Nitrate?
Nitrates and nitrites are nitrogen-oxygen chemical units which combine with various organic and inorganic compounds.

Uses for Nitrate.
The greatest use of nitrates is as a fertilizer. Once taken into the body, nitrates are converted to nitrites.

What are Nitrate's Health Effects?
Infants below six months who drink water containing nitrate in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) could become seriously ill and, if untreated, may die. Symptoms include shortness of breath and blue baby syndrome.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for nitrate. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with nitrate in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Nitrate?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for nitrate is 10 mg/L or 10 ppm. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for nitrate, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 10 mg/L or 10 ppm. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase II Rule , the regulation for nitrate, became effective in 1992. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed nitrate as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 10 mg/L or 10 ppm MCLG and 10 mg/L or 10 ppm MCL for nitrate are still protective of human health.

States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for nitrate than EPA.

How does Nitrate get into my Drinking Water?

The major sources of nitrates in drinking water are runoff from fertilizer use; leaking from septic tanks, sewage; and erosion of natural deposits.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Nitrate is in my Drinking Water?

When routine monitoring indicates that nitrate levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of nitrate so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 24 hours after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How will nitrate be Removed from my Drinking Water?

The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing nitrate to below 10 mg/L or 10 ppm: ion exchange, reverse osmosis, electrodialysis.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?

EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

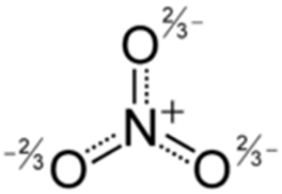
Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Nitrate Explained

The **nitrate ion** is a polyatomic ion with the molecular formula NO_3^- and a molecular mass of 62.0049 g/mol.

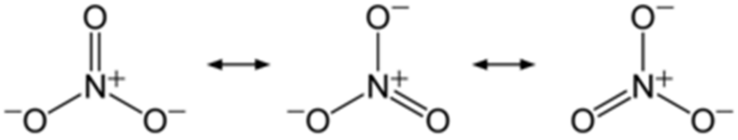
Structure

It is the conjugate base of nitric acid, consisting of one central nitrogen atom surrounded by three identically bonded oxygen atoms in a trigonal planar arrangement. The nitrate ion carries a formal charge of -1. This results from a combination formal charge in which each of the three oxygens carries a $-\frac{2}{3}$ charge, whereas the nitrogen carries a +1 charge, all these adding up to formal charge of the polyatomic nitrate ion.



The nitrate ion. The net charge of the whole ion is 1^-.

This arrangement is commonly used as an example of resonance. Like the isoelectronic carbonate ion, the nitrate ion can be represented by resonance structures:



Properties

Almost all inorganic nitrate salts are soluble in water at standard temperature and pressure. A common example of an inorganic nitrate salt is potassium nitrate (saltpeter).

In organic chemistry a nitrate (not to be confused with Nitro or Nitrite) is a relatively rare functional group with general chemical formula $RONO_2$ where R stands for any organic residue. They are the esters of nitric acid and alcohols formed by **nitroxylation**. Examples are **methyl nitrate** formed by reaction of methanol and nitric acid, the nitrate of tartaric acid, and the inaccurately named nitroglycerin (which is actually an organic *nitrate* compound, not a *nitro* compound).

Like organic nitro compounds (see below) both organic and inorganic nitrates can be used as propellants and explosives. In these uses, the thermal decomposition of the nitrate yields molecular nitrogen N_2 gas plus considerable chemical energy, due to the high strength of the bond in molecular nitrogen. Especially in inorganic nitrate reactions, oxidation from the nitrate oxygens is also an important energy-releasing process.

Occurrence

Nitrate compounds are found naturally on earth as large deposits, particularly of Chile saltpeter a major source of sodium nitrate.

Nitrites are produced by a number of species of nitrifying bacteria, and the nitrate compounds for gunpowder (see this topic for more) were historically produced, in the absence of mineral nitrate sources, by means of various fermentation processes using urine and dung.

Uses

Nitrates are mainly produced for use as fertilizers in agriculture because of their high solubility and biodegradability. The main nitrates are ammonium, sodium, potassium, and calcium salts. Several million kilograms are produced annually for this purpose.

Other Uses

The second major application of nitrates as oxidizing agents, most notably in explosives where the rapid oxidation of carbon compounds liberates large volumes of gases (see Gunpowder for an example). Sodium nitrate is used to remove air bubbles from molten glass and some ceramics. Mixtures of the molten salt are used to harden some metals.

Detection

Free nitrate ions in solution can be detected by a nitrate ion selective electrode. Such electroders analogously to the pH selective electrode. This response is partially described by the Nernst equation.

Toxicity/Toxicosis

Nitrate toxicosis can occur through enterohepatic metabolism of nitrate to nitrite being an intermediate. Nitrites oxidize the iron atoms in hemoglobin from ferrous iron (2+) to ferric iron (3+), rendering it unable to carry oxygen. This process can lead to generalized lack of oxygen in organ tissue and a dangerous condition called methemoglobinemia. Although nitrite converts to ammonia, if there is more nitrite than can be converted, the animal slowly suffers from a lack of oxygen.

Human Health Effects

Humans are subject to nitrate toxicity, with infants being especially vulnerable to methemoglobinemia due to nitrate metabolizing triglycerides present at higher concentrations than at other stages of development. Methemoglobinemia in infants is known as blue baby syndrome. Although nitrates in drinking water were once thought to be a contributing factor, there are now significant scientific doubts as to whether there is a causal link. Blue baby syndrome is now thought to be the product of a number of factors, which can include any factor which causes gastric upset, such as diarrheal infection, protein intolerance, heavy metal toxicity etc., with nitrates playing a minor role. Nitrates, if a factor in a specific case, would most often be ingested by infants in high nitrate drinking water. However, nitrate exposure may also occur if eating, for instance, vegetables containing high levels of nitrate. Lettuce may contain elevated nitrate under growth conditions such as reduced sunlight, undersupply of the essential micronutrients molybdenum (Mo) and iron (Fe), or high concentrations of nitrate due to reduced assimilation of nitrate in the plant. High levels of nitrate fertilization also contribute to elevated levels of nitrate in the harvested plant.

Some adults can be more susceptible to the effects of nitrate than others. The methemoglobin reductase enzyme may be under-produced or absent in certain people that have an inherited mutation. Such individuals cannot break down methemoglobin as rapidly as those that do have the enzyme, leading to increased circulating levels of methemoglobin (the implication being that their blood is not as oxygen-rich). Those with insufficient stomach acid (including some vegetarians and vegans) may also be at risk. It is the increased consumption of green, leafy vegetables that typically accompany these types of diets may lead to increased nitrate intake. A wide variety of medical conditions, including food allergies, asthma, hepatitis, and gallstones may be linked with low stomach acid; these individuals may also be highly sensitive to the effects of nitrate.

Methemoglobinemia can be treated with methylene blue, which reduces ferric iron (3+) in affected blood cells back to ferrous iron (2+).

Nitrate also is a by-product of septic systems. To be specific, it is a naturally occurring chemical that is left after the breakdown or decomposition of animal or human waste. Water quality may also be affected through ground water resources that have a high number of septic systems in a watershed. Septics leach down into ground water resources or aquifers and supply nearby bodies of water. Lakes that rely on ground water are often affected by nitrification through this process.

Nitrate in drinking water at levels above the national standard poses an immediate threat to young children. Excessive levels can result in a condition known as "blue baby syndrome". If untreated, the condition can be fatal. Boiling water contaminated with nitrate increases the nitrate concentration and the potential risk.

Nitrate Overview

HNO_3																	He
$LiNO_3$	$Be(NO_3)_2$											B	C	N	O	F	Ne
$NaNO_3$	$Mg(NO_3)_2$											$Al(NO_3)_3$	Si	P	S	$ClONO_2$	Ar
KNO_3	$Ca(NO_3)_2$	$Sc(NO_3)_3$	Ti	V	$Cr(NO_3)_3$	$Mn(NO_3)_2$	$Fe(NO_3)_3$	$Co(NO_3)_2$	$Ni(NO_3)_2$	$Cu(NO_3)_2$	$Zn(NO_3)_2$	Ga	Ge	As	Se	Br	Kr
$RbNO_3$	$Sr(NO_3)_2$	Y	Zr	Nb	Mo	Tc	Ru	Rh	$Pd(NO_3)_2$	$AgNO_3$	$Cd(NO_3)_2$	In	Sn	Sb	Te	Cl	Xe
$CsNO_3$	$Ba(NO_3)_2$		Hf	Ta	W	Re	Os	Ir	Pt	Au	$Hg(NO_3)_2$	Tl	$Pb(NO_3)_2$	Bi	Po	At	Rn
Fr	Ra		Rf	Db	Sg	Bh	Hs	Mt	Ds	Rg	Uub	Uut	Uuq	Uup	Uuh	Uus	Uuo

↓

La	Ce	Pr	Nd	Pm	Sm	Eu	$Gd(NO_3)_3$	Tb	Dy	Ho	Er	Tm	Yb	Lu
Ac	Th	Pa	$UO_2(NO_3)_2$	Np	Pu	Am	Cm	Bk	Cf	Es	Fm	Md	No	Lr

Nitrite (Measured as Nitrogen) - Inorganic Contaminant 1 mg/L MCL

EPA regulates nitrite in drinking water to protect public health. Nitrite may cause health problems if present in public or private water supplies in amounts greater than the drinking water standard set by EPA.

What is Nitrite?
Nitrates and nitrites are nitrogen-oxygen chemical units which combine with various organic and inorganic compounds.

Uses for Nitrite.
The greatest use of nitrates is as a fertilizer. Once taken into the body, nitrates are converted to nitrites.

What are Nitrite's Health Effects?
Infants below six months who drink water containing nitrite in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) could become seriously ill and, if untreated, may die. Symptoms include shortness of breath and blue baby syndrome.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for nitrite. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with nitrite in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Nitrite?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for nitrite is 1 mg/L or 1 ppm. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for nitrite, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 1 mg/L or 1 ppm. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase II Rule, the regulation for nitrite, became effective in 1992. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed nitrite as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 1 mg/L or 1 ppm MCLG and 1 mg/L or 1 ppm MCL for nitrite are still protective of human health. States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for nitrite than EPA.

How does Nitrite get into my Drinking Water?

The major sources of nitrite in drinking water are runoff from fertilizer use; leaching from septic tanks, sewage; and erosion of natural deposits.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals. For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Nitrite is in my Drinking Water?

When routine monitoring indicates that nitrite levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of nitrite so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 24 hours after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

If your water comes from a household well, check with your health department or local water systems that use ground water for information on contaminants of concern in your area.

How will Nitrite be removed from my Drinking Water?

The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing nitrite to below 1 mg/L or 1 ppm: ion exchange, reverse osmosis.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?

EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Nitrite Explained

The **nitrite** ion, which has the chemical formula NO_2^-, is a symmetric anion with equal N-O bond lengths and a O-N-O bond angle of approximately 120°. Upon protonation, the unstable weak acid nitrous acid is produced. Nitrite can be oxidized or reduced, with the product somewhat dependent on the oxidizing/reducing agent and its strength. The nitrite ion is an ambidentate ligand, and is known to bond to metal centers in at least five different ways. Nitrite is also important in biochemistry as a source of the potent vasodilator nitric oxide. In organic chemistry the NO_2 group is present in nitrous acid esters and nitro compounds. Nitrites are also used in the food production industry for curing meat.

The Nitrite Ion

Nitrite Salts

Sodium nitrite is made industrially by passing "nitrous fumes" into aqueous sodium hydroxide or sodium carbonate solution:

$$NO + NO_2 + 2NaOH \text{ (or } Na_2CO_3) \rightarrow 2NaNO_2 + H_2O \text{ (or } CO_2)$$

The product is purified by recrystallization. Alkali metal nitrites are thermally stable up to and beyond their melting point (441 °C for KNO_2). Ammonium nitrite can be made from dinitrogen trioxide, N_2O_3, which is formally the anhydride of nitrous acid:

$$2NH_3 + H_2O + N_2O_3 \rightarrow 2NH_4NO_2$$

This compound may decompose explosively on heating. In organic chemistry nitrites are used in diazotization reactions.

Structure

The nitrite ion has a symmetrical structure (C_{2v} symmetry), with both N-O bonds having equal length. In valence bond theory, it is described as a resonance hybrid with equal contributions from two canonical forms that are mirror images of each other. In molecular orbital theory, there is a sigma bond between each oxygen atom and the nitrogen atom, and a delocalized pi bond made from the p orbitals on nitrogen and oxygen atoms which is perpendicular to the plane of the molecule. The negative charge of the ion is equally distributed on the two oxygen atoms. Both nitrogen and oxygen atoms carry a lone pair of electrons. Therefore, the nitrite ion is a Lewis base. Moreover, it can act as an ambidentate ligand towards a metal ion, donating a pair of electrons from either nitrogen or oxygen atoms.

Acid-base Properties

In aqueous solution, nitrous acid is a weak acid:

$$HNO_2 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + NO_2^-;\ pK_a = \text{ca. } 3.3 \text{ at } 18\ °C$$

Nitrous acid is also highly volatile - in the gas phase it exists predominantly as a *trans*-planar molecule. In solution, it is unstable with respect to the disproportionation reaction:

$$3HNO_2\ (aq) \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + NO_3^- + 2NO$$

This reaction is slow at 0 °C. Addition of acid to a solution of a nitrite in the presence of a reducing agent, such as iron (II), is a way to make nitric oxide (NO) in the laboratory.

Oxidation and reduction

The formal oxidation state of the nitrogen atom in a nitrite is +3. This means that it is can be either oxidized to oxidation states +4 and +5, or reduced to oxidation states as low as -3. Standard reduction potentials for reactions directly involving nitrous acid are shown in the table below:

Half-reaction	**E^0/V**
$NO_3^- + 3H^+ + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons HNO_2 + H_2O$	+0.94
$2HNO_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^- \rightleftharpoons H_2N_2O_2 + 2H_2O$	+0.86
$N_2O_4 + 2H^+ + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons 2HNO_2$	+1.065
$2HNO_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^- \rightleftharpoons N_2O + 3H_2O$	+1.29

The data can be extended to include products in lower oxidation states. For example:

$H_2N_2O_2 + 2H^+ + 2e^- \rightleftharpoons N_2 + 2H_2O$; $E^0 = 2.65V$

Oxidation reactions usually result in the formation of the nitrate ion, with nitrogen in oxidation state +5. For example, oxidation with permanganate ion can be used for quantitative analysis of nitrite (by titration):

$5NO_2^- + 2MnO_4^- + 6H^+ \rightarrow 5NO_3^- + 2Mn^{2+} + 3H_2O$

The product of reduction reactions with nitrite ion are varied, depending on the reducing agent used and its strength. With sulfur dioxide, the products are NO and N_2O; with tin (II), Sn^{2+}, the product is hyponitrous acid, $H_2N_2O_2$; reduction all the way to ammonia ($NH_{3)}$ occurs with hydrogen sulfide. With the hydrazinium cation, $N_2H_5^+$, hydrogen azide, HN_3, an explosive compound, is produced:

$HNO_2 + N_2H_5^+ \rightarrow HN_3 + H_2O + H_3O^+$

which can also further react with nitrite:

$HNO_2 + HN_3 \rightarrow N_2O + N_2 + H_2O$

This reaction is unusual in that it involves compounds with nitrogen in four different oxidation states.

Coordination Complexes

The nitrite ion is known to form coordination complexes in at least five different ways.

1. When donation is from nitrogen to a metal center, the complex is known as a *nitro*-complex.
2. When donation is from one oxygen to a metal center, the complex is known as a *nitrito*-complex.
3. Both oxygen atoms may donate to a metal center, forming a chelate complex.
4. A nitrite ion can form an unsymmetrical bridge between two metal centers, donating through nitrogen to one metal, and through oxygen to the other.
5. A single oxygen atom can bridge to two metal centers.

Alfred Werner studied the nitro-nitrito isomerism (1 and 2) extensively. The red isomer of cobalt pentamine with nitrite is now known to be a nitrito complex, $[Co(NH_3)_5(ONO)]^{2+}$; it is metastable and isomerizes to the yellow nitro complex $[Co(NH_3)_5(NO_2)]^{2+}$. An example of chelating nitrite (3) was found in $[Cu(bipy)_2(O_2N)]NO_3$ - "bipy" is the bidentate ligand 2,2'bypyridyl, with the two bipy ligands occupying four coordination sites on the copper ion, so that the nitrite is forced to occupy two sites in order to achieve an octahedral environment around the copper ion.

Nitrite in Biochemistry

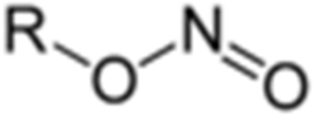
Sodium nitrite is used for the curing of meat because it prevents bacterial growth and, in a reaction with the meat's myoglobin, gives the product a desirable dark red color. Because of the relatively high toxicity of nitrite (the lethal dose in humans is about 22 milligrams per kilogram of body weight), the maximum allowed nitrite concentration in meat products is 200 ppm.

Under certain conditions - especially during cooking - nitrites in meat can react with degradation products of amino acids, forming nitrosamines, which are known carcinogens.

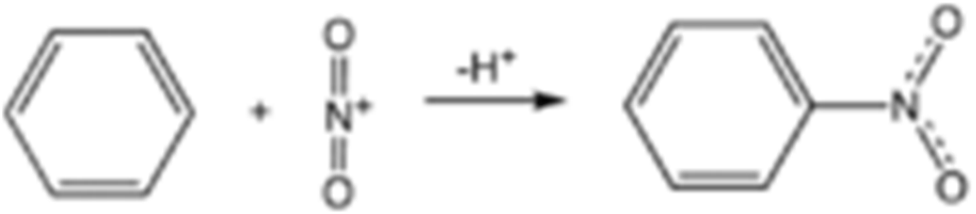
Nitrite is detected and analyzed by the Griess Reaction, involving the formation of a deep red-colored azo dye upon treatment of a NO_2^--containing sample with sulfanilic acid and naphthyl-1-amine in the presence of acid. Nitrite can be reduced to nitric oxide or ammonia by many species of bacteria.

Under hypoxic conditions, nitrite may release nitric oxide, which causes potent vasodilation. Several mechanisms for nitrite conversion to NO have been described, including enzymatic reduction by xanthine oxidoreductase, nitrite reductase, and NO synthase (NOS), as well as nonenzymatic acidic disproportionation reactions.

Organic Nitrites and Nitro Compounds



A Nitrite Ester



Aromatic Nitration

In organic chemistry, nitrites are esters of nitrous acid and contain the nitrosoxy functional group. Nitro compounds contain the C-NO_2 group. Nitrites have the general formula RONO, where R is an aryl or alkyl group. Nitrobenzene is a simple example of a nitro compound. In aromatic nitration reactions a C-H bond is broken, leaving the two electrons on the carbon atom. These two electrons are added to the nitronium ion, reducing it to nitrite.

Here is a wastewater Inspector is utilizing the auto sampler's manual to help adjust the time and adjust for the correct flow for a composite sample. You can see that she is pouring off the pickle jar. This inspector is also the course author.

Selenium- Inorganic Contaminant 0.05 mg/L MCL

Selenium (Se) is an essential element for human nutrition, with the majority of our intake coming from foods such as nuts, cereals, meat, fish, and eggs. The concentration of Selenium in drinking water is usually low, and comes from natural minerals. In soils, selenium often occurs in soluble forms such as selenate, which are leached into rivers very easily by runoff increasing the amount of selenium in groundwater. Selenium in water is also a by-product of copper mining / smelting. Selenium is also used in photoelectric devises because its electrical conductivity varies with light.

Naturally occurring selenium compounds have not been shown to be carcinogenic in animals. However, acute toxicity caused by high levels of selenium in water or other sources of intake has been observed in laboratory animals and in animals grazing in areas where high selenium levels exist in the soil. The US EPA has established the MCL for selenium in water at 0.05 mg/l.

What are selenium's health effects?
Some people who drink water containing selenium well in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) for many years could experience hair or fingernail losses, numbness in fingers or toes, or problems with their circulation.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for selenium. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with selenium in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's drinking water regulations for selenium?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for selenium is 0.05 mg/L or 50 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for selenium, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.05 mg/L or 50 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies. In this case, the MCL equals the MCLG, because analytical methods or treatment technology do not pose any limitation.

The Phase II Rule, the regulation for selenium, became effective in 1992. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed selenium as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.05 mg/L or 50 ppb MCLG and 0.05 mg/L or 50 ppb MCL for selenium are still protective of human health.

Selenium Water Treatment

Selenium contamination of water systems may result whenever new agricultural runoff courses through normally dry undeveloped lands. If you have high levels of selenium in your water the following are recommended selenium water treatment options. Anion exchange can reduce the amount of selenium in drinking water by 60 - 95%. Reverse Osmosis Systems are excellent at removing selenium in drinking water.

Selenium shows borderline metalloid or nonmetal behavior. Its most stable form, the grey trigonal allotrope, is sometimes called 'metallic' selenium. This is because its electrical conductivity is several orders of magnitude greater than that of the red monoclinic form.

The metallic character of selenium is further shown by the following properties:

- Its luster.
- Its crystalline structure, which is thought to include weakly 'metallic' interchain bonding.
- Its capacity, when molten, to be drawn into thin threads.
- Its reluctance to acquire 'the high positive oxidation numbers characteristic of nonmetals'.
- Its capacity to form cyclic polycations (such as Se2+ 8) when dissolved in oleums (an attribute it shares with sulfur and tellurium).
- The existence of a hydrolyzed cationic salt in the form of trihydroxoselenium (IV) perchlorate $[Se(OH)_3]^+$.ClO– 4.

The Non-metallic Character of Selenium is shown by:

- Its brittleness.
- Its electronic band structure, which is that of a semiconductor.
- The low electrical conductivity ($\sim 10^{-9}$ to 10^{-12} $S \cdot cm^{-1}$) of its highly purified form. This is comparable to or less than that of bromine (7.95×10^{-12} $S \cdot cm^{-1}$), a nonmetal.
- Its relatively high electronegativity (2.55 revised Pauling scale).
- The retention of its semiconducting properties in liquid form.
- Its reaction chemistry, which is mainly that of its nonmetallic anionic forms Se^{2-}, SeO2− 3 and SeO2− 4.

Selenium Explained

Selenium is a chemical element with symbol **Se** and atomic number 34. It is a nonmetal with properties that are intermediate between those of its periodic table column-adjacent chalcogen elements sulfur and tellurium. It rarely occurs in its elemental state in nature, or as pure ore compounds. Selenium (Greek σελήνη *selene* meaning "Moon") was discovered in 1817 by Jöns Jakob Berzelius, who noted the similarity of the new element to the previously-known tellurium (named for the Earth).

Selenium is found impurely in metal sulfide ores, where it partially replaces the sulfur. Commercially, selenium is produced as a byproduct in the refining of these ores, most often during copper production.
Minerals that are pure selenide or selenate compounds are known, but are rare. The chief commercial uses for selenium today are in glassmaking and in pigments. Selenium is a semiconductor and is used in photocells. Uses in electronics, once important, have been mostly supplanted by silicon semiconductor devices. Selenium continues to be used in a few types of DC power surge protectors and one type of fluorescent quantum dot.

Selenium salts are toxic in large amounts, but trace amounts are necessary for cellular function in many organisms, including all animals. Selenium is a component of the antioxidant enzymes glutathione peroxidase and thioredoxin reductase (which indirectly reduce certain oxidized molecules in animals and some plants). It is also found in three deiodinase enzymes, which convert one thyroid hormone to another. Selenium requirements in plants differ by species, with some plants requiring relatively large amounts, and others apparently requiring none.

Characteristics

Physical Properties

Selenium exists in several allotropes that interconvert upon heating and cooling carried out at different temperatures and rates. As prepared in chemical reactions, selenium is usually amorphous, brick-red powder. When rapidly melted, it forms the black, vitreous form, which is usually sold industrially as beads. The structure of black selenium is irregular and complex and consists of polymeric rings with up to 1000 atoms per ring. Black Se is a brittle, lustrous solid that is slightly soluble in CS_2. Upon heating, it softens at 50 °C and converts to gray selenium at 180 °C; the transformation temperature is reduced by presence of halogens and amines.

The red-colored α, β and γ forms are produced from solutions of black selenium by varying evaporation rates of the solvent (usually CS_2). They all have relatively low, monoclinic crystal symmetries and contain nearly identical puckered Se_8 rings arranged in different fashions, as in sulfur. The packing is most dense in the α form. In the Se_8 rings, the Se-Se distance is 233.5 pm and Se-Se-Se angle is 105.7 degrees. Other selenium allotropes may contain Se_6 or Se_7 rings.

The most stable and dense form of selenium has a gray color and hexagonal crystal lattice consisting of helical polymeric chains, wherein the Se-Se distance is 237.3 pm and Se-Se-Se angle is 130.1 degrees. The minimum distance between chains is 343.6 pm. Gray Se is formed by mild heating of other allotropes, by slow cooling of molten Se, or by condensing Se vapors just below the melting point. Whereas other Se forms are insulators, gray Se is a semiconductor showing appreciable photoconductivity. Contrary to other allotropes, it is unsoluble in CS_2. It resists oxidation by air and is not attacked by non-oxidizing acids. With strong reducing agents, it forms polyselenides. Selenium does not exhibit the unusual changes in viscosity that sulfur undergoes when gradually heated.

Isotopes

Selenium has six naturally occurring isotopes, five of which are stable: ^{74}Se, ^{76}Se, ^{77}Se, ^{78}Se, and ^{80}Se. The last three also occur as fission products, along with ^{79}Se, which has a half-life of 327,000 years. The final naturally occurring isotope, ^{82}Se, has a very long half-life (~10^{20} yr, decaying via double beta decay to ^{82}Kr), which, for practical purposes, can be considered to be stable. Twenty-three other unstable isotopes have been characterized.

See also Selenium-79 for more information on recent changes in the measured half-life of this long-lived fission product, important for the dose calculations performed in the frame of the geological disposal of long-lived radioactive waste.

Chemical Compounds

Selenium compounds commonly exist in the oxidation states −2, +2, +4, and +6.

Chalcogen Compounds

Selenium forms two oxides: selenium dioxide (SeO_2) and selenium trioxide (SeO_3). Selenium dioxide is formed by the reaction of elemental selenium with oxygen:

$$Se_8 + 8\ O_2 \rightarrow 8\ SeO_2$$

It is a polymeric solid that forms monomeric SeO_2 molecules in the gas phase. It dissolves in water to form selenous acid, H_2SeO_3. Selenous acid can also be made directly by oxidizing elemental selenium with nitric acid:

$$3\ Se + 4\ HNO_3 + H_2O \rightarrow 3\ H_2SeO_3 + 4\ NO$$

Unlike sulfur, which forms a stable trioxide, selenium trioxide is thermodynamically unstable and decomposes to the dioxide above 185 °C:

$$2\ SeO_3 \rightarrow 2\ SeO_2 + O_2\ (\Delta H = -54\ \text{kJ/mol})$$

Selenium trioxide is produced in the laboratory by the reaction of anhydrous potassium selenate (K_2SeO_4) and sulfur trioxide (SO_3).

Salts of selenous acid are called *selenites*. These include silver selenite (Ag_2SeO_3) and sodium selenite (Na_2SeO_3).

Hydrogen sulfide reacts with aqueous selenous acid to produce selenium disulfide:

$$H_2SeO_3 + 2\ H_2S \rightarrow SeS_2 + 3\ H_2O$$

Selenium disulfide consists of 8-membered rings of a nearly statistical distribution of sulfur and selenium atoms. It has an approximate composition of SeS_2, with individual rings varying in composition, such as Se_4S_4 and Se_2S_6. Selenium disulfide has been use in shampoo as an anti-dandruff agent, an inhibitor in polymer chemistry, a glass dye, and a reducing agent in fireworks.
Selenium trioxide may be synthesized by dehydrating selenic acid, H_2SeO_4, which is itself produced by the oxidation of selenium dioxide with hydrogen peroxide:

$$SeO_2 + H_2O_2 \rightarrow H_2SeO_4$$

Hot, concentrated selenic acid is capable of dissolving gold, forming gold(III) selenate.

Halogen Compounds

Iodides of selenium are not well known. The only stable chloride is selenium monochloride (Se_2Cl_2), which might be better known as selenium(I) chloride; the corresponding bromide is also known. These species are structurally analogous to the corresponding disulfur dichloride. Selenium dichloride is an important reagent in the preparation of selenium compounds (e.g. the preparation of Se_7). It is prepared by treating selenium with sulfuryl chloride (SO_2Cl_2). Selenium reacts with fluorine to form selenium hexafluoride:

$$Se_8 + 24\ F_2 \rightarrow 8\ SeF_6$$

In comparison with its sulfur counterpart (sulfur hexafluoride), selenium hexafluoride (SeF_6) is more reactive and is a toxic pulmonary irritant. Some of the selenium oxyhalides, such as selenium oxyfluoride ($SeOF_2$) and selenium oxychloride ($SeOCl_2$) have been used as specialty solvents.

Selenides

Analogous to the behavior of other chalcogens, selenium forms a dihydride H_2Se. It is a strongly odiferous, toxic, and colorless gas. It is more acidic than H_2S. In solution it ionizes to HSe^-. The selenide dianion Se^{2-} forms a variety of compounds, including the minerals from which selenium is obtained commercially. Illustrative selenides include mercury selenide (HgSe), lead selenide (PbSe), zinc selenide (ZnSe), and copper indium gallium diselenide ($Cu(Ga, In)Se_2$). These materials are semiconductors. With highly electropositive metals, such as aluminum, these selenides are prone to hydrolysis:

$$Al_2Se_3 + 6\ H_2O \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6\ H_2Se$$

Alkali metal selenides react with selenium to form polyselenides, Se2−x, which exist as chains.

Other Compounds

Tetraselenium tetranitride, Se_4N_4, is an explosive orange compound analogous to tetrasulfur tetranitride (S_4N_4). It can be synthesized by the reaction of selenium tetrachloride ($SeCl_4$) with $[((CH_3)_3Si)_2N]_2Se$.

Selenium reacts with cyanides to yield selenocyanates:

$$8\ KCN + Se_8 \rightarrow 8\ KSeCN$$

Organoselenium Compounds

Selenium, especially in the II oxidation state, forms stable bonds to carbon, which are structurally analogous to the corresponding organosulfur compounds. Especially common are selenides (R_2Se, analogues of thioethers), diselenides (R_2Se_2, analogues of disulfides), and selenols (RSeH, analogues of thiols). Representatives of selenides, diselenides, and selenols include respectively selenomethionine, diphenyldiselenide, and benzeneselenol. The sulfoxide in sulfur chemistry is represented in selenium chemistry by the selenoxides (formula RSe(O)R), which are intermediates in organic synthesis, as illustrated by the selenoxide elimination reaction. Consistent with trends indicated by the double bond rule, selenoketones, R(C=Se)R, and selenaldehydes, R(C=Se)H, are rarely observed.

History

Selenium (Greek σελήνη *selene* meaning "Moon") was discovered in 1817 by Jöns Jakob Berzelius and Johan Gottlieb Gahn. Both chemists owned a chemistry plant near Gripsholm, Sweden producing sulfuric acid by the lead chamber process. The pyrite from the Falun mine created a red precipitate in the lead chambers which was presumed to be an arsenic compound, and so the pyrite's use to make acid was discontinued. Berzelius and Gahn wanted to use the pyrite and they also observed that the red precipitate gave off a smell like horseradish when burned. This smell was not typical of arsenic, but a similar odor was known from tellurium compounds. Hence, Berzelius's first letter to Alexander Marcet stated that this was a tellurium compound. However, the lack of tellurium compounds in the Falun mine minerals eventually led Berzelius to reanalyze the red precipitate, and in 1818 he wrote a second letter to Marcet describing a newly found element similar to sulfur and tellurium. Because of its similarity to tellurium, named for the Earth, Berzelius named the new element after the Moon.

In 1873, Willoughby Smith found that the electrical resistance of grey selenium was dependent on the ambient light. This led to its use as a cell for sensing light. The first of commercial products using selenium were developed by Werner Siemens in the mid-1870s. The selenium cell was used in the photophone developed by Alexander Graham Bell in 1879. Selenium transmits an electric current proportional to the amount of light falling on its surface. This phenomenon was used in the design of light meters and similar devices. Selenium's semiconductor properties found numerous other applications in electronics. The development of selenium rectifiers began during the early 1930s, and these replaced copper oxide rectifiers because of their superior efficiencies. These lasted in commercial applications until the 1970s, following which they were replaced with less expensive and even more efficient silicon rectifiers.

Selenium came to medical notice later because of its toxicity to human beings working in industries.

Selenium was also recognized as an important veterinary toxin, which is seen in animals that have eaten high-selenium plants. In 1954, the first hints of specific biological functions of selenium were discovered in microorganisms. Its essentiality for mammalian life was discovered in 1957. In the 1970s, it was shown to be present in two independent sets of enzymes. This was followed by the discovery of selenocysteine in proteins.

Occurrence

Native (i.e., elemental) selenium is a rare mineral, which does not usually form good crystals, but, when it does, they are steep rhombohedra or tiny acicular (hair-like) crystals. Isolation of selenium is often complicated by the presence of other compounds and elements.

Selenium occurs naturally in a number of inorganic forms, including selenide-, selenate-, and selenite-containing minerals, but these minerals are rare. The common mineral selenite is *not* a selenium mineral, and contains no selenite ion, but is rather a type of gypsum (calcium sulfate hydrate) named like selenium for the moon well before the discovery of selenium. Selenium is most commonly found quite impurely, replacing a small part of the sulfur in sulfide ores of many metals.

In living systems, selenium is found in the amino acids selenomethionine, selenocysteine, and methylselenocysteine. In these compounds, selenium plays a role analogous to that of sulfur. Another naturally occurring organoselenium compound is dimethyl selenide.

Certain solids are selenium-rich, and selenium can be bioconcentrated by certain plants. In soils, selenium most often occurs in soluble forms such as selenate (analogous to sulfate), which are leached into rivers very easily by runoff.

Ocean water contains significant amounts of selenium.
Anthropogenic sources of selenium include coal burning and the mining and smelting of sulfide ores.

Production

Selenium is most commonly produced from selenide in many sulfide ores, such as those of copper, silver, or lead. Electrolytic metal refining is particularly conducive to producing selenium as a byproduct, and it is obtained from the anode mud of copper refineries. Another source was the mud from the lead chambers of sulfuric acid plants but this method to produce sulfuric acid is no longer used.

These muds can be processed by a number of means to obtain selenium. However, most elemental selenium comes as a byproduct of refining copper or producing sulfuric acid.

Since the invention of solvent extraction and electrowinning (SX/EW) for the production of copper this method takes an increasing share of the world wide copper production. This changes the availability of selenium because only a comparably small part of the selenium in the ore is leached together with the copper.

Industrial production of selenium usually involves the extraction of selenium dioxide from residues obtained during the purification of copper. Common production from the residue then begins by oxidation with sodium carbonate to produce selenium dioxide. The selenium dioxide is then mixed with water and the solution is acidified to form selenous acid (oxidation step). Selenous acid is bubbled with sulfur dioxide (reduction step) to give elemental selenium.

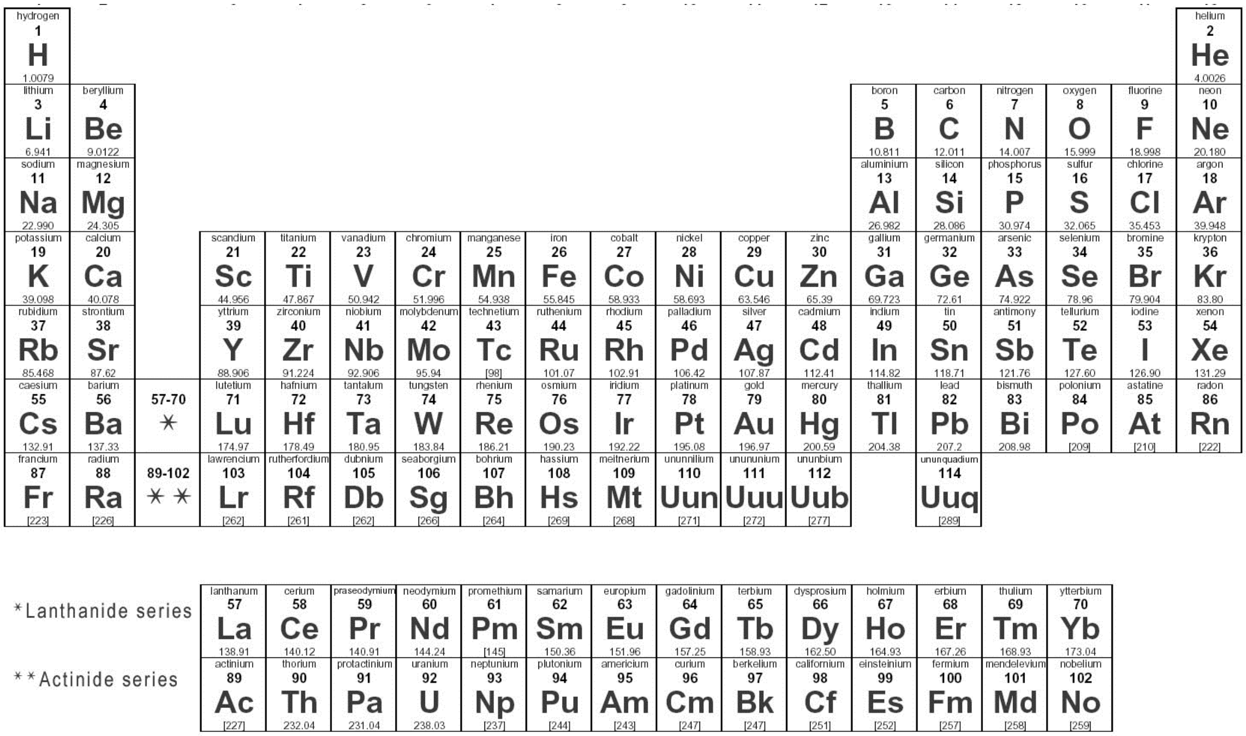
Toxicity

Although selenium is an essential trace element, it is toxic if taken in excess. Exceeding the Tolerable Upper Intake Level of 400 micrograms per day can lead to selenosis. This 400 microgram (µg) Tolerable Upper Intake Level is based primarily on a 1986 study of five Chinese patients who exhibited overt signs of selenosis and a follow up study on the same five people in 1992.

The 1992 study actually found the maximum safe dietary Se intake to be approximately 800 micrograms per day (15 micrograms per kilogram body weight), but suggested 400 micrograms per day to not only avoid toxicity, but also to avoid creating an imbalance of nutrients in the diet and to account for data from other countries. In China, people who ingested corn grown in extremely selenium-rich stony coal (carbonaceous shale) have suffered from selenium toxicity. This coal was shown to have selenium content as high as 9.1%, the highest concentration in coal ever recorded in literature.

Symptoms of selenosis include a garlic odor on the breath, gastrointestinal disorders, hair loss, sloughing of nails, fatigue, irritability, and neurological damage. Extreme cases of selenosis can result in cirrhosis of the liver, pulmonary edema, and death. Elemental selenium and most metallic selenides have relatively low toxicities because of their low bioavailability. By contrast, selenates and selenites are very toxic, having an oxidant mode of action similar to that of arsenic trioxide. The chronic toxic dose of selenite for humans is about 2400 to 3000 micrograms of selenium per day for a long time. Hydrogen selenide is an extremely toxic, corrosive gas. Selenium also occurs in organic compounds, such as dimethyl selenide, selenomethionine, selenocysteine and methylselenocysteine, all of which have high bioavailability and are toxic in large doses.

In fish and other wildlife, low levels of selenium cause deficiency while high levels cause toxicity. For example, in salmon, the optimal concentration of selenium in the fish tissue (whole body) is about 1 microgram selenium per gram of tissue (dry weight). At levels much below that concentration, young salmon die from selenium deficiency; much above that level they die from toxic excess.



hydrogen 1 H 1.0079																		helium 2 He 4.0026
lithium 3 Li 6.941	beryllium 4 Be 9.0122												boron 5 B 10.811	carbon 6 C 12.011	nitrogen 7 N 14.007	oxygen 8 O 15.999	fluorine 9 F 18.998	neon 10 Ne 20.180
sodium 11 Na 22.990	magnesium 12 Mg 24.305												aluminium 13 Al 26.982	silicon 14 Si 28.086	phosphorus 15 P 30.974	sulfur 16 S 32.065	chlorine 17 Cl 35.453	argon 18 Ar 39.948
potassium 19 K 39.098	calcium 20 Ca 40.078		scandium 21 Sc 44.956	titanium 22 Ti 47.867	vanadium 23 V 50.942	chromium 24 Cr 51.996	manganese 25 Mn 54.938	iron 26 Fe 55.845	cobalt 27 Co 58.933	nickel 28 Ni 58.693	copper 29 Cu 63.546	zinc 30 Zn 65.39	gallium 31 Ga 69.723	germanium 32 Ge 72.61	arsenic 33 As 74.922	selenium 34 Se 78.96	bromine 35 Br 79.904	krypton 36 Kr 83.80
rubidium 37 Rb 85.468	strontium 38 Sr 87.62		yttrium 39 Y 88.906	zirconium 40 Zr 91.224	niobium 41 Nb 92.906	molybdenum 42 Mo 95.94	technetium 43 Tc [98]	ruthenium 44 Ru 101.07	rhodium 45 Rh 102.91	palladium 46 Pd 106.42	silver 47 Ag 107.87	cadmium 48 Cd 112.41	indium 49 In 114.82	tin 50 Sn 118.71	antimony 51 Sb 121.76	tellurium 52 Te 127.60	iodine 53 I 126.90	xenon 54 Xe 131.29
caesium 55 Cs 132.91	barium 56 Ba 137.33	57-70 *	lutetium 71 Lu 174.97	hafnium 72 Hf 178.49	tantalum 73 Ta 180.95	tungsten 74 W 183.84	rhenium 75 Re 186.21	osmium 76 Os 190.23	iridium 77 Ir 192.22	platinum 78 Pt 195.08	gold 79 Au 196.97	mercury 80 Hg 200.59	thallium 81 Tl 204.38	lead 82 Pb 207.2	bismuth 83 Bi 208.98	polonium 84 Po [209]	astatine 85 At [210]	radon 86 Rn [222]
francium 87 Fr [223]	radium 88 Ra [226]	89-102 * *	lawrencium 103 Lr [262]	rutherfordium 104 Rf [261]	dubnium 105 Db [262]	seaborgium 106 Sg [266]	bohrium 107 Bh [264]	hassium 108 Hs [269]	meitnerium 109 Mt [268]	ununnilium 110 Uun [271]	unununium 111 Uuu [272]	ununbium 112 Uub [277]		ununquadium 114 Uuq [289]				

*Lanthanide series	lanthanum 57 La 138.91	cerium 58 Ce 140.12	praseodymium 59 Pr 140.91	neodymium 60 Nd 144.24	promethium 61 Pm [145]	samarium 62 Sm 150.36	europium 63 Eu 151.96	gadolinium 64 Gd 157.25	terbium 65 Tb 158.93	dysprosium 66 Dy 162.50	holmium 67 Ho 164.93	erbium 68 Er 167.26	thulium 69 Tm 168.93	ytterbium 70 Yb 173.04
* *Actinide series	actinium 89 Ac [227]	thorium 90 Th 232.04	protactinium 91 Pa 231.04	uranium 92 U 238.03	neptunium 93 Np [237]	plutonium 94 Pu [244]	americium 95 Am [243]	curium 96 Cm [247]	berkelium 97 Bk [247]	californium 98 Cf [251]	einsteinium 99 Es [252]	fermium 100 Fm [257]	mendelevium 101 Md [258]	nobelium 102 No [259]

Thallium- Inorganic Contaminant 0.002 mg/L MCL

Thallium is a metal found in natural deposits such as ores containing other elements.

Uses for Thallium.
The greatest use of thallium is in specialized electronic research equipment.

What are Thallium's Health Effects?
Some people who drink water containing thallium well in excess of the maximum contaminant level (MCL) for many years could experience hair loss, changes in their blood, or problems with their kidneys, intestines, or liver problems.

This health effects language is not intended to catalog all possible health effects for thallium. Rather, it is intended to inform consumers of some of the possible health effects associated with thallium in drinking water when the rule was finalized.

What are EPA's Drinking Water Regulations for Thallium?
In 1974, Congress passed the Safe Drinking Water Act. This law requires EPA to determine the level of contaminants in drinking water at which no adverse health effects are likely to occur. These non-enforceable health goals, based solely on possible health risks and exposure over a lifetime with an adequate margin of safety, are called maximum contaminant level goals (MCLG). Contaminants are any physical, chemical, biological or radiological substances or matter in water.

The MCLG for thallium is 0.0005 mg/L or 0.5 ppb. EPA has set this level of protection based on the best available science to prevent potential health problems. EPA has set an enforceable regulation for thallium, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), at 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb. MCLs are set as close to the health goals as possible, considering cost, benefits and the ability of public water systems to detect and remove contaminants using suitable treatment technologies.

The Phase V Rule, the regulation for thallium, became effective in 1994. The Safe Drinking Water Act requires EPA to periodically review the national primary drinking water regulation for each contaminant and revise the regulation, if appropriate. EPA reviewed thallium as part of the Six Year Review and determined that the 0.0005 mg/L or 0.5 ppb MCLG and 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb MCL for thallium are still protective of human health. States may set more stringent drinking water MCLGs and MCLs for thallium than EPA.

How does Thallium get into my Drinking Water?
The major sources of thallium in drinking water are leaching from ore-processing sites; and discharge from electronics, glass, and drug factories.

A federal law called the Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (EPCRA) requires facilities in certain industries, which manufacture, process, or use significant amounts of toxic chemicals, to report annually on their releases of these chemicals.
For more information on the uses and releases of chemicals in your state, contact the Community Right-to-Know Hotline: (800) 424-9346.

How will I know if Thallium is in my Drinking Water?
When routine monitoring indicates that thallium levels are above the MCL, your water supplier must take steps to reduce the amount of thallium so that it is below that level. Water suppliers must notify their customers as soon as practical, but no later than 30 days after the system learns of the violation. Additional actions, such as providing alternative drinking water supplies, may be required to prevent serious risks to public health.

How will Thallium be Removed from my Drinking Water?
The following treatment method(s) have proven to be effective for removing thallium to below 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb: activated alumina; ion exchange.

How do I learn more about my Drinking Water?
EPA strongly encourages people to learn more about their drinking water, and to support local efforts to protect the supply of safe drinking water and upgrade the community water system. Your water bill or telephone book's government listings are a good starting point for local information.

Contact your water utility. EPA requires all community water systems to prepare and deliver an annual consumer confidence report (CCR) (sometimes called a water quality report) for their customers by July 1 of each year. If your water provider is not a community water system, or if you have a private water supply, request a copy from a nearby community water system.

Thallium Explained

Thallium is a chemical element with symbol **Tl** and atomic number 81. This soft gray poor metal is not found free in nature. When isolated, it resembles tin, but discolors when exposed to air. Chemists William Crookes and Claude-Auguste Lamy discovered thallium independently in 1861, in residues of sulfuric acid production. Both used the newly developed method of flame spectroscopy, in which thallium produces a notable green spectral line. Thallium, from Greek *θαλλός*, *thallos*, meaning "a green shoot or twig," was named by Crookes. It was isolated by electrolysis a year later, by Lamy.

Thallium tends to oxidize to the +3 and +1 oxidation states as ionic salts. The +3 state resembles that of the other elements in thallium's group (boron, aluminum, gallium, indium). However, the +1 state, which is far more prominent in thallium than the elements above it, recalls the chemistry of alkali metals, and thallium(I) ions are found geologically mostly in potassium-based ores, and (when ingested) are handled in many ways like potassium ions (K^+) by ion pumps in living cells.

Commercially, however, thallium is produced not from potassium ores, but as a byproduct from refining of heavy metal sulfide ores. Approximately 60–70% of thallium production is used in the electronics industry, and the remainder is used in the pharmaceutical industry and in glass manufacturing. It is also used in infrared detectors. The radioisotope thallium-201 (as the soluble chloride TlCl) is used in small, nontoxic amounts as an agent in a nuclear medicine scan, during one type of nuclear cardiac stress test.

Soluble thallium salts (many of which are nearly tasteless) are highly toxic in quantity, and were historically used in rat poisons and insecticides. Use of these compounds has been restricted or banned in many countries, because of their nonselective toxicity. Thallium poisoning notably results in hair loss. Because of its historic popularity as a murder weapon, thallium has gained notoriety as "the poisoner's poison" and "inheritance powder" (alongside arsenic).

Characteristics

Thallium is extremely soft, malleable and sectile enough to be cut with a knife at room temperature. It has a metallic luster that, when exposed to air, quickly tarnishes to a bluish-gray tinge, resembling lead. It may be preserved by immersion in oil. A heavy layer of oxide builds up on thallium if left in air. In the presence of water, thallium hydroxide is formed. Sulfuric and nitric acid dissolve thallium rapidly to make the sulfate and nitrate salts, while hydrochloric acid forms an insoluble thallium(I) chloride layer. Its standard electrode potential is −0.34, slightly higher than the potential for iron (at −0.44).

Isotopes

Thallium has 25 isotopes which have atomic masses that range from 184 to 210. ^{203}Tl and ^{205}Tl are the only stable isotopes, and ^{204}Tl is the most stable radioisotope, with a half-life of 3.78 years.

^{202}Tl (half-life 12.23 days) can be made in a cyclotron, while ^{204}Tl is made by the neutron activation of stable thallium in a nuclear reactor.

^{201}Tl (half-life 73 hrs), decays by electron capture, emitting Hg X-rays (~70–80 keV), and photons of 135 and 167 keV in 10% total abundance; therefore it has good imaging characteristics without excessive patient radiation dose. It is the most popular isotope used for thallium nuclear cardiac stress tests.

^{208}Tl (half-life 3.05 minutes) is generated in the naturally-occurring thorium decay chain. Its prominent 2615 keV gamma ray is the dominant high-energy feature observed in natural background radiation.

Chemistry

The two main oxidation states of thallium are +1 and +3. In the oxidation state +1 most compounds closely resemble the corresponding potassium or silver compounds (the ionic radius of thallium(I) is 1.47 Å while that of potassium is 1.33 Å and that of silver is 1.26 Å), which was the reason why thallium was sometimes considered to be an alkali metal in Europe (but not in England) in the years immediately following its discovery.[:126] For example, the water-soluble and very basic thallium(I) hydroxide reacts with carbon dioxide forming water-soluble thallium carbonate. This carbonate is the only water soluble heavy metal carbonate. The similarity with silver compounds is observed with the halide, oxide, and sulfide compounds. Thallium(I) bromide is a photosensitive yellow compound very similar to the silver bromide, while the black thallium(I) oxide and thallium(I) sulfide are very similar to the silver oxide and silver sulfide.

The compounds with oxidation state +3 resemble the corresponding aluminum (III) compounds. They are moderately strong oxidizing agents, as illustrated by the reduction potential of +0.72 volts for $Tl^{3+} + 3\ e^{-} \rightarrow Tl(s)$. The thallium(III) oxide is a black solid which decomposes above 800 °C, forming the thallium(I) oxide and oxygen.

History

Thallium (Greek *θαλλός*, *thallos*, meaning "a green shoot or twig") was discovered by flame spectroscopy in 1861. The name comes from thallium's bright green spectral emission lines.

After the publication of the improved method of flame spectroscopy by Robert Bunsen and Gustav Kirchhoff and the discovery of caesium and rubidium in the years 1859 to 1860, flame spectroscopy became an approved method to determine the composition of minerals and chemical products.

William Crookes and Claude-Auguste Lamy both started to use the new method. William Crookes used it to make spectroscopic determinations for tellurium on selenium compounds deposited in the lead chamber of a sulfuric acid production plant near Tilkerode in the Harz mountains. He had obtained the samples for his research on selenium cyanide from August Hofmann years earlier. By 1862, Crookes was able to isolate small quantities of the new element and determine the properties of a few compounds. Claude-Auguste Lamy used a spectrometer that was similar to Crookes' to determine the composition of a selenium-containing substance which was deposited during the production of sulfuric acid from pyrite. He also noticed the new green line in the spectra and concluded that a new element was present. Lamy had received this material from the sulfuric acid plant of his friend Fréd Kuhlmann and this by-product was available in large quantities. Lamy started to isolate the new element from that source.

The fact that Lamy was able to work ample quantities of thallium enabled him to determine the properties of several compounds and in addition he prepared a small ingot of metallic thallium which he prepared by remelting thallium he had obtained by electrolysis of thallium salts.

As both scientists discovered thallium independently and a large part of the work, especially the isolation of the metallic thallium was done by Lamy, Crookes tried to secure his priority on the work. Lamy was awarded a medal at the International Exhibition in London 1862: *For the discovery of a new and abundant source of thallium* and after heavy protest Crookes also received a medal: *thallium, for the discovery of the new element.* The controversy between both scientists continued through 1862 and 1863. Most of the discussion ended after Crookes was elected Fellow of the Royal Society in June 1863.

The dominant use of thallium was the use as poison for rodents. After several accidents the use as poison was banned in the United States by the Presidential Executive Order 11643 in February 1972. In the subsequent years several other countries also banned the use.

Occurrence and Production

Although thallium is a modestly abundant element in the Earth's crust, with a concentration estimated to be about 0.7 mg/kg, mostly in association with potassium-based minerals in clays, soils, and granites, thallium is not generally economically recoverable from these sources. The major source of thallium for practical purposes is the trace amount that is found in copper, lead, zinc, and other heavy-metal-sulfide ores.

Thallium is found in the minerals crookesite $TlCu_7Se_4$, hutchinsonite $TlPbAs_5S_9$, and lorandite $TlAsS_2$. Thallium also occurs as a trace element in iron pyrite, and thallium is extracted as a by-product of roasting this mineral for the production of sulfuric acid.

Thallium can also be obtained from the smelting of lead and zinc ores. Manganese nodules found on the ocean floor also contain some thallium, but the collection of these nodules has been and continues to be prohibitively expensive.

There is also the potential for damaging the environment of the oceans. In addition, several other thallium minerals, containing 16% to 60% thallium, occur in nature as complexes of sulfides or selenides that primarily contain antimony, arsenic, copper, lead, and/or silver. However, these minerals are rare, and they have had no commercial importance as sources of thallium. The Allchar deposit in southern Macedonia was the only area where thallium was ever actively mined. This deposit still contains a loosely estimated 500 tons of thallium, and it is a source for several rare thallium minerals, for example lorandite.

The United States Geological Survey (USGS) estimates that the annual worldwide production of thallium is about 10 metric tons as a by-product from the smelting of copper, zinc, and lead ores. Thallium is either extracted from the dusts from the smelter flues or from residues such as slag that are collected at the end of the smelting process. The raw materials used for thallium production contain large amounts of other materials and therefore a purification is the first step.

The thallium is leached either by the use of a base or sulfuric acid from the material. The thallium is several times precipitated from the solution and to remove further impurities. At the end it is converted to thallium sulfate and the thallium is extracted by electrolysis on platinum or stainless steel plates. The production of thallium decreased by about 33% in the period from 1995 to 2009 – from about 15 metric tons to about 10 tons. Since there are several small deposits or ores with relatively high thallium content, it would be possible to increase the production of it if a new application, such as a hypothetical thallium-containing high-temperature superconductor, becomes practical for widespread use outside of the laboratory.

Applications

Historic Uses

The odorless and tasteless thallium sulfate was once widely used as rat poison and ant killer. Since 1972 this use has been prohibited in the United States due to safety concerns. Many other countries followed this example in the following years. Thallium salts were used in the treatment of ringworm, other skin infections and to reduce the night sweating of tuberculosis patients. However this use has been limited due to their narrow therapeutic index, and the development of more-advanced medicines for these conditions.

Optics

Thallium(I) bromide and thallium(I) iodide crystals have been used as infrared optical materials, because they are harder than other common infrared optics, and because they have transmission at significantly longer wavelengths. The trade name KRS-5 refers to this material.

Thallium(I) oxide has been used to manufacture glasses that have a high index of refraction. Combined with sulfur or selenium and arsenic, thallium has been used in the production of high-density glasses that have low melting points in the range of 125 and 150 °C. These glasses have room temperature properties that are similar to ordinary glasses and are durable, insoluble in water and have unique refractive indices.

Electronics

Thallium(I) sulfide's electrical conductivity changes with exposure to infrared light therefore making this compound useful in photoresistors. Thallium selenide has been used in a bolometer for infrared detection. Doping selenium semiconductors with thallium improves their performance, and therefore it is used in trace amounts in selenium rectifiers. Another application of thallium doping is the sodium iodide crystals in gamma radiation detection devices.

In these, the sodium iodide crystals are doped with a small amount of thallium to improve their efficiency as scintillation generators. Some of the electrodes in dissolved oxygen analyzers contain thallium.

High-Temperature Superconductivity

Research activity with thallium is ongoing to develop high-temperature superconducting materials for such applications as magnetic resonance imaging, storage of magnetic energy, magnetic propulsion, and electric power generation and transmission. The research in applications started after the discovery of the first thallium barium calcium copper oxide superconductor in 1988.

Other Uses

A mercury-thallium alloy, which forms a eutectic at 8.5% thallium, is reported to freeze at −60 °C, some 20 °C below the freezing point of mercury. This alloy is used in thermometers and low-temperature switches. In organic synthesis thallium(III) salts, as thallium trinitrate or triacetate, are useful reagents performing different transformations in aromatics, ketones, olefins, among others. Thallium is a constituent of the alloy in the anode plates in magnesium seawater batteries. Soluble thallium salts are added to gold plating baths to increase the speed of plating and to reduce grain size within the gold layer.

The saturated solution of equal parts of thallium(I) formate ($Tl(CHO_2)$) and thallium(I) malonate ($Tl(C_3H_3O_4)$) in water is known as Clerici solution. It is a mobile odorless liquid whose color changes from yellowish to clear upon reducing the concentration of the thallium salts. With the density of 4.25 g/cm^3 at 20 °C, Clerici solution is one of the heaviest aqueous solutions known. It was used in the 20th century for measuring density of minerals by the flotation method, but the use is discontinued due to the high toxicity and corrosiveness of the solution.

Thallium iodide is used as an additive to metal halide lamps, often together with one-two halides of other metals. It allows to optimize the lamp temperature and color rendering, and shift the spectral output to the green region, which is useful for underwater lighting.

Toxicity

Thallium and its compounds are extremely toxic, and should be handled with great care. There are numerous recorded cases of fatal thallium poisoning. Contact with skin is dangerous, and adequate ventilation should be provided when melting this metal. Thallium(I) compounds have a high aqueous solubility and are readily absorbed through the skin. Exposure to them should not exceed 0.1 mg per m^2 of skin in an 8-hour time-weighted average (40-hour work week).

Thallium is a suspected human carcinogen. For a long time thallium compounds were easily available as rat poison. This fact and that it is water soluble and nearly tasteless led to frequent intoxications caused by accident or criminal intent.

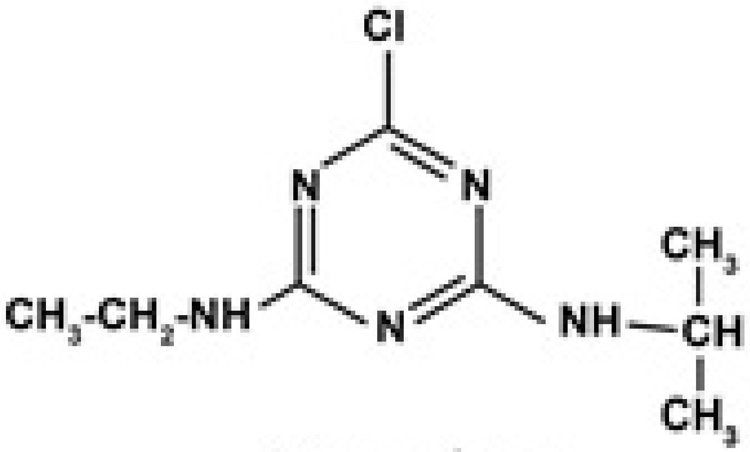
Treatment and Internal Decontamination

One of the main methods of removing thallium (both radioactive and normal) from humans is to use Prussian blue, which is a material which absorbs thallium. Up to 20 g per day of Prussian blue is fed by mouth to the person, and it passes through their digestive system and comes out in the stool. Hemodialysis and hemoperfusion are also used to remove thallium from the blood serum. At later stage of the treatment additional potassium is used to mobilize thallium from the tissue.

Thallium Pollution

According to the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), man-made sources of thallium pollution include gaseous emission of cement factories, coal burning power plants, and metal sewers. The main source of elevated thallium concentrations in water is the leaching of thallium from ore processing operations.

Organic chemicals that are regulated in drinking water are a group of human-made chemical compounds and are components of a variety of pesticides and industrial and commercial products, including degreasers, paints, and petroleum distillates.



Atrazine

SOC Section

Common water sampling bottles.

SOC/VOC bottles are the smaller, thin bottles with the septum tops. Be careful not to get any air bubbles in the SOC/VOC bottles and this may take a few weeks to learn to collect a proper sample.

SOC Introduction

Synthetic Organic Chemicals (SOCs) are organic (carbon based) chemicals that are less volatile than Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs). SOCs are used as pesticides, defoliants, fuel additives and as ingredients for other organic compounds. They are all man made and do not naturally occur in the environment. Some of the more well-known SOCs are Atrazine, 2,4-D, Dioxin and Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs).

SOCs most often enter the natural environment through application of pesticide (including runoff from areas where they are applied), as part of a legally discharged waste stream, improper or illegal waste disposal, accidental releases or as a byproduct of incineration. Some SOCs are very persistent in the environment, whether in soil or water.

SOCs are generally toxic and can have substantial health impacts from both acute (short-term) and chronic (long-term) exposure. Many are known carcinogens (cancer causing). EPA has set Maximum Contaminant Levels (MCL) for 30 SOCs under the Safe Drinking Water Act.

The Safe Drinking Water Act requires that all water sources of all public water systems be periodically monitored for regulated SOCs. The monitoring frequency can be adjusted through a waiver if SOCs are not detected.

EPA established Maximum Contaminant Levels (MCL), Maximum Contaminant Level Goals (MCLG), monitoring requirements and best available technologies for removal for 65 chemical contaminants over a five year period as EPA gathered and analyzed occurrence and health effects data. This series of rules are known as the Chemical Phase Rules and they define regulations for three contaminant groups:

- Inorganic Chemicals (IOC),
- Synthetic Organic Chemicals (SOC), and
- Volatile Organic Chemicals (VOC).

The Chemical Phase rules provide public health protection through the reduction of chronic risks from:

- cancer;
- organ damage; and
- circulatory,
- nervous, and
- reproductive system disorders.

They also help to reduce the occurrence of Methemoglobinemia or "blue baby syndrome" from ingestion of elevated levels of nitrate or nitrite.All public water systems must monitor for Nitrate and Nitrite. Community water systems and Non-transient non-community water systems must also monitor for IOCs, SOCs, and VOCs.

This is a list of the organic chemicals—which include pesticides, industrial chemicals, and disinfection by-products—that are tested for in public water systems (those that provide water to the public), along with the maximum standard for the contaminant, and a brief description of the potential health effects associated with long-term consumption of elevated levels of the contaminants.

The federal standard for most contaminants is listed as a Maximum Contaminant Level (MCL), the lowest concentration at which that particular contaminant is believed to represent a potential health concern. Unless otherwise noted, the MCL is expressed as parts per billion (ppb). Also, because of technological limitations or other factors, it is not possible to test for some contaminants in a reliable fashion. Instead, public water systems are required to use specific Treatment Techniques (TT) that are designed to remove these particular contaminants from the water.

In addition to the chemicals listed, monitoring is done for approximately 60 organic chemicals for which MCLs have not been established. If unacceptable levels are found of these “unregulated” contaminants—based on established state health standards and an assessment of the risks they pose—the response is the same as if an MCL has been exceeded: the public water system must notify those served by the system.

Synthetic Organic Chemicals	MCL (ppb)	Potential Health Effects
Acrylamide	TT	Cancer, nervous system effects
Alachlor	2	Cancer
Aldicarb	3	Nervous system effects
Aldicarb sulfoxide	4	Nervous system effects
Aldicarb sulfone	2	Nervous system effects
Atrazine	3	Liver, kidney, lung, cardiovascular effects; possible carcinogen
Benzo(a)pyrene (PAHs)	0.2	Liver, kidney effects, possible carcinogen
Carbofuran	40	Nervous system, reproductive system effects
Chlordane	2	Cancer
2,4-D	70	Liver, kidney effects
Di(2-ethylhexyl) adipate	400	Reproductive effects
Di(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate	6	Cancer
Dibromochloro-propane (DBCP)	0.2	Cancer
Dinoseb	7	Thyroid, reproductive effects
Diquat	20	Ocular, liver, kidney effects
Endothall	100	Liver, kidney, gastrointestinal effects
Endrin	2	Liver, kidney effects
Epichlorohydrin	TT	Cancer
Ethylene dibromide (EDB)	0.05	Cancer
Glyphosate	700	Liver, kidney effects
Heptachlor	0.4	Cancer
Heptachlor epoxide	0.2	Cancer

Hexachlorobenzene	1	Cancer
Hexachlorocyclopentadiene (HEX)	50	Kidney, stomach effects
Lindane	0.2	Liver, kidney, nervous system, immune system, circulatory system effects
Methoxychlor	40	Developmental, liver, kidney, nervous system effects
Oxamyl (Vydate)	200	Kidney effects
Pentachlorophenol	1	Cancer
Picloram	500	Kidney, liver effects
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)	0.5	Cancer
Simazine	4	Body weight and blood effects, possible carcinogen
2,3,7,8-TCDD (Dioxin)	0.00003	Cancer
Toxaphene	3	Cancer
2,4,5-TP (Silvex)	50	Liver, kidney effects

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs)

Definitions

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) – “VOCs are ground-water contaminants of concern because of very large environmental releases, human toxicity, and a tendency for some compounds to persist in and migrate with ground-water to drinking-water supply well … In general, VOCs have high vapor pressures, low-to-medium water solubilities, and low molecular weights. Some VOCs may occur naturally in the environment, other compounds occur only as a result of manmade activities, and some compounds have both origins.” - Zogorski and others, 2006

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) – “Volatile organic compounds released into the atmosphere by anthropogenic and natural emissions which are important because of their involvement in photochemical pollution.” - Lincoln and others, 1998

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) – “Hydrocarbon compounds that have low boiling points, usually less than 100ºC, and therefore evaporate readily. Some are gases at room temperature. Propane, benzene, and other components of gasoline are all volatile organic compounds.” - Art, 1993

Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) – “VOCs are organic compounds that can be isolated from the water phase of a sample by purging the water sample with inert gas, such as helium, and, subsequently, analyzed by gas chromatography. Many VOCs are human-made chemicals that are used and produced in the manufacture of paints, adhesives, petroleum products, pharmaceuticals, and refrigerants. They often are compounds of fuels, solvents, hydraulic fluids, paint thinners, and dry-cleaning agents commonly used in urban settings. VOC contamination of drinking water supplies is a human-health concern because many are toxic and are known or suspected human carcinogens.” - U.S. Geological Survey, 2005

VOCs Explained

Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) are organic chemicals that have a high vapor pressure at ordinary, room-temperature conditions. Their high vapor pressure results from a low boiling point, which causes large numbers of molecules to evaporate or sublimate from the liquid or solid form of the compound and enter the surrounding air. An example is formaldehyde, with a boiling point of –19 °C (–2 °F), slowly exiting paint and getting into the air.

VOCs are numerous, varied, and ubiquitous. They include both human-made and naturally occurring chemical compounds. Most scents or odors are of VOCs. VOCs play an important role in communication between plants. Some VOCs are dangerous to human health or cause harm to the environment. Anthropogenic VOCs are regulated by law, especially indoors, where concentrations are the highest. Harmful VOCs are typically not acutely toxic, but instead have compounding long-term health effects. Because the concentrations are usually low and the symptoms slow to develop, research into VOCs and their effects is difficult.

Specific Components

Paints and Coatings

A major source of man-made VOCs are coatings, especially paints and protective coatings. Solvents are required to spread a protective or decorative film. Approximately 12 billion liters of paints are produced annually. Typical solvents are aliphatic hydrocarbons, ethyl acetate, glycol ethers, and acetone. Motivated by cost, environmental concerns, and regulation, the paint and coating industries are increasingly shifting toward aqueous solvents.

Chlorofluorocarbons and Chlorocarbons

Chlorofluorocarbons, which are banned or highly regulated, were widely used cleaning products and refrigerants. Tetrachloroethene is used widely in dry cleaning and by industry. Industrial use of fossil fuels produces VOCs either directly as products (e.g., gasoline) or indirectly as byproducts (e.g., automobile exhaust).

Benzene

One VOC that is a known human carcinogen is benzene, which is a chemical found in environmental tobacco smoke, stored fuels, and exhaust from cars in an attached garage. Benzene also has natural sources such as volcanoes and forest fires. It is frequently used to make other chemicals in the production of plastics, resins, and synthetic fibers. Benzene evaporates into the air quickly and the vapor of benzene is heavier than air allowing the compound to sink into low-lying areas. Benzene has also been known to contaminate food and water and if digested can lead to vomiting, dizziness, sleepiness, rapid heartbeat, and at high levels, even death may occur.

Methylene Chloride

Methylene chloride is another VOC that is highly dangerous to human health. It can be found in adhesive removers and aerosol spray paints and the chemical has been proven to cause cancer in animals. In the human body, methylene chloride is converted to carbon monoxide and a person will suffer the same symptoms as exposure to carbon monoxide. If a product that contains methylene chloride needs to be used the best way to protect human health is to use the product outdoors. If it must be used indoors, proper ventilation is essential to keeping exposure levels down.

Perchloroethylene

Perchloroethylene is a volatile organic compound that has been linked to causing cancer in animals. It is also suspected to cause many of the breathing related symptoms of exposure to VOC’s. Perchloroethylene is used mostly in dry cleaning. Studies show that people breathe in low levels of this VOC in homes where dry-cleaned clothes are stored and while wearing dry-cleaned clothing. While dry cleaners attempt to recapture perchlorothylene in the dry cleaning process to reuse it in an effort to save money, they can’t recapture it all. To avoid exposure to perchlorothylene, if a strong chemical odor is coming from clothing when picked up from the dry cleaner, do not accept them and request that less of the chemical be used as well as a complete drying of the garments

MTBE

MTBE was banned in the US around 2004 in order to limit further contamination of drinking water aquifers primarily from leaking underground gasoline storage tanks where MTBE was used as an octane booster and oxygenated-additive.

Formaldehyde

Many building materials such as paints, adhesives, wall boards, and ceiling tiles slowly emit formaldehyde, which irritates the mucous membranes and can make a person irritated and uncomfortable. Formaldehyde emissions from wood are in the range of 0.02 – 0.04 ppm. Relative humidity within an indoor environment can also affect the emissions of formaldehyde. High relative humidity and high temperatures allow more vaporization of formaldehyde from wood-materials.

Health Risks

Respiratory, allergic, or immune effects in infants or children are associated with man-made VOCs and other indoor or outdoor air pollutants. Some VOCs, such as styrene and limonene, can react with nitrogen oxides or with ozone to produce new oxidation products and secondary aerosols, which can cause sensory irritation symptoms. Unspecified VOCs are important in the creation of smog.

Health effects include:

> Eye, nose, and throat irritation; headaches, loss of coordination, nausea; damage to liver, kidney, and central nervous system. Some organics can cause cancer in animals; some are suspected or known to cause cancer in humans. Key signs or symptoms associated with exposure to VOCs include conjunctival irritation, nose and throat discomfort, headache, allergic skin reaction, dyspnea, declines in serum cholinesterase levels, nausea, emesis, epistaxis, fatigue, dizziness.

The ability of organic chemicals to cause health effects varies greatly from those that are highly toxic, to those with no known health effects. As with other pollutants, the extent and nature of the health effect will depend on many factors including level of exposure and length of time exposed. Eye and respiratory tract irritation, headaches, dizziness, visual disorders, and memory impairment are among the immediate symptoms that some people have experienced soon after exposure to some organics. At present, not much is known about what health effects occur from the levels of organics usually found in homes. Many organic compounds are known to cause cancer in animals; some are suspected of causing, or are known to cause, cancer in humans.

Reducing Exposure

To reduce exposure to these toxins, one should buy products that contain Low-VOC’s or No VOC’s. Only the quantity which will soon be needed should be purchased, eliminating stockpiling of these chemicals. Use products with VOC’s in well ventilated areas. When designing homes and buildings, design teams can implement the best possible ventilation plans, call for the best mechanical systems available, and design assemblies to reduce the amount of infiltration into the building. These methods will help improve indoor air quality, but by themselves they cannot keep a building from becoming an unhealthy place to breathe. While proper building ventilation is a key component to improving indoor air quality, it cannot do the job on its own. As stated earlier, awareness is the key component to improving air quality, when choosing building materials, furnishings, and decorations. When architects and engineers implement best practices in ventilation and mechanical systems, the owner must maintain good air quality levels thereafter.

Limit Values for VOC Emissions

Limit values for VOC emissions into indoor air are published by e.g. AgBB, AFSSET, California Department of Public Health, and others.

Chemical Fingerprinting

The exhaled human breath contains a few hundred volatile organic compounds and is used in breath analysis to serve as a VOC biomarker to test for diseases such as lung cancer. One study has shown that "volatile organic compounds ... are mainly blood borne and therefore enable monitoring of different processes in the body." And it appears that VOC compounds in the body "may be either produced by metabolic processes or inhaled/absorbed from exogenous sources" such as environmental tobacco smoke. Research is still in the process to determine whether VOCs in the body are contributed by cellular processes or by the cancerous tumors in the lung or other organs.

Volatile Organic Chemicals	MCL (ppb)	Potential Health Effects
Benzene	5	Cancer
Carbon tetrachloride	5	Liver effects, cancer
Chlorobenzene	100	Liver, kidney, nervous system effects
o-Dichlorobenzene	600	Liver, kidney, blood cell effects
para-Dichlorobenzene	175	Kidney effects, possible carcinogen
1,2-Dichloroethane	5	Cancer
1,1-Dichloroethylene	7	Liver, kidney effects, possible carcinogen
cis-1,2-Dichloroethylene	70	Liver, kidney, nervous system, circulatory system effects
trans-1,2-Dichloroethylene	100	Liver, kidney, nervous system, circulatory system effects
1,2-Dichloropropane	5	Cancer
Ethylbenzene	700	Liver, kidney, nervous system effects
Methylene chloride	5	Cancer
Styrene	100	Liver, nervous systems effects, possible carcinogen
Tetrachloroethylene (PCE)	5	Cancer
Toluene	1,000	Liver, kidney, nervous system, circulatory system effects
Total trihalomethanes Chloroform Bromoform Bromodichloromethane Chlorodibromomethane	100	Cancer
1,2,4-Trichlorobenzene	70	Liver, kidney effects
1,1,1-Trichloroethane	200	Liver, nervous system effects
1,1,2-Trichloroethane	5	Kidney, liver effects, possible carcinogen
Trichloroethylene (TCE)	5	Cancer
Vinyl chloride	2	Nervous system, liver effects, cancer

Xylenes (total)	10,000	Liver, kidney, nervous system effects

Disinfection By-products	MCL (ppb)	Potential Health Effects
Bromate	10	Cancer
Chlorate	1,000	Anemia, nervous system effects
Haloacetic Acids (HAA5)*	60	Cancer
Total trihalomethanes (TTHMs)**	100	Cancer

*Haloacetic acids consist of monochloroacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, trichloroacetic acid, monobromoacetic acid, and dibromoacetic acid.

**Total trihalomethanes consist of chloroform, bromoform, bromodichloromethane, and chlorodibromomethane.

Water Disinfectants

Many water suppliers add a disinfectant to drinking water to kill germs such as giardia and e coli. Especially after heavy rainstorms, your water system may add more disinfectant to guarantee that these germs are killed.

Chlorine Some people who use drinking water containing chlorine well in excess of the EPA's standard could experience irritating effects to their eyes and nose. Some people who drink water containing chlorine well in excess of EPA's standard could experience stomach discomfort.

Chloramine Some people who use drinking water containing chloramines well in excess of the EPA's standard could experience irritating effects to their eyes and nose. Some people who drink water containing chloramines well in excess of EPA's standard could experience stomach discomfort or anemia.

Chlorine Dioxide Some infants and young children who drink water containing chlorine dioxide in excess of the EPA's standard could experience nervous system effects. Similar effects may occur in fetuses of pregnant women who drink water containing chlorine dioxide in excess of the EPA's standard. Some people may experience anemia.

Disinfection Byproducts

Disinfection byproducts form when disinfectants added to drinking water to kill germs react with naturally-occurring organic matter in water.

Total Trihalomethanes Some people who drink water containing trihalomethanes in excess of EPA's standard over many years may experience problems with their liver, kidneys, or central nervous systems, and may have an increased risk of getting cancer.

Haloacetic Acids Some people who drink water containing haloacetic acids in excess of the EPA's standard over many years may have an increased risk of getting cancer.

Bromate Some people who drink water containing bromate in excess of the EPA's standard over many years may have an increased risk of getting cancer.

Chlorite Some infants and young children who drink water containing chlorite in excess of the EPA's standard could experience nervous system effects. Similar effects may occur in fetuses of pregnant women who drink water containing chlorite in excess of the EPA's standard. Some people may experience anemia.

What is Ozone?

Ozone (**O_3**) is probably the strongest oxidizing agent available for water treatment. Although it is widely used throughout the world, is has not found much application in the United States. Ozone is obtained by passing a flow or air of oxygen between two electrodes that are subjected to an alternating current in the order of 10,000 to 20,000 volts.

$$3O_2 + \text{electrical discharge} \rightarrow 2O_3$$

Liquid ozone is very unstable and can readily explode. As a result, it is not shipped and must be manufactured on-site. Ozone is a light blue gas at room temperature. It has a self-policing pungent odor similar to that sometimes noticed during and after heavy electrical storms. In use, ozone breaks down into oxygen and nascent oxygen.

$$O_3 \rightarrow O_2 + O$$

It is the nascent oxygen that produces the high oxidation and disinfections, and even sterilization. Each water has its own ozone demand, in the order of 0.5 ppm to 5.0 ppm. Contact time, temperature, and pH of the water are factors to be determined.

Ozone acts as a complete disinfectant. It is an excellent aid to the flocculation and coagulation process, and will remove practically all color, taste, odor, iron, and manganese. It does not form chloramines or THMs, and while it may destroy some THMs, it may produce others when followed by chlorination. Ozone is not practical for complete removal of chlorine or chloramines, or of THM and other inorganics. Further, because of the possibility of formation of other carcinogens (such as aldehydes or phthalates) it falls into the same category as other disinfectants in that it can produce DBPs.

Large Ozone O_3 generator. We will see more and more of tri-oxygen generation.

Customer Service
What's That Stuff in the Tap Water?

by Jameel Rahman and Gary A. Burlingame

Jameel Rahman is a retired analytical chemist supervisor for the Materials Testing Laboratory at the Philadelphia Water Department, where Gary A. Burlingame is the supervisor of water quality and research. You can contact Burlingame at gary.burlingame@phila.gov or (215) 685-1417.

Reprinted from Opflow, Vol. 29, No. 2 (February 2003), by permission. Copyright 2003, American Water Works Association.

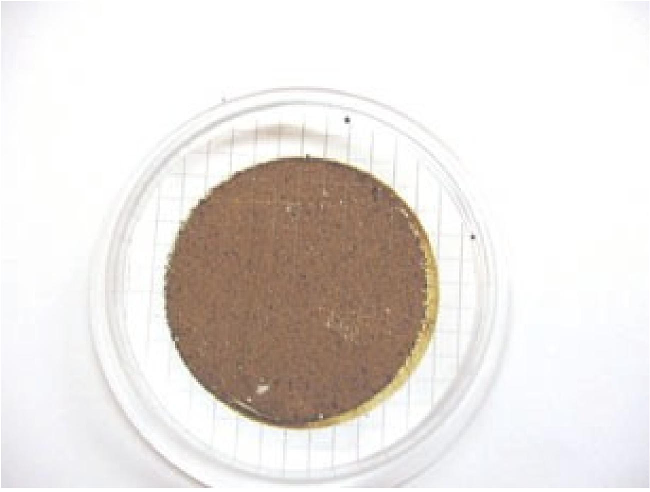
Almost every water utility employee responsible for solving customer problems has fielded a complaint about particles in a bathtub or faucet aerator. Although particles can come from cold or hot water systems, household plumbing, water distribution systems, and water treatment, the water supplier—at least in customers' eyes—is usually "*guilty until proven innocent*."

The Philadelphia Water Department has standardized procedures in place that can identify offending materials and help pinpoint their source.

Collecting and Identifying Particulates

Typically, the suspended matter customers complain about is particulate in form. The most important step in solving a particulate complaint is to collect as much suspect material as possible, making sure it represents the customer's actual concern. Sometimes enough material for analysis can be collected from faucet aerators. A container may be left with the customer for sample collection during normal tap use. Particulates can also accumulate in the toilet tank.

Particulate matter can be extracted from water samples by using nitrocellulose membrane filters. A 0.45 µm filter can be used if the water's colloidal matter doesn't clog the filter before enough particulate material is collected for analysis. Enough particulate matter can usually be captured with a water sample of approximately 250 mL. When samples have low turbidity, larger volumes will need to be filtered.



Granular Rust

Under a microscope, examine the particulate matter captured on a filter. Use a zoom microscope with at least 40×, preferably 75×, magnification to identify matter on the membrane filter disk, which can be stored in a Plexiglas Petri dish. For optimum observation, illuminate the particulates from above with a fiber-optic light.

Some particulates can be identified by their appearance and, sometimes, by touching them with a sharp needle and observing their physical properties, such as softness, stickiness, or solubility in a solvent. Particulates can be quantified as few, several, or numerous. If particulates cannot be identified by their appearance, perform simple chemical tests on the filter. A characteristic evolution of a gas, such as carbon dioxide from scale particulates or marble, can be observed under the microscope. Color formed by chemical reactions can be seen by the unaided eye. If these tests still fail to identify the debris, or further delineation is required, use infrared spectroscopy (**IR**).

Visual Identification

Sand particulates have a characteristic vitreous appearance and irregular shape with smooth facets. They can be colorful but usually appear translucent to whitish.

Mica particulates have a characteristic platelet shape and shine under reflected light. You will need to understand the common soil minerals in your area to identify them.

Man-made fibers, found in all colors and with a characteristic wrinkled strip shape, are present in single strands, have significant length, and often are visible to the unaided eye. Usually, fibers are not present in large numbers — at most, 10 per filter. Fibers used in apparel are round, but fibers found in water typically have a strip shape, indicating a common source, such as pump packing.

Glass chips are transparent, may have smooth facets with sharp edges, and may be colorful.

Relatively large amounts of similar particulates often indicate a problem within a plumbing system. Usually the source of such particulates is disintegrating plastic, a rubber gasket, or a corroding component of the plumbing system.

Heat Identification

Activated carbon particulates are black and usually coated with debris. They can show porosity, but appear dull compared to anthracite particulates, which display a shiny luster under reflected light. Pick up a few particulates on the tip of a wetted platinum wire and burn them in the blue part of a Bunsen burner flame. AC particulates will burn instantaneously with a glitter and no visible smoke or residue.

Disintegrated plastic particulates are usually white, large, and may be present in large numbers. Pick up a few particulates and burn them in a Bunsen burner flame. Plastic burns with a smoke. With fine-tipped tweezers, remove sufficient particulates from the disk and further identify them by IR. Most often they are polypropylene plastic.

Disintegrated rubber gasket particulates are usually black, relatively large, and do not smear the filter disk with black when a drop of toluene is applied. If pressed with a needle, they flex. Remove a few particulates and burn them; rubber burns with a black smoke. Identify them further by IR. Often these particulates are ethylene-propylene-diene monomer, used in gaskets.

Acid Identification

Rust particulates are usually abundant and are easy to identify with their typically brown and rough irregular shapes. Large particulates may have yellow and black streaks or inclusions, while fine rust particulates form a uniform brown film on the filter disk. To confirm rust, add a drop of (1+1) hydrochloric acid (500 mL of 11.5N hydrochloric acid [**HCl**] solution plus 500 mL of distilled water) to the filter. Yellow staining indicates the presence of ferric chloride. Add a drop of 2 percent solution of potassium thiocyanate on the yellow area where HCl was added. Brick-red staining confirms the presence of potassium ferrithiocyanate.

Large Rust Particles

Lead solder particulates are gray and may have a whitish coating, are usually brittle, and can be easily pulverized. Often, they are relatively large in size compared to most other particulates on the filter disk. If lead particulates are suspected, add a drop of pH 2.8 tartrate-buffer solution followed by a drop of 0.2 percent solution of freshly prepared sodium rhodizonate. If the particulates turn scarlet red, lead solder is present.

Prepare a pH 2.8 buffer solution by dissolving 1.9 g of sodium bitartrate and 1.5 g of tartaric acid in 100 mL of distilled water. To prepare the sodium rhodizonate reagent, dissolve 0.2 g of rhodizonic acid disodium salt in 100 mL of distilled water.

Patina is hydrated basic copper carbonate and has a greenish color. These irregularly shaped particulates result from corrosion of copper and copper alloys. To confirm their presence, add a drop of (1+1) HCl from a Pasture pipette. If tiny bubbles of carbon dioxide form under the microscope, the presence of patina is indicated. Remove a few particulates and place them in the cavity of a spot- test plate. Add a drop of (1+1) HCl followed by a drop of ammonia. Appearance of a blue precipitate or blue color confirms the presence of patina particulates. Rust particulates will interfere with this test if it is performed on the rust-coated filter.

Calcium carbonate can develop as a white scale through evaporation of hard water or can occur as a particulate of limestone or calcite. Scales can form in water heaters. Limestone can come from water treatment processes. Add a drop of HCl (1+1) on the particulates and observe the evolution of carbon dioxide under the microscope. The brisk evolution of gas confirms the presence of carbonates.

Solvent Identification

Asphalt pipe-coating compounds are black. To differentiate between various black particulates, add a drop of toluene or chloroform to the filter disk under the microscope. If the disk becomes smeared with black around the particulates, the particulates are classified as pipe-coating of an asphaltic nature. Anthracite, activated carbon, and rubber particulates are insoluble in the solvents used.

Anthracite particulates appear shiny compared with other black particulates and do not smear the filter disk if a drop of toluene is applied. These particulates can be removed from the filter disk and burned in a crucible; they will leave a solid residue.

Grease particulates are black and may be shiny. They are usually present as tiny heaps on the filter disk because of their softness and hydrophobic nature. They are soft and sticky when touched with a needle and can be smeared easily on the disk. Add a drop of toluene; grease will dissolve and a black color will spread around the particulates.

Let the toluene evaporate or use an oven to expedite drying. Touch the particulates with a needle in the area where toluene was added; they should no longer be sticky and may behave like a black powder. All greases may not behave this way, but their stickiness and extreme softness differentiates them from other black particulates.

Infrared Spectroscopy

When particulates cannot be completely identified by the above means, use IR to identify organic and inorganic materials. Inorganic compounds include calcium carbonate, calcium sulfate, barium sulfate, lead carbonate, metal oxides, silicates, or phosphates. Visually, and with the aid of heat, you might suspect a particulate is plastic in nature, but various types of plastics can occur in water systems, including polypropylene, polyvinyl chloride, and polyethylene. IR can differentiate between plastic materials.

Atoms in a molecule are in constant motion, changing bond angles by bending and bond lengths by stretching. Among these motions only certain vibrations absorb infrared radiation of specific energy. When portions of electromagnetic radiation are absorbed by such vibrations, an IR absorption band spectrum appears, which an infrared spectrometer records.

Each compound has a unique infrared absorption spectrum, and various compounds can be identified by comparing absorption band positions in the IR spectrum of an unknown compound to band positions of known compounds.

Particulates are removed with fine-tipped tweezers one by one from the filter disk and transferred to a small vial for dissolving in a solvent, or to a small agate mortar for grinding and mixing with KBr for making a potassium bromide (**KBr**) pellet.

The usually brittle plastic fragments can be powdered easily, and 10 mg of sample is all that is commonly needed to produce a good infrared absorption spectrum. Inorganic materials are identified by IR scanning of the KBr pellet of the sample alone; organic materials are identified by scanning a pellet or a film of the sample cast on a KBr plate.

Zeolite particles from a household water softener.

Most plastics are readily soluble in hot o-dichlorobenzene; try dissolving the sample in this solvent first. If soluble, cast a film of the sample on a KBr plate and scan it. If the sample is insoluble, evaporate the solvent completely and transfer the particulates to an agate mortar, make a KBr pellet, and scan the pellet. After obtaining a reasonably strong infrared spectrogram, the sample is identified by manual means or a computer search of a commercially available online IR library.

Standard Chemical Analyses

Chemical analyses available in most full-service water testing laboratories can be used to identify particulates when sufficient material is available. For example, hydrated aluminum oxide can occur as white slurry and be analyzed by inductively coupled plasma emission spectrometry after dissolving in mineral acids.

Similarly, granules of lead solder can also be analyzed by wet chemical or instrumental methods. After a sample is dissolved in a mineral acid, it can be analyzed for various elements by atomic absorption spectrophotometry. A variety of materials, including iron oxides, manganese dioxides, aluminum oxides, calcium carbonates, and copper and silicate particulates, can be identified by common chemical analyses.

During the late 1990s, customers in Philadelphia and across the country complained about white particulates clogging faucet aerators. Infrared spectroscopy revealed the particulates to be polypropylene, a plastic not used in the distribution system. The only common source for this plastic was found to be the dip tubes in residential gas hot-water heaters (see Opflow, December 1998).

Eventually, the dip-tube manufacturer admitted to changing materials to a less-durable plastic, prompting water heater manufacturers to give rebates to customers for dip-tube replacements. When this issue made the TV news, Philadelphia was in a good position to explain the situation to customers because our procedure was already in place for testing and characterizing particulates.

Dip Tube Particles

Table 1. Potential sources for particulate matter found in tap water

Particulate	From Customer Plumbing	From Water Supplier Piping
Activated carbon fines		X
Asphaltic lining fragments		X
Backfill sand		X
Calcium carbonate scale	X	X
Cast iron rust		X
Cement lining fragments		X
Copper fragments	X	
Glass chips		X
Greases and lubricants	X	X
Lead fragments	X	
Manganese dioxide deposits		X
Man-made fibers		X
On-site treatment device media		X
Plastic fragments	X	
Rubber gasket fragments	X	X
Soil minerals, mica		X

Table 2. Suspended matter classified by size

Soluble	< 0.45 µm
Colloidal	< 1.0 µm but > 0.45 µm
Particulate	> 1.0 µm

End of Article *by Jameel Rahman and Gary A. Burlingame*

Waterborne Pathogen Introduction

Bacteria, viruses, and protozoans that cause disease are known as pathogens. Most pathogens are generally associated with diseases that cause intestinal illness and affect people in a relatively short amount of time, generally a few days to two weeks. They can cause illness through exposure to small quantities of contaminated water or food, or from direct contact with infected people or animals. Pathogens that may cause waterborne outbreaks through drinking water have one thing in common: they are spread by the fecal-oral or feces-to-mouth route.

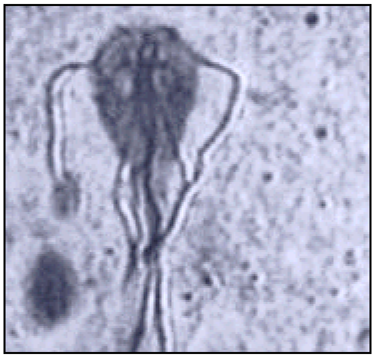
Pathogens may get into water and spread when infected humans or animals pass the bacteria, viruses and protozoa in their stool. For another person to become infected, he or she must take that pathogen in through the mouth. Waterborne pathogens are different from other types of pathogens such as the viruses that cause influenza (the flu) or the bacteria that cause tuberculosis. Influenza virus and tuberculosis bacteria are spread by secretions that are coughed or sneezed into the air by an infected person.

Human or animal wastes in watersheds, failing septic systems, failing sewage treatment plants or cross-connections of water lines with sewage lines provide the potential for contaminating water with pathogens. The water may not appear to be contaminated because feces has been broken up, dispersed, and diluted into microscopic particles. These particles, containing pathogens, may remain in the water and be passed to humans or animals unless adequately treated.

Only proper treatment will ensure eliminating the spread of disease. In addition to water, other methods exist for spreading pathogens by the fecal-oral route. The foodborne route is one of the more common methods. A frequent source is a food handler who does not wash his hands after a bowel movement and then handles food with ***"unclean"*** hands. The individual who eats feces-contaminated food may become infected and ill. It is interesting to note the majority of foodborne diseases occur in the home, not restaurants. Day care centers are another common source for spreading pathogens by the fecal-oral route. Here, infected children in diapers may get feces on their fingers, then put their fingers in a friend's mouth or handle toys that other children put into their mouths. You will usually be asked to sample at these facilities for Giardia. The general public and some of the medical community usually refer to diarrhea symptoms as "***stomach flu***."

Technically, influenza is an upper respiratory illness and rarely has diarrhea associated with it; therefore, stomach flu is a misleading description for foodborne or waterborne illnesses, yet is accepted by the general public. So the next time you get the stomach flu, you may want to think twice about what you've digested within the past few days.

Giardia



Chain of Transmission

When water is contaminated with feces, this contamination may be of human or animal origin. The feces must contain pathogens. If the human or animal source is not infected with a pathogen disease-causing bacteria, viruses or protozoa, no disease will result.

The pathogens must survive in the water. This depends on the temperature of the water and the length of time the pathogens are in the water. Some pathogens will survive for only a short time in water, others, such as Giardia or Cryptosporidium, may survive for months.

The pathogens in the water must enter the water system's intake and in numbers sufficient to infect people. The water is either not treated or inadequately treated for the pathogens present. A susceptible person must drink the water that contains the pathogen. In order for illness (disease) to occur.

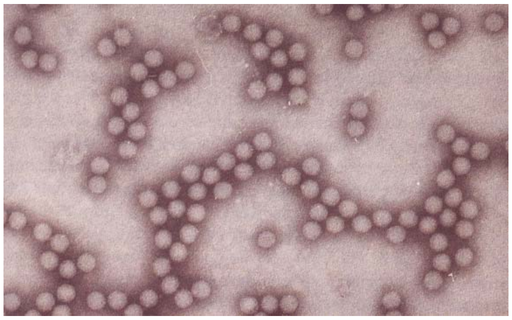
This chain lists the events that must occur for the transmission of disease via drinking water. By breaking the chain at any point, the transmission of disease will be prevented.

Bacterial Diseases

Campylobacteriosis is the most common diarrheal illness caused by bacteria. Other symptoms include abdominal pain, malaise, fever, nausea and vomiting. Symptoms begin three to five days after exposure. The illness is frequently over within two to five days and usually lasts no more than 10 days. Campylobacteriosis outbreaks have most often been associated with food, especially chicken and unpasteurized milk, as well as unchlorinated water. These organisms are also an important cause of "***travelers' diarrhea.***" Medical treatment generally is not prescribed for campylobacteriosis because recovery is usually rapid.

Cholera, Legionellosis, salmonellosis, shigellosis, yersiniosis, are other bacterial diseases that can be transmitted through water. All bacteria in water are readily killed or inactivated with chlorine or other disinfectants.

Viral Diseases



Hepatitis A is an example of a common viral disease that may be transmitted through water. The onset is usually abrupt with fever, malaise, loss of appetite, nausea and abdominal discomfort, followed within a few days by jaundice. The disease varies in severity from a mild illness lasting one to two weeks, to a severely disabling disease lasting several months (rare). The incubation period is 15-50 days and averages 28-30 days. Hepatitis A outbreaks have been related to fecally contaminated water; food contaminated by infected food handlers, including sandwiches and salads that are not cooked or are handled after cooking and raw or undercooked mollusks harvested from contaminated waters.

Aseptic meningitis, polio and viral gastroenteritis (Norwalk agent) are other viral diseases that can be transmitted through water. Most viruses in drinking water can be inactivated by chlorine or other disinfectants.

Protozoan Diseases

Protozoan pathogens are larger than bacteria, and viruses, but still microscopic. They invade and inhabit the gastrointestinal tract. Some parasites enter the environment in a dormant form, with a protective cell wall called a "***cys***t." The cyst can survive in the environment for long periods of time and be extremely resistant to conventional disinfectants such as chlorine. Effective filtration treatment is therefore critical to removing these organisms from water sources.

Giardiasis is a commonly reported protozoan-caused disease. It has also been referred to as "***backpacker's disease***" and "***beaver fever***" because of the many cases reported among hikers and others who consume untreated surface water. Symptoms include chronic diarrhea, abdominal cramps, bloating, frequent loose and pale greasy stools, fatigue and weight loss. The incubation period is 5-25 days or longer, with an average of 7-10 days. Many infections are asymptomatic (no symptoms). Giardiasis occurs worldwide. Waterborne outbreaks in the United States occur most often in communities receiving their drinking water from streams or rivers without adequate disinfection or a filtration system. The organism, ***Giardia lamblia,*** has been responsible for more community-wide outbreaks of disease in the U.S. than any other pathogen. Drugs are available for treatment, but are not 100% effective.

Cryptosporidiosis

Cryptosporidiosis is an example of a protozoan disease that is common worldwide, but was only recently recognized as causing human disease. The major symptom in humans is diarrhea, which may be profuse and watery. The diarrhea is associated with cramping abdominal pain. General malaise, fever, anorexia, nausea and vomiting occur less often.

Symptoms usually come and go, and end in fewer than 30 days in most cases. The incubation period is 1-12 days, with an average of about seven days. ***Cryptosporidium*** organisms have been identified in human fecal specimens from more than 50 countries on six continents. The mode of transmission is fecal-oral, either by person-to-person or animal-to-person. There is no specific treatment for *Cryptosporidium* infections.

All these diseases, with the exception of hepatitis A, have one symptom in common: diarrhea. They also have the same mode of transmission, fecal-oral, whether through person-to-person or animal-to-person contact, and the same routes of transmission, being either foodborne or waterborne. Although most pathogens cause mild, self-limiting disease, on occasion, they can cause serious, even life threatening illness. Particularly vulnerable are persons with weak immune systems, such as those with HIV infections or cancer. By understanding the nature of waterborne diseases, the importance of properly constructed, operated and maintained public water systems becomes obvious. While water treatment cannot achieve sterile water (no microorganisms), the goal of treatment must clearly be to produce drinking water that is as pathogen-free as possible at all times. For those who operate water systems with inadequate source protection or treatment facilities, the potential risk of a waterborne disease outbreak is real. For those operating systems that currently provide adequate source protection and treatment, operating and maintaining the system at a high level on a continuing basis is critical to prevent disease.

Waterborne Diseases

Name	**Causative organism**	**Source of organism**	**Disease**
Viral gastroenteritis	**Rotavirus** (mostly in young children)	Human feces	Diarrhea or vomiting
Norwalk Agent	**Noroviruses** (genus *Norovirus*, family *Caliciviridae*) [*1]	Human feces; also, shellfish; lives in polluted waters	Diarrhea and vomiting
Salmonellosis	***Salmonella*** (bacterium)	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea or vomiting
Gastroenteritis Escherichia *coli*	-- ***E. coli O1* 57:H7** (bacterium): Other *E. coli* organisms:	Human feces	Symptoms vary with type caused
Typhoid	***Salmonella typhi*** (bacterium)	Human feces, urine	Inflamed intestine, enlarged spleen, high temperature-sometimes fatal
Shigellosis	***Shigella*** (bacterium)	Human feces	Diarrhea
Cholera	***Vibrio choleras*** (bacterium)	Human feces; also, shellfish; lives in many coastal waters	Vomiting, severe diarrhea, rapid dehydration, mineral loss-high mortality
Hepatitis A	**Hepatitis A** virus	Human feces; shellfish grown in polluted waters	Yellowed skin, enlarged liver, fever, vomiting, weight loss, abdominal pain-low mortality, lasts up to four months
Amebiasis	***Entamoeba histolytica*** (protozoan)	Human feces	Mild diarrhea, dysentery, extra intestinal infection
Giardiasis	***Giardia lamblia*** (protozoan)	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea, cramps, nausea, and general weakness — lasts one week to months
Cryptosporidiosis	***Cryptosporidium parvum***	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea, stomach pain — lasts (protozoan) days to weeks

Notes:

*1 **http://www.cdc.gov/**

Bacteriological Monitoring

Most waterborne disease and illnesses have been related to the microbiological quality of drinking water. The routine microbiological analysis of your water is for coliform bacteria. The coliform bacteria group is used as an indicator organism to determine the biological quality of your water.

The presence of an indicator or pathogenic bacteria in your drinking water is an important health concern. Indicator bacteria signal possible fecal contamination and therefore, the potential presence of pathogens. They are used to monitor for pathogens because of the difficulties in determining the presence of specific disease-causing microorganisms.

Indicator bacteria are usually harmless, occur in high densities in their natural environment and are easily cultured in relatively simple bacteriological media. Indicators in common use today for routine monitoring of drinking water include total coliforms, fecal coliforms and *Escherichia coli (E. coli).*

Bacteria Sampling

Water samples for bacteria tests must always be collected in a sterile container. Take the sample from an inside faucet with the aerator removed. Sterilize by spraying a 5% Clorox or alcohol solution or flaming the end of the tap with disposable butane lighter. Run the water for five minutes to clear the water lines and bring in fresh water. Do not touch or contaminate the inside of the bottle or cap. Carefully open the sample container and hold the outside of the cap. Fill the container and replace the top.

Refrigerate the sample and transport it to the testing laboratory within six hours (in an ice chest). Many labs will not accept bacteria samples on Friday so check the lab's schedule. Mailing bacteria samples is not recommended because laboratory analysis results are not as reliable. Iron bacteria forms an obvious slime on the inside of pipes and fixtures. A water test is not needed for identification. Check for a reddish-brown slime inside a toilet tank or where water stands for several days.

Standard Sample Coliform Bacteria Bac-T bottle.

Bac-T Sample Bottle, often referred to as a Standard Sample, 100 mls, Notice the white powder inside the bottle. That is Sodium Thiosulfate, a de-chlorination agent. Be careful not to wash-out this chemical while sampling. Notice the custody seal on the bottle.

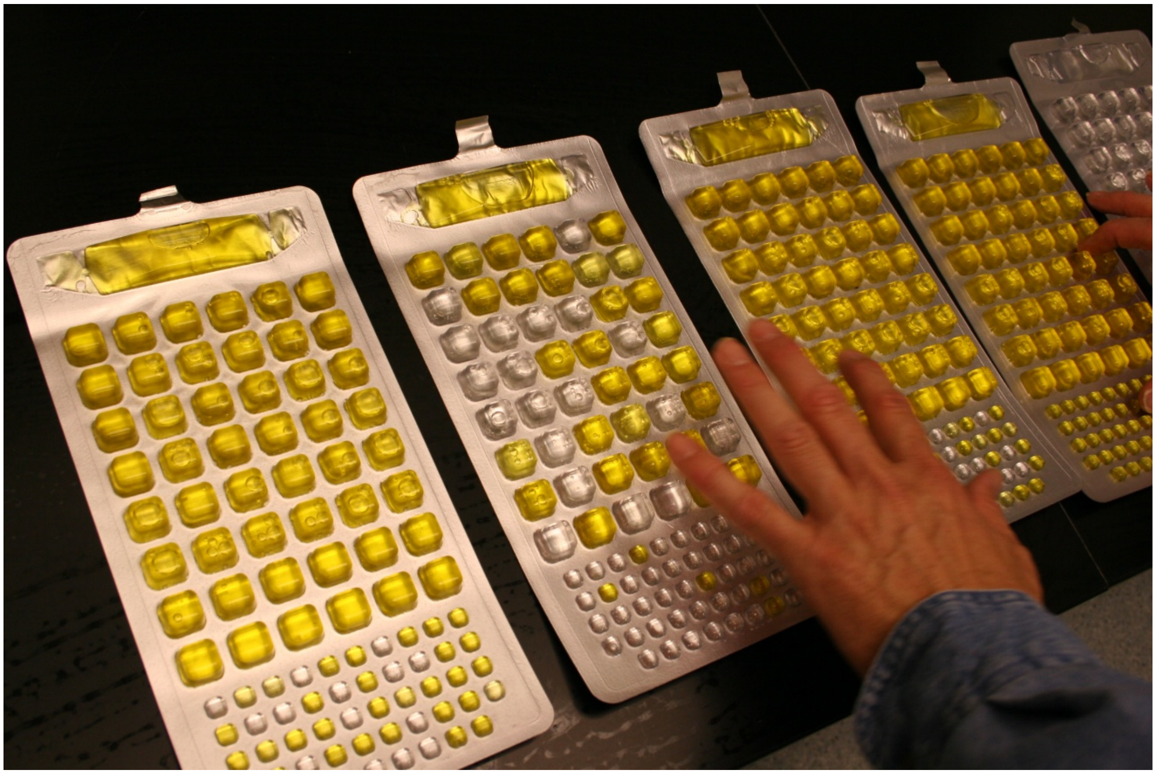
Coliform bacteria are common in the environment and are generally not harmful. However, the presence of these bacteria in drinking water is usually a result of a problem with the treatment system or the pipes which distribute water, and indicates that the water may be contaminated with germs that can cause disease.

Laboratory Procedures

The laboratory may perform the total coliform analysis in one of four methods approved by the U.S. EPA and your local environmental or health division:

Methods

The MMO-MUG test, a product marketed as Colilert is the most common. The sample results will be reported by the laboratories as simply coliforms present or absent. If coliforms are present, the laboratory will analyze the sample further to determine if these are fecal coliforms or E. coli and report their presence or absence.



The above photograph is of IDEXX Colilert Quanti-Tray method for coliform and E. coli tests. These tests can take 24 to 18 hours depending upon the feature of the product that you have purchased. You can also choose between a yellow or magenta positive endpoint for positive samples. Above photograph, we have yellow has our indicator color.

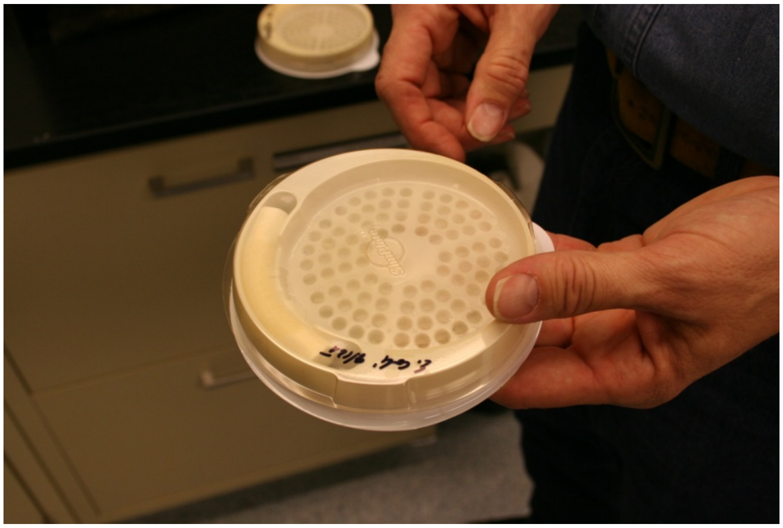
Types of Water Samples

It is important to properly identify the type of sample you are collecting. Please indicate in the space provided on the laboratory form the type of sample.
The three (3) types of samples are:
1. **Routine:** Samples collected on a routine basis to monitor for contamination. Collection should be in accordance with an approved sampling plan.
2. **Repeat:** Samples collected following a ***'coliform present'*** routine sample. The number of repeat samples to be collected is based on the number of routine samples you normally collect.
3. **Special:** Samples collected for other reasons. Examples would be a sample collected after repairs to the system and before it is placed back into operation or a sample collected at a wellhead prior to a disinfection injection point.

Routine Coliform Sampling

The number of routine samples and frequency of collection for community public water systems is shown in Table 3-1 next page.
Noncommunity and nontransient noncommunity public water systems will sample at the same frequency as a like sized community public water system if:
1. it has more than 1,000 daily population and has ground water as a source, or
2. it serves 25 or more daily population and utilizes surface water as a source or ground water under the direct influence of surface water as its source.

Noncommunity and nontransient, noncommunity water systems with less than 1,000 daily population and groundwater as a source will sample on a quarterly basis.



Here is a photograph of IDEXX SimPlate for HPC. This is used for the quantification of heterotrophic plate counts in water. The number of fluorescing wells corresponds to a Most Probable Number or MPN of total bacteria in the original sample. The MPN values generated by the SimPlate for HPC method correlate with the Pour Plate method using Total Plate Count Agar at 35^{O}C for 48 hours as described in Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater, 19th Edition.

Table 3-1. No. of Samples per System Population

Persons served	*- Samples per month*
up to 1,000	1
1,001-2,500	2
2,501-3,300	3
3,301 to 4,100	4
4,101 to 4,900	5
4,901 to 5,800	6
5,801 to 6,700	7
6,701 to 7,600	8
7,601 to 8,500	9
8,501 to 12,900	10
12,901 to 17,200	15
17,201 to 21,500	20
21,501 to 25,000	25
25,001 to 33,000	30
33,001 to 41,000	40
41,001 to 50,000	50
50,001 to 59,000	60
59,001 to 70,000	70
70,001 to 83,000	80
83,001 to 96,000	90
96,001 to 130,000	100
130,001 to 220,000	120
220,001 to 320,000	150
320,001 to 450,000	180
450,001 to 600,000	210
600,001 to 780,000	240

Quebec Colony Counter

Repeat Sampling

Repeat sampling replaces the old check sampling with a more comprehensive procedure to try to identify problem areas in the system. Whenever a routine sample is total coliform or fecal coliform present a set of repeat samples must be collected within 24 hours after being notified by the laboratory. The follow-up for repeat sampling is:

1. If only one routine sample per month or quarter is required, four (4) repeat samples must be collected.
2. For systems collecting two (2) or more routine samples per month, three (3) repeat samples must be collected.
3. Repeat samples must be collected from: a. The original sampling location of the coliform present sample.
b. Within five (5) service connections upstream from the original sampling location.
c. Within five (5) service connections downstream from the original sampling location.
d. Elsewhere in the distribution system or at the wellhead, if necessary.
4. If the system has only one service connection, the repeat samples must be collected from the same sampling location over a four-day period or on the same day.
5. All repeat samples are included in the MCL compliance calculation.

6. If a system which normally collects fewer than five (5) routine samples per month has a coliform present sample, it must collect five (5) routine samples the following month or quarter regardless of whether an MCL violation occurred or if repeat sampling was coliform absent.

Positive or Coliform Present Results
What do you do when your sample is positive or coliform present?

When you are notified of a positive test result you need to contact either the Drinking Water Program or your local county health department within 24 hours, or by the next business day after the results are reported to you. The Drinking Water Program contracts with many of the local health departments to provide assistance to water systems. After you have contacted an agency for assistance, you will be instructed as to the proper repeat sampling procedures and possible corrective measures for solving the problem. It is very important to initiate the repeat sampling immediately as the corrective measures will be based on those results.

Some examples of typical corrective measures to coliform problems are:

1. Shock chlorination of a ground water well. The recommended dose of 5% household bleach is 2 cups per 100 gallons of water in the well. This should be done anytime the bell is opened for repair (pump replacement, etc.). If you plan to shock the entire system, calculate the total gallonage of storage and distribution.
2. Conduct routine distribution line flushing. Install blowoffs on all dead end lines.
3. Conduct a cross connection program to identify all connections with non-potable water sources. Eliminate all of these connections or provide approved backflow prevention devices.
4. Upgrade the wellhead area to meet current construction standards as set by your state environmental or health agency.
5. If you continuously chlorinate, review your operation and be sure to maintain a detectable residual (0.2 mg/l free chlorine) at all times in the distribution system.
6. Perform routine cleaning of the storage system.

This list provides some basic operation and maintenance procedures that could help eliminate potential bacteriological problems, check with your state drinking water section or health department for further instructions.

Maximum Contaminant Levels (MCLs)

State and federal laws establish standards for drinking water quality. Under normal circumstances when these standards are being met, the water is safe to drink with no threat to human health. These standards are known as maximum contaminant levels (**MCL**). When a particular contaminant exceeds its MCL a potential health threat may occur.

The MCLs are based on extensive research of the toxicological properties of the contaminants, risk assessments and factors, short term (**acute**) exposure, and long term (**chronic**) exposure. The water provider must conduct the monitoring to make sure your water is in compliance with the MCL.

There are two types of MCL violations for coliform bacteria. The first is for total coliform; the second is an acute risk to health violation characterized by the confirmed presence of fecal coliform or E. coli.

Total Coliforms

This MCL is based on the presence of total coliforms, and compliance is on a monthly or quarterly basis, depending on your water system type and state rule. For systems which collect *fewer* than 40 samples per month, no more than one sample per month may be positive. In other words, the second positive result (repeat or routine) in a month or quarter results in an MCL violation. For systems which collect 40 or more samples per month, no more than five (5) percent may be positive, check with your state drinking water section or health department for further instructions.

Acute Risk to Health (Fecal coliforms and E. coli)

An acute risk to human health violation occurs if either one of the following happen:
1. A routine analysis shows total coliform present and is followed by a repeat analysis which indicates fecal coliform or E. coli present.
2. A routine analysis shows total and fecal coliform or E. coli present and is followed by a repeat analysis which indicates total coliform present. An acute health risk violation requires the water system to provide public notice via radio and television stations in the area. This type of contamination can pose an immediate threat to human health and notice must be given as soon as possible, but no later than 72 hours after notification from your laboratory of the test results.

Certain language maybe mandatory for both these violations and is included in your state drinking water rule.

Public Notice

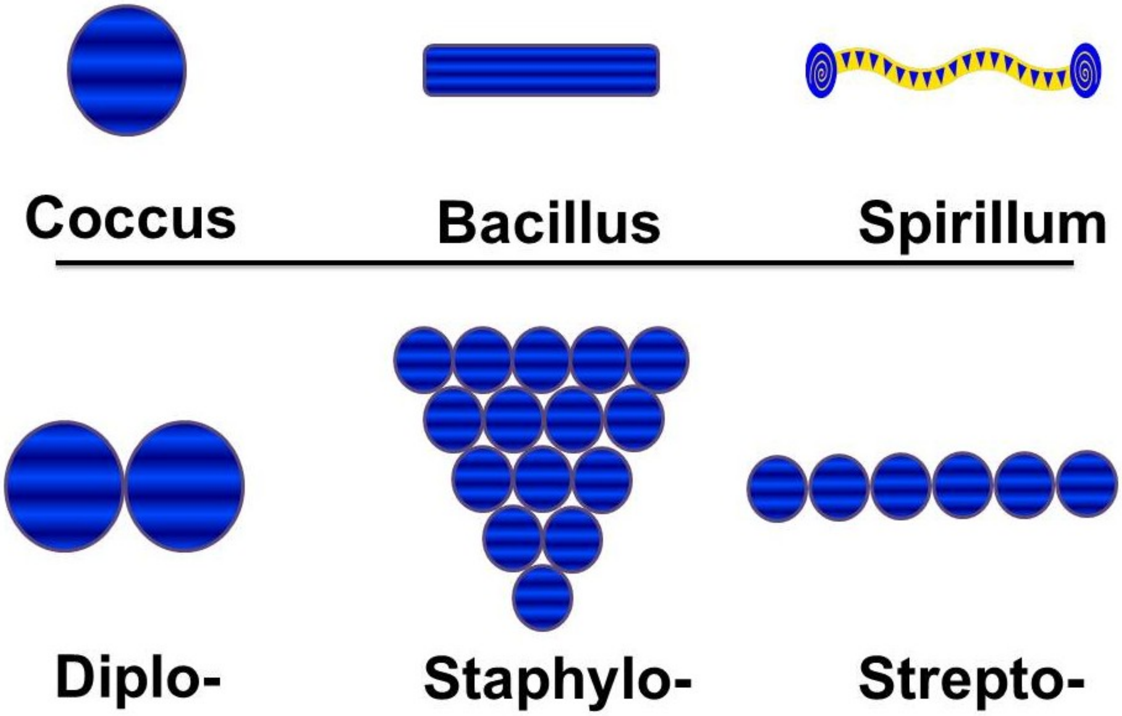
A public notice is required to be issued by a water system whenever it fails to comply with an applicable MCL or treatment technique, or fails to comply with the requirements of any scheduled variance or permit. This will inform users when there is a problem with the system and give them information. A public notice is also required whenever a water system fails to comply with its monitoring and/or reporting requirements or testing procedure. Each public notice must contain certain information, be issued properly and in a timely manner, and contain certain mandatory language. The timing and place of posting of the public notice depends on whether an acute risk is present to users. Check with your state drinking water section or health department for further instructions.

The following are acute violations:

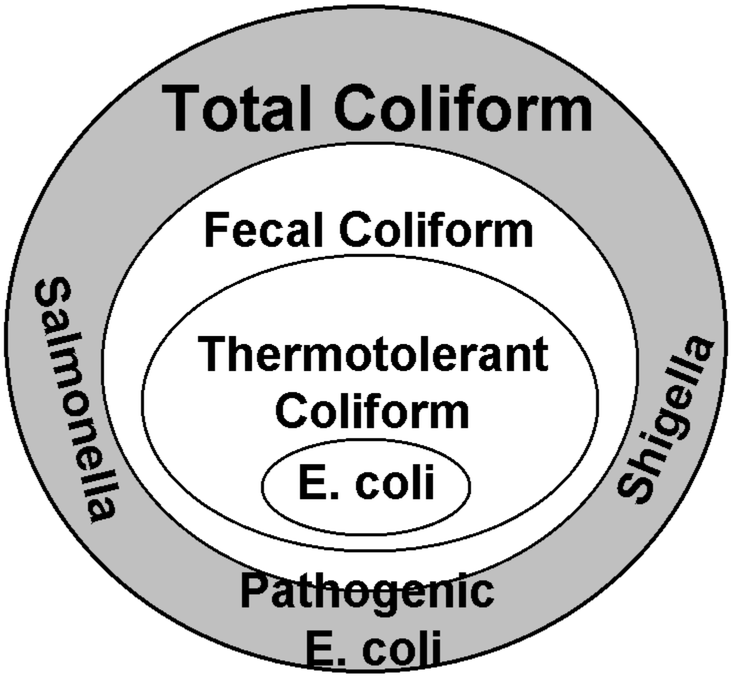
1. Violation of the MCL for nitrate.
2. Any violation of the MCL for total coliforms, when fecal coliforms or E. coli are present in the distribution system.
3. Any outbreak of waterborne disease, as defined by the rules.

HPC Pour Plate

Using a black light to see fecal coliform bacteria.



Various types of bacteria.



Using DPD Method for Chlorine Residuals

N, N – diethyl-p-phenylenediame

Small portable chlorine measuring kit. The redder the mixture the “hotter” or stronger the chlorine in solution.

Chlorine Field Tests

Sampling Techniques for Free and Total Chlorine (Hach Kit)

Procedures for determining free chlorine are as follows.

(1) Rinse out the two sample vials with water. Place one inside the tester for calibration. Allow the tester to calibrate to zero. If there seems to be a calibration problem, re-calibrate using the factory colored vials as your standard.

(2) Refill one of the vials to the 5 ml mark with a sample (this is the test sample). Tear open the one DPD free chlorine reagent powder pillow. Add the contents of the pillow to the sample. Stopper and shake to mix and put the tube in the color comparator. All of the powder does not have to dissolve to obtain correct readings.

(3) Let the vial sit in the tester for approximately 1 minute. The samples should not be exposed to direct sunlight.

(4) Take your reading. Record the results from the indicator (which is read in mg/l free chlorine) onto the chain of custody form.

Procedures for determining total chlorine are as follows.

Procedures for determining free chlorine are as follows.

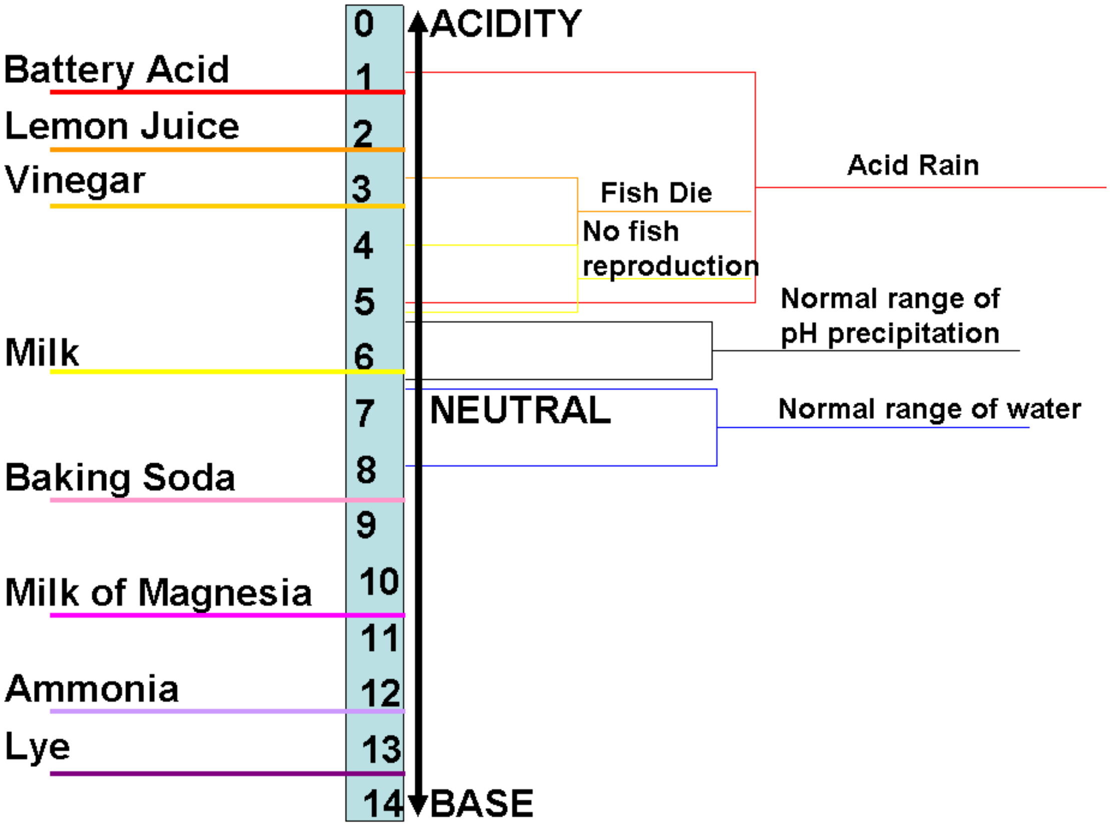
(1) Rinse out the two sample vials with water. Place one inside the tester for calibration. Allow the tester to calibrate to zero. If there seems to be a calibration problem, re-calibrate using the factory colored vials as your standard.

(2) Refill one of the vials to the 5 ml mark with a sample (this is the test sample). Tear open the one DPD total chlorine reagent powder pillow. Add the contents of the pillow to the sample. Stopper and shake to mix and put the tube in the color comparator. All of the powder does not have to dissolve to obtain correct readings.

(3) Let the vial sit in the tester for approximately 3 minutes. The samples should not be exposed to direct sunlight.

(4) Take your reading. Record the results from the indicator (which is read in mg/l total chlorine) onto the chain of custody form.

The pH Scale



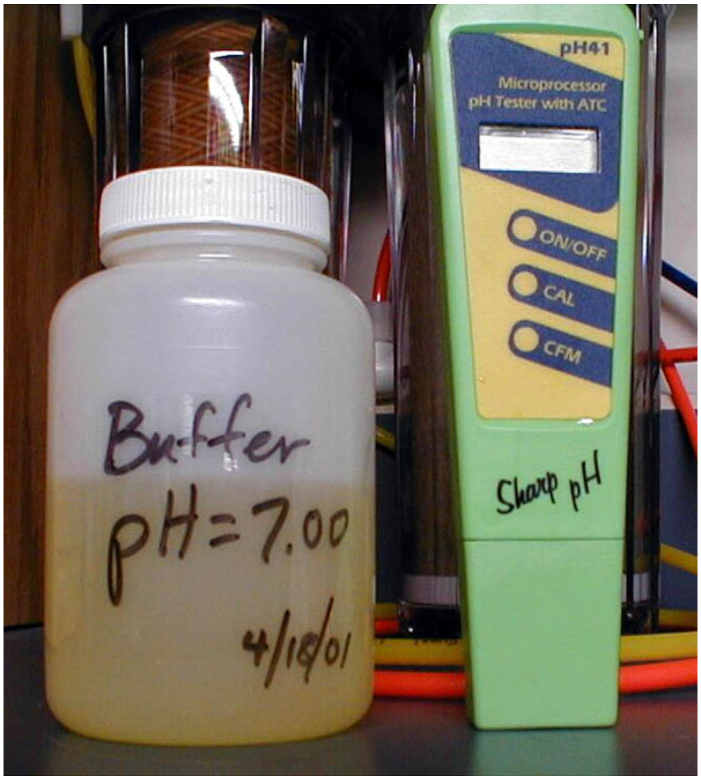
pH: A measure of the acidity of water. The pH scale runs from 0 to 14 with 7 being the mid-point or neutral. A pH of less than 7 is on the acid side of the scale with 0 as the point of greatest acid activity. A pH of more than 7 is on the basic (alkaline) side of the scale with 14 as the point of greatest basic activity.

pH = (**Power of Hydroxyl Ion Activity**).

The acidity of a water sample is measured on a pH scale. This scale ranges from **0** (maximum acidity) to **14** (maximum alkalinity). The middle of the scale, **7**, represents the neutral point. The acidity increases from neutral toward **0**.

Because the scale is logarithmic, a difference of one pH unit represents a tenfold change. For example, the acidity of a sample with a pH of **5** is ten times greater than that of a sample with a pH of **6**. A difference of 2 units, from **6** to **4**, would mean that the acidity is one hundred times greater, and so on.

Normal rain has a pH of **5.6** – slightly acidic because of the carbon dioxide picked up in the earth's atmosphere by the rain.



pH Meter pH scale is between 0-14 0 being Acidic and 14 being Base.
For fun, we measured Orange Juice and that is pH 3.5 or so - acid! We also measured Welch's Grape Juice and the meter showed 3.4 - also an acid (and slightly stronger). Here is a close-up of the pH41 meter we use and its pH 7.0 buffer solution (used for calibration and storage - there are a few drops of the buffer solution in the cap of the pH41 to keep it properly moist when not in use).

pH Strips

Chemical Equations, Oxidation States, and Balancing of Equations

Before we breakdown Chlorine and other chemicals, let's start with this review of basic chemical equations.

Beginning
The common chemical equation could be A + B --> C + D. This is chemical A + chemical B, the two reacting chemicals will go to products C + D, etc.

Oxidation
The term "oxidation" originally meant a reaction in which oxygen combines chemically with another substance, but its usage has long been broadened to include any reaction in which electrons are transferred.

Oxidation and reduction always occur simultaneously (redox reactions), and the substance which gains electrons is termed the oxidizing agent. For example, cupric ion is the oxidizing agent in the reaction: Fe (metal) + Cu++ --> Fe++ + Cu (metal); here, two electrons (negative charges) are transferred from the iron atom to the copper atom; thus the iron becomes positively charged (is oxidized) by loss of two electrons, while the copper receives the two electrons and becomes neutral (is reduced).

Electrons may also be displaced within the molecule without being completely transferred away from it. Such partial loss of electrons likewise constitutes oxidation in its broader sense and leads to the application of the term to a large number of processes, which at first sight might not be considered to be oxidation. Reaction of a hydrocarbon with a halogen, for example, $CH_4 + 2\ Cl \rightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl$, involves partial oxidation of the methane; halogen addition to a double bond is regarded as an oxidation.

Dehydrogenation is also a form of oxidation; when two hydrogen atoms, each having one electron, are removed from a hydrogen-containing organic compound by a catalytic reaction with air or oxygen, as in oxidation of alcohol to aldehyde.

Oxidation Number
The number of electrons that must be added to or subtracted from an atom in a combined state to convert it to the elemental form; i.e., in barium chloride ($BaCl_2$) the oxidation number of barium is +2 and of chlorine is -1. Many elements can exist in more than one oxidation state.

Now, let us look at some common ions. An ion is the reactive state of the chemical, and is dependent on its place within the periodic table.

Have a look at the "periodic table of the elements". It is arranged in columns of elements, there are 18 columns. You can see column one, H, Li, Na, K, etc. These all become ions as H^+, Li^+, K^+, etc. The next column, column 2, Be, Mg, Ca etc. become ions Be^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, Ca^{2+}, etc. Column 18, He, Ne, Ar, Kr are inert gases. Column 17, F, Cl, Br, I, ionize to a negative F^-, Cl^-, Br^-, I^-, etc.

What you now need to do is memorize the table of common ions, both positive ions and negative ions.

Table of Common Ions

Positive Ions

Valency 1		**Valency 2**		**Valency 3**	
lithium	Li^+	magnesium	Mg_2^+	aluminum	Al_3^+
sodium	Na^+	calcium	Ca_2^+	iron III	Fe_3^+
potassium	K^+	strontium	Sr_2^+	chromium	Cr_3^+
silver	Ag^+	barium	Ba_2^+		
hydronium	H_3O^+	copper II	Cu_2^+		
(or hydrogen)	H^+	lead II	Pb_2^+		
ammonium	NH_4^+	zinc	Zn_2^+		
copper I	Cu^+	manganese II	Mn_2^+		
mercury I	Hg^+	iron II	Fe_2^+		
		tin II	Sn_2^+		

Negative Ions

Valency 1		**Valency 2**		**Valency 3**	
fluoride	F^-	oxide	O^{2-}	phosphate	PO_4^{3-}
chloride	Cl^-	sulfide	S^{2-}		
bromide	Br^-	carbonate	CO_3^{2-}		
iodide	I^-	sulfate	SO_4^{2-}		
hydroxide	OH^-	sulfite	SO_3^{2-}		
nitrate	NO_3^-	dichromate	$Cr_2O_7^-$		
bicarbonate	HCO_3^-	chromate	CrO_4^{2-}		
bisulphate	HSO_4^-	oxalate	$C_2O_4^{2-}$		
nitrite	NO_2^-	thiosulfate	$S_2O_3^{2-}$		
chlorate	ClO_3^-	tetrathionate	$S_4O_6^{2-}$		
permanganate	MnO_4^-	monohydrogen phosphate	HPO_4^{2-}		
hypochlorite	OCl^-				
dihydrogen phosphate	$H_2PO_4^-$				

Positive ions will react with negative ions, and vice versa. This is the start of our chemical reactions. For example:

$Na^+ + OH^-$ --> NaOH (sodium hydroxide)
$Na^+ + Cl^-$ --> NaCl (salt)
$3H^+ + PO_4^{3-}$ --> H_3PO_4 (phosphoric acid)
$2Na^+ + S_2O_3^{2-}$ --> $Na_2S_2O_3$

You will see from these examples, that if an ion of one (+), reacts with an ion of one (-) then the equation is balanced. However, an ion like PO_4^{3-} (phosphate) will require an ion of 3+ or an ion of one (+) (but needs three of these) to neutralize the 3- charge on the phosphate. So, what you are doing is balancing the charges (+) or (-) to make them zero, or cancel each other out.

For example, since aluminum exists in its ionic state as Al^{3+}, it will react with many negatively charged ions; for example: Cl^-, OH^-, SO_4^{2-}, PO_4^{3-}.

Let us do these examples and balance them.
$Al^{3+} + Cl^- \text{-->} AlCl$ **(incorrect)**
$Al^{3+} + 3Cl^- \text{-->} AlCl_3$ **(correct)**

How did we work this out?
Al^{3+} has three positives (3+)
Cl^- has one negative (-)
It will require **3 negative charges** to cancel out the **3 positive charges** on the aluminum (Al^{3+}).

When the **left hand side** of the equation is written, to balance the number of chlorine's (Cl^-) required, the number 3 is placed in front of the ion concerned, in this case Cl^-, becomes $3Cl^-$.

On the **right hand side** of the equation, where the ions have become a compound (a chemical compound), the number is transferred to after the relevant ion, Cl_3.

Another example:
$Al^{3+} + SO_4^{2-} \text{-->} AlSO_4$ (**incorrect**)
$2Al^{3+} + 3SO_4^{2-} \text{-->} Al_2(SO_4)_3$ (**correct**)

Let me give you an easy way of balancing:
Al is 3+
SO_4 is 2-
Simply transpose the number of positives (or negatives) for each ion, to the other ion, by placing this value of one ion, in front of the other ion. That is, Al^{3+} the 3 goes in front of the SO_4^{2-} as $3SO_4^{2-}$, and SO_4^{2-}, the 2 goes in front of the Al^{3+} to become $2Al^{3+}$. Then on the **right hand side** of the equation, this same number (now in front of each ion on the **left side** of the equation), is placed after each "ion" entity.

Let us again look at:
$Al^{3+} + SO_4^{2-} \text{-->} AlSO_4$ **(incorrect)**
$Al^{3+} + SO_4^{2-} \text{-->} Al_2(SO_4)_3$ **(correct)**
Put the three from the Al in front of the SO_4^{2-} and the 2 from the SO_4^{2-} in front of the Al^{3+}.
Equation becomes:
$2Al^{3+} + 3SO_4^{2-} \text{-->} Al_2(SO_4)_3$. You simply place the valency of one ion, as a whole number, in front of the other ion, and vice versa.

Remember to encase the SO_4 in brackets. **Why?** Because we are dealing with the sulfate ion, SO_4^{2-}, and it is this ion that is 2- charged (not just the O_4), so we have to ensure that the "ion" is bracketed. Now to check, the 2 times $3^+ = 6^+$, and 3 times $2^- = 6^-$. We have equal amounts of positive ions, and equal amounts of negative ions.

Another example:
$NaOH + HCl \text{-->} ?$
Na is Na^+, OH is OH^-, so this gave us NaOH. Originally, the one positive canceled the one negative.

HCl is $H^+ + Cl^-$, this gave us HCl.

Reaction is going to be the Na^+ reacting with a negatively charged ion. This will have to be the chlorine, Cl^-, because at the moment the Na^+ is tied to the OH^-. **So:** $Na^+ + Cl^- \text{-->} NaCl$
The H+ from the HCl will react with a negative (-) ion this will be the OH^- from the NaOH.
So: $H^+ + OH^- \text{-->} H_2O$ (water).

The complete reaction can be written:
$NaOH + HCl \text{-->} NaCl + H_2O$. We have **equal amounts** of all atoms **each side** of the equation, so the equation is **balanced**.
or
$Na^+OH^- + H^+Cl^- \text{-->} Na^+Cl^- + H^+OH^-$

Something More Difficult:
$Mg(OH)_2 + H_3PO_4 \text{-->} ?$ (equation on left **not** balanced)
$Mg^{2+}\ 2OH^- + 3H^+PO_4^{3-} \text{-->} ?$ (equation on left **not** balanced), so let us rewrite the equation in **ionic form**.

The Mg^{2+} **needs to react with a negatively charged ion**, this will be the PO_4^{3-},
so: $3Mg^{2+} + 2PO_4^{3-} \text{-->} Mg_3(PO_4)_2$
(**Remember** the **swapping** of the positive or negative charges on the ions in the **left side** of the equation, and placing it in front of each ion, and then placing this number after each ion on the **right side** of the equation)

What is left is the H^+ from the H_3PO_4 and this will react with a negative ion, we only have the OH^- from the $Mg(OH)_2$ left for it to react with.
$6H^+ + 6OH^- \text{-->} 6H_2O$

Where did I get the 6 from? When I balanced the Mg^{2+} with the PO_4^{3-}, the equation became $3Mg^{2+} + 2PO_4^{3-} \text{-->} Mg_3(PO_4)_2$

Therefore, I must have required $3Mg(OH)_2$ to begin with, and $2H_3PO_4$, (because we originally had $(OH)_2$ attached to the Mg, and H_3 attached to the PO_4. I therefore have $2H_3$ reacting with $3(OH)_2$. We have to write this, on the **left side** of the equation, as $6H^+ + 6OH^-$ because we need it in ionic form.
The equation becomes:
$6H^+ + 6OH^- \text{-->} 6H_2O$

The full equation is now balanced and is:
$3Mg(OH)_2 + 2H_3PO_4 \text{-->} Mg_3(PO_4)_2 + 6H_2O$
I have purposely split the equation into segments of reactions. This is showing you which ions are reacting with each other. Once you get the idea of equations you will not need this step.

The balancing of equations is simple. You need to learn the valency of the common ions (see tables). The rest is pure mathematics; you are balancing valency charges, positives versus negatives. You have to have the **same number** of **negatives**, or **positives**, each side of the equation, and the **same number** of **ions** or **atoms** each side of the equation.

If one ion, example Al^{3+}, (3 positive charges) reacts with another ion, example OH^- (one negative ion) then we require 2 more negatively charged ions (in this case OH^-) to counteract the 3 positive charges the Al^{3+} contains.

Take my earlier hint, place the 3 from the Al^{3+} in front of the OH^-, now reads $3OH^-$, place the 1 from the hydroxyl OH^- in front of the Al^{3+}, now stays the same, Al^{3+} (the 1 is **never** written in chemistry equations).
$Al^{3+} + 3OH^- \text{-->} Al(OH)_3$

The 3 is simply written in front of the OH^-, a recognized ion, there are no brackets placed around the OH^-. On the right hand side of the equation, all numbers in front of each ion on the left hand side of the equation are placed after each same ion on the right side of the equation. Brackets are used in the right side of the equation because the result is a compound. Brackets are also used for compounds (reactants) in the left side of equations, as in $3Mg(OH)_2 + 2H_3PO_4$ --> ?

UH, WHERE DID YOU SAY YOU GOT THAT CHOCOLATE MILK?

Hard to tell, but these are one ton chlorine gas containers. Notice the five gallon bucket of motor oil in the bottom photograph. Also notice that this photograph is the only eye wash station that we found during our inspection of 10 different facilities. Do you have an eye wash and emergency shower?

Chemistry of Chlorination

Chlorine can be added as sodium hypochlorite, calcium hypochlorite or chlorine gas. When any of these is added to water, chemical reactions occur as these equations show:

$Cl_2 + H_2O \rightarrow HOCl + HCl$
(chlorine gas) (water) (hypochlorous acid) (hydrochloric acid)

$CaOCl + H_2O \rightarrow 2HOCl + Ca(OH)$
(calcium hypochlorite) (water) (hypochlorous acid) (calcium hydroxide)

$NaOCl + H_2O \rightarrow HOCl + Na(OH)$
(sodium hypochlorite) (water) (hypochlorous acid) (sodium hydroxide)

All three forms of chlorine produce hypochlorous acid (HOCl) when added to water. Hypochlorous acid is a weak acid but a strong disinfecting agent. The amount of hypochlorous acid depends on the pH and temperature of the water. Under normal water conditions, hypochlorous acid will also chemically react and break down into a hypochlorite ion.

(OCl^-): $HOCl\ H^+ + OCl^-$ Also expressed $HOCl \rightarrow H^+ + OCl^-$
(hypochlorous acid) (hydrogen) (hypochlorite ion)
The hypochlorite ion is a much weaker disinfecting agent than hypochlorous acid, about 100 times less effective.

Let’s now look at how pH and temperature affect the ratio of hypochlorous acid to hypochlorite ions. As the temperature is decreased, the ratio of hypochlorous acid increases. Temperature plays a small part in the acid ratio. Although the ratio of hypochlorous acid is greater at lower temperatures, pathogenic organisms are actually harder to kill. All other things being equal, higher water temperatures and a lower pH are more conducive to chlorine disinfection.

Types of Residual

If water were pure, the measured amount of chlorine in the water should be the same as the amount added. But water is not 100% pure. There are always other substances (interfering agents) such as iron, manganese, turbidity, etc., which will combine chemically with the chlorine.

This is called the ***chlorine demand***. Naturally, once chlorine molecules are combined with these interfering agents, they are not capable of disinfection. It is free chlorine that is much more effective as a disinfecting agent.

So let’s look now at how free, total, and combined chlorine are related. When a chlorine residual test is taken, either a total or a free chlorine residual can be read.

Total residual is all chlorine that is available for disinfection.

Total chlorine residual = free + combined chlorine residual.

Free chlorine residual is a much stronger disinfecting agent. Therefore, most water regulating agencies will require that your daily chlorine residual readings be of free chlorine residual.

Break-point chlorination is where the chlorine demand has been satisfied, any additional chlorine will be considered ***free chlorine*****.**

Residual Concentration/Contact Time (CT) Requirements

Disinfection to eliminate fecal and coliform bacteria may not be sufficient to adequately reduce pathogens such as Giardia or viruses to desired levels. Use of the ***"CT"*** disinfection concept is recommended to demonstrate satisfactory treatment, since monitoring for very low levels of pathogens in treated water is analytically very difficult.

The CT concept, as developed by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (Federal Register, 40 CFR, Parts 141 and 142, June 29, 1989), uses the combination of disinfectant residual concentration (mg/L) and the effective disinfection contact time (in minutes) to measure effective pathogen reduction. The residual is measured at the end of the process, and the contact time used is the T10 of the process unit (time for 10% of the water to pass).

CT = Concentration (mg/L) x Time (minutes)

The effective reduction in pathogens can be calculated by reference to standard tables of required CTs.

500 pound chlorine gas container and 150 pound gas cylinders. The 1/2 ton is on a scale. Cylinders stand upright and containers on their sides.

Proposed Stage 2 DBP Rule – Compliance

Written by Sarah C. Clark, P.E.
Senior Project Manager HDR

The proposed Stage 2 Disinfection Byproduct Rule (**DBPR**) is expected to minimize exposure to disinfection byproducts (DBPs) at individual locations in the distribution system and to shave the peak values of DBPs in the system. The Initial Distribution System Evaluation was discussed in the last issued of the Newsletter. In the IDSE process, utilities are required to complete a study that locates new permanent DBP monitoring sites.

When the IDSE is complete, an IDSE Report is submitted to the State which includes the proposed new permanent DBP monitoring sites for the utility. Each State may handle the approval of the monitoring sites in a slightly different manner, but the basic process is that that the State can approve the monitoring sites as recommended in the IDSE report, the State can suggest alternative sites, or the State may request additional information.

Stage 2A

Compliance under the Stage 2 DBPR is divided into two phases, Stage 2A and Stage 2B. During the time when utilities are monitoring for the IDSE, compliance continues to be based on the current Stage 1 DBPR requirements. Recall that that Stage 1 DBPR requires utilities to meet MCLs of 80 µg/L and 60 µg/L for TTHMs and HAA5s, respectively, based on a running annual average calculation across the whole system. During that same period, utilities should be preparing themselves to meet the locational running annual average (LRAA) requirements of the Stage 2A portion of the rule. The relative timing of the parts of the rule are shown in Figure 1.

Stage 2A requires all utilities to calculate the locational running annual average (LRAA) of quarterly sample results for TTHMs and HAA5s at each Stage 1 DBPR sampling site. The LRAA is the running annual average at a specific location in the distribution system. All utilities must meet the MCL of 120 µg/L for TTHMs and 100 µg/L for HAA5s on this LRAA basis. Preparation for meeting these LRAA levels should include evaluating the LRAA at each Stage 1 compliance monitoring site. For any sites that cannot meet the MCLs, development and implementation of a plan to bring them into compliance would be wise. The Stage 2A compliance date is three years from the date when the rule is finalized. At that time, all Stage 1 compliance sites must meet the Stage 2A MCLs based on the LRAA calculation method, in addition to maintaining compliance with the running annual average requirements across the system as required by the Stage 1 rule.

Stage 2B

As soon as the IDSE is complete, utilities can begin to prepare for meeting Stage 2B by monitoring at the newly selected compliance sites identified in the IDSE. Obtaining this data prior to the Stage 2B compliance date will provide information to the utility regarding areas in the system that need changes made that will reduce DBPs. Compliance with Stage 2B is based on meeting the MCLs of 80 µg/L and 60 µg/L for TTHMs and HAA5s, respectively, using the locational running annual average of quarterly sample results at each new monitoring site. Once the utility has a some data from the new sites, plans can be made for alterations in treatment or operations to meet MCLs, if needed.

Sufficient time is allowed in the rule for systems to make changes in their system to meet the compliance date for Stage 2B. The Stage 2B compliance date is six years after the rule is finalized for systems serving 10,000 people or more. For small systems the compliance date for Stage 2B is 7.5 or 8.5 years after the rule is finalized, depending on whether the system is required to sample for *Cryptosporidium* under the LT2ESWTR monitoring. Compliance dates for all system sizes for both stages of the rule are shown in Table 1.

TABLE 1
PROPOSED COMPLIANCE SCHEDULE FOR
STAGE 2A AND STAGE 2B DBPR

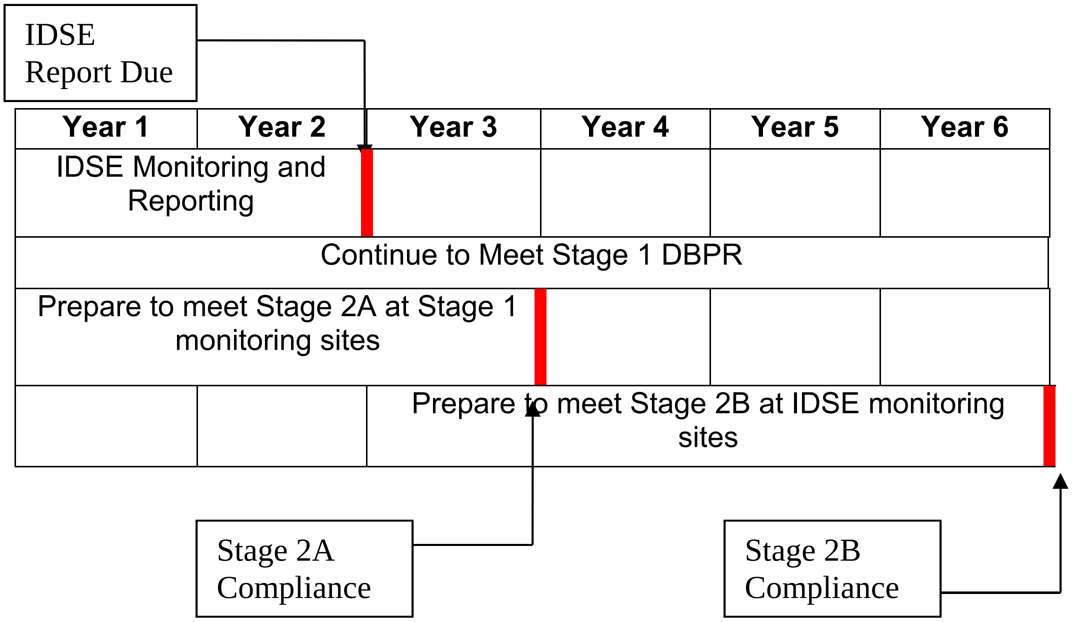
System Size	IDSE Report Due	Comply with Stage 2A	Comply with Stage 2B
≥ 10,000	2 years after publication	3 years after publication	6 years after publication
< 10,000 in combined distribution system	2 years after publication	3 years after publication	6 years after publication
< 10,000	4 years after publication	3 years after publication	7.5/8.5 years after publication

Summary
Utilities should keep in mind that the requirements of the Stage 1 DBPR continue to remain in force. This means that the percent removal requirements for total organic carbon (TOC) continue, as do the alternative compliance criteria for TOC removal. A summary of the Stage 2 DBPR phased compliance requirements is shown in Table 2. Ground water serving 10, 000 people or more and surface water systems serving 500 or more people must monitor quarterly, taking at least one sample during the peak historical month for DBP concentration. Very small surface water plants and small ground water plants are on a yearly sampling schedule.

TABLE 2
PROPOSED STAGE 2 DBPR PHASED COMPLIANCE WITH MCLs

	Compliance Monitoring Sites	Compliance Calculation Basis	TTHM MCL □g/L	HAA5 MCL □g/L
Stage 2A	Stage 1	LRAA	120	100
	Stage 1	RAA	80	60
Stage 2B	Stage 2	LRAA	80	60

Figure 1
Schedule For DBP Compliance Monitoring



Notes:

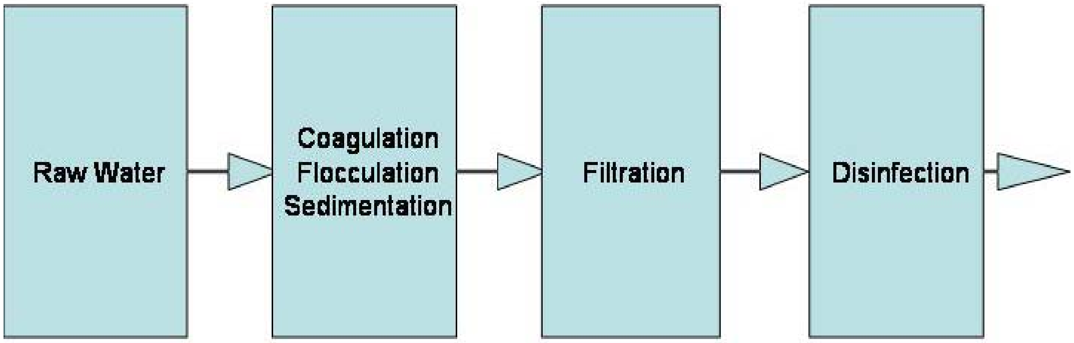
- Applies to Large and Medium Systems and Small Systems in Larger Combined Distribution Systems
- Based on years after Stage 2 DBPR is promulgated.

You can contact Susan at:
Sarah C. Clark, P.E.
303 E. 17th Avenue, Suite 700 | Denver, CO 80203
Direct: (303) 764-1560 Fax: (303) 860-7139
Mobile: (303) 915-9075
email: **sarah.clark@hdrinc.com**

Backwashing filters, is usually done but simply pushing a button or by computer control. It is nice to visually watch the process and examine the filter beds. Water treatment is kind of taken lightly and for granted by the public. But in reality, is quite fascinating and exciting.

Water Treatment Section
Conventional Filtration

Improving the clarity of surface water has always presented a challenge because source quality varies. Traditional treatments rely on expensive, construction-intensive processes with lengthy times.



Suspended particles carry an electrical charge which causes them to repel one another. The conventional process uses alum (aluminum sulfate) and cationic polymer to neutralize the charge. That allows suspended particles to clump together to form more easily filtered particles. Alum combines with alkalinity in the raw water to form a white precipitate that neutralizes suspended particles' electrical charge and forms a base for coagulating those particles. Conventional technology uses a 30 to 50 mg/L alum dosage to form a large **floc** that requires extensive retention time to permit settling.

Traditional filter systems use graded silica sand filter media. Since the sand grains all have about the same density, larger grains lay toward the bottom of the filter bed and finer grains lay at the top of the filter bed. As a result, filtration occurs only within the first few inches of the finer grains at the top of the bed.

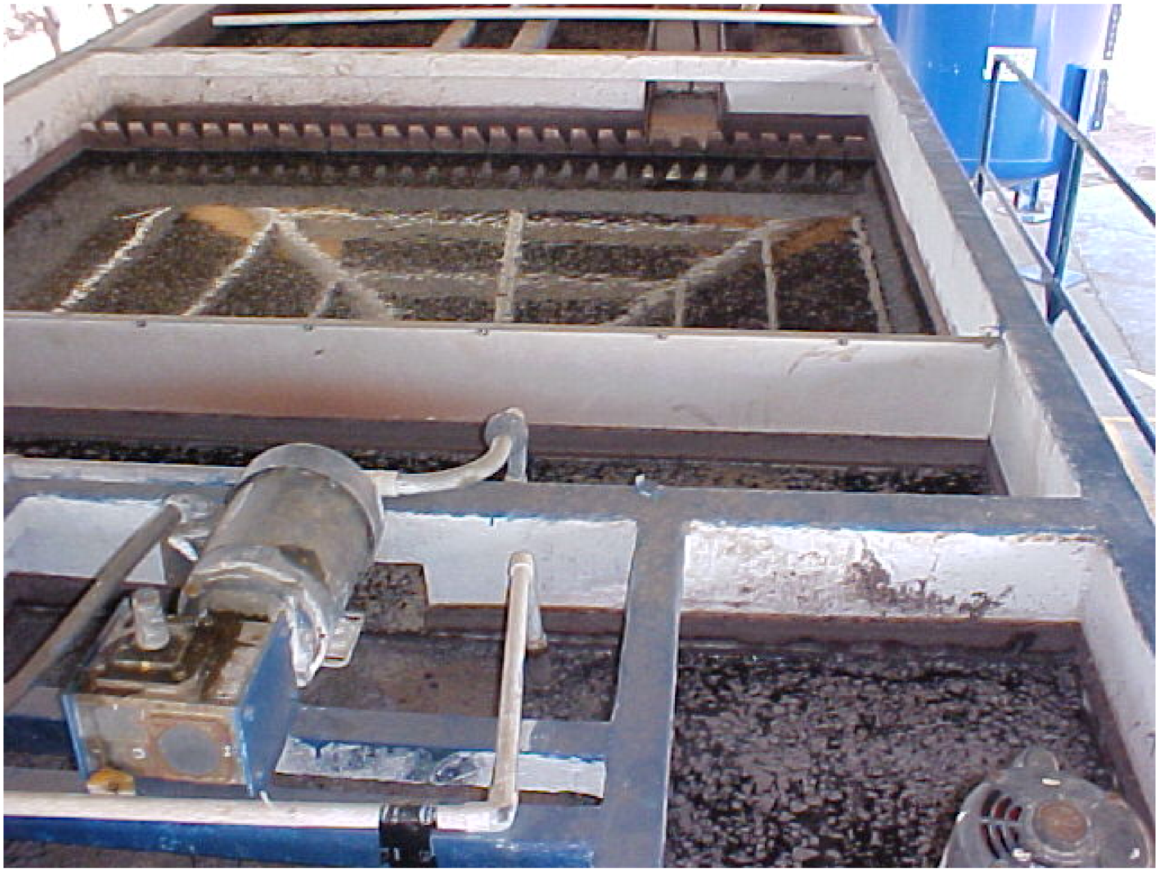
A depth filter has four layers of filtration media, each of different size and density. Light, coarse material lays at the top of the filter bed. The media become progressively finer and denser in the lower layers. Larger suspended particles are removed by the upper layers while smaller particles are removed in the lower layers. Particles are trapped throughout the bed, not in just the top few inches. That allows a depth filter to run substantially longer and use less backwash water than a traditional sand filter.

As suspended particles accumulate in a filter bed, the pressure drop through the filter increases. When the pressure difference between filter inlet and outlet increases by 5 - 10 psi (34 to 68 kPa) from the beginning of the cycle, the filter should be reconditioned. Operating beyond this pressure drop increases the chance of fouling - called "***mud-balling***" - within the filter.

The reconditioning cycle consists of an upflow backwash followed by a downflow rinse. Backwash is an upflow operation, at about 14 gpm per square foot (34m/hr) of filter bed area that lasts about 10 minutes. Turbidity washes out of the filter bed as the filter media particles scour one another. The downflow rinse settles the bed before the filter returns to service. Fast rinse lasts about 5 to 10 minutes.

Chemical pretreatment is often used to enhance filter performance, particularly when turbidity includes fine colloidal particles. Suspended particles are usually electrically charged. Feeding chemicals such as **alum** (aluminum sulfate), ferric chloride, or a cationic polymer neutralizes the charge, allowing the particles to cling to one another and to the filter media.

Chemical pretreatment may increase filtered water clarity, measured in NTU, by 90% compared with filtration alone. If an operator is present to make adjustments for variations in the raw water, filtered water clarity improvements in the range of 93 to 95% are achievable.



Top of a small water treatment package plant, can you see the floc on the top of the water? Notice the confirmation of the settling zone.

Hard Water

Water contains various amounts of dissolved minerals, some of which impart a quality known as hardness. Consumers frequently complain about problems attributed to hard water, such as the formation of scale in cooking utensils and hot water heaters.
In this document we will discusses the occurrence and effects of hard water and the hard water treatment or softening process that remove the hardness-causing minerals.

The precipitation process most frequently used is generally known as the lime process or lime soda process. Because of the special facilities required and the complexity of the process, it is generally applicable only to medium- or large-size water systems where all treatment can be accomplished at a central location. This process will provide softened water at the lowest cost. Lime softening can be used for treatment of either groundwater or surface water sources.

The other commonly used method of softening involves the ion exchange process. This process has the advantages of a considerably lower initial cost and ease of use by small systems or by large systems at multiple locations. The principal disadvantage is that operating costs are considerably higher. Ion exchange processes can typically be used for direct treatment of groundwater, so long as turbidity and iron levels are not excessive. For treatment of surface water, the process normally must be preceded by conventional treatment.

Softening can also be accomplished using membrane technology, electrodialysis, distillation, and freezing. Of these, the membrane methods seem to have the greatest use potential.

Occurrence of Hard Water

Hard water is caused by soluble, divalent, metallic cations, (positive ions having valence of 2). The principal chemicals that cause water hardness are calcium (**Ca**) and magnesium (Mg). Strontium, aluminum, barium, iron, are or are not usually present in large enough concentrations to contribute significantly to the total hardness.

Water hardness varies considerably in different geographic areas of the contiguous 48 states. This is due to different geologic formations, and is also a function of the contact time between water and limestone deposits. Magnesium is dissolved as water passes over and through dolomite and other magnesium-bearing minerals. Because groundwater is in contact with these formations for a longer period of time than surface water, groundwater is normally harder than surface water.

Expressing Hardness Concentration

Water hardness is generally expressed as a concentration of calcium carbonate, in terms of milligrams per liter as $CaCO_3$. The degree of hardness that consumer consider objectionable will vary, depending on other qualities of the water and on the hardness to which they have become accustomed. We will show two different classifications of the relative hardness of water:

Comparative classifications of water for softness and hardness

Classification	mg/L as $CaCO_3$ *	mg/L as $CaCO_3$ +
Soft	0 – 75	0 – 60
Moderately hard	75 – 150	61 – 120
Hard	150 – 300	121 – 180
Very hard	Over 300	Over 180

Source: Adapted from sawyer 1960 and Briggs and Ficke 1977.

* Per Sawyer (1960)
\+ Per Briggs and Ficke (1977)

Types of Hardness

Hardness can be categorized by either of two methods: calcium versus magnesium hardness and carbonate versus non-carbonate hardness.

The calcium-magnesium distinction is based on the minerals involved. Hardness caused by calcium is called calcium hardness, regardless of the salts associated with it, which include calcium sulfate ($CaSO_4$), calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), and others. Likewise, hardness caused by magnesium is called magnesium hardness. Calcium and magnesium are normally the only significant minerals that cause hardness, so it is generally assumed that

Total harness = calcium hardness + magnesium hardness

Carbonate-Noncarbonate Distinction

The carbonate-noncarbonate distinction, however, is based on hardness from either the bicarbonate salts of calcium or the normal salts of calcium and magnesium involved in causing water hardness. Carbonate hardness is caused primarily by the bicarbonate salts of calcium and magnesium, which are calcium bicarbonate, $Ca(HCO_3)_2$, and magnesium bicarbonate $Mg(HCO_3)_2$. Calcium and magnesium combined with carbonate (CO_3) also contribute to carbonate hardness.

Noncarbonate hardness is a measure of calcium and magnesium salts other than carbonate and bicarbonate salts. These salts are calcium sulfate, calcium chloride, magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4$), and magnesium chloride ($MgCl_2$). Calcium and magnesium combined with nitrate may also contribute to noncarbonate hardness, although it is a very rare condition. For carbonate and noncarbonate hardness;

Total hardness = carbonate hardness + noncarbonate hardness

When hard water is boiled, carbon dioxide (CO_2) is driven off, bicarbonate salts of calcium and magnesium then settle out of the water to form calcium and magnesium carbonate precipitates. These precipitates form the familiar chalky deposits on teapots. Because it can be removes by heating, carbonate hardness is sometimes called ***"Temporary hardness."*** Because noncarbonated hardness cannot be removed or precipitated by prolonged boiling, it is sometimes called ***"permanent hardness."***

Objections to Hard Water

Scale Formation: Hard water forms scale, usually calcium carbonate, which causes a variety of problems. Left to dry on the surface of glassware and plumbing fixtures, including showers doors, faucets, and sink tops; hard water leaves unsightly white scale known as water spots. Scale that forms on the inside of water pipes will eventually reduce the flow capacity or possibly block it entirely. Scale that forms within appliances and water meters causes wear on moving parts.

When hard water is heated, scale forms much faster. In particular, when the magnesium hardness is more than about 40 mg/l (as $CaCO_3$), magnesium hydroxide scale will deposit in hot water heaters that are operated at normal temperature of 140-150°F (60-66°C). A coating of only 0.04 in. (1 mm) of scale on the heating surfaces of a hot water heater creates an insulation effect that will increase heating costs by about 10 percent.

Effect on Soap: The historical objection to hardness has been its effect on soap. Hardness ions form precipitates with soap. Causing unsightly "**curd**," such as the familiar bathtub ring, as well as reduced efficiency in washing and laundering. To counteract these problems, synthetic detergents have been developed and are now used almost exclusively for washing clothes and dishes.

These detergents have additives known as sequestering agents that ***"tie up"*** the hardness ions so that they cannot form the troublesome precipitates. Although modern detergents counteract many of the problems of hard water, many customers prefer softer water. These customers can install individual softening units or use water from another source, such as a cistern, for washing.

Hard Water Treatment Methods

There are many commercial ways of treating hard water including water filters, water softeners, electromagnetic water conditioners and reverse osmosis. In this section we will look at the pros and cons of several of the available methods to treat hard water.

Method	**Chemical Water Softeners**	**Water Filters**	**Mechanical Water Treatment Softeners**	**Magnetic Water Conditioners**
Description	Chemicals added in laundering process	Drinking water from the tap is filtered with a portable unit	Permanently installed in plumbing system to replace calcium and magnesium with sodium	Permanently installed in plumbing system to alter calcium ions so they cannot cause lime scale
Advantages	Removes Calcium and Magnesium and lengthens lifespan of clothes	Output water is fit for drinking Chlorine removed Water Softened	Prevents Lime scale Increases heating efficiency Lengthens lifespan of clothes	Output water is fit for drinking Prevents Lime scale Increases heating efficiency Lengthens lifespan of clothes Calcium retained, good for diet Low running cost
Disadvantages	Output water is not fit for drinking	Does not prevent lime scale deposits in pipes and heating system	Output water may not be suitable for drinking Expensive	
Approximate Cost		($0.09) / gallon	($1400) Unit + Installation ($140) / Year - Salt + Electricity	($90) Unit + Installation ($7) / Year - electricity

Water Softening Section

Water softening is a method of removing from water the minerals that make it hard. Hard water does not dissolve soap readily. It forms scale in pipes, boilers, and other equipment in which it is used. The principal methods of softening water are the lime soda process and the ion exchange process.

In the ***lime soda process,*** soda ash and lime are added to the water in amounts determined by chemical tests. These chemicals combine with the calcium and magnesium in the water to make insoluble compounds that settle to the bottom of the water tank.

In the ***ion exchange process,*** the water filters through minerals called *zeolites.* As the water passes through the filter, the sodium ions in the zeolite are exchanged for the calcium and magnesium ions in the water, and the water is softened. After household softeners become exhausted, a strong solution of *sodium chloride* (salt) is passed through the filter to replace the sodium that has been lost. The use of two exchange materials makes it possible to remove both metal and acid ions from water. Some cities and towns, however, prohibit or restrict the use of ion exchange equipment on drinking water, pending the results of studies on how people are affected by the consumption of the added sodium in softened water.

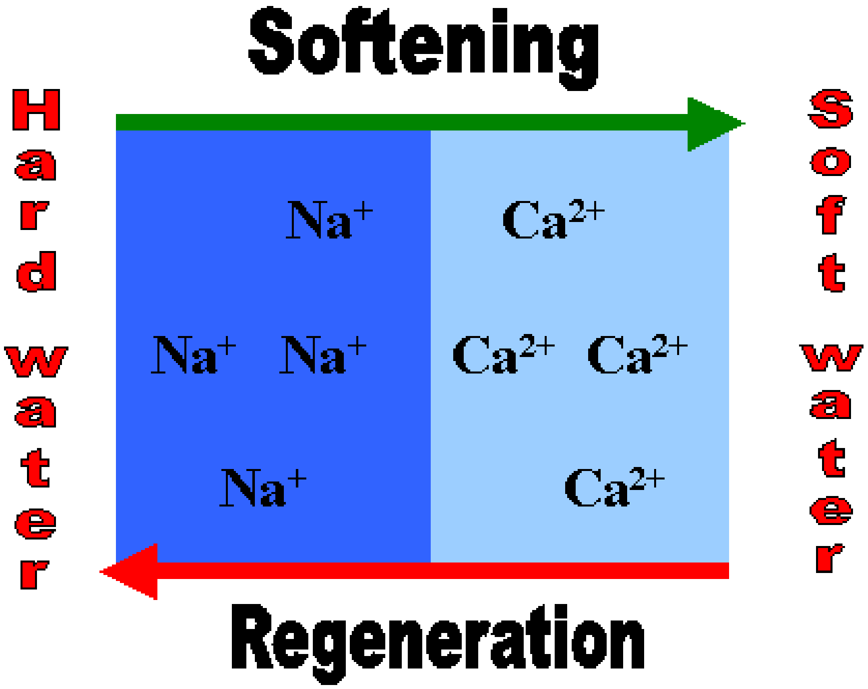
These containers hold the resin for the deionization.

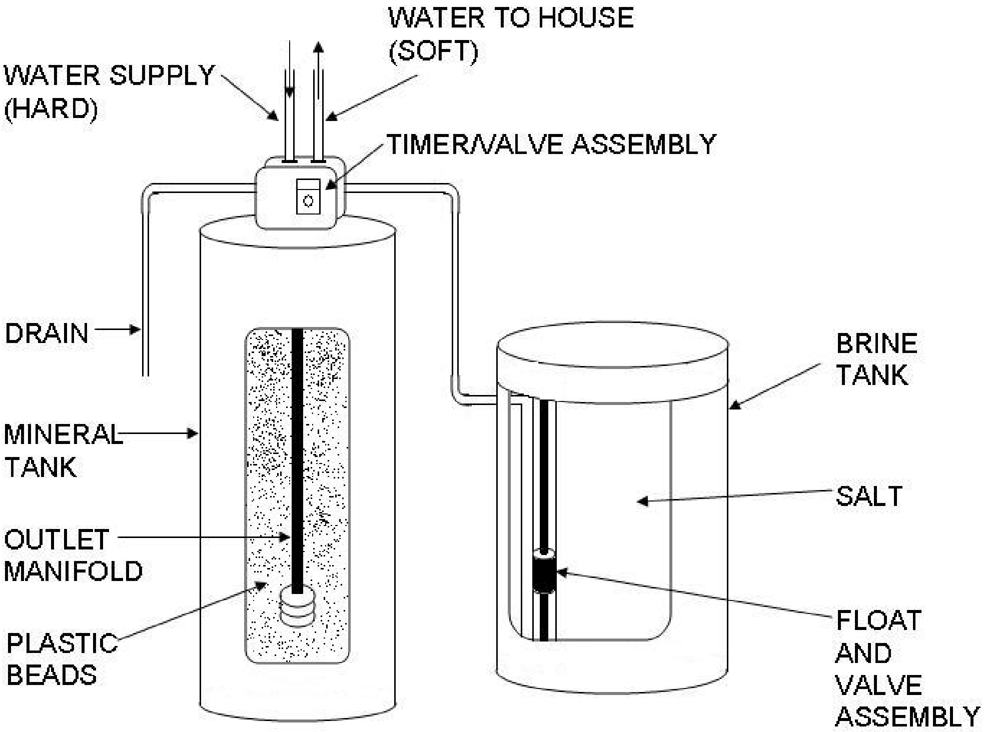
Calcium and magnesium in water create hard water, and at high levels can clog pipes. The best way to soften water is to use a water softener unit connected into the water supply line. You may want to consider installing a separate faucet for unsoftened water used for drinking and cooking. Water softening units also remove iron.

The most common way to soften household water is to use a water softener. Softeners may also be safely used to remove up to about 5 milligrams per liter of dissolved iron if the water softener is rated for that amount of iron removal. Softeners are automatic, semi-automatic, or manual. Each type is available in several sizes and is rated on the amount of hardness it can remove before regeneration is necessary. Using a softener to remove iron in naturally soft water is not advised. A green-sand filter is a better method. When the resin is filled to capacity, it must be recharged. Fully automatic softeners regenerate on a preset schedule and return to service automatically. Regeneration is usually started by a preset time clock; some units are started by water use meters or hardness detectors. Semi-automatic softeners have automatic controls for everything except for the start of regeneration. Manual units require manual operation of one or more valves to control back washing, brining and rinsing. In many areas, there are companies that provide a water softening service. For a monthly fee the company installs a softener unit and replaces it periodically with a freshly charged unit.

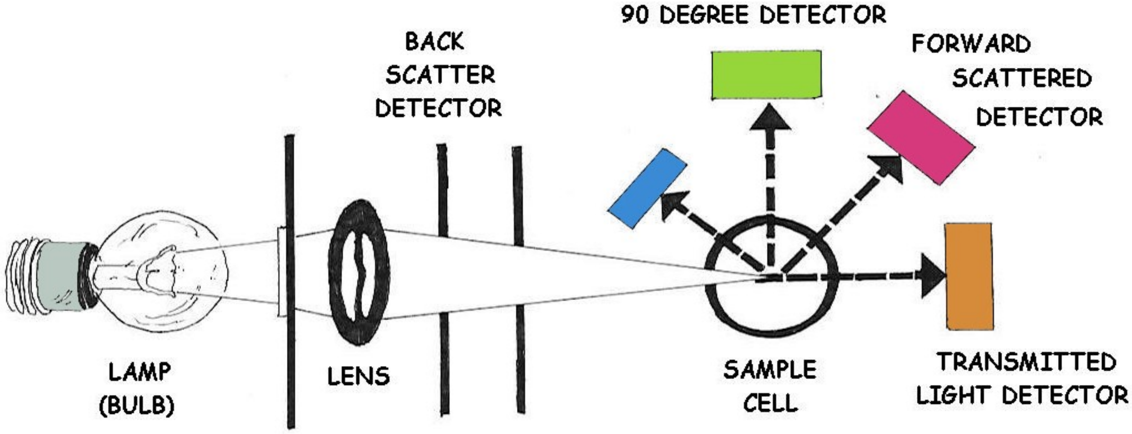
The principle behind water softening is really just simple chemistry. A water softener contains resin beads which hold electrically charged ions. When hard water passes through the softener, calcium and magnesium ions are attracted to the charged resin beads. It's the resulting removal of calcium and magnesium ions that produces "***soft water***." The diagram shows the exchange that takes place during the water softening process.

When the resin beads in your softener become saturated with calcium and magnesium ions, they need to be recharged. Sodium ions from the water softening salt reactivate the resin beads so they can continue to do their job. Without sufficient softening salt, your water softener is less efficient. As a rule, you should check your water softener once a week to be sure the salt level is always at least one quarter full.



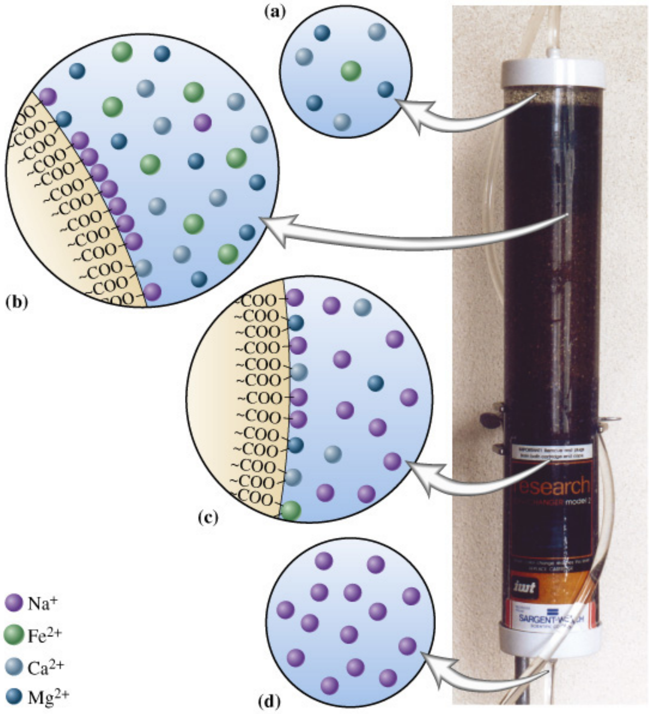


Operation of a household water softener.



HOW AN TURBIDIMETER WORKS

Various grades of salt.



Inside an Ion Exchange Filter.

Mechanical Water Treatment Softeners

Mechanical water treatment softening units can be permanently installed into the plumbing system to continuously remove calcium and magnesium.

Water treatment softeners operate on the ion exchange process. In this process, water passes through a media bed, usually sulfonated polystyrene beads. The beads are supersaturated with sodium. The ion exchange process takes place as hard water passes through the softening material. The hardness minerals attach themselves to the resin beads while sodium on the resin beads is released simultaneously into the water.

When the resin becomes saturated with calcium and magnesium, it must be recharged. The recharging is done by passing a salt (**brine**) solution through the resin. The sodium replaces the calcium and magnesium which are discharged in the waste water.

Hard water treated with an ion exchange water softener has sodium added. According to the Water Quality Association (**WQA**), the ion exchange softening process adds sodium at the rate of about 8 mg/liter for each grain of hardness removed per gallon of water.

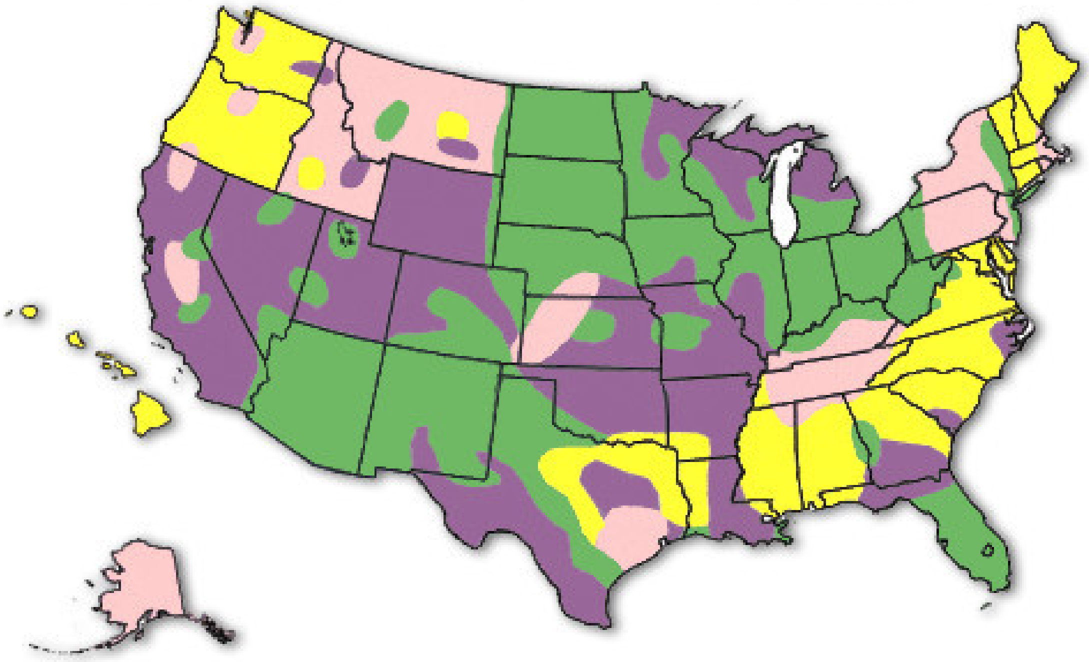
For example, if the water has a hardness of 10 grains per gallon, it will contain about 80 mg/liter of sodium after being softened in an ion exchange water softener if all hardness minerals are removed.

Because of the sodium content of softened water, some individuals may be advised by their physician, not to install water softeners, to soften only hot water or to bypass the water softener with a cold water line to provide unsoftened water for drinking and cooking, usually to a separate faucet at the kitchen sink.

Mechanically softened water is not recommended for watering plants, lawns, and gardens due to its sodium content.

The container behind the salt pallet is a high concentration of salt and water. (Brine)

HARD WATER LEVELS THROUGHOUT THE U.S.

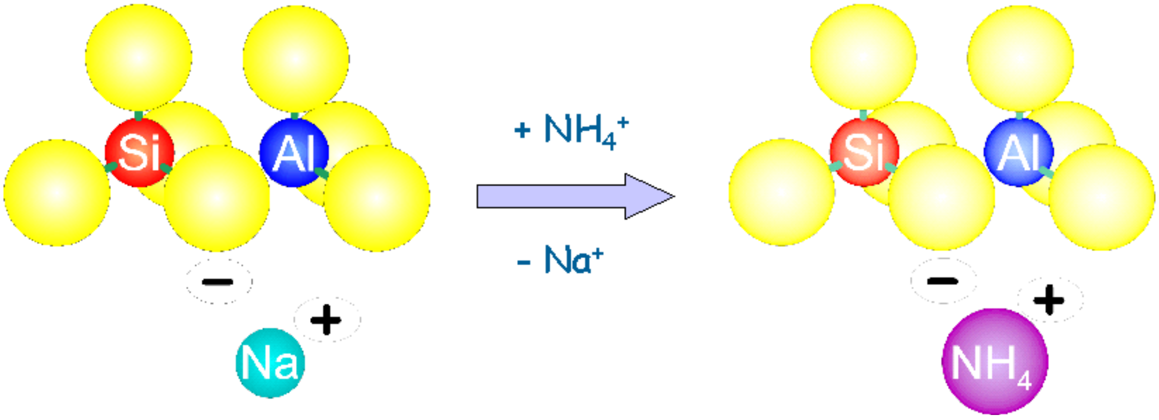


LEGEND

🟨 0 - 3.5 grains per gallon – Soft
🟪 3.5 - 7.0 grains per gallon – Moderately Hard
🟪 7.0 - 10.5 grains per gallon – Hard
🟩 over 10.5 grains per gallon – Very Hard

Due to the nature of the water bed sub-soil structure, water hardness may vary from one source to another within a general area.

$$\left.\begin{array}{cc} \mathrm{Si(IV)} & \mathrm{Al(III)} \\ \multicolumn{2}{c}{4\times\ \mathrm{O(-II)}} \end{array}\right\} \ [\mathrm{SiAlO_4}]^- \ \mathrm{Na}^+$$



Small Water Filters

Water filters generally come in two forms. Portable ion exchange water filters, and reverse osmosis water filters. Both are used for ***"point of use"*** drinking water, that is, to filter out harmful or unwanted particles before the water is used for human consumption.

Reverse Osmosis works by forcing the water through a semi-permeable membrane that stops certain particles from passing through.

Portable water filters work using a cartridge containing activated carbon and ion exchange resin. The carbon absorbs and helps reduce the levels of chlorine and chlorine compounds, as well as pesticides, color and other organic substances. This improves taste and appearance. The ion exchange resin works to reduce temporary hardness.

Activated Carbon Filtration

Activated carbon has been used for many years to solve water problems. In the beginning, its use was more art than science. Today, however, we understand more about what activated carbon can remove and how it removes impurities.
Activated carbon quickly and effectively removes chlorine from water.

The presence of organic matter in water can cause color, taste, and odor complaints. Activated carbon adsorbs organic matter in its extensive network of pores. The adsorption process takes time, so service rates should be limited to 5 gpm/ft (12m/hr) or less for these applications.

A handful of GAC. Basically, just burnt coconut shells. This is used to remove tastes and odors and other long chained organic compounds from drinking water.

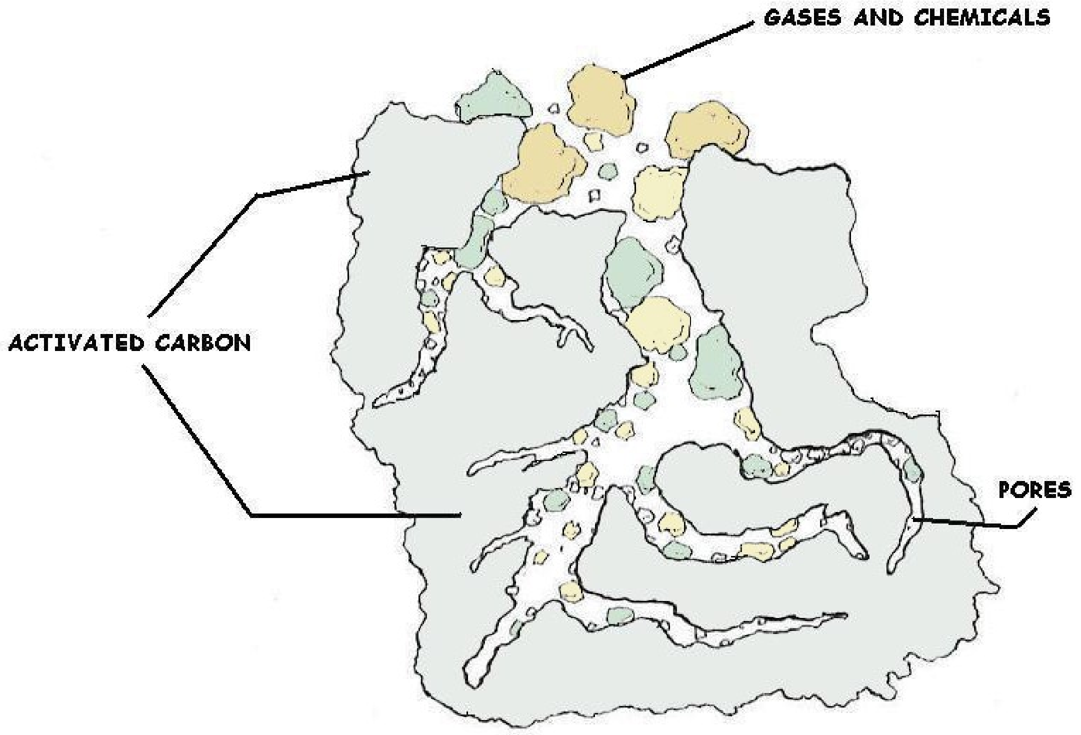
Synthetic Organic Chemicals

Synthetic organic chemicals (**SOC**) include all man-made organics, some of which are volatile organic compounds (**VOC**). Activated carbon can substantially reduce many VOCs such as benzene, trichlorethane and carbon tetrachloride. Activated carbon also removes SOCs such as Alachlor, EDB and toluene. The EPA is establishing limits for these chemicals in public drinking water supplies.

Before recommending treatment, water suspected of containing any of these and other substances must be analyzed to determine their concentrations and whether they exceed the EPA standards.

Activated carbon beds compact with use so they may need occasional backwashing, however, backwash carbon as little as possible to prevent loss of the fragile material. Also, contaminant-laden carbon may migrate toward the bottom of the bed during backwash and reduce filter performance. When operating a carbon filter or system on turbid water supplies, remove suspended particles with a depth filter before treating it with activated carbon. A carbon filter typically backwashes at 10 gpm/ft (25 m/hr) for about 10 minutes, followed by a 5 minute downflow rinse.

Over a period of several months to two years, the carbon's adsorption capacity diminishes. The exhausted carbon bed should be replaced with fresh carbon. The old carbon should be hauled to an approved disposal facility.



ACTIVATED CARBON ABSORBS GASES AND CHEMICALS

Membrane Filtration Processes

In 1748, the French physicist Nollet first noted that water would diffuse through a pig bladder membrane into alcohol. This was the discovery of osmosis, a process in which water from a dilute solution will naturally pass through a porous membrane into a concentrate solution. Over the years, scientists have attempted to develop membranes that would be useful in industrial processes, but it wasn't until the late 1950s that membranes were produced that could be used for what is known as reverse osmosis. In reverse osmosis, water is forced to move through a membrane from a concentrate solution to a dilute solution.

Since that time, continual improvements and new developments have been made in membrane technology, resulting in ever-increasing uses in many industries. In potable water treatment, membranes have been used for desalinization, removal of dissolved inorganic and organic chemicals, water softening, and removal of the fine solids.

In particular, membrane technology enables some water systems having contaminated water sources to meet new, more stringent regulations. In some cases, it can also allow secondary sources, such as brackish groundwater, to be used. There is great potential for the continuing wide use of membrane filtration processes in potable water treatment, especially as technology improves and costs are reduced.

Description of Membrane Filtration Processes

In the simplest membrane processes, water is forced through a porous membrane under pressure, while suspended solid, large molecules, or ions are held back or rejected.

Types of Membrane Filtration Processes

The two general classes of membrane processes, based on the driving force used to make the process work, are:

- Pressure-driven processes
- Electric-driven processes

Pressure-Driven Processes

The four general membrane processes that operate by applying pressure to the raw water are:

- Microfiltration
- Ultrafiltration
- Nanofiltration
- Reverse Osmosis

Microfiltration

Microfiltration (**MF**) is a process in which water is forced under pressure through a porous membrane. Membranes with a pore size of 0.45 μm are normally used; this size is relatively large compared with the other membrane filtration processes. This process has not been generally applicable to drinking water treatment because it either does not remove substances that require removal from potable water, or the problem substances can be removed more economically using other processes. The current primary use of MF is by industries to remove very fine particles from process water, such as in electronic manufacturing. In addition, the process has also been used as a pretreatment for other membrane processes. In particular, RO membranes are susceptible to clogging or filter binding unless the water being processed is already quite clean.

However, in recent years, microfiltration has been proposed as a filtering method for particles resulting from the direct filtration process. Traditionally, this direct filtration process has used the injection of coagulants such as alum or polymers into the raw water stream to remove turbidity such as clay or silts. The formed particles were then removed by rapid sand filters. The use of filter aids to improve filtering efficiency, especially for small particles that could contain bacterial and protozoan life are recommended.

Ultrafiltration

Ultrafiltration (**UF**) is a process that uses a membrane with a pore size generally below 0.1 μm. The smaller pore size is designed to remove colloids and substances that have larger molecules, which are called high-molecular-weight materials. UF membranes can be designed to pass material that weigh less than or equal to a certain molecular weight. This weight is called the molecular weight cutoff (**MWC**) of the membrane. Although UF does not generally work well for removal of salt or dissolved solids, it can be used effectively for removal or most organic chemicals.

Nanofiltration

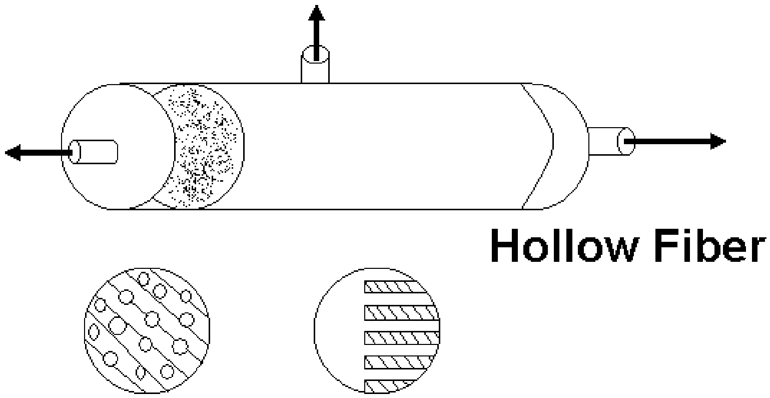
Nanofiltration (**NF**) is a process using membranes that will reject even smaller molecules that UF. The process has been used primarily for water softening and reduction of total dissolved solids (**TDS**). NF operates with less pressure that reverse osmosis and is still able to remove a significant proportion of inorganic and organic molecules. This capability will undoubtedly increase the use of NF for potable water treatment.

Reverse Osmosis

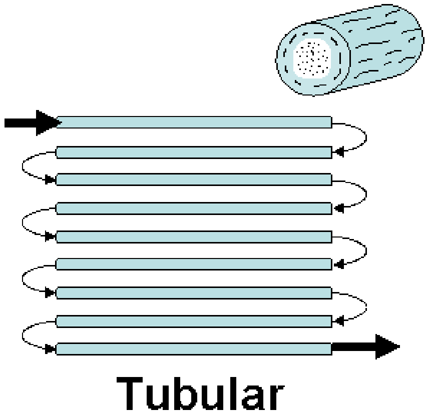
Reverse Osmosis (**RO**) is a membrane process that has the highest rejection capability of all the membrane processes. These RO membranes have very low MWC pore size that can reject ions at very high rates, including chloride and sodium. Water from this process is very pure due to the high reject rates. The process has been used primarily in the water industry for desalinization of seawater because the capital and operating costs are competitive with other processes for this service. The RO also works most organic chemicals, and radionuclides and microorganisms. Industrial water uses such as semiconductor manufacturing is also an important RO process.

RO is discussed in more detail later.

Membrane Configurations



Hollow Fiber



Tubular

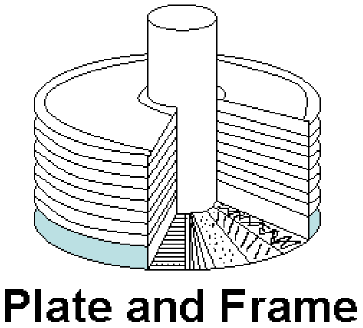
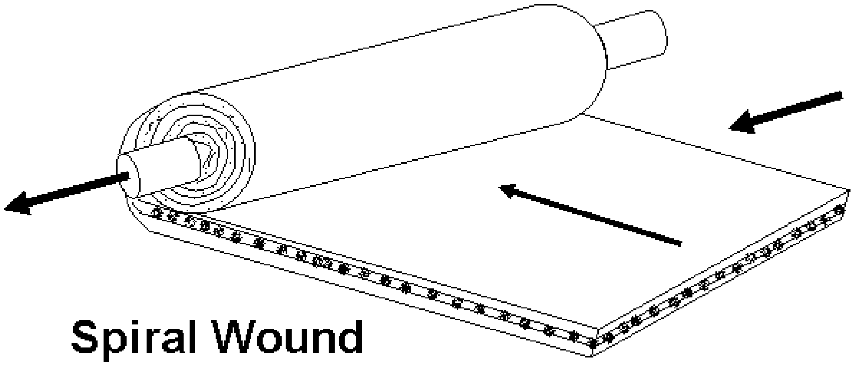


Plate and Frame



Spiral Wound

Electric-Driven Processes

There are two membrane processes that purify a water stream by using an electric current to move ions across a membrane. These processes are:

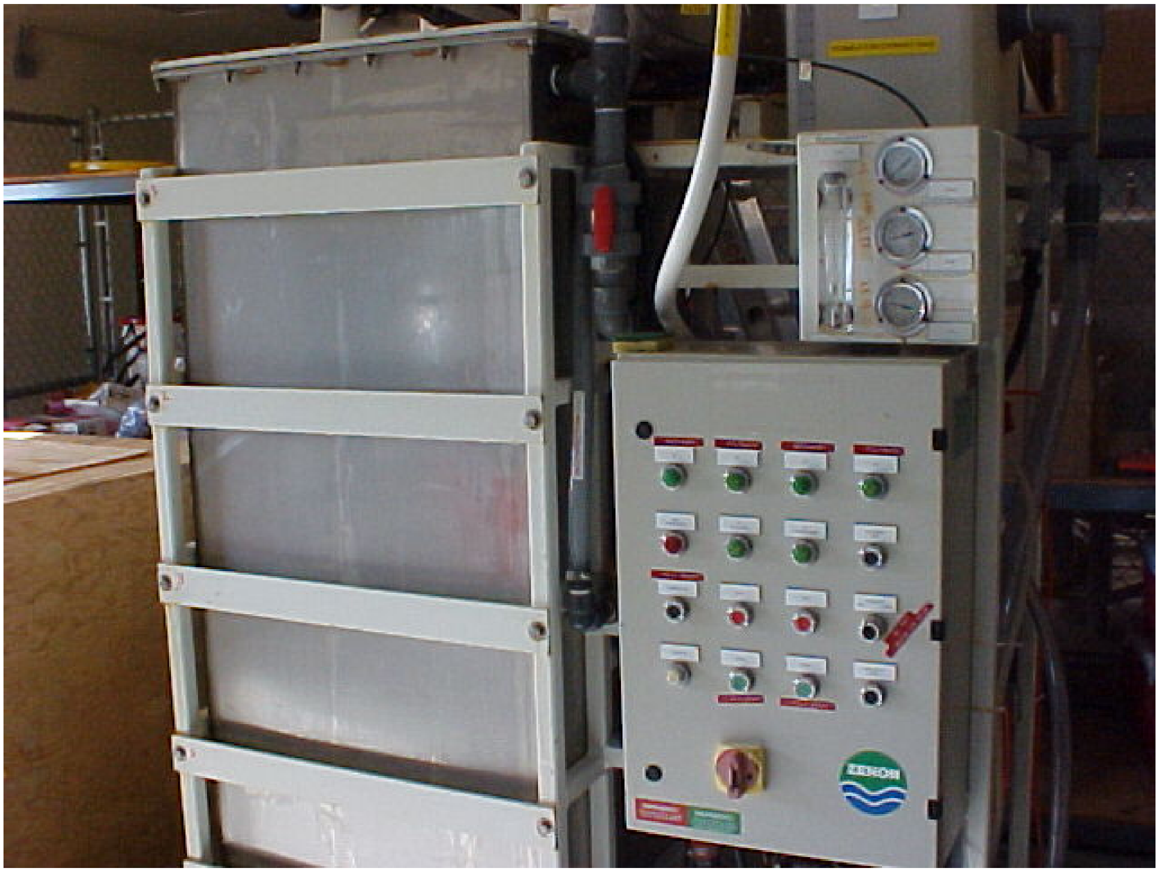
- Electrodialysis
- Electrodialysis reversal

Electrodialysis

Electrodialysis (**ED**) is a process in which ions are transferred through a membrane as a result of direct electric current applied to the solution. The current carries the ions through a membrane from the less concentrated solution to the more concentrated one.

Electrodialysis Reversal

Electrodialysis Reversal (**EDR**) is a process similar to ED, except that the polarity of the direct current is periodically reversed. The reversal in polarity reverses the flow of ions between demineralizing compartments, which provides automatic flushing of scale-forming materials from the membrane surface. As a result, EDR can often be used with little or no pretreatment of feedwater to prevent fouling. So far, ED and EDR have been used at only a few locations for drinking water treatment.



Nanofiltration Unit

Primary Water Treatment Alternatives

Ballasted Flocculation

In an effort to enhance the effectiveness of primary treatment, a ballasted flocculation unit uses many minute particles, which attract and hold materials together. Coagulating chemicals are also added to further clump particles together. The larger, heavier particles settle out of the wastewater rapidly.

This unit may significantly improve solids and organic material removal compared to conventional primary treatments.

Fuzzy Filter

Wastewater flows from the bottom of this machine to the top through lots of fuzzy pink balls that pick up most of the solid particles. This technology is typically used as an advanced treatment and has not been adapted to primary treatment elsewhere. If it is successful, it could dramatically reduce the size, or footprint, of the primary treatment process.

Secondary Treatment Alternative

Biological Aerated Filtration

Primary treated wastewater and air are injected at the bottom of this unit. It moves to the top through lots of granules. The granules both separate solids and provide a surface for biological activity to take place. Biological Aerated Filtration can provide secondary treatment quality without taking up as much space. In addition, this technology can be adapted to function as a nitrogen removal process (nitrification-denitrification) which may be important if reclaimed water is used in the future to augment stream flow.

This information was provided by King County Water Reuse Program
201 South Jackson Street, Suite 505, Seattle, WA 98104-3855 For more information about King County's Water Reuse Program and water reclamation efforts, contact Jo Sullivan at 206-296-8361

Advanced Secondary Treatment Alternative

Membrane Bioreactors

This unit combines an activated sludge secondary treatment bioreactor and a microfiltration membrane. Membranes are submerged in the aeration tank and water is drawn through the membrane with a low-pressure vacuum, leaving the solids in the aeration tank. The Membrane Bioreactor can convert screened sewage to clean effluent in a single process - eliminating the need for separate primary, secondary and advanced treatment. It produces a very high quality effluent meeting Class A criteria (after disinfection). This technology has the potential to significantly reduce plant footprint while producing improved effluent quality.

Advanced Treatment Alternatives

Fuzzy Filter

This upflow filtration process was described above as a primary treatment alternative. The porosity of the filter bed can be altered by how compressed the fuzzy pink balls (media) are. In an advanced treatment application the loading rate on a fuzzy filter can be 5 times higher than typical sand filtration. This would result in a substantially smaller footprint.

Microfiltration

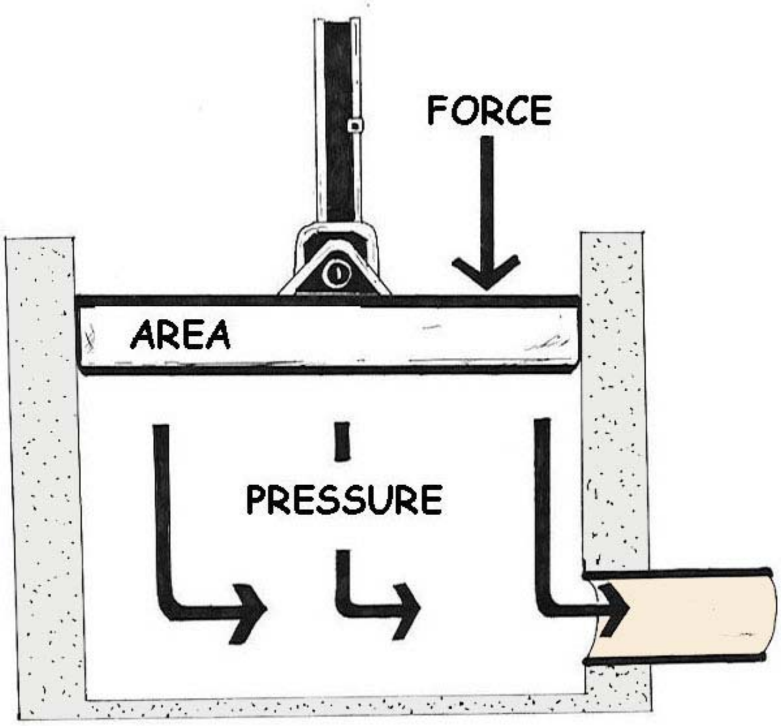
Microfiltration membranes (such as MEMBRANE BIOREACTORS) are used for physical separation of small particles from liquids. Membranes can be classified according to their pore size. There are four main types of membranes (listed from largest pore size to smallest): microfiltration, ultrafiltration, nanofiltration and reverse osmosis. Membranes are designed to operate in a pressure or vacuum mode.

In pressure membranes, the wastewater to be treated is forced down the center of the spaghetti-like membrane and is pushed through the walls in an 'inside-out' direction. For vacuum membranes, wastewater is drawn from the outside of the membrane into the hollow core where it is collected. Microfiltration membranes can be designed as strands, sheets or plates depending on the manufacturer and application. Microfiltration membranes can be used for direct filtration of secondary effluent or as pretreatment for reverse osmosis membranes (see next page). Microfiltration has the potential to produce better effluent quality when compared to standard sand filtration technologies.

Reverse Osmosis Process

Osmosis is a natural phenomenon in which a liquid - water in this case - passes through a semi-permeable membrane from a relatively dilute solution toward a more concentrated solution. This flow produces a measurable pressure, called osmotic pressure. If pressure is applied to the more concentrated solution, and if that pressure exceeds the osmotic pressure, water flows through the membrane from the more concentrated solution toward the dilute solution.

This process, called reverse osmosis, or RO, removes up to 98% of dissolved minerals, and virtually 100% of colloidal and suspended matter. RO produces high quality water at low cost compared to other purifications processes.

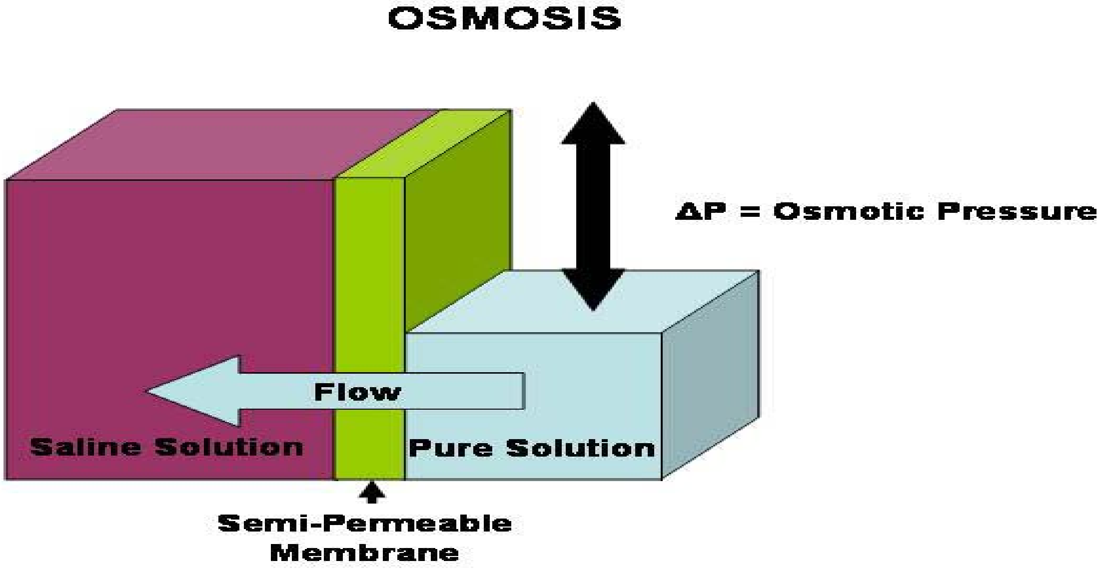


The membrane must be physically strong to stand up to high osmotic pressure - in the case of sea water, 2500 kg/m. Most membranes are made of cellulose acetate or polyamide composites cast into a thin film, either as a sheet or fine hollow fibers. The membrane is constructed into a cartridge called a reverse osmosis module.

After filtration to remove suspended particles, incoming water is pressurized with a pump to 200 - 400 psi (1380 - 2760 kPa) depending on the RO system model. This exceeds the water's osmotic pressure. A portion of the water (**permeate**) diffuses through the membrane leaving dissolved salts and other contaminants behind with the remaining water where they are sent to drain as waste (**concentrate**).

Pretreatment is important because it influences permeate quality and quantity. It also affects the module's life because many water-borne contaminants can deposit on the membrane and foul it. Generally, the need for pretreatment increases as systems become larger and operate at higher pressures, and as permeate quality requirements become more demanding. Because reverse osmosis is the principal membrane filtration process used in water treatment, it is described here in greater detail.

To understand Reverse Osmosis, one must begin by understanding the process of osmosis, which occurs in nature. In living things, osmosis is frequently seen. The component parts include a pure or relatively pure water solution and a saline or contaminated water solution, separated by a semi-permeable membrane, and a container or transport mechanism of some type.



The semi-permeable membrane is so designated because it permits certain elements to pass through, while blocking others. The elements that pass through include water, usually smaller molecules of dissolved solids, and most gases. The dissolved solids are usually further restricted based on their respective electrical charge.

In osmosis, naturally occurring in living things, the pure solution passes through the membrane until the osmotic pressure becomes equalized, at which point osmosis ceases. The osmotic pressure is defined as the pressure differential required to stop osmosis from occurring. This pressure differential is determined by the total dissolved solids content of the saline solution, or contaminated solution on one side of the membrane. The higher the content of dissolved solids, the higher the osmotic pressure. Each element that may be dissolved in the solution contributes to the osmotic pressure, in that the molecular weight of the element affects the osmotic pressure.

Generally, higher molecular weights result in higher osmotic pressures. Hence the formula for calculating osmotic pressure is very complex. However, approximate osmotic pressures are usually sufficient to design a system.

Common tap water as found in most areas may have an osmotic pressure of about 10 PSI (Pounds per Square Inch), or about 1.68 Bar. Seawater at 36,000 PPM typically has an osmotic pressure of about 376 PSI (26.75 Bar).

Thus, to reach the point at which osmosis stops for tap water, a pressure of 10 PSI would have to be applied to the saline solution, and to stop osmosis in seawater, a pressure of 376 PSI would have to be applied to the seawater side of the membrane.

Several decades ago, U.S. Government scientists had the idea that the principles of osmosis could be harnessed to purify water from various sources, including brackish water and seawater. In order to transform this process into one that purifies water, osmosis would have to be reversed, and suitable synthetic membrane materials would have to be developed. Additionally, ways of configuring the membranes would have to be engineered to handle a continuous flow of raw and processed water without clogging or scaling the membrane material.

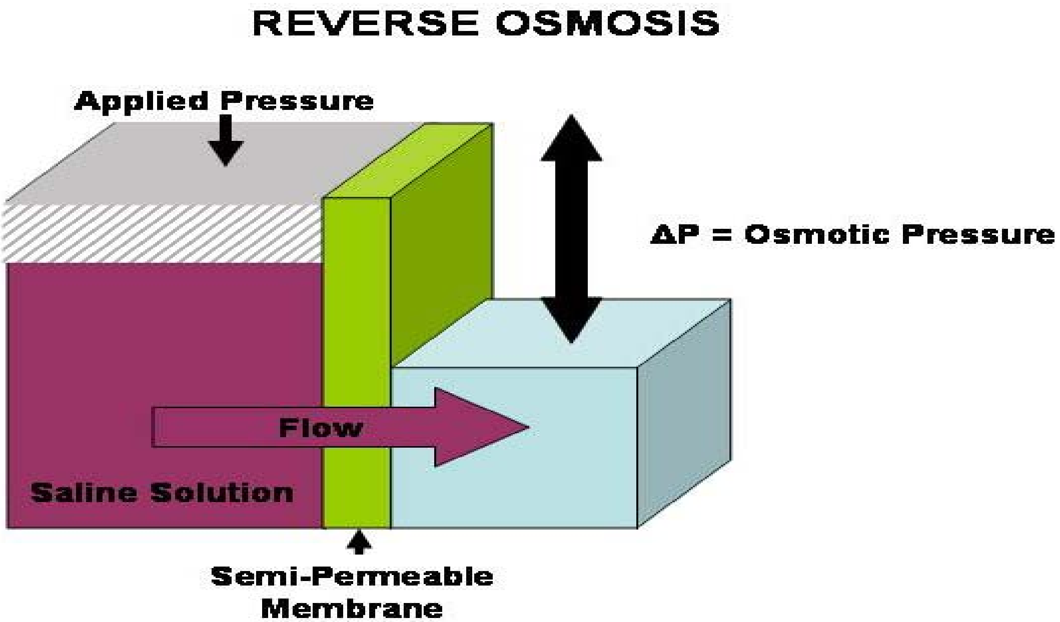
These ideas were crystallized, and fueled by U.S. Government funding, usable membrane materials and designs resulted. One of the membrane designs was the spiral wound membrane element. This design enabled the engineers to construct a membrane element that could contain a generous amount of membrane area in a small package, and to permit the flow of raw water to pass along the length of the membrane. This permits flows and pressures to be developed to the point that ample processed or purified water is produced, while keeping the membrane surface relatively free from particulate, colloidal, bacteriological or mineralogical fouling.

The design features a perforated tube in the center of the element, called the product or permeate tube. Wound around this tube are one or more "**envelopes**" of membrane material, opening at the permeate tube. Each envelope is sealed at the incoming and exiting edge. Thus, when water penetrates or permeates though the membrane, it travels, aided by a fine mesh called the permeate channel, around the spiral and collects in the permeate tube. The permeate or product water is collected from the end of each membrane element, and becomes the product or result of the purification process.
Meanwhile, as the raw water flows along the "**brine channel**" or coarse medium provided to facilitate good flow characteristics, it gets more and more concentrated. This concentrated raw water is called the reject stream or concentrate stream. It may also be called brine if it is coming from a salt water source. The concentrate, when sufficient flows are maintained, serves to carry away the impurities removed by the membrane, thus keeping the membrane surface clean and functional. This is important, as buildup on the membrane surface, called fouling, impedes or even prevents the purification process.

The membrane material itself is a special thin film composite (**TFC**) polyamide material, cast in a microscopically thin layer on another, thicker cast layer of Polysulfone, called the microporous support layer. The microporous support layer is cast on sheets of paper-like material that are made from synthetic fibers such as polyester, and manufactured to the required tolerances.

Each sheet of membrane material is inspected at special light tables to ensure the quality of the membrane coating, before being assembled into the spiral wound element design.

To achieve Reverse Osmosis, the osmotic pressure must be exceeded, and to produce a reasonable amount of purified water, the osmotic pressure is generally doubled. Thus with seawater osmotic pressure of 376 PSI, a typical system operating pressure is about 800 PSI. Factors that affect the pressure required include raw water temperature, raw water TDS (Total Dissolved Solids), membrane age, and membrane fouling. The effect of temperature is that with higher temperatures, the salt passage increases, flux (permeate flow) increases, and operating pressure required is lower. With lower temperatures, the inverse occurs, in that salt passage decreases (reducing the TDS in the permeate or product water), while operating pressures increase. Or, if operating pressures do not increase, then the amount of permeate or product water is reduced. In general, Reverse Osmosis (**R/O**) systems are designed for raw water temperatures of 25° C (77° F). Higher temperatures or lower temperatures can be accommodated with appropriate adjustments in the system design.



Membranes are available in "***standard rejection***" or "***high rejection***" models for seawater and brackish water. The rejection rate is the percentage of dissolved solids rejected, or prevented from passing through the membrane. For example, a membrane with a rejection rate of 99% (usually based on Na (Sodium)) will allow only 1% of the concentration of dissolved solids to pass through into the permeate. Hence, product water from a source containing 10,000 PPM would have 100 PPM remaining.

Of course, as the raw water is processed, the concentrations of TDS increase as it passes along the membrane's length and usually multiple membranes are employed, with each membrane in series seeing progressively higher dissolved solids levels.

Typically, starting with seawater of 36,000 PPM, standard rejection membranes produce permeate below 500 PPM, while high rejection membranes under the same conditions produce drinking water TDS of below 300 PPM.

There are many considerations when designing R/O systems that competent engineers are aware of. These include optimum flows and pressures, optimum recovery rates (the percentage of permeate from a given stream of raw water), prefiltration and other pretreatment considerations, and so forth.

Membrane systems in general cannot handle the typical load of particulate contaminants without prefiltration. Often, well designed systems employ multiple stages of prefiltration, tailored to the application, including multi-media filtration and one or more stages of cartridge filtration. Usually the last stage would be 5m or smaller, to provide sufficient protection for the membranes.

R/O systems typically have the following components: A supply pump or pressurized raw water supply, prefiltration in one or more stages, chemical injection of one or more pretreatment agents may be added, a pressure pump suited to the application, sized and driven appropriately for the flow and pressure required, a membrane array including one or more membranes installed in one or more pressure tubes (also called pressure vessels, R/O pressure vessels, or similar), various gauges and flow meters, a pressure regulating valve, relief valve(s) and/or safety pressure switches, and possibly some form of post treatment.

Post treatment should usually include a form of sterilization such as Chlorine, Bromine, Ultra-Violet (**U-V**), or Ozone. Other types of post treatment may include carbon filters, pH adjustment, or mineral injection for some applications.

Packaged portable skid unit complete with treatment, instrumentation, UV, and softening.

Some very low cost R/O systems may dispense with most of the controls and instruments. However, systems installed in critical applications should be equipped with a permeate or product flow meter, a reject, concentrate or brine flow meter, multiple pressure gauges to indicate the pressure before and after each filtration device, and the system operation pressure in the membrane loop, preferably both before and after the membrane array. Another feature found in better systems is a provision to clean the membranes in place, commonly known as a "***Clean In Place***" (**CIP**) system. Such a system may be built right into the R/O system or may be provided as an attachment for use as required.

Reverse Osmosis has proved to be the most reliable and cost effective method of desalinating water, and hence its use has become more and more widespread. Energy consumption is usually some 70% less than for comparable evaporation technologies. Advancements have been made in membrane technology, resulting in stable, long lived membrane elements.

Component parts have been improved as well, reducing maintenance and down time. Additional advancements in pretreatment have been made in recent years, further extending membrane life and improving performance. Reverse Osmosis delivers product water or permeate having essentially the same temperature as the raw water source (an increase of 1° C or 1.8° F may occur due to pumping and friction in the piping). This is more desirable than the hot water produced by evaporation technologies. R/O Systems can be designed to deliver virtually any required product water quality. For these and other reasons, R/O is usually the preferred method of desalination today.

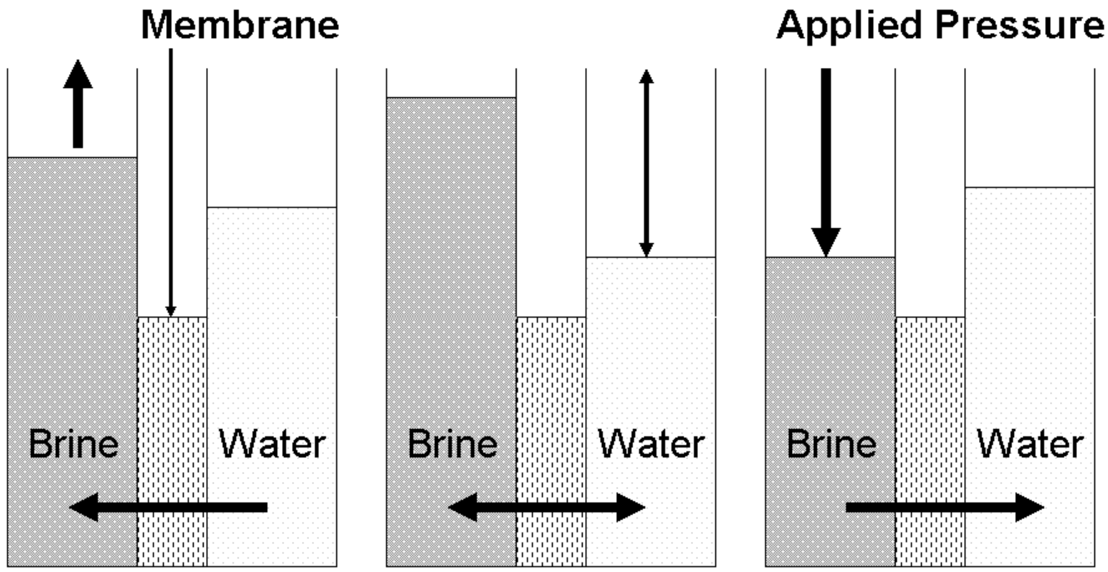
Reverse osmosis, also known as hyperfiltration, is the finest filtration known. This process will allow the removal of particles as small as ions from a solution. Reverse osmosis is used to purify water and remove salts and other impurities in order to improve the color, taste, or properties of the fluid. It can be used to purify fluids such as ethanol and glycol, which will pass through the reverse osmosis membrane, while rejecting other ions and contaminants from passing. The most common use for reverse osmosis is in purifying water. It is used to produce water that meets the most demanding specifications that are currently in place.

Reverse osmosis uses a membrane that is semi-permeable, allowing the fluid that is being purified to pass through it, while rejecting the contaminants that remain. Most reverse osmosis technology uses a process known as cross-flow to allow the membrane to continually clean itself. As some of the fluid passes through the membrane the rest continues downstream, sweeping the rejected species away from the membrane. The process of reverse osmosis requires a driving force to push the fluid through the membrane, and the most common force is pressure from a pump. The higher the pressure, the larger the driving force. As the concentration of the fluid being rejected increases, the driving force required to continue concentrating the fluid increases.

Reverse osmosis is capable of rejecting bacteria, salts, sugars, proteins, particles, dyes, and other constituents that have a molecular weight of greater than 150-250 daltons. The separation of ions with reverse osmosis is aided by charged particles. This means that dissolved ions that carry a charge, such as salts, are more likely to be rejected by the membrane than those that are not charged, such as organics. The larger the charge and the larger the particle, the more likely it will be rejected.

Reverse Osmosis, when properly configured with sediment, carbon and/or carbon block technology, produces pure water that is clearly the body's choice for optimal health. It is the best tasting because it is oxygen-rich.

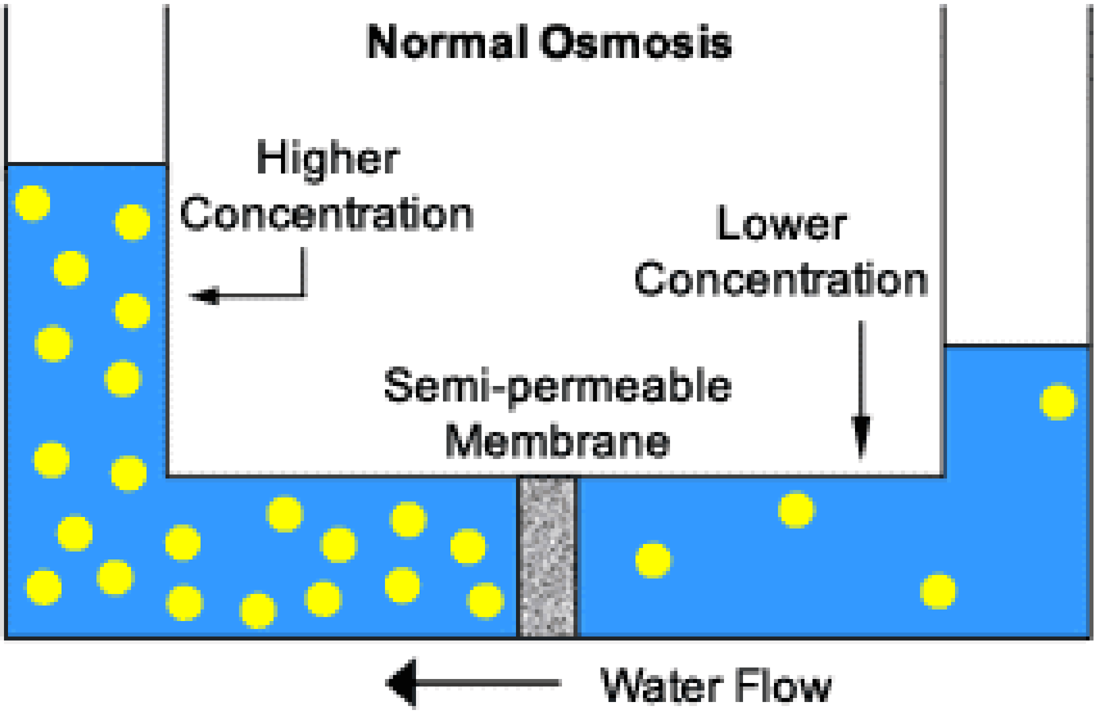
A Reverse Osmosis System removes virtually all: bad taste, odor, turbidity, organic compounds, herbicides, insecticides, pesticides, chlorine and THM's, bacteria, virus, cysts, parasites, arsenic, heavy metals, lead, cadmium, aluminum, dissolved solids, sodium, calcium, magnesium, inorganic dead dirt minerals, fluoride, sulfates, nitrates, phosphates, detergents, radioactivity and asbestos.

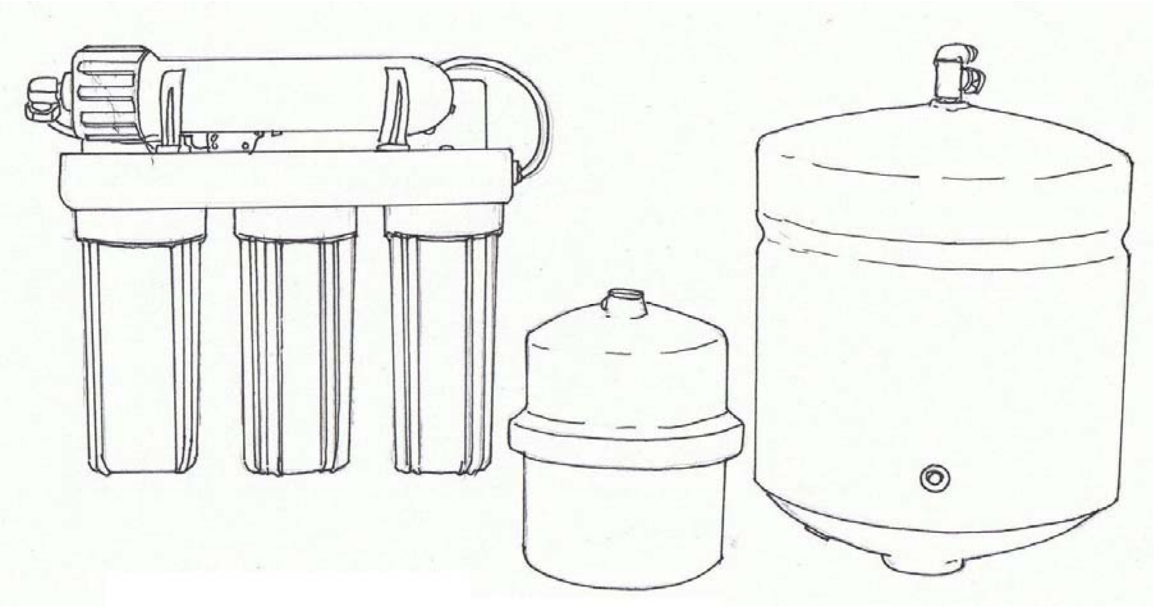


Osmosis
Water flows from low to high concentration.

Equilibrium
Osmotic pressure stops water flow.

Reverse Osmosis
Greater pressure will reverse water flow.


Normal Osmosis
Higher Concentration
Lower Concentration
Semi-permeable Membrane
Water Flow



Ozone in Cooling Water Treatment

Learn how to use the strong points of ozone to your advantage and avoid the pitfalls.

By Mario C. Uy

When commercial ozone generators were first introduced for cooling water treatment, they were marketed as a stand-alone treatment, a cure-all, a panacea. We now know this isn't true. Because there have been many misconceptions regarding ozone, this article is intended to review the basics of ozone, its true capabilities and limitations and its potential benefits in cooling water treatment applications.

What is Ozone?

Ozone (O_3) is formed by combining three atoms of oxygen. The air we breathe contains two atoms of oxygen (O) in the molecular form of O_2. When sufficient energy is applied to the molecular O_2, such as the discharge of electricity during a thunderstorm or strong UV radiation from the sun, some of the molecular O_2 will split into two individual oxygen atoms.

When the individual oxygen atoms merge with other oxygen molecules (O_2), they form O_3. Ozone is a very unstable molecule and will revert back to O_2 quickly.

Capabilities

Ozone is a very powerful oxidizing biocide, viricide, fungicide, sporicide, disinfectant and sterilizer. It kills microorganisms on contact by cellular lysis and cytoplasmic dispersion – it directly ruptures the cell walls of the microorganisms, which results in an instantaneous death. By comparison, chlorine kills bacteria by diffusing through the cell wall and then oxidizing the enzymes within the cell. Ozone kills microorganisms including *E. Coli*, *Legionella, Pneumophilia*, *Streptococcus Facalis Bacillus*, *Clostridium*, amoebae cysts, *Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium*, *Pseudomonas*, etc. It also eradicates fungi, mold and yeast.

Reprinted with permission from *Water Technology* magazine (www.watertechonline.com). Copyright 2003 National Trade Publications, Inc.

What is the Significance of Ozone?

Ozone is a very powerful oxidant, even more powerful than chlorine. Below is a table comparing the oxidizing potential of ozone to other oxidizing agents.

Oxidizing agent	Oxidation potential (volts)	Power relative to chlorine
Fluorine (F_2)	3.06	2.25
Ozone (O_3)	2.07	1.52
Hydrogen Peroxide (H_2O_2)	1.77	1.30
Potassium Permanganate ($KMnO_4$)	1.67	1.23
Chlorine (Cl_2)	1.36	1.00
Chlorine Dioxide(ClO_2)	1.27	0.93
Bromine (Br_2)	1.09	0.80

This table is courtesy of CEC the Ozone Company.

In Addition, Ozone:

- Oxidizes and mitigates pollutants from water and wastewater.
- Breaks down volatile organic compounds (VOC) such as, phenols, benzene, pesticides and other aromatic hydrocarbons.
- Breaks down inorganic compounds such as cyanides, sulfides, nitrites.
- Removes color.
- Bleaches.
- Removes taste and odor.
- Removes soluble iron and manganese indirectly by converting them to filterable insoluble solids.

Ozone is very friendly to the environment. The extra atom of oxygen makes ozone very unstable.

While it has a half-life of about 20 minutes in clean water, its half-life in dirty water is even shorter as it is consumed by the microorganisms, VOCs and other compounds.

Because it breaks down to oxygen, ozone does not leave any toxic or carcinogenic by-products. It does not impart any taste, odor, color or solids.

By comparison, chlorine forms carcinogenic by-products, such as trihalomethanes (THM) and other halogenated compounds. When added to water, chlorine hydrolyzes to hypochlorous acid and then to hypochlorite ion, both of which can linger on and adversely affect our hydrological system.

Since ozone reverts to oxygen very quickly it cannot be packaged and stored. Thus it must be generated on-site. In turn, this on-site generation eliminates any hazards associated with transportation, storing and handling.

Commercial Production

Ozone is produced commercially in the same way it is formed naturally by lightning or UV radiation from the sun. The commercial lightning method is called corona discharge. Dried air or oxygen is passed through an electrified field (corona) generated by a high voltage between positive and negative grids.

The high voltage splits the molecular oxygen into atomic oxygen. Some of the atomic oxygen merge with molecular oxygen to form ozone, while other oxygen atoms simply recombine to form O2. A fraction of oxygen in the air is transformed into ozone. When ambient air is used as a feed gas, you can get ozone between 1 and 2 percent by weight in air. When oxygen is used as a feed gas, you can get ozone between 6 and 12 percent by weight.

Natural UV radiation is simulated commercially by UV lamps. Air is passed through a chamber between the UV lamp and a shield. UV light can create or destroy ozone depending on the UV wavelength. Wavelengths of 185 nanometers (nm) are required for the generation of ozone and 254 nm for the destruction of ozone. This method produces a very low level of ozone and is usually suitable for small applications. In addition to these methods, ozone may also be made through electrolytic and chemical reactions.

Potential Health Hazards

According to the EPA, "the same chemical properties that allow high concentrations of ozone to react with organic material outside the body give it the ability to react with similar organic material that makes up the body.

"***When inhaled, ozone can damage the lungs. Relatively low amounts can cause chest pain, coughing, shortness of breath, and throat irritation. Ozone may worsen chronic respiratory diseases such as asthma and compromise the ability of the body to fight respiratory infections***."

The EPA makes a distinction between ozone in the upper and lower atmosphere. Ozone in the upper atmosphere, referred to as stratospheric ozone, helps filter out damaging ultraviolet radiation from the sun. Conversely, ozone in the lower atmosphere, – the air we breathe – can be harmful to the respiratory system.

OSHA has issued a threshold limit value (**TLV**) on ozone exposure to 0.1 ppm over eight hours per day and five days per week, or 0.3 ppm for a 15-minute continuous exposure.

Because of the potential health hazards, it is crucial to destroy any excess ozone in a safe way.

How is Ozone Injected?

Ozone is typically injected into water via a venturi. A side stream water pump is typically used to create the vacuum on the venturi with a static mixer installed after it to ensure adequate mixing, distribution and proper contact between the ozone and water.

Another less popular alternative is the diffuser method, where ozone is injected under pressure through diffusers creating bubble columns – much like air diffusers in aquariums.

Destroying Ozone

Ozone can be destroyed by catalytic conversion units, activated carbon filters, thermal destructors or by ultraviolet radiation.

Catalytic conversion is the most popular method of ozone destruction. Activated carbon filtration decomposes ozone but carbon is also consumed in the process. There's also a risk of fire as carbon could ignite under high exothermic conditions.

In thermal destruction, ozone is destroyed by heating it in excess of 300 degrees Celsius. Ultraviolet radiation decomposes ozone at the wavelength of 254 nanometers.

Early Misconceptions

In cooling water applications, the most common problems encountered are scale deposition, corrosion, fouling and microbiological (bacteria, algae, fungi, etc.) growth. Today, there's an even greater threat - the emergence of pathogenic bacteria like *Legionella*

***Pneumophilia*.**

Microbial is a concern because it contributes to and amplifies deposition, corrosion and fouling by acting as a nucleation point or catalyst for these problems. The effect of microbial on scale deposition and fouling is one of the early misconceptions of ozone.

Early applications showed that ozone also removed mineral deposits. Later, it was found that this removal was only true where the deposits were held in a bio-matrix. It is like the steel structure of a building that holds up all the bricks. By destroying the steel structure at strategic points, the whole building implodes.

Comparing this to the bio-induced deposits, the bio-matrix held the deposits together, acting like glue. When the ozone destroyed the bio-matrix, the attached crystals became dispersed.

Not understanding this phenomenon fully, some ozone manufacturers began marketing them as scale inhibitor. Needless to say, ozone failed to prevent mineral deposits under other conditions, such as super saturation, excessive hardness, and alkalinity.

Because microorganisms also induce other problems such as corrosion and fouling, ozone was also marketed early on as a corrosion and fouling inhibitor, under similar biological pretext. Likewise, ozone failed to prevent these problems under non-biological conditions.

Traditionally, non-oxidizing biocides and oxidizing biocides are used to control microbial. Typical non-oxidizing biocides are organo-sulfur compounds (carbamate based, thiocyanate), organotin, isothiazolone, organobromine (dibromonitrilopropionamide), organic thiocyano-azole (benzothiazole) glutaraldehyde and quaternary ammonia.

Typical oxidizing biocides are chlorine, bromine and chlorine dioxide. Most of these biocides have a long-term negative impact on the environment. As such, there is a growing pressure to reduce or restrict these biocides in the blowdown water, especially if the water is being discharged to a waterway.

In addition to the discharge burden, these biocides have to be stored, transported and handled, which increases potential health and injury risks to personnel.

Limitations

Because of its short life, ozone levels drop off rapidly as time progresses and as it moves away from the injection point, decreasing its disinfecting efficacy. In systems with long piping runs, ozone may not get far enough, leaving the farthest areas vulnerable to microbiological growth.

This situation may be remedied by injecting ozone at various strategic points throughout the water system. A bio-dispersant can be added to penetrate and disperse the sessile bacteria (growing on surfaces) so that they can become planktonic (floating in water), thus enabling the bacteria to be transported to the ozone injection point for destruction.

Increasing the ozone level at the injection point to raise residual levels downstream is not a good solution. The higher ozone concentration may destroy the water treatment chemicals, increase corrosion near the injection area and destroy seals, gaskets, etc.

Ozone does not do a good job penetrating biofilm. It may burn the surface of the biofilm, protecting the microorganisms underneath from further destruction. Therefore, they will survive and will likely continue to cause localized corrosion.

This situation may be remedied by adding a good bio-dispersant to penetrate and disperse the biofilm, including the bacteria living under the biofilm.

Ozone does not discriminate in terms of what it oxidizes. If ozone is used as a disinfectant in water loaded with other non-biological organic matters, they will also consume ozone. As such, there may not be enough ozone left to accomplish the intended disinfection.

The remedy is to generate more ozone to supply the total ozone demand. However, this increases costs in both operating and capital. As such, ozone may not be cost effective for these types of applications.

Mario C. Uy is with World Environmental Technologies, Inc. (WET, Inc.), Carol Stream, IL, an international firm specializing in commercial and industrial water treatment. He can be reached at (877) 938-4621 or email at info@wet-usa.com.

Ozone generator and control panel.

Ultraviolet Radiation

The enormous temperatures on the sun create ultraviolet (**UV**) rays in great amounts, and this radiation is so powerful that all life on earth would be destroyed if these rays were not scattered by the atmosphere and filtered out by the layers of ozone gas that float some 20 miles above the earth.

This radiation can be artificially produced by sending strong electric currents through various substances. A sun lamp, for example, sends out UV rays that when properly controlled result in a suntan. Of course, too much will cause sunburn.

Open contact chamber, beautiful green light that can burn your eyes.

The UV lamp that can be used for the disinfection of water depends upon the low-pressure mercury vapor lamp to produce the ultraviolet energy. A mercury vapor lamp is one in which an electric arc is passed through an inert gas. This in turn will vaporize the mercury contained in the lamp; and it is a result of this vaporization that UV rays are produced.

Enclosed lamp system, this one is on wastewater effluent.

The lamp itself does not come into contact with the water, the lamp is placed inside a quartz tube, and the water is in contact with the outside of the quartz tube. Quartz is used in this case since practically none of the UV rays are absorbed by the quartz, allowing all of the rays to reach the water. Ordinary glass cannot be used since it will absorb the UV rays, leaving little for disinfection.

The water flows around the quartz tube. The UV sterilizer will consist of a various number of lamps and tubes, depending upon the quantity of water to be treated. As water enters the sterilizer, it is given a tangential flow pattern so that the water spins over and around the quartz sleeves. In this way the microorganisms spend maximum time and contact with the outside of the quartz tube and the source of the UV rays.

The basic design flow of water of certain UV units is in the order of 2.0 gpm for each inch of the lamp. Further, the units are designed so that the contact or retention time of the water in the unit is not less than 15 seconds.

Most manufacturers claim that the UV lamps have a life of about 7,500 hours, which is about 1 year’s time. The lamp must be replaced when it loses about 40% to 50% of its UV output; in any installation this is determined by means of a photoelectric cell and a meter that shows the output of the lamp. Each lamp is outfitted with its own photoelectric cell, and with its own alarm that will be activated when the penetration drops to a present level.

Ultraviolet radiation is an excellent disinfectant that is highly effective against viruses, molds, and yeasts and it is safe to use. It adds no chemicals to the water, it leaves no residual, and it does not form THMs. It is used to remove traces of ozone and chloramines from the finished water. Alone, UV radiation will not remove precursors, but in combination with ozone, it is said to be effective in the removal of THM precursors and THMs.

UV Trains and SCADA display.

The germicidal effect of UV is thought to be associated with its absorption by various organic components essential to the cell’s functioning. For effective use of ultraviolet, the water to be disinfected must be clean, and free of any suspended solids. The water must also be colorless and must be free of any colloids, iron, manganese, taste, and odor.

These are conditions that must be met. Also, although a water may appear to be clear, such substances as excesses of chlorides, bicarbonates, and sulfates affect absorption of the ultraviolet ray. These parameters will probably require at least filtration of one type or another. The UV manufacturer will of course stipulate which pretreatment may be necessary.

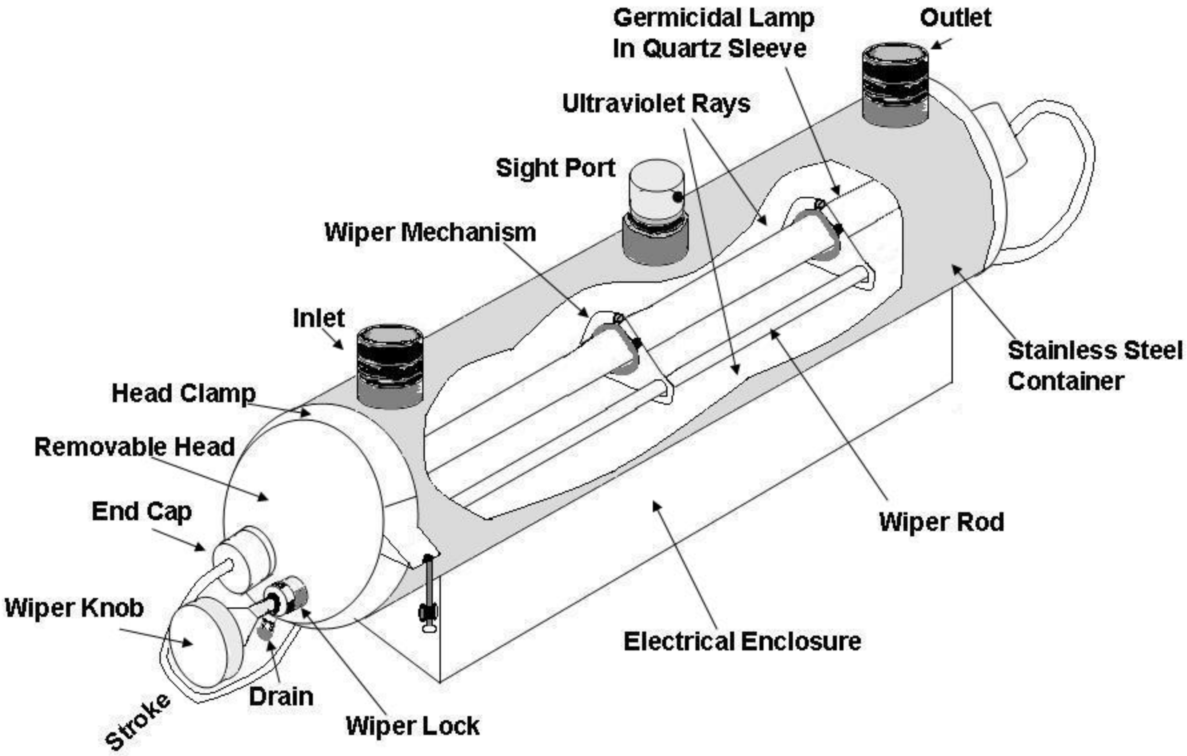
Removal of Disinfection By-products

Disinfectant	***Disinfectant By-product***	***Disinfectant By-product Removal***
Chlorine (HOCl)	Trialomethane (THM) Chloramine Chlorophenol	Granular Activated Carbon (GAC), resins, controlled coagulation, aeration. GAC-UV GAC
Chloramine (NH_xCl_y)	Probably no THM Others?	GAC UV?
Chlorine dioxide (ClO_2)	Chlorites Chlorates	Use of Fe2+ in coagulation, RO, ion-exchange
Permanganate ($KMnO_4$)	No THMs	
Ozone (O_3)	Aldehydes, Carboxylics, Phthalates	GAC
Ultraviolet (UV)	None known	GAC

The table indicates that most of the disinfectants will leave a by-product that is or would possibly be inimical to health. This may aid with a decision as to whether or not precursors should be removed before these disinfectants are added to water.

If it is decided that removal of precursors is needed, research to date indicates that this removal can be attained through the application of controlled chlorination plus coagulation and filtration, aeration, reverse osmosis, nanofiltration, GAC or combinations of others processes.

In conclusion, the literature is replete with the pursuit of newer processes, or combination of known processes, or the search for new methods for removal of the DBPs. These will all require laboratory, pilot plant, and field experience research will be more than a “***labor of love***.”


Germicidal Lamp
In Quartz Sleeve
Outlet
Ultraviolet Rays
Sight Port
Wiper Mechanism
Inlet
Head Clamp
Removable Head
End Cap
Wiper Knob
Stroke
Drain
Wiper Lock
Stainless Steel
Container
Wiper Rod
Electrical Enclosure

Types of POU Home Treatment Methods

This section discusses the principal types of **POE** and **POU** home treatment devices.

Water Softeners

Home-type water softeners generally use the ion exchange process. In addition to reducing hardness, they remove some other impurities. But at the same time, they increase the salt level in the treated water.

Coarse salt is typically used for regeneration, and most units are furnished with a time clock to operate the regeneration cycle automatically in the middle of the night on set days of the week.

Softeners are normally classified as POE devices because they are often installed to treat all water to the building. In other instances, softeners are connected to treat only the hot-water supply to a building.

Softener with brine tank on right

Physical Filters

Physical filters are rather like strainers in that they are intended to remove suspended matter from the water. Some can remove material as small as cysts, large bacteria, and asbestos fibers. Most units are designed to remove only larger particles such as grit, dirt, and rust.

The filter unit may be made of fabric, fiber, ceramic, screening, diatomaceous earth, or other materials. Physical filters are most often used as a prefilter ahead of other treatment devices.

Activated Carbon Filters

As detailed before, activated carbon can remove many organic chemical contaminants from water – provided there is sufficient contact time with the water. Carbon filters can remove most taste, odors, and color as well as synthetic organic chemical such as pesticides and volatile organic chemicals (**VOCs**). Carbon also effectively removes radon and chlorine from water. It does not effectively remove microorganisms. As a matter of fact, if there are any microorganisms in the source of water, they can actually thrive by feeding on the organic material that has previously been retained on the carbon particles.

The carbon in filters will eventually become loaded with contaminants so that the unit will no longer function. If a carbon unit is used after this point, it will periodically start to discharge quantities of organics into the effluent. As a result, the water being used from the unit may, at times, have a higher level of organics that the influent.

Unfortunately, there is no definite way of determining when carbon is exhausted. The life of the carbon in a unit depends on such factors as the concentration and types of contaminants in the water, the quantity of granular activated carbon (**GAC**) in the treatment unit, and the amount of water put through the unit. It is strongly recommended that when a GAC treatment unit is used, the carbon be changed frequently.

Reverse Osmosis

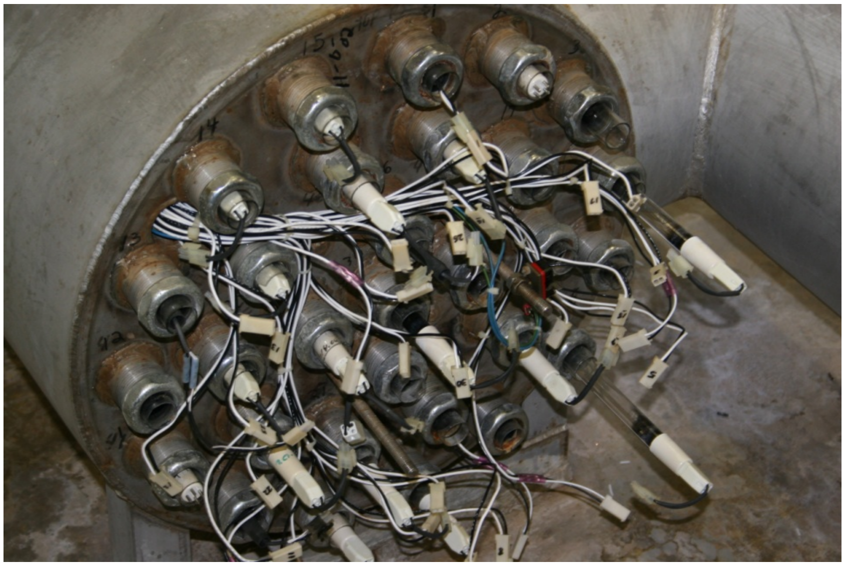
A reverse osmosis (**RO**) unit cannot be used by itself for water treatment. Some membranes will be destroyed by exposure to chlorine, and the efficiency of a membrane can be fouled by suspended matter in the influent water. For this reason, an RO module is always preceded by pre-filters.

As discussed before, RO units must be operated under pressure. Home-type RO units do not work very efficiently because they must operate on water system pressure, so about 75 percent of the water introduced to the unit is usually piped to waste.

Small RO units produce a very small flow, so the treated water is piped to a diaphragm pressure tank, which supplies water to a separate faucet. RO is effective in removing most inorganics, salts, metals, and organics having larger molecules. Although RO is known to effectively remove ***Giardia lambia*** cysts, bacteria, and viruses, it is not recommended for use on microbiologically unsafe water.

Ultraviolet Disinfection

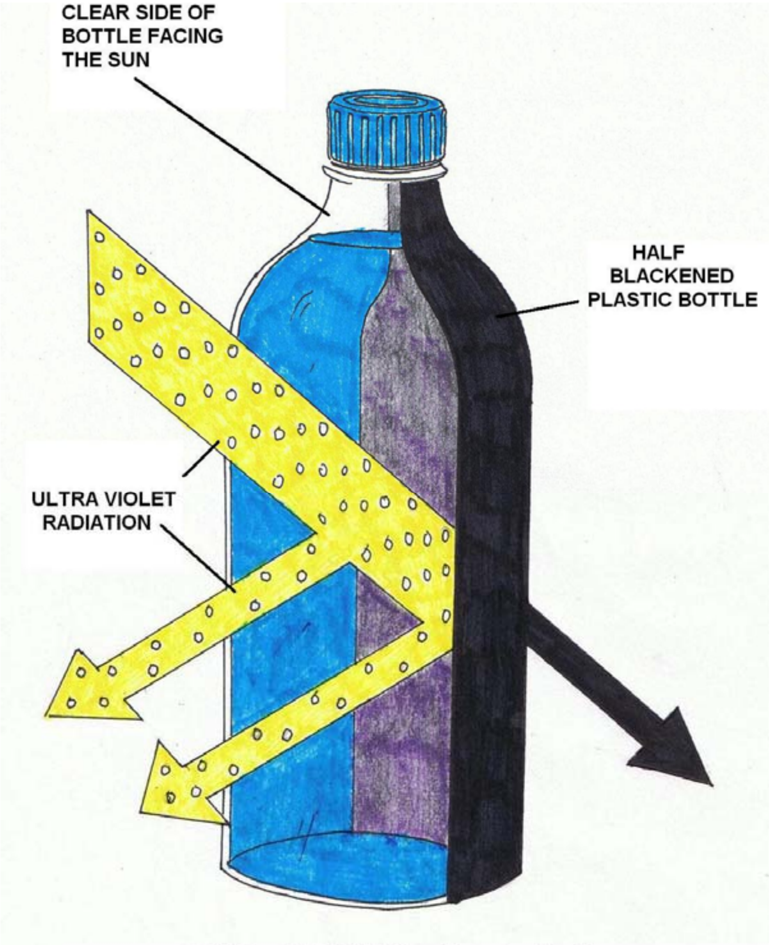
Although the use of ultraviolet (**UV**) light is not cost effective for the treatment of any sizable quantities of water, it can be practically applied for home treatment use. Units consist of a UV light source enclosed in a protective transparent sleeve, mounted so that water can flow past the light. UV light destroys bacteria and inactivates viruses. However, its effectiveness against spores and cysts is questionable. Both dissolved solids and turbidity adversely affect the performance of UV disinfection. The most common operation problem is a buildup of dirt on the transparent shield, so units should frequently be inspected and cleaned.



Distillers

Various sizes of distillers are available for home use. They all work on the principle of vaporizing water and then condensing the vapor. In the process, dissolved solids such as salt, metals, minerals, asbestos fibers, and other particles are removed. Some organic chemicals are also removed, but those that are more volatile are often vaporized and condensed with the product water. Distillers are effective in killing all microorganisms.

The principal problem with a distiller is that a small unit can produce only 2-3 gal (7.5 -11 Lt) a day, and that the power cost for operation will be substantially higher than the operating cost of other types of treatment devices. Water Distillers have a high energy cost (approximately 20-30 cents per gallon). They must be carbon filtered before and/or after to remove volatile chemicals. It is considered **"dead"** water because the process removes all extra oxygen and energy. It has no taste. It is still second only to reverse osmosis water for health. Diets should be rich in electrolytes as the aggressive nature of distilled water can "**leach**" electrolytes from the body.



SODIS - SYSTEM (basic principal)

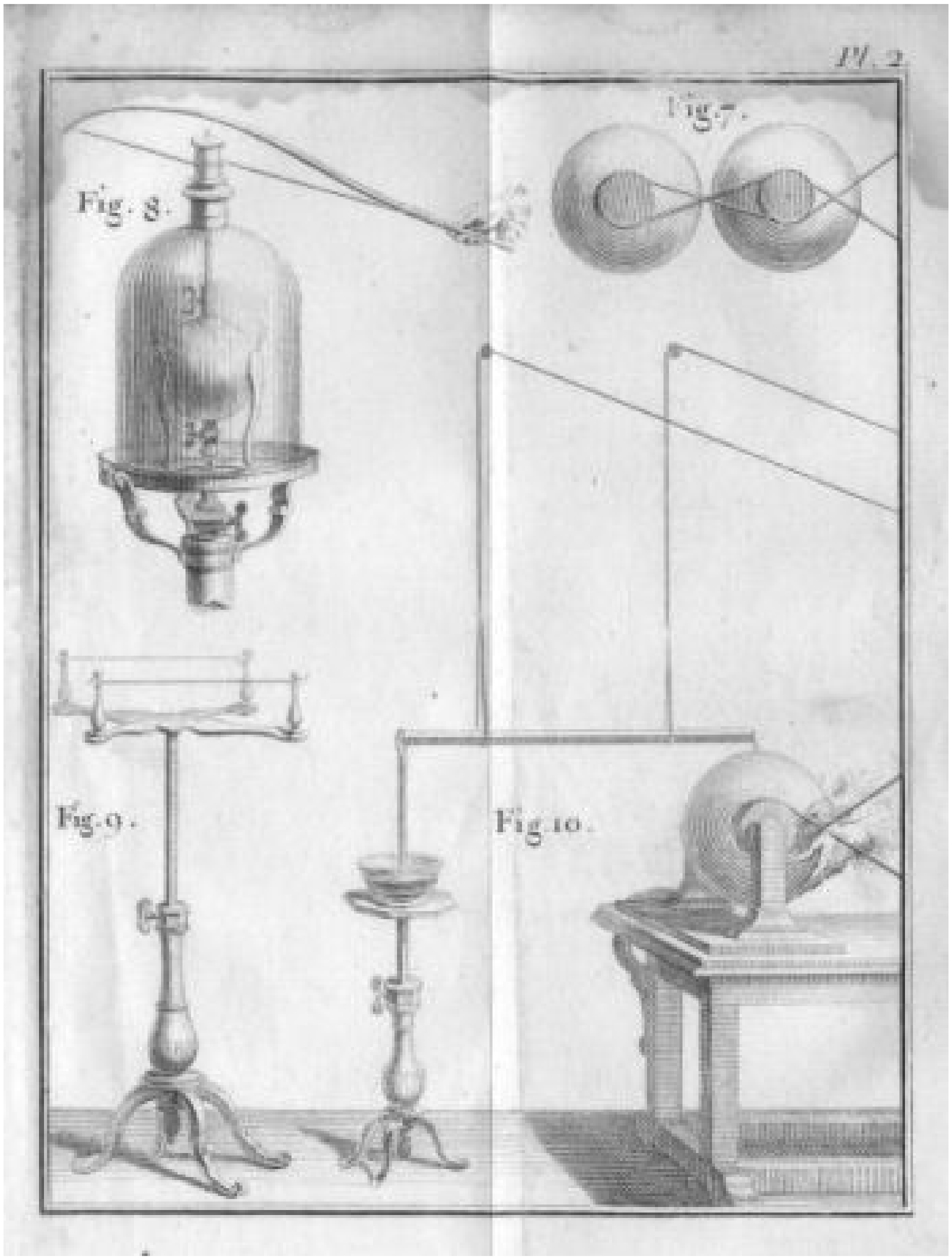
Special Treatment

Special treatment units for home use are also available for removal of methane, hydrogen sulfide, nitrate, fluoride, radon, and other objectionable contaminants. Most often, this type of treatment is used on private wells.

The Use of Point-of-Entry (POE) Treatment Instead of Central Treatment

Under recent US Environmental Protection Agency (**USEPA**) regulations, water systems with a source water exceeding a maximum contaminant level (**MCL**) can install **POE** devices on all water services (instead of providing central treatment) to satisfy the requirement of providing water to the public below the MCL. An example of where this might be a viable alternative is a system having water so hard that a large proportion of the customers have already installed home softeners. If the contaminant exceeding the MCL in the source water can be removed by ion exchange softening, the system might meet the federal requirements by ensuring that every customers has a softener installed.

At the same time, a number of problems must be overcome. It is difficult for the system to ensure that all drinking water furnished to the public is treated. Another problem is that the water system must have a plan for checking and maintaining all the units to ensure that they are always properly operated. It is expected that some very small systems may find this option workable under certain circumstances. The American Water Works Association has recommended that all treatment required for a public water supply be in the form of central treatment.



Nollet’s first RO unit

Reverse Osmosis Home Filtration Devices

Reverse Osmosis home filtration devices are designed to fit neatly under almost any sink. The filter pack typically will slide to the back of the sink next to the garbage disposal. The tank tucks behind the plumbing and garbage disposal to the back of the sink. It uses very little of the sink's practical space.

The R/O connects to the cold water supply under the sink. First, water first passes through at a 1 micron sediment filter, which removes large particles that float in the water like silt, sand, rust, dirt, etc. We can see down to 40 microns (a human hair is about 80 microns and most bacteria is around 1 micron). This filter should be changed as needed by visually looking at it. (typically 6 months to 1 year).

Small under the sink home use unit**.**

Second, the water passes through a Bituminous granulated coal filter that removes chlorine, some pesticides, herbicides and toxic chemicals. This filter should be changed every 6 months religiously.

Both of the first two filters' main purpose is to protect the R/O membrane form chlorine and particles that can prematurely ruin the membrane. The R/O membrane is the heart of the system. It filters down to a molecular level (1/10,000/micron).

Water is basically forced through the membrane. The water that makes it through is the purified water and the water that doesn't make it is impure water and it is dumped down the drain. The water slows down to a drop at a time and is accumulated in a 3 gallon pressurized storage tank.

The water is then pushed out of the tank at about 40-60 psi through a 10 inch post coconut shell carbon filter designed to pick up anything missed by the previous filters insuring great taste on the way to the faucet. The faucet is an air gap faucet and meets all plumbing codes.

1 micron sediment filter

A micron is a unit of measure. People can see down to 40 microns. Most Bacteria is between 1-5 microns. The sediment filter consists of a poly spun fiber and removes sediment down to 1 micron.

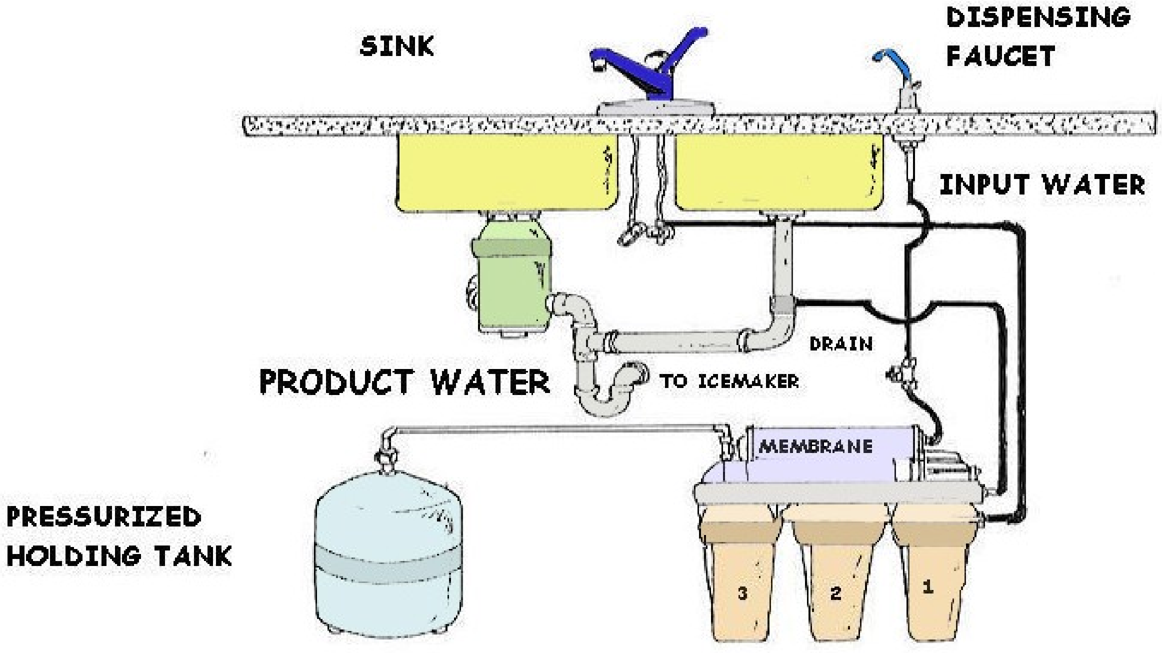
Bituminous granulated coal filter

This carbon filter has 56 cubic inches of carbon, which is more than any other filter made with similar dimensions on the market. We use two different types of carbon in our system (post carbon filter is a coconut shell carbon). Different types of carbon have different adsorption rates and different removal rates of toxic chemicals, so by using two types of carbon, we get the highest adsorption rates possible.

R/O Membrane

R/O membranes are generally made of Thin Film Composite. (**TFC for short**). There are basically two types of membranes on the market -TFC and CTA (**Cellulose Triacetate**).

TFC membranes are simply more durable because they are made out of a plastic type of material. CTA's are made with a paper type of material. Anyone who knows the R/O business in areas of hard water will only use TFC membranes because CTA customers will be buying membranes typically every 1 to 3 years (that gets expensive), whereas TFC membranes will typically last 3 to 5 years.



REVERSE OSMOSIS SYSTEM

Homeowner’s Water Filtration Devices

Carbon Block Filters improve taste and odor, reduce turbidity, remove chlorine and THM's, remove organic chemicals, pesticides, herbicides, and insecticides, and may remove some bacteria, cysts and parasites, radioactivity and asbestos fibers. A carbon-block filter can also remove some heavy metals. They do not remove fluorides, viruses, dissolved solids such as salt, sodium, calcium/magnesium and inorganic minerals as well as phosphates and detergents. Manganese, iron, metallic dead dirt minerals, hydrogen sulfide/sulfates, arsenic, aluminum, dissolved lead, nitrates and heavy metals also remain in the water. (Some specially treated carbon block units have excellent lead removal.)

Granular Activated Carbon Filters improve taste and odor, reduce turbidity, remove chlorine and THM's, organic chemicals, pesticides, herbicides, and insecticides. They may control bacteria growth when silver-impregnated. Mercury and radioactivity may also be reduced by this type of filter. Granular Activated Carbon Filters do not remove fluorides, sulfates, nitrates, arsenic, aluminum, metallic dead dirt minerals, salts, sodium, heavy metals, lead, calcium, iron, magnesium, virus, bacteria, parasites, cysts, manganese, hydrogen sulfide or asbestos. Back flushing is often recommended for this type of filter. Bacteria may become a problem.

KDF/Carbon Combination is similar to a Granular Activated Carbon Filter with additional metal removal capabilities, including lead. Chlorine is converted to chloride by KDF (zinc/copper composite), extending the life of a carbon media bed.

This type of filtration helps to minimize biological activity. KDF/Carbon Filters do not remove salts, fluorides, sulfates, nitrates, arsenic, aluminum, dead dirt minerals, phosphates or detergents. They may or may not be effective at removing parasites, cysts, and asbestos.

MICROORGANISMS:
Are very small animals and plants that are too small to be seen by the naked eye and must be observed using a microscope. Microorganisms in water include algae, bacteria, viruses, and protozoa. Algae growing in surface waters can cause off-taste and odor by producing the chemicals MIB and geosmin. Certain types of bacteria, viruses, and protozoa can cause disease in humans. Bacteria are the most common microorganisms found in treated drinking water. The great majority of bacteria are not harmful. In fact, humans would not be able to live without the bacteria that inhabit the intestines. However, certain types of bacteria called coliform bacteria can signal the presence of possible drinking water contamination.

KDF Process Media Section

KDF Process Media

As good as existing water treatment technologies are, most have limitations. They're short-lived, expensive, difficult to maintain, easily fouled by microorganisms, or just plain unable to perform up to anticipated stricter regulations.

Courtesy of KDF Fluid Treatment, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Improve your system's economy while improving performance

KDF® process media, however, improve water treatment performance by protecting, and in some cases replacing, existing filtration/purification technologies. The exceptional filtration/purification performance and versatility of KDF media make them an economical and easy-to-use water treatment technology in both new systems and retrofit applications.

Manufacturers, hospitals, beverage manufacturers, restaurants, municipal water treatment facilities, consumers, and others rely on KDF process media to safely reduce or remove chlorine, hydrogen sulfide, heavy metals, and bacteria from water.

When Used Alone, KDF media can remove more than 95% of chlorine, iron, heavy metals, hydrogen sulfide, and other contaminants from water.

- When used in combination with granular activated carbon (**GAC**), KDF media can significantly extend the life of the carbon.
- Used ahead of reverse osmosis (**RO**) and ion exchange systems, KDF process media also safeguard expensive membranes, resins and system components.
- Compared to other water treatment technologies, KDF process media offer reduced material requirements resulting in more compact and more economical systems. KDF process media also last longer than GAC, which means material replacement requirements are lower.
- Because KDF process media contain no chemical additives and are 100% recyclable, costly disposal requirements are eliminated. What's more, KDF process media are safer for the environment.

All Forms of KDF Media are guaranteed for product purity and a certified analysis sheet is provided with each manufacturing run.

Improve Water Treatment Performance and Reduce Expense
KDF® process media are available in several different forms to meet the requirements of specific applications.

- KDF 55 granules are designed for removing or reducing chlorine and soluble heavy metals. They are also used for controlling scale, bacteria, and algae.
- KDF 85 granules are used to remove or reduce iron and hydrogen sulfide from water supplies. They are also used for controlling scale, bacteria, and algae.
- KDF-F fine mesh granules can be incorporated into carbon blocks and other matrixes.
- KDF-C coarse mesh granules are used for removal or reduction of soluble heavy metals and chlorine. For use when less pressure drop is required.

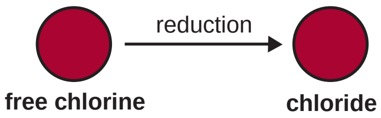
Redox Action is the Science Behind KDF Process Media
KDF® process media are high-purity, copper-zinc formulations that reduce contaminants in water using an oxidation/reduction (redox) reaction.

In other words, KDF media exchange electrons with contaminants, changing them into harmless components. For example, chlorine is changed into soluble chloride, soluble ferrous cations are changed into insoluble ferric hydroxide, and hydrogen sulfide is changed into insoluble copper sulfide. Insoluble reaction by-products are easily removed by periodic backwashing.

Other heavy metals such as mercury, copper, and nickel are removed simply by bonding to the KDF media. Microorganisms, however, are controlled two ways: First, the exchange of electrons in the redox reaction creates an electrolytic field that most microorganisms can't survive. Second, KDF process media may catalyze the formation of radicals and peroxides in certain circumstances. The radicals can interfere with microorganisms' ability to function.

Typical Redox Reactions
Harmful chlorine is removed by changing free chlorine into chloride ions.

KDF process media act as catalysts to change soluble ferrous cations into insoluble ferric hydroxide, which is easily removed by regular backwashing. KDF process media converts hydrogen sulfide to insoluble sulfide, which can be removed by backwashing.



Contaminants Removed by KDF Process Media
KDF® process media remove many of the most common impurities found in water supplies.

Chlorine Removal
KDF 55 medium can remove over 99% of free chlorine. This frees up granular activated carbon for more effective removal of organic contaminants, which affect water quality and foul downstream ion exchange resins and membranes.

KDF 55 medium can also be used to replace GAC entirely. Because KDF 55 medium provides more efficient chlorine removal, you'll benefit from a more cost effective water treatment system. Chlorine removal costs can be reduced 50% or more with KDF 55 medium.

Household Water Treatment

Both point-of-entry and point-of-use applications use KDF media to remove chlorine, lead, bacteria, iron, other heavy metals, and a variety of other impurities. For whole-house water systems, KDF media remove chlorine and other impurities from the water supply at the point-of-entry. KDF 55 medium delivers 10 times greater filter life than GAC.

Point-of-Use Applications

For chlorine removal in point-of-use applications, KDF media is incorporated into shower filters and into cartridges at the tap. KDF media are also used in water treatment systems in recreational vehicles.

In a controlled test under normal operating conditions, KDF process media delivered a filter life 10 times longer than GAC in chlorine removal service.

Water Treatment Costs with KDF 55 Medium *are less than half that of GAC*

In the same test, after treating two million gallons of water, chlorine removal cost is 50% lower with KDF process media.

A Kalamazoo, Michigan producer of bottled drinking water uses KDF media as a non-chemical method of removing chlorine and sequestered iron from 7,500 gallons of municipal water daily, extending the operating life of downstream RO membranes by as much as 10 years.

Iron Removal

Iron (Fe+2) or ferrous iron in groundwater can impart objectionable taste and color to potable water and can severely stain household fixtures. KDF® process media remove iron from water, either alone or in combination with other treatment technologies used at the point-of-entry.

KDF 85 medium removes more than 90% of iron from groundwater supplies.

Hydrogen Sulfide Removal

Hydrogen sulfide (H2S) is a highly corrosive gas formed in groundwater when bacteria decompose vegetation and other organic matter. H2S removal with KDF process media is both safe and economical.

KDF 85 medium eliminates H2S by converting the hydrogen sulfide gas to insoluble sulfide, an inert, harmless precipitant. KDF medium then filters the precipitant from the water. Periodic backwashing eliminates accumulations of the precipitant from the media bed.

In contrast, aeration towers and degasification systems are expensive and bulky H2S removal options. Using chlorine to oxidize H2S can leave trihalomethane levels exceeding U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) limits.

Heavy Metals Removal
Heavy metals in drinking water are a significant health threat.

KDF® 55, KDF 85 and KDF-C media can remove up to 98% of soluble lead, mercury, and other dissolved metals. KDF media can be used alone, or to protect existing water purification technologies to treat groundwater supplies containing soluble heavy metals or to remove heavy metals from process water before it is discharged.

Controlling Microorganisms
KDF media control the build-up of bacteria, algae and fungi in organic based media such as GAC beds, carbon block filters, and in-line carbon filters.

By controlling these microorganisms, KDF media significantly extend the life of the carbon, as well as protect downstream RO membranes and ion exchange resins from fouling.

KDF media also control scale, algae, and bacteria in cooling tower water and swamp coolers. Using KDF media to reduce the build-up of bacteria and other microorganisms eliminates the need for chemical treatment methods which are both costly and harmful to the environment.

Municipal Water Treatment
Many municipalities rely on the exceptional performance of KDF media to remove chlorine and other impurities from feedwater entering public utilities, schools, and businesses. KDF media are also cost-effective alternatives to greensand and other filtration methods traditionally used to remove iron from municipal water supplies.

Commercial Water Treatment
Water treatment systems serving commercial facilities such as hotels and restaurants use KDF process media to remove chlorine. These facilities benefit from better tasting water with less odor, as well as less wear on towels, bedding, napkins and other items that are laundered frequently on-site.

Process Water Treatment
KDF media remove chlorine and help control bacteria and scale build-up in large-scale industrial water treatment facilities serving cooling towers, food and beverage plants, and industrial laundry facilities. KDF media can be used alone, or in combination with existing water treatment technologies to extend the life of granular activated carbon, and to protect downstream reverse osmosis membranes and ion exchange resins.

Medical Water Treatment
For medical labs and dialysis centers where water purity is crucial, KDF media provide exceptional water purification. KDF media also remove mercury and other soluble heavy metals from feedwater entering hospitals and from wastewater prior to discharge to public water treatment systems.

KDF Process Media Product Specifications

KDF 55 Process Medium
Applications: Chlorine, Heavy Metal Removal and Bacteria

KDF 85 Process Medium
Applications: Iron and Hydrogen Sulfide

The data included herein are based on outside laboratory tests. We believe the data are reliable, but recommend that users test performance on their own equipment. When using KDF media, proper backwash procedures should be applied.

Medium composition	atomized high purity copper/zinc alloy
Color	golden(55), reddish brown (85)
Physical form	granular
Screen size (U.S. mesh)	-10 + 100
Particle size range	0.149 mm to 2.00 mm
Apparent density	2.2-2.9 g/cc (171 lbs./cu.ft.)
Turbidity	<20 ntu
Skid	48-1/3 cu. ft. drums (2,736 lbs.)
Odor and tastes	none
Recommended Operating Conditions (use 3-cycle valve):	
Service flow	15 gpm/sq. ft.
Backwash for 10 min. @	30 gpm/sq. ft.
Purge/rinse for 3 min. @	maximum
Bed expansion, backwash	10 to 15%
Free board	20%
Minimum bed depth (6"dia.)	10 inches
pH range: drinking water	6.5 to 8.5
Water temperature, influent	35° to 212°F.

To learn more...

To learn more about KDF process media and the results they can provide in your water treatment system, call 1-800-437-2745.

1500 KDF Drive
Three Rivers, MI 49093-9287
1-800-437-2745 • 269-273-3300
Fax: 1-800-533-3584 • 269-273-4400
E-mail: info@kdfft.com
Web address: www.kdfft.com

About KDF Fluid Treatment, Inc.
Founded in 1984 in Three Rivers, Michigan, KDF Fluid Treatment is a technological leader in the fluid treatment industry. KDF has obtained 15 patents, with other U.S. and foreign patents pending. KDF process media have earned NSF certification (ANSI/NSF Standard 61 for drinking water system components–health effects and Standard 42). Furthermore, KDF Fluid Treatment's process media have been ruled by the U.S. EPA as a "***Pesticidal Device***."

KDF Fluid Treatment offers superior customer service through an extensive distributor network. With distributors across North America, South America, Europe, and in Japan and China, KDF process media can meet your water filtration/purification needs globally. NOTICE: As of April 2003, KDF Fluid Treatment believes the data herein are reliable and accurate.

The data are based on outside and internal laboratory tests. Due to varying water chemistry, it is recommended that users test performance on their own equipment. As technical assistance is furnished by KDF Fluid Treatment at no charge to the user and since KDF Fluid Treatment has no control over engineering of hardware incorporating the KDF® media, KDF Fluid Treatment assumes no liability or responsibility for such assistance.

Due to synthetic procedures used by outside laboratories, KDF Fluid Treatment is not responsible for differing results in the field. KDF Fluid Treatment assumes no responsibility for user claims on the pesticidal abilities of KDF media because of varying water chemistry and users' applications. Since governmental regulations may differ from one location to another and may change from time to time, KDF Fluid Treatment is not responsible for users' manufacturing procedures, disposal practices, selection of media, or claims or advertising by the user. No warranty, express or implied is given nor is freedom from any patent owned by KDF Fluid Treatment or others to be inferred.

Glossary

A

Absolute Pressure: The pressure above zone absolute, i.e. the sum of atmospheric and gauge pressure. In vacuum related work it is usually expressed in millimeters of mercury. (mmHg).

Aerodynamics: The study of the flow of gases. The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law.

Aeronautics: The mathematics and mechanics of flying objects, in particular airplanes.

Air Break: A physical separation which may be a low inlet into the indirect waste receptor from the fixture, or device that is indirectly connected. You will most likely find an air break on waste fixtures or on non-potable lines. You should never allow an air break on an ice machine.

Air Gap Separation: A physical separation space that is present between the discharge vessel and the receiving vessel, for an example, a kitchen faucet.

Altitude-Control Valve: If an overflow occurs on a storage tank, the operator should first check the altitude-control valve. Altitude-Control Valve is designed to, 1. Prevent overflows from the storage tank or reservoir, or 2. Maintain a constant water level as long as water pressure in the distribution system is adequate.

Angular Motion Formulas: Angular velocity can be expressed as (angular velocity = constant):

$\omega = \theta / t$ *(2a)*

where

ω = *angular velocity (rad/s)*

θ = *angular displacement (rad)*

t = *time (s)*

Angular velocity can be expressed as (angular acceleration = constant):

$\omega = \omega_o + \alpha t$ *(2b)*

where

ω_o = *angular velocity at time zero (rad/s)*

α = *angular acceleration (rad/s^2)*

Angular displacement can be expressed as (angular acceleration = constant):

$\theta = \omega_o t + 1/2 \alpha t^2$ *(2c)*

Combining 2a and 2c:

$\omega = (\omega_o^2 + 2 \alpha \theta)^{1/2}$

Angular acceleration can be expressed as:

$\alpha = d\omega / dt = d^2\theta / dt^2$ *(2d)*

where

$d\theta$ = *change of angular displacement (rad)*

dt = change in time (s)

Atmospheric Pressure: Pressure exerted by the atmosphere at any specific location. (Sea level pressure is approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute, 1 bar = 14.5psi.)

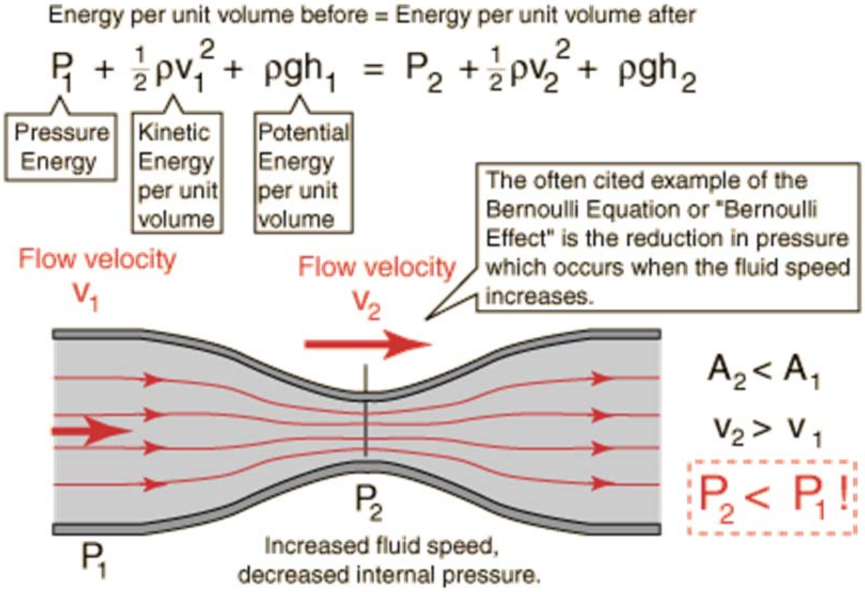
B

Backflow Prevention: To stop or prevent the occurrence of, the unnatural act of reversing the normal direction of the flow of liquid, gases, or solid substances back in to the public potable (drinking) water supply. See Cross-connection control.

Backflow: To reverse the natural and normal directional flow of a liquid, gases, or solid substances back in to the public potable (drinking) water supply. This is normally an undesirable effect.

Backsiphonage: A liquid substance that is carried over a higher point. It is the method by which the liquid substance may be forced by excess pressure over or into a higher point. Is a condition in which the pressure in the distribution system is less than atmospheric pressure. In other words, something is “sucked” into the system because the main is under a vacuum.

Bernoulli's Equation: Describes the behavior of moving fluids along a streamline. The Bernoulli Equation can be considered to be a statement of the conservation of energy principle appropriate for flowing fluids. The qualitative behavior that is usually labeled with the term "***Bernoulli effect***" is the lowering of fluid pressure in regions where the flow velocity is increased. This lowering of pressure in a constriction of a flow path may seem counterintuitive, but seems less so when you consider pressure to be energy density. In the high velocity flow through the constriction, kinetic energy must increase at the expense of pressure energy.



A special form of the Euler's equation derived along a fluid flow streamline is often called the **Bernoulli Equation.**

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial s}\left(\frac{v^2}{2}+\frac{p}{\rho}+g\cdot h\right)=0 \qquad (1)$$

where

$v =$ flow speed

$p =$ pressure

$\rho =$ density

$g =$ gravity

$h =$ height

$$\frac{v^2}{2}+\frac{p}{\rho}+g\cdot h=\text{Constant} \qquad (2)$$

$$\frac{v^2}{2\cdot g}+\frac{p}{\gamma}+h=\text{Constant} \qquad (3)$$

where

$\gamma=\rho\cdot g$

$$\frac{\rho\cdot v^2}{2}+p=\text{Constant} \qquad (4)$$

$$\frac{\rho\cdot v^2}{2}=p_d \qquad (5)$$

$$\frac{\rho\cdot v_1^2}{2}+p_1=\frac{\rho\cdot v_2^2}{2}+p_2=\text{Constant} \qquad (6)$$

www.engineeringtoolbox.com

For steady state incompressible flow the Euler equation becomes (1). If we integrate (1) along the streamline it becomes (2). (2) can further be modified to (3) by dividing by gravity.

Head of Flow: Equation (3) is often referred to as the **head** because all elements have the unit of length.

Bernoulli's Equation Continued:

Dynamic Pressure

(2) and (3) are two forms of the Bernoulli Equation for steady state incompressible flow. If we assume that the gravitational body force is negligible, (3) can be written as (4). Both elements in the equation have the unit of pressure and it's common to refer the flow velocity component as the **dynamic pressure** of the fluid flow (5).

Since energy is conserved along the streamline, (4) can be expressed as (6). Using the equation we see that increasing the velocity of the flow will reduce the pressure, decreasing the velocity will increase the pressure.

This phenomena can be observed in a **venturi meter** where the pressure is reduced in the constriction area and regained after. It can also be observed in a **pitot tube** where the **stagnation** pressure is measured. The stagnation pressure is where the velocity component is zero.

Bernoulli's Equation Continued:

Pressurized Tank

If the tanks are pressurized so that product of gravity and height (g h) is much less than the pressure difference divided by the density, (e4) can be transformed to (e6).
The velocity out from the tanks depends mostly on the pressure difference.

Example - outlet velocity from a pressurized tank
The outlet velocity of a pressurized tank where

$p_1 = 0.2\ MN/m^2$, $p_2 = 0.1\ MN/m^2$ $A_2/A_1 = 0.01$, $h = 10\ m$

can be calculated as
$V_2 = [(2/(1-(0.01)^2)\ (\ (0.2 - 0.1)x10^6\ /1x10^3 + 9.81\ x\ 10)]^{1/2} = \underline{19.9\ m/s}$

Coefficient of Discharge - Friction Coefficient
Due to friction the real velocity will be somewhat lower than this theoretical example. If we introduce a **friction coefficient** *c* (coefficient of discharge), (e5) can be expressed as (e5b). The coefficient of discharge can be determined experimentally. For a sharp edged opening it may be as low as 0.6. For smooth orifices it may be between 0.95 and 1.

Bingham Plastic Fluids: Bingham Plastic Fluids have a yield value which must be exceeded before it will start to flow like a fluid. From that point the viscosity will decrease with increase of agitation. Toothpaste, mayonnaise and tomato catsup are examples of such products.

Boundary Layer: The layer of fluid in the immediate vicinity of a bounding surface.

Bulk Modulus and Fluid Elasticity: An introduction to and a definition of the Bulk Modulus Elasticity commonly used to characterize the compressibility of fluids.

The Bulk Modulus Elasticity can be expressed as
$E = - dp / (dV / V)$ *(1)*

where
E = *bulk modulus elasticity*
dp = *differential change in pressure on the object*
dV = *differential change in volume of the object*
V = *initial volume of the object*

The Bulk Modulus Elasticity can be alternatively expressed as
$E = - dp / (d\rho / \rho)$ *(2)*

where
$d\rho$ = *differential change in density of the object*
ρ = *initial density of the object*

An increase in the pressure will decrease the volume (1). A decrease in the volume will increase the density (2).

- The SI unit of the bulk modulus elasticity is N/m^2 (Pa)
- The imperial (BG) unit is lb_f/in^2 (psi)
- 1 lb_f/in^2 (psi) = $6.894\ 10^3\ N/m^2$ (Pa)

A large Bulk Modulus indicates a relatively incompressible fluid.

Bulk Modulus for some common fluids can be found in the table below:

Bulk Modulus - *E*	Imperial Units - BG (psi, lb_f/in^2) x 10^5	SI Units (Pa, N/m^2) x 10^9
Carbon Tetrachloride	1.91	1.31
Ethyl Alcohol	1.54	1.06
Gasoline	1.9	1.3
Glycerin	6.56	4.52
Mercury	4.14	2.85
SAE 30 Oil	2.2	1.5
Seawater	3.39	2.35
Water	3.12	2.15

C

Capillarity: (or capillary action) The ability of a narrow tube to draw a liquid upwards against the force of gravity.

The height of liquid in a tube due to capillarity can be expressed as

$$h = 2\ \sigma\ \cos\theta / (\rho\ g\ r)\ (1)$$

where

h = *height of liquid (ft, m)*

σ = *surface tension (lb/ft, N/m)*

θ = *contact angle*

ρ = *density of liquid* (lb/ft^3, kg/m^3)

g = *acceleration due to gravity* ($32.174\ ft/s^2$, $9.81\ m/s^2$)

r = *radius of tube (ft, m)*

Cauchy Number: A dimensionless value useful for analyzing fluid flow dynamics problems where compressibility is a significant factor.
The Cauchy Number is the ratio between inertial and the compressibility force in a flow and can be expressed as

$$C = \rho\ v^2 / E\ \ (1)$$

where

ρ = *density* (kg/m^3)

v = *flow velocity (m/s)*

E = *bulk modulus elasticity* (N/m^2)

The bulk modulus elasticity has the dimension pressure and is commonly used to characterize the compressibility of a fluid.

The Cauchy Number is the square root of the Mach Number

$$M^2 = Ca\ \ (3)$$

where
C = Mach Number

Cavitation: Under the wrong condition, cavitation will reduce the components life time dramatically. Cavitation may occur when the local static pressure in a fluid reach a level below the vapor pressure of the liquid at the actual temperature. According to the Bernoulli Equation this may happen when the fluid accelerates in a control valve or around a pump impeller. The vaporization itself does not cause the damage - the damage happens when the vapor almost immediately collapses after evaporation when the velocity is decreased and pressure increased. Cavitation means that cavities are forming in the liquid that we are pumping. When these cavities form at the suction of the pump several things happen all at once: We experience a loss in capacity. We can no longer build the same head (pressure). The efficiency drops. The cavities or bubbles will collapse when they pass into the higher regions of pressure causing noise, vibration, and damage to many of the components. The cavities form for five basic reasons and it is common practice to lump all of them into the general classification of cavitation.

This is an error because we will learn that to correct each of these conditions we must understand why they occur and how to fix them. Here they are in no particular order: Vaporization, Air ingestion, Internal recirculation, Flow turbulence and finally the Vane Passing Syndrome.

Avoiding Cavitation

Cavitation can in general be avoided by:

- increasing the distance between the actual local static pressure in the fluid - and the vapor pressure of the fluid at the actual temperature

This can be done by:

- reengineering components initiating high speed velocities and low static pressures
- increasing the total or local static pressure in the system
- reducing the temperature of the fluid

Reengineering of Components Initiating High Speed Velocity and Low Static Pressure

Cavitation and damage can be avoided by using special components designed for the actual rough conditions.

- Conditions such as huge pressure drops can - with limitations - be handled by Multi Stage Control Valves
- Difficult pumping conditions - with fluid temperatures close to the vaporization temperature - can be handled with a special pump - working after another principle than the centrifugal pump.

Cavitation Continued: Increasing the Total or Local Pressure in the System

By increasing the total or local pressure in the system, the distance between the static pressure and the vaporization pressure is increased and vaporization and cavitation may be avoided.

The ratio between static pressure and the vaporization pressure, an indication of the possibility of vaporization, is often expressed by the Cavitation Number. Unfortunately it may not always be possible to increase the total static pressure due to system classifications or other limitations. Local static pressure in the component may then be increased by lowering the component in the system. Control valves and pumps should in general be positioned in the lowest part of the system to maximize the static head. This is common for boiler feeding pumps receiving hot condensate (water close to 100 ^{o}C) from a condensate receiver.

Cavitation Continued: Reducing the Temperature of the Fluid

The vaporization pressure is highly dependent on the fluid temperature. Water, our most common fluid, is an example:

Temperature (^{o}C)	Vapor Pressure (kN/m^2)
0	0.6
5	0.9
10	1.2
15	1.7
20	2.3
25	3.2
30	4.3
35	5.6
40	7.7
45	9.6
50	12.5
55	15.7
60	20
65	25
70	32.1
75	38.6
80	47.5
85	57.8
90	70
95	84.5
100	101.33

As we can see - the possibility of evaporation and cavitation increases dramatically with the water temperature.

Cavitation can be avoided by locating the components in the coldest part of the system. For example, it is common to locate the pumps in heating systems at the "cold" return lines. The situation is the same for control valves. Where it is possible they should be located on the cold side of heat exchangers.

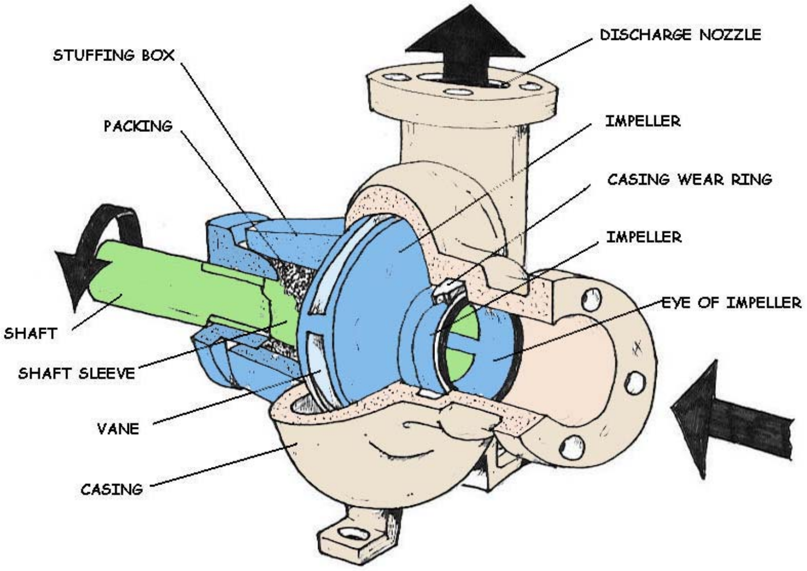
Cavitations Number: A "special edition" of the dimensionless Euler Number.

The Cavitations Number is useful for analyzing fluid flow dynamics problems where cavitations may occur. The Cavitations Number can be expressed as

$$Ca = (p_r - p_v) / 1/2\ \rho\ v^2 \quad (1)$$

where
Ca = *Cavitations number*
p_r = *reference pressure (Pa)*
p_v = *vapor pressure of the fluid (Pa)*
ρ = *density of the fluid (kg/m^3)*
v = *velocity of fluid (m/s)*

Centrifugal Pump: A pump consisting of an impeller fixed on a rotating shaft and enclosed in a casing, having an inlet and a discharge connection. The rotating impeller creates pressure in the liquid by the velocity derived from centrifugal force.



Chezy Formula: Conduits flow and mean velocity. The Chezy formula can be used to calculate mean flow velocity in conduits and is expressed as

$$v = c\ (R\ S)^{1/2} \quad (1)$$

where
v = *mean velocity (m/s, ft/s)*
c = *the Chezy roughness and conduit coefficient*
R = *hydraulic radius of the conduit (m, ft)*
S = *slope of the conduit (m/m, ft/ft)*

In general the Chezy coefficient - *c* - is a function of the flow Reynolds Number - Re - and the relative roughness - *ε/R* - of the channel.
ε is the characteristic height of the roughness elements on the channel boundary.

Coanda Effect: The tendency of a stream of fluid to stay attached to a convex surface, rather than follow a straight line in its original direction.

Colebrook Equation: The friction coefficients used to calculate pressure loss (or major loss) in ducts, tubes and pipes can be calculated with the Colebrook equation.

$$1 / \lambda^{1/2} = -2 \log ((2.51 / (Re\, \lambda^{1/2})) + ((k / d_h) / 3.72)) \quad (1)$$

where
λ = *D'Arcy-Weisbach friction coefficient*
Re = *Reynolds Number*
k = *roughness of duct, pipe or tube surface (m, ft)*
d_h = *hydraulic diameter (m, ft)*

The Colebrook equation is only valid at turbulent flow conditions.
Note that the friction coefficient is involved on both sides of the equation and that the equation must be solved by iteration.

The Colebrook equation is generic and can be used to calculate the friction coefficients in different kinds of fluid flows - air ventilation ducts, pipes and tubes with water or oil, compressed air and much more.

Common Pressure Measuring Devices: The Strain Gauge is a common measuring device used for a variety of changes such as head. As the pressure in the system changes, the diaphragm expands which changes the length of the wire attached. This change of length of the wire changes the Resistance of the wire, which is then converted to head. Float mechanisms, diaphragm elements, bubbler tubes, and direct electronic sensors are common types of level sensors.

Compressible Flow: We know that fluids are classified as Incompressible and Compressible fluids. Incompressible fluids do not undergo significant changes in density as they flow. In general, liquids are incompressible; water being an excellent example. In contrast compressible fluids do undergo density changes.

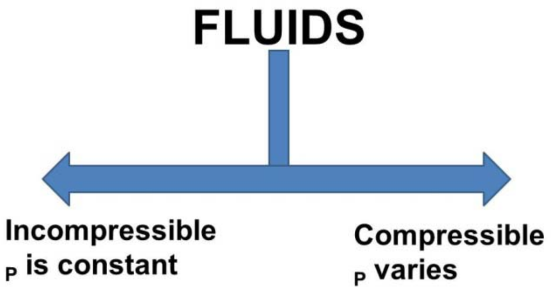
Gases are generally compressible; air being the most common compressible fluid we can find. Compressibility of gases leads to many interesting features such as shocks, which are absent for incompressible fluids. Gas dynamics is the discipline that studies the flow of compressible fluids and forms an important branch of Fluid Mechanics. In this book we give a broad introduction to the basics of compressible fluid flow.

In a compressible flow the compressibility of the fluid must be taken into account. The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law. Properties of **Gas Mixtures** - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density. The Individual and **Universal Gas Constant** - The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

Compression and Expansion of Gases: If the compression or expansion takes place under constant temperature conditions - the process is called **isothermal.** The isothermal process can on the basis of the Ideal Gas Law be expressed as:

p / ρ = constant (1)

where
p = absolute pressure
ρ = density



Confined Space Entry: Entry into a confined space requires that all entrants wear a harness and safety line. If an operator is working inside a storage tank and suddenly faints or has a serious problem, there should be two people outside standing by to remove the injured operator.

Conservation Laws: The conservation laws states that particular measurable properties of an isolated physical system does not change as the system evolves: Conservation of energy (including mass). Fluid Mechanics and Conservation of Mass - The law of conservation of mass states that mass can neither be created or destroyed.

Contaminant: Any natural or man-made physical, chemical, biological, or radiological substance or matter in water, which is at a level that may have an adverse effect on public health, and which is known or anticipated to occur in public water systems.

Contamination: To make something bad; to pollute or infect something. To reduce the quality of the potable (drinking) water and create an actual hazard to the water supply by poisoning or through spread of diseases.

Corrosion: The removal of metal from copper, other metal surfaces and concrete surfaces in a destructive manner. Corrosion is caused by improperly balanced water or excessive water velocity through piping or heat exchangers.

Cross-Contamination: The mixing of two unlike qualities of water. For example, the mixing of good water with a polluting substance like a chemical.

D

Darcy-Weisbach Equation: The **pressure loss** (or major loss) in a pipe, tube or duct can be expressed with the D'Arcy-Weisbach equation:

$$\Delta p = \lambda\ (l / d_h)\ (\rho\ v^2 / 2)\ (1)$$

where

Δp = pressure loss (Pa, N/m^2, lb$_f$/ft^2)

λ = D'Arcy-Weisbach friction coefficient

l = length of duct or pipe (m, ft)

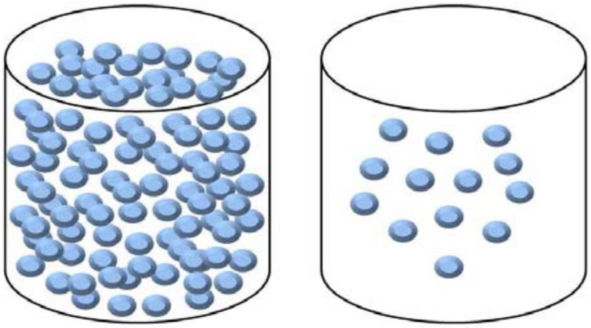
d_h = hydraulic diameter (m, ft)

ρ = density (kg/m^3, lb/ft^3)

Note! Be aware that there are two alternative friction coefficients present in the literature. One is 1/4 of the other and (1) must be multiplied with four to achieve the correct result. This is important to verify when selecting friction coefficients from Moody diagrams.

Density: Is a physical property of matter, as each element and compound has a unique density associated with it.

Density defined in a qualitative manner as the measure of the relative "heaviness" of objects with a constant volume. For example: A rock is obviously more dense than a crumpled piece of paper of the same size. A Styrofoam cup is less dense than a ceramic cup. Density may also refer to how closely "packed" or "crowded" the material appears to be - again refer to the Styrofoam vs. ceramic cup. Take a look at the two boxes below.



Each box has the same volume. ***If each ball has the same mass, which box would weigh more? Why?***

The box that has more balls has more mass per unit of volume. This property of matter is called density. The density of a material helps to distinguish it from other materials. Since mass is usually expressed in grams and volume in cubic centimeters, density is expressed in grams/cubic centimeter. We can calculate density using the formula:

Density= Mass/Volume

The density can be expressed as

$$\rho = m / V = 1 / v_g\ (1)$$

where
ρ = density (kg/m^3)
m = mass (kg)
V = volume (m^3)
v_g = specific volume (m^3/kg)

The SI units for density are kg/m^3. The imperial (BG) units are lb/ft^3 ($slugs/ft^3$). While people often use pounds per cubic foot as a measure of density in the U.S., pounds are really a measure of force, not mass. Slugs are the correct measure of mass. You can multiply slugs by 32.2 for a rough value in pounds. The higher the density, the tighter the particles are packed inside the substance. Density is a physical property constant at a given temperature and density can help to identify a substance.

Example - Use the Density to Identify the Material:
An unknown liquid substance has a mass of 18.5 g and occupies a volume of 23.4 ml. (milliliter).

The density can be calculated as

$$\rho = [18.5 (g) / 1000 (g/kg)] / [23.4 (ml) / 1000 (ml/l) 1000 (l/m^3)]$$
$$= 18.5\ 10^{-3} (kg) / 23.4\ 10^{-6} (m^3)$$
$$= \underline{790}\ kg/m^3$$

If we look up densities of some common substances, we can find that ethyl alcohol, or ethanol, has a density of <u>790</u> kg/m^3. Our unknown liquid may likely be ethyl alcohol!

Example - Use Density to Calculate the Mass of a Volume
The density of titanium is 4507 kg/m^3 . Calculate the mass of 0.17 m^3 titanium!

$$m = 0.17 (m^3)\ 4507 (kg/m^3)$$
$$= \underline{766.2}\ kg$$

Dilatant Fluids: Shear Thickening Fluids or Dilatant Fluids increase their viscosity with agitation. Some of these liquids can become almost solid within a pump or pipe line. With agitation, cream becomes butter and Candy compounds, clay slurries and similar heavily filled liquids do the same thing.

Disinfect: To kill and inhibit growth of harmful bacterial and viruses in drinking water.

Disinfection: The treatment of water to inactivate, destroy, and/or remove pathogenic bacteria, viruses, protozoa, and other parasites.

Distribution System Water Quality: Can be adversely affected by improperly constructed or poorly located blowoffs of vacuum/air relief valves. Air relief valves in the distribution system lines must be placed in locations that cannot be flooded. This is to prevent water contamination. The common customer complaint of Milky Water or Entrained Air is sometimes solved by the installation of air relief valves. The venting of air is not a major concern when checking water levels in a storage tank. If the vent line on a ground level storage tank is closed or clogged up, a vacuum will develop in the tank may happen to the tank when the water level begins to lower.

Drag Coefficient: Used to express the drag of an object in moving fluid. Any object moving through a fluid will experience a drag - the net force in direction of flow due to the pressure and shear stress forces on the surface of the object.

The drag force can be expressed as:

$F_d = c_d\ 1/2\ \rho\ v^2\ A\ (1)$

where
F_d = *drag force (N)*
c_d = *drag coefficient*
ρ = *density of fluid*
v = *flow velocity*
A = *characteristic frontal area of the body*

The drag coefficient is a function of several parameters as shape of the body, Reynolds Number for the flow, Froude number, Mach Number and Roughness of the Surface. The characteristic frontal area - *A* - depends on the body.

Dynamic or Absolute Viscosity: The viscosity of a fluid is an important property in the analysis of liquid behavior and fluid motion near solid boundaries. The viscosity of a fluid is its resistance to shear or flow and is a measure of the adhesive/cohesive or frictional properties of a fluid. The resistance is caused by intermolecular friction exerted when layers of fluids attempts to slide by another.

Dynamic Pressure: Dynamic pressure is the component of fluid pressure that represents a fluids kinetic energy. The dynamic pressure is a defined property of a moving flow of gas or liquid and can be expressed as

$p_d = 1/2\ \rho\ v^2\ (1)$

where
p_d = *dynamic pressure (Pa)*
ρ = *density of fluid* (kg/m^3)
v = *velocity (m/s)*

Dynamic, Absolute and Kinematic Viscosity: The viscosity of a fluid is an important property in the analysis of liquid behavior and fluid motion near solid boundaries. The viscosity is the fluid resistance to shear or flow and is a measure of the adhesive/cohesive or frictional fluid property. The resistance is caused by intermolecular friction exerted when layers of fluids attempts to slide by another.

Viscosity is a measure of a fluid's resistance to flow.

The knowledge of viscosity is needed for proper design of required temperatures for storage, pumping or injection of fluids.

Common used units for viscosity are
- CentiPoises (cp) = CentiStokes (cSt) × Density
- SSU[1] = Centistokes (cSt) × 4.55

- Degree Engler[1] × 7.45 = Centistokes (cSt)
- Seconds Redwood[1] × 0.2469 = Centistokes (cSt)

[1] centistokes greater than 50

There are two related measures of fluid viscosity - known as **dynamic** (**or absolute**) and **kinematic** viscosity.

Dynamic (absolute) Viscosity: The tangential force per unit area required to move one horizontal plane with respect to the other at unit velocity when maintained a unit distance apart by the fluid. The shearing stress between the layers of non-turbulent fluid moving in straight parallel lines can be defined for a Newtonian fluid as:

The dynamic or absolute viscosity can be expressed like

$$\tau = \mu \, dc/dy \quad (1)$$

where
τ = *shearing stress*
μ = *dynamic viscosity*

Equation (1) is known as the **Newton's Law of Friction**.

In the SI system the dynamic viscosity units are **N s/m^2**, **Pa s** or **kg/m s** where

- *1 Pa s = 1 N s/m^2 = 1 kg/m s*

The dynamic viscosity is also often expressed in the metric CGS (centimeter-gram-second) system as **g/cm.s**, **dyne.s/cm^2** or **poise (p)** where

- *1 poise = dyne s/cm^2 = g/cm s = 1/10 Pa s*

For practical use the Poise is to large and its usual divided by 100 into the smaller unit called the **centiPoise (cP)** where

- *1 p = 100 cP*

Water at 68.4°F (20.2°C) has an absolute viscosity of one - 1 - centiPoise.

E

E. Coli, *Escherichia coli*: A bacterium commonly found in the human intestine. For water quality analyses purposes, it is considered an indicator organism. These are considered evidence of water contamination. Indicator organisms may be accompanied by pathogens, but do not necessarily cause disease themselves.

Elevation Head: The energy possessed per unit weight of a fluid because of its elevation. 1 foot of water will produce .433 pounds of pressure head.

Energy: The ability to do work. Energy can exist in one of several forms, such as heat, light, mechanical, electrical, or chemical. Energy can be transferred to different forms. It also can exist in one of two states, either potential or kinetic.

Energy and Hydraulic Grade Line: The hydraulic grade and the energy line are graphical forms of the Bernoulli equation. For steady, in viscid, incompressible flow the total energy remains constant along a stream line as expressed through the Bernoulli

Equation:

$p + 1/2\ \rho\ v^2 + \gamma\ h = \text{constant along a streamline (1)}$

where
p = *static pressure (relative to the moving fluid)*
ρ = *density*
γ = *specific weight*
v = *flow velocity*
g = *acceleration of gravity*
h = *elevation height*

Each term of this equation has the dimension *force per unit area* - psi, lb/ft^2 or N/m^2.

The Head

By dividing each term with the specific weight - $\gamma = \rho\ g$ - (1) can be transformed to express the "head":

$p / \gamma + v^2 / 2\ g + h = \text{constant along a streamline} = H\ (2)$
where
H = *the total head*

Each term of this equation has the dimension length - ft, m.

The Total Head

(2) states that the sum of **pressure head** - p / γ -, **velocity head** - $v^2 / 2\ g$ - and **elevation head** - h - is constant along the stream line. This constant can be called **the total head** - H -.

The total head in a flow can be measured by the stagnation pressure using a pitot tube.

Energy and Hydraulic Grade Line Continued:

The Piezometric Head

The sum of pressure head - p / γ - and elevation head - h - is called **the piezometric head**. The piezometric head in a flow can be measured through an flat opening parallel to the flow.

Energy and Hydraulic Grade Line Continued:

The Energy Line

The Energy Line is a line that represents the total head available to the fluid and can be expressed as:

$EL = H = p / \gamma + v^2 / 2\ g + h = \text{constant along a streamline (3)}$

where
EL = *Energy Line*

For a fluid flow without any losses due to friction (major losses) or components (minor losses) the energy line would be at a constant level. In the practical world the energy line decreases along the flow due to the losses.

A turbine in the flow will reduce the energy line and a pump or fan will increase the energy line.

The Hydraulic Grade Line

The Hydraulic Grade Line is a line that represent the total head available to the fluid minus the velocity head and can be expressed as:

$HGL = p / \gamma + h$ (4)

where
HGL = *Hydraulic Grade Line*

The hydraulic grade line lies one velocity head below the energy line.

Entrance Length and Developed Flow: Fluids need some length to develop the velocity profile after entering the pipe or after passing through components such as bends, valves, pumps, and turbines or similar.

The Entrance Length: The entrance length can be expressed with the dimensionless **Entrance Length Number:**

$El = l_e / d$ (1)

where
El = *Entrance Length Number*
l_e = *length to fully developed velocity profile*
d = *tube or duct diameter*

The Entrance Length Number for Laminar Flow

The Entrance length number correlation with the Reynolds Number for laminar flow can be expressed as:

$El_{laminar} = 0.06\ Re$ (2)

where
Re = *Reynolds Number*

The Entrance Length Number for Turbulent Flow

The Entrance length number correlation with the Reynolds Number for turbulent flow can be expressed as:

$El_{turbulent} = 4.4\ Re^{1/6}$ (3)

Entropy in Compressible Gas Flow: Calculating entropy in compressible gas flow Entropy change in compressible gas flow can be expressed as

$ds = c_v \ln(T_2 / T_1) + R \ln(\rho_1 / \rho_2)$ (1)
or
$ds = c_p \ln(T_2 / T_1) - R \ln(p_2 / p_1)$ (2)

where
ds = *entropy change*
c_v = *specific heat capacity at a constant volume process*
c_p = *specific heat capacity at a constant pressure process*
T = *absolute temperature*
R = *individual gas constant*
ρ = *density of gas*
p = *absolute pressure*

Equation of Continuity: The Law of Conservation of Mass states that mass can be neither created nor destroyed. Using the Mass Conservation Law on a **steady flow** process - flow where the flow rate doesn't change over time - through a control volume where the stored mass in the control volume doesn't change - implements that inflow equals outflow. This statement is called **the Equation of Continuity.** Common application where **the Equation of Continuity** can be used are pipes, tubes and ducts with flowing fluids and gases, rivers, overall processes as power plants, diaries, logistics in general, roads, computer networks and semiconductor technology and more.

The Equation of Continuity and can be expressed as:

$$m = \rho_{i1} v_{i1} A_{i1} + \rho_{i2} v_{i2} A_{i2} +..+ \rho_{in} v_{in} A_{im}$$
$$= \rho_{o1} v_{o1} A_{o1} + \rho_{o2} v_{o2} A_{o2} +..+ \rho_{om} v_{om} A_{om} \quad (1)$$

where
m = *mass flow rate (kg/s)*
ρ = *density* (kg/m^3)
v = *speed (m/s)*
A = *area* (m^2)
With uniform density equation (1) can be modified to

$$q = v_{i1} A_{i1} + v_{i2} A_{i2} +..+ v_{in} A_{im}$$
$$= v_{o1} A_{o1} + v_{o2} A_{o2} +..+ v_{om} A_{om} \quad (2)$$

where
q = *flow rate* (m^3/s)
$\rho_{i1} = \rho_{i2} = . . = \rho_{in} = \rho_{o1} = \rho_{o2} = . .= \rho_{om}$

Example - Equation of Continuity

10 m^3/h of water flows through a pipe of 100 mm inside diameter. The pipe is reduced to an inside dimension of 80 mm. Using equation (2) the velocity in the 100 mm pipe can be calculated as

$(10\ m^3/h)(1 / 3600\ h/s) = v_{100}\ (3.14 \times 0.1\ (m) \times 0.1\ (m) / 4)$
or
$v_{100} = (10\ m^3/h)(1 / 3600\ h/s) / (3.14 \times 0.1\ (m) \times 0.1\ (m) / 4)$
$= \underline{0.35}\ m/s$
Using equation (2) the velocity in the 80 mm pipe can be calculated
$(10\ m^3/h)(1 / 3600\ h/s) = v_{80}\ (3.14 \times 0.08\ (m) \times 0.08\ (m) / 4)$
or
$v_{100} = (10\ m^3/h)(1 / 3600\ h/s) / (3.14 \times 0.08\ (m) \times 0.08\ (m) / 4)$

= <u>0.55</u> m/s

Equation of Mechanical Energy: The Energy Equation is a statement of the first law of thermodynamics. The energy equation involves energy, heat transfer and work. With certain limitations the mechanical energy equation can be compared to the Bernoulli Equation and transferred to the Mechanical Energy Equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Mass.

The mechanical energy equation for a **pump or a fan** can be written in terms of **energy per unit mass**:

$$p_{in} / \rho + v_{in}^2 / 2 + g\, h_{in} + w_{shaft} = p_{out} / \rho + v_{out}^2 / 2 + g\, h_{out} + w_{loss} \quad (1)$$

where
p = *static pressure*
ρ = *density*
v = *flow velocity*
g = *acceleration of gravity*
h = *elevation height*
w_{shaft} = *net shaft energy inn per unit mass for a pump, fan or similar*
w_{loss} = *loss due to friction*

The energy equation is often used for incompressible flow problems and is called **the Mechanical Energy Equation** or **the Extended Bernoulli Equation**.

The mechanical energy equation for a **turbine** can be written as:

$$p_{in} / \rho + v_{in}^2 / 2 + g\, h_{in} = p_{out} / \rho + v_{out}^2 / 2 + g\, h_{out} + w_{shaft} + w_{loss} \quad (2)$$

where
w_{shaft} = *net shaft energy out per unit mass for a turbine or similar*

Equation (1) and (2) dimensions are
energy per unit mass (ft^2/s^2 = *ft lb/slug or* m^2/s^2 = *N m/kg*)

Efficiency
According to (1) a larger amount of loss - w_{loss} - result in more shaft work required for the same rise of output energy. The efficiency of a **pump or fan process** can be expressed as:

$$\eta = (w_{shaft} - w_{loss}) / w_{shaft} \quad (3)$$

The efficiency of a **turbine process** can be expressed as:

$$\eta = w_{shaft} / (w_{shaft} + w_{loss}) \quad (4)$$

The Mechanical Energy Equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Volume
The mechanical energy equation for a **pump or a fan** (1) can also be written in terms of **energy per unit volume** by multiplying (1) with fluid density - ρ:

$$p_{in} + \rho\, v_{in}^2 / 2 + \gamma\, h_{in} + \rho\, w_{shaft} = p_{out} + \rho\, v_{out}^2 / 2 + \gamma\, h_{out} + w_{loss} \quad (5)$$

where

$\gamma = \rho g$ = *specific weight*

The dimensions of equation (5) are

energy per unit volume (ft.lb/ft^3 = lb/ft^2 or N.m/m^3 = N/m^2)

The Mechanical Energy Equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Weight involves Heads

The mechanical energy equation for a **pump or a fan** (1) can also be written in terms of **energy per unit weight** by dividing with gravity - *g*:

$$p_{in} / \gamma + v_{in}^2 / 2 g + h_{in} + h_{shaft} = p_{out} / \gamma + v_{out}^2 / 2 g + h_{out} + h_{loss} \quad (6)$$

where

$\gamma = \rho g$ = *specific weight*

$h_{shaft} = w_{shaft} / g$ = *net shaft energy head inn per unit mass for a pump, fan or similar*

$h_{loss} = w_{loss} / g$ = *loss head due to friction*

The dimensions of equation (6) are

energy per unit weight (ft.lb/lb = ft or N.m/N = m)

Head is the energy per unit weight.

h_{shaft} can also be expressed as:

$$h_{shaft} = w_{shaft} / g = W_{shaft} / m g = W_{shaft} / \gamma Q \quad (7)$$

where

W_{shaft} = *shaft power*

m = *mass flow rate*

Q = *volume flow rate*

Example - Pumping Water

Water is pumped from an open tank at level zero to an open tank at level 10 ft. The pump adds four horsepowers to the water when pumping 2 ft^3/s.

Since $v_{in} = v_{out} = 0$, $p_{in} = p_{out} = 0$ and $h_{in} = 0$ - equation (6) can be modified to:

$$h_{shaft} = h_{out} + h_{loss}$$

or

$$h_{loss} = h_{shaft} - h_{out} \quad (8)$$

Equation (7) gives:

$$h_{shaft} = W_{shaft} / \gamma Q = (4\ hp)(550\ ft.lb/s/hp) / (62.4\ lb/ft^3)(2\ ft^3/s) = 17.6\ ft$$

- specific weight of water 62.4 lb/ft^3
- 1 hp (English horse power) = 550 ft. lb/s

Combined with (8):

$h_{loss} = (17.6\ ft) - (10\ ft) = 7.6\ ft$

The pump efficiency can be calculated from (3) modified for head:

$\eta = ((17.6\ ft) - (7.6\ ft)) / (17.6\ ft) = 0.58$

Equations in Fluid Mechanics: Common fluid mechanics equations - Bernoulli, conservation of energy, conservation of mass, pressure, Navier-Stokes, ideal gas law, Euler equations, Laplace equations, Darcy-Weisbach Equation and the following:

The Bernoulli Equation

- The Bernoulli Equation - A statement of the conservation of energy in a form useful for solving problems involving fluids. For a non-viscous, incompressible fluid in steady flow, the sum of pressure, potential and kinetic energies per unit volume is constant at any point.

Conservation laws

- The conservation laws states that particular measurable properties of an isolated physical system does not change as the system evolves.
- Conservation of energy (including mass)
- Fluid Mechanics and Conservation of Mass - The law of conservation of mass states that mass can neither be created nor destroyed.
- The Continuity Equation - The Continuity Equation is a statement that mass is conserved.

Darcy-Weisbach Equation

- Pressure Loss and Head Loss due to Friction in Ducts and Tubes - Major loss - head loss or pressure loss - due to friction in pipes and ducts.

Euler Equations

- In fluid dynamics, the Euler equations govern the motion of a compressible, inviscid fluid. They correspond to the Navier-Stokes equations with zero viscosity, although they are usually written in the form shown here because this emphasizes the fact that they directly represent conservation of mass, momentum, and energy.

Laplace's Equation

- The Laplace Equation describes the behavior of gravitational, electric, and fluid potentials.

Ideal Gas Law

- The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas, the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law.
- Properties of Gas Mixtures - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density.
- The Individual and Universal Gas Constant - The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

Navier-Stokes Equations

- The motion of a non-turbulent, Newtonian fluid is governed by the Navier-Stokes equations. The equation can be used to model turbulent flow, where the fluid parameters are interpreted as time-averaged values.

Mechanical Energy Equation

- The Mechanical Energy Equation - The mechanical energy equation in Terms of Energy per Unit Mass, in Terms of Energy per Unit Volume and in Terms of Energy per Unit Weight involves Heads.

Pressure

- Static Pressure and Pressure Head in a Fluid - Pressure and pressure head in a static fluid.

Euler Equations: In fluid dynamics, the Euler equations govern the motion of a compressible, inviscid fluid. They correspond to the Navier-Stokes equations with zero viscosity, although they are usually written in the form shown here because this emphasizes the fact that they directly represent conservation of mass, momentum, and energy.

Euler Number: The Euler numbers, also called the secant numbers or zig numbers, are defined for $|x| < \pi/2$ by

$$\operatorname{sech} x - 1 \equiv -\frac{E_1^* x^2}{2!} + \frac{E_2^* x^4}{4!} - \frac{E_3^* x^6}{6!} + \ldots$$

$$\sec x - 1 \equiv \frac{E_1^* x^2}{2!} + \frac{E_2^* x^4}{4!} + \frac{E_3^* x^6}{6!} + \ldots,$$

where $\operatorname{sech}(z)$the hyperbolic secant and sec is the secant. Euler numbers give the number of odd alternating permutations and are related to Genocchi numbers. The base *e* of the natural logarithm is sometimes known as Euler's number. A different sort of Euler number, the Euler number of a finite complex K, is defined by

$$\chi(K) = \sum (-1)^p \operatorname{rank}(C_p(K)).$$

This Euler number is a topological invariant. To confuse matters further, the Euler characteristic is sometimes also called the "Euler number," and numbers produced by the prime-generating polynomial $n^2 - n + 41$are sometimes called "Euler numbers" (Flannery and Flannery 2000, p. 47).

F

Fecal Coliform: A group of bacteria that may indicate the presence of human or animal fecal matter in water.

Filtration: A series of processes that physically remove particles from water.

Flood Rim: The point of an object where the water would run over the edge of something and begin to cause a flood. See Air Break.

Fluids: A fluid is defined as a substance that continually deforms (flows) under an applied shear stress regardless of the magnitude of the applied stress. It is a subset of the phases of matter and includes liquids, gases, plasmas and, to some extent, plastic solids. Fluids are also divided into liquids and gases. Liquids form a free surface (that is, a surface not created by their container) while gases do not.

The distinction between solids and fluids is not so obvious. The distinction is made by evaluating the viscosity of the matter: for example silly putty can be considered either a solid or a fluid, depending on the time period over which it is observed. Fluids share the properties of not resisting deformation and the ability to flow (also described as their ability to take on the shape of their containers).

These properties are typically a function of their inability to support a shear stress in static equilibrium. While in a solid, stress is a function of strain, in a fluid, stress is a function of rate of strain. A consequence of this behavior is Pascal's law which entails the important role of pressure in characterizing a fluid's state. Based on how the stress depends on the rate of strain and its derivatives, fluids can be characterized as: Newtonian fluids: where stress is directly proportional to rate of strain, and Non-Newtonian fluids : where stress is proportional to rate of strain, its higher powers and derivatives (basically everything other than Newtonian fluid).

The behavior of fluids can be described by a set of partial differential equations, which are based on the conservation of mass, linear and angular momentum (Navier-Stokes equations) and energy. The study of fluids is fluid mechanics, which is subdivided into fluid dynamics and fluid statics depending on whether the fluid is in motion or not. Fluid **Related Information**: The Bernoulli Equation - A statement of the conservation of energy in a form useful for solving problems involving fluids. For a non-viscous, incompressible fluid in steady flow, the sum of pressure, potential and kinetic energies per unit volume is constant at any point. Equations in Fluid Mechanics - Continuity, Euler, Bernoulli, Dynamic and Total Pressure. Laminar, Transitional or Turbulent Flow? - It is important to know if the fluid flow is laminar, transitional or turbulent when calculating heat transfer or pressure and head loss.

Friction Head: The head required to overcome the friction at the interior surface of a conductor and between fluid particles in motion. It varies with flow, size, type and conditions of conductors and fittings, and the fluid characteristics.

G

Gas: A gas is one of the four major phases of matter (after solid and liquid, and followed by plasma) that subsequently appear as solid material when they are subjected to increasingly higher temperatures. Thus, as energy in the form of heat is added, a solid (e.g., ice) will first melt to become a liquid (e.g., water), which will then boil or evaporate to become a gas (e.g., water vapor). In some circumstances, a solid (e.g., "dry ice") can directly turn into a gas: this is called sublimation. If the gas is further heated, its atoms or molecules can become (wholly or partially) ionized, turning the gas into a plasma. Relater Gas Information: The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law. Properties of Gas Mixtures - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density. The Individual and Universal Gas Constant - The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

Gauge Pressure: Pressure differential above or below ambient atmospheric pressure.

H

Hazardous Atmosphere: An atmosphere which by reason of being explosive, flammable, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritating, oxygen deficient, toxic, or otherwise harmful, may cause death, illness, or injury.

Hazen-Williams Factor: Hazen-Williams factor for some common piping materials. Hazen-Williams coefficients are used in the Hazen-Williams equation for friction loss calculation in ducts and pipes.

Hazen-Williams Equation - Calculating Friction Head Loss in Water Pipes
Friction head loss (ft H2O per 100 ft pipe) in water pipes can be obtained by using the empirical Hazen-Williams equation. The Darcy-Weisbach equation with the Moody diagram are considered to be the most accurate model for estimating frictional head loss in steady pipe flow. Since the approach requires a not so efficient trial and error solution, an alternative empirical head loss calculation that does not require the trial and error solutions, as the Hazen-Williams equation, may be preferred:

$$f = 0.2083\ (100/c)^{1.852}\ q^{1.852} / d_h^{4.8655} \quad (1)$$

where
f = *friction head loss in feet of water per 100 feet of pipe* (ft_{h20}*/100 ft pipe)*
c = *Hazen-Williams roughness constant*
q = *volume flow (gal/min)*
d_h = *inside hydraulic diameter (inches)*

Note that the Hazen-Williams formula is empirical and lacks physical basis. Be aware that the roughness constants are based on "normal" condition with approximately 1 m/s (3 ft/sec).

The Hazen-Williams formula is not the only empirical formula available. Manning's formula is common for gravity driven flows in open channels.

The flow velocity may be calculated as:

$$v = 0.4087\ q / d_h^2$$

where
v = *flow velocity (ft/s)*

The Hazen-Williams formula can be assumed to be relatively accurate for piping systems where the Reynolds Number is above 10^5 (turbulent flow).

- 1 ft (foot) = 0.3048 m
- 1 in (inch) = 25.4 mm
- 1 gal (US)/min =6.30888×10^{-5} m^3/s = 0.0227 m^3/h = 0.0631 dm^3(liter)/s = 2.228×10^{-3} ft^3/s = 0.1337 ft^3/min = 0.8327 Imperial gal (UK)/min

Note! The Hazen-Williams formula gives accurate head loss due to friction for fluids with kinematic viscosity of approximately 1.1 cSt. More about fluids and kinematic viscosity.

The results for the formula are acceptable for cold water at 60° F (15.6° C) with kinematic viscosity 1.13 cSt. For hot water with a lower kinematic viscosity (0.55 cSt at 130° F (54.4° C)) the error will be significant. Since the Hazen Williams method is only valid for water flowing at ordinary temperatures between 40 to 75° F, the Darcy Weisbach method should be used for other liquids or gases.

Head: The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point expressed in linear units. Head if often used to indicate gauge pressure. Pressure is equal to the height times the density of the liquid. The measure of the pressure of water expressed in feet of height of water. 1 psi = 2.31 feet of water. There are various types of heads of water depending upon what is being measured. Static (water at rest) and Residual (water at flow conditions).

Hydraulics: Hydraulics is a branch of science and engineering concerned with the use of liquids to perform mechanical tasks.

Hydrodynamics: Hydrodynamics is the fluid dynamics applied to liquids, such as water, alcohol, and oil.

I

Ideal Gas: The Ideal Gas Law - For a perfect or ideal gas the change in density is directly related to the change in temperature and pressure as expressed in the Ideal Gas Law. Properties of Gas Mixtures - Special care must be taken for gas mixtures when using the ideal gas law, calculating the mass, the individual gas constant or the density. The Individual and Universal Gas Constant - The Individual and Universal Gas Constant is common in fluid mechanics and thermodynamics.

Isentropic Compression/Expansion Process: If the compression or expansion takes place under constant volume conditions - the process is called **isentropic.** The isentropic process on the basis of the Ideal Gas Law can be expressed as:

$p / \rho^k = constant$ *(2)*

where
$k = c_p / c_v$ *- the ratio of specific heats - the ratio of specific heat at constant pressure -* c_p *- to the specific heat at constant volume -* c_v

Irrigation: Water that is especially furnished to help provide and sustain the life of growing plants. It comes from ditches. It is sometimes treated with herbicides and pesticides to prevent the growth of weeds and the development of bugs in a lawn and a garden.

K

Kinematic Viscosity: The ratio of absolute or dynamic viscosity to density - a quantity in which no force is involved. Kinematic viscosity can be obtained by dividing the absolute viscosity of a fluid with its mass density as

$v = \mu / \rho$ *(2)*

where
v *= kinematic viscosity*
μ *= absolute or dynamic viscosity*
ρ *= density*

In the SI-system the theoretical unit is m^2/s or commonly used **Stoke (St)** where

- $1\ St = 10^{-4}\ m^2/s$

Since the Stoke is an unpractical large unit, it is usual divided by 100 to give the unit called **Centistokes (cSt)** where

1 St = 100 cSt
1 cSt = 10^{-6} m^2/s

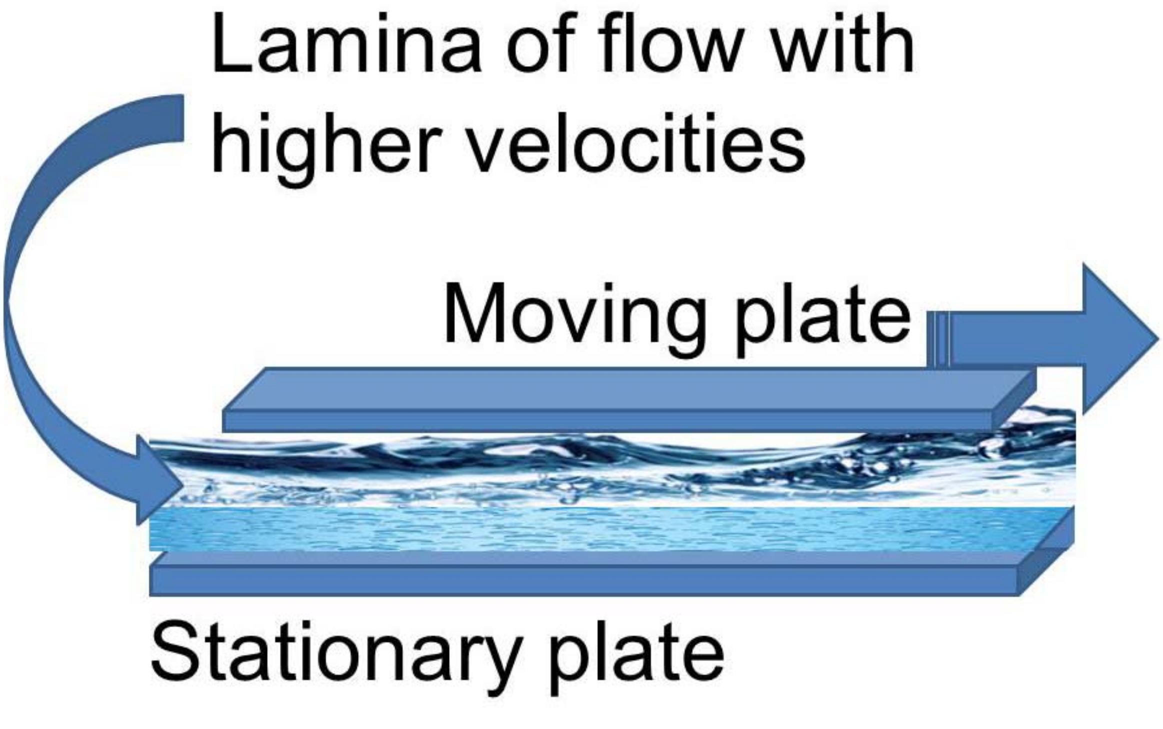
Since the specific gravity of water at 68.4°F (20.2°C) is almost one - 1, the kinematic viscosity of water at 68.4°F is for all practical purposes 1.0 cSt.

Kinetic Energy: The ability of an object to do work by virtue of its motion. The energy terms that are used to describe the operation of a pump are pressure and head.

Knudsen Number: Used by modelers who wish to express a non-dimensionless speed.

L

Laminar Flow: The resistance to flow in a liquid can be characterized in terms of the viscosity of the fluid if the flow is smooth. In the case of a moving plate in a liquid, it is found that there is a layer or lamina which moves with the plate, and a layer which is essentially stationary if it is next to a stationary plate. There is a gradient of velocity as you move from the stationary to the moving plate, and the liquid tends to move in layers with successively higher speed. This is called laminar flow, or sometimes "streamlined" flow. Viscous resistance to flow can be modeled for laminar flow, but if the lamina break up into turbulence, it is very difficult to characterize the fluid flow.



The common application of laminar flow would be in the smooth flow of a viscous liquid through a tube or pipe. In that case, the velocity of flow varies from zero at the walls to a maximum along the centerline of the vessel. The flow profile of laminar flow in a tube can be calculated by dividing the flow into thin cylindrical elements and applying the viscous force to them. Laminar, Transitional or Turbulent Flow? - It is important to know if the fluid flow is laminar, transitional or turbulent when calculating heat transfer or pressure and head loss.

Laplace's Equation: Describes the behavior of gravitational, electric, and fluid potentials.

The scalar form of Laplace's equation is the partial differential equation

$$\nabla^2 \psi = 0, \qquad (1)$$

where ∇^2 is the Laplacian.
Note that the operator ∇^2 is commonly written as Δ by mathematicians (Krantz 1999, p. 16). Laplace's equation is a special case of the Helmholtz differential equation

$$\nabla^2 \psi + k^2 \psi = 0 \qquad (2)$$

with $k = 0$, or Poisson's equation

$$\nabla^2 \psi = -4 \pi \rho \qquad (3)$$

with $\rho = 0$.

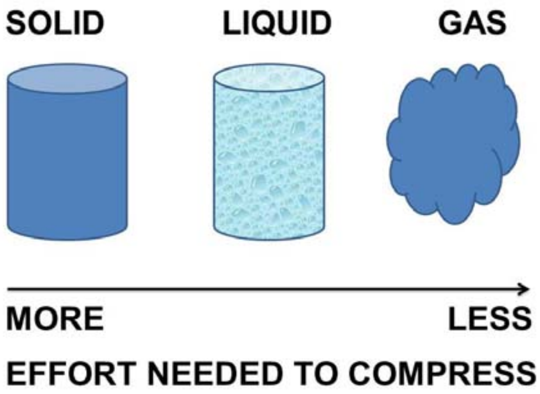
The vector Laplace's equation is given by

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}. \qquad (4)$$

A function ψ which satisfies Laplace's equation is said to be harmonic. A solution to Laplace's equation has the property that the average value over a spherical surface is equal to the value at the center of the sphere (Gauss's harmonic function theorem). Solutions have no local maxima or minima. Because Laplace's equation is linear, the superposition of any two solutions is also a solution.

Lift (Force): Lift consists of the sum of all the aerodynamic forces normal to the direction of the external airflow.

Liquids: An in-between state of matter. They can be found in between the solid and gas states. They don't have to be made up of the same compounds. If you have a variety of materials in a liquid, it is called a solution. One characteristic of a liquid is that it will fill up the shape of a container. If you pour some water in a cup, it will fill up the bottom of the cup first and then fill the rest. The water will also take the shape of the cup. It fills the bottom first because of **gravity**. The top part of a liquid will usually have a flat surface. That flat surface is because of gravity too. Putting an ice cube (solid) into a cup will leave you with a cube in the middle of the cup; the shape won't change until the ice becomes a liquid.



Another trait of liquids is that they are difficult to compress.

When you compress something, you take a certain amount and force it into a smaller space. Solids are very difficult to compress and gases are very easy. Liquids are in the middle but tend to be difficult. When you compress something, you force the atoms closer together. When pressure go up, substances are compressed. Liquids already have their atoms close together, so they are hard to compress. Many shock absorbers in cars compress liquids in tubes.

A special force keeps liquids together. Solids are stuck together and you have to force them apart. Gases bounce everywhere and they try to spread themselves out. Liquids actually want to stick together. There will always be the occasional evaporation where extra energy gets a molecule excited and the molecule leaves the system. Overall, liquids have **cohesive** (sticky) forces at work that hold the molecules together. Related Liquid Information: Equations in Fluid Mechanics - Continuity, Euler, Bernoulli, Dynamic and Total Pressure

M

Mach Number: When an object travels through a medium, then its Mach number is the ratio of the object's speed to the speed of sound in that medium.

Magnetic Flow Meter: Inspection of magnetic flow meter instrumentation should include checking for corrosion or insulation deterioration.

Manning Formula for Gravity Flow: Manning's equation can be used to calculate cross-sectional average velocity flow in open channels

$v = k_n/n\ R^{2/3}\ S^{1/2}$ *(1)*

where
v *= cross-sectional average velocity (ft/s, m/s)*
$k_n = 1.486$ *for English units and* $k_n = 1.0$ *for SI units*
A *= cross sectional area of flow (*ft^2*,* $m^{2)}$
n *= Manning coefficient of roughness*
R *= hydraulic radius (ft, m)*
S *= slope of pipe (ft/ft, m/m)*

The volume flow in the channel can be calculated as
$q = A\ v = A\ k_n/n\ R^{2/3}\ S^{1/2}$ *(2)*

where
q *= volume flow (*ft^3/s*,* m^3/s*)*
A *= cross-sectional area of flow (*ft^2*,* $m^{2)}$

Maximum Contamination Levels or (MCLs): The maximum allowable level of a contaminant that federal or state regulations allow in a public water system. If the MCL is exceeded, the water system must treat the water so that it meets the MCL. Or provide adequate backflow protection.

Mechanical Seal: A mechanical device used to control leakage from the stuffing box of a pump. Usually made of two flat surfaces, one of which rotates on the shaft. The two flat surfaces are of such tolerances as to prevent the passage of water between them.

Mg/L: milligrams per liter

Microbe, Microbial: Any minute, simple, single-celled form of life, especially one that causes disease.

Microbial Contaminants: Microscopic organisms present in untreated water that can cause waterborne diseases.

ML: milliliter

N

Navier-Stokes Equations: The motion of a non-turbulent, Newtonian fluid is governed by the Navier-Stokes equation. The equation can be used to model turbulent flow, where the fluid parameters are interpreted as time-averaged values.

Newtonian Fluid: Newtonian fluid (named for Isaac Newton) is a fluid that flows like water—its shear stress is linearly proportional to the velocity gradient in the direction perpendicular to the plane of shear. The constant of proportionality is known as the viscosity. Water is Newtonian, because it continues to exemplify fluid properties no matter how fast it is stirred or mixed.

Contrast this with a non-Newtonian fluid, in which stirring can leave a "hole" behind (that gradually fills up over time - this behavior is seen in materials such as pudding, or to a less rigorous extent, sand), or cause the fluid to become thinner, the drop in viscosity causing it to flow more (this is seen in non-drip paints). For a Newtonian fluid, the viscosity, by definition, depends only on temperature and pressure (and also the chemical composition of the fluid if the fluid is not a pure substance), not on the forces acting upon it. If the fluid is incompressible and viscosity is constant across the fluid, the equation governing the shear stress. Related Newtonian Information: A Fluid is Newtonian if viscosity is constant applied to shear force. Dynamic, Absolute and Kinematic Viscosity - An introduction to dynamic, absolute and kinematic viscosity and how to convert between CentiStokes (cSt), CentiPoises (cP), Saybolt Universal Seconds (SSU) and degree Engler.

Newton's Third Law: Newton's third law describes the forces acting on objects interacting with each other. Newton's third law can be expressed as

- *"If one object exerts a force **F** on another object, then the second object exerts an equal but opposite force **F** on the first object"*

Force is a convenient abstraction to represent mentally the pushing and pulling interaction between objects.

It is common to express forces as vectors with magnitude, direction and point of application. The net effect of two or more forces acting on the same point is the vector sum of the forces.

Non-Newtonian Fluid: Non-Newtonian fluid viscosity changes with the applied shear force.

O

Oxidizing: The process of breaking down organic wastes into simpler elemental forms or by products. Also used to separate combined chlorine and convert it into free chlorine.

P

Pascal's Law: A pressure applied to a confined fluid at rest is transmitted with equal intensity throughout the fluid.

Pathogens: Disease-causing pathogens; waterborne pathogens. A pathogen is a bacterium, virus or parasite that causes or is capable of causing disease. Pathogens may contaminate water and cause waterborne disease.
pCi/L- ***picocuries per liter:*** A curie is the amount of radiation released by a set amount of a certain compound. A picocurie is one quadrillionth of a curie.

pH: A measure of the acidity of water. The pH scale runs from 0 to 14 with 7 being the mid-point or neutral. A pH of less than 7 is on the acid side of the scale with 0 as the point of greatest acid activity. A pH of more than 7 is on the basic (alkaline) side of the scale with 14 as the point of greatest basic activity. pH (Power of Hydroxyl Ion Activity).

Pipeline Appurtenances: Pressure reducers, bends, valves, regulators (which are a type of valve), etc.

Peak Demand: The maximum momentary load placed on a water treatment plant, pumping station or distribution system is the Peak Demand.

Pipe Velocities: For calculating fluid pipe velocity.

Imperial units
A fluids flow velocity in pipes can be calculated with Imperial or American units as

$$v = 0.4085\, q / d^2 \quad (1)$$

where
v = *velocity (ft/s)*
q = *volume flow (US gal. /min)*
d = *pipe inside diameter (inches)*

SI units
A fluids flow velocity in pipes can be calculated with SI units as

$$v = 1.274\, q / d^2 \quad (2)$$

where
v = *velocity (m/s)*
q = *volume flow (m^3/s)*
d = *pipe inside diameter (m)*

Pollution: To make something unclean or impure. Some states will have a definition of pollution that relates to non-health related water problems, like taste and odors. See Contaminated.

Positive Flow Report-back Signal: When a pump receives a signal to start, a light will typically be illuminated on the control panel indicating that the pump is running. In order to be sure that the pump is actually pumping water, a Positive flow report-back signal should be installed on the control panel.

Potable: Good water which is safe for drinking or cooking purposes. Non-Potable: A liquid or water that is not approved for drinking.

Potential Energy: The energy that a body has by virtue of its position or state enabling it to do work.

PPM: Abbreviation for parts per million.

Prandtl Number: The Prandtl Number is a dimensionless number approximating the ratio of momentum diffusivity and thermal diffusivity and can be expressed as

$Pr = v / \alpha$ *(1)*
where
Pr = *Prandtl's number*
v = *kinematic viscosity (Pa s)*
α = *thermal diffusivity (W/m K)*

The Prandtl number can alternatively be expressed as

$Pr = \mu c_p / k$ *(2)*

where
μ = *absolute or dynamic viscosity (kg/m s, cP)*
c_p = *specific heat capacity (J/kg K, Btu/(lb ^oF))*
k = *thermal conductivity (W/m K, Btu/(h ft^2 ^oF/ft))*

The Prandtl Number is often used in heat transfer and free and forced convection calculations.

Pressure: An introduction to pressure - the definition and presentation of common units as psi and Pa and the relationship between them.

The pressure in a fluid is defined as
"the normal force per unit area exerted on an imaginary or real plane surface in a fluid or a gas"

The equation for pressure can expressed as:
$p = F / A$ *(1)*

where
p = *pressure [lb/in^2 (psi) or lb/ft^2 (psf), N/m^2 or kg/ms^2 (Pa)]*
F = *force [$^{1)}$, N]*
A = *area [in^2 or ft^2, m^2]*

$^{1)}$ In the English Engineering System special care must be taken for the force unit. The basic unit for mass is the pound mass (lb_m) and the unit for the force is the pound (lb) or pound force (lb_f).

Absolute Pressure

The **absolute pressure** - p_a - is measured relative to the *absolute zero pressure* - the pressure that would occur at absolute vacuum.

Gauge Pressure

A **gauge** is often used to measure the pressure difference between a system and the surrounding atmosphere. This pressure is often called the **gauge pressure** and can be expressed as

$p_g = p_a - p_o$ *(2)*

where
p_g = *gauge pressure*
p_o = *atmospheric pressure*

Atmospheric Pressure

The atmospheric pressure is the pressure in the surrounding air. It varies with temperature and altitude above sea level.

Standard Atmospheric Pressure

The **Standard Atmospheric Pressure** (atm) is used as a reference for gas densities and volumes. The Standard Atmospheric Pressure is defined at sea-level at 273°K (0°C) and is **1.01325 bar** or 101325 Pa (absolute). The temperature of 293°K (20°C) is also used.

In imperial units the Standard Atmospheric Pressure is 14.696 psi.

- *1 atm = 1.01325 bar = 101.3 kPa = 14.696 psi* (lb_f/in^2)*= 760 mmHg =10.33* mH_2O *= 760 torr = 29.92 in Hg = 1013 mbar = 1.0332* kg_f/cm^2 *= 33.90* ftH_2O

Pressure Head: The height to which liquid can be raised by a given pressure.

Pressure Regulation Valves: Control water pressure and operate by restricting flows. They are used to deliver water from a high pressure to a low-pressure system. The pressure downstream from the valve regulates the amount of flow. Usually, these valves are of the globe design and have a spring-loaded diaphragm that sets the size of the opening.

Pressure Units: Since 1 Pa is a small pressure unit, the unit hectopascal (hPa) is widely used, especially in meteorology. The unit kilopascal (kPa) is commonly used designing technical applications like HVAC systems, piping systems and similar.

- *1 hectopascal = 100 pascal = 1 millibar*
- *1 kilopascal = 1000 pascal*

Some Pressure Levels

- 10 Pa - The pressure at a depth of 1 mm of water
- 1 kPa - Approximately the pressure exerted by a 10 g mass on a 1 cm^2 area
- 10 kPa - The pressure at a depth of 1 m of water, or
  the drop in air pressure when going from sea level to 1000 m elevation
- 10 MPa - A "high pressure" washer forces the water out of the nozzles at this pressure
- 10 GPa - This pressure forms diamonds

Some Alternative Units of Pressure

- *1 bar - 100,000 Pa*
- *1 millibar - 100 Pa*

- *1 atmosphere - 101,325 Pa*
- *1 mm Hg - 133 Pa*
- *1 inch Hg - 3,386 Pa*

A **torr** (torr) is named after Torricelli and is the pressure produced by a column of mercury 1 mm high equals to 1/760th of an atmosphere. 1 atm = 760 torr = 14.696 psi

Pounds per square inch (psi) was common in U.K. but has now been replaced in almost every country except in the U.S. by the SI units. The Normal atmospheric pressure is 14.696 psi, meaning that a column of air on one square inch in area rising from the Earth's atmosphere to space weighs 14.696 pounds.

The **bar** (bar) is common in the industry. One bar is 100,000 Pa, and for most practical purposes can be approximated to one atmosphere even if

1 Bar = 0.9869 atm

There are 1,000 **millibar** (mbar) in one bar, a unit common in meteorology.

1 millibar = 0.001 bar = 0.750 torr = 100 Pa

R

Residual Disinfection/Protection: A required level of disinfectant that remains in treated water to ensure disinfection protection and prevent recontamination throughout the distribution system (i.e., pipes).

Reynolds Number: The Reynolds number is used to determine whether a flow is laminar or turbulent. The Reynolds Number is a non-dimensional parameter defined by the ratio of dynamic pressure (ρu^2) and shearing stress ($\mu u / L$) - and can be expressed as

$$Re = (\rho u^2) / (\mu u / L)$$
$$= \rho u L / \mu$$
$$= u L / v \quad (1)$$

where

Re = Reynolds Number (non-dimensional)
ρ = density (kg/m^3, lb_m/ft^3)
u = velocity (m/s, ft/s)
μ = dynamic viscosity (Ns/m^2, $lb_m/s\ ft$)
L = characteristic length (m, ft)
v = kinematic viscosity (m^2/s, ft^2/s)

Richardson Number: A dimensionless number that expresses the ratio of potential to kinetic energy.

S

Sanitizer: A chemical which disinfects (kills bacteria), kills algae and oxidizes organic matter.

Saybolt Universal Seconds (or SUS, SSU): Saybolt Universal Seconds (or SUS) is used to measure viscosity. The efflux time is Saybolt Universal Seconds (SUS) required for 60 milliliters of a petroleum product to flow through the calibrated orifice of a Saybolt Universal viscometer, under carefully controlled temperature and as prescribed by test method ASTM D 88. This method has largely been replaced by the kinematic viscosity method. Saybolt Universal Seconds is also called the SSU number (Seconds Saybolt Universal) or SSF number (Saybolt Seconds Furol).

Kinematic viscosity versus dynamic or absolute viscosity can be expressed as

$v = 4.63\ \mu / SG$ (3)
where
v = *kinematic viscosity (SSU)*
μ = *dynamic or absolute viscosity (cP)*

Scale: Crust of calcium carbonate, the result of unbalanced pool water. Hard insoluble minerals deposited (usually calcium bicarbonate) which forms on pool and spa surfaces and clog filters, heaters and pumps. Scale is caused by high calcium hardness and/or high pH. You will often find major scale deposits inside a backflow prevention assembly.

Shock: Also known as superchlorination or break point chlorination. Ridding a pool of organic waste through oxidization by the addition of significant quantities of a halogen.

Shock Wave: A shock wave is a strong pressure wave produced by explosions or other phenomena that create violent changes in pressure.

Solder: A fusible alloy used to join metallic parts. Solder for potable water pipes shall be lead-free.

Sound Barrier: The sound barrier is the apparent physical boundary stopping large objects from becoming supersonic.

Specific Gravity: The Specific Gravity - *SG* - is a dimensionless unit defined as the ratio of density of the material to the density of water at a specified temperature. Specific Gravity can be expressed as

$SG = = \rho / \rho_{H2O}$ (3)

where
SG = *specific gravity*
ρ = *density of fluid or substance* (kg/m^3)
ρ_{H2O} = *density of water* (kg/m^3)

It is common to use the density of water at 4^o C (39^oF) as a reference - at this point the density of water is at the highest. Since Specific Weight is dimensionless it has the same value in the metric SI system as in the imperial English system (BG). At the reference point the Specific Gravity has same numerically value as density.

Example - Specific Gravity

If the density of iron is 7850 kg/m^3, 7.85 grams per cubic millimeter, 7.85 kilograms per liter, or 7.85 metric tons per cubic meter - the specific gravity of iron is:

$SG = 7850\ kg/m^3 / 1000\ kg/m^3$

$= \underline{7.85}$

(the density of water is 1000 kg/m^3)

Specific Weight: Specific Weight is defined as weight per unit volume. Weight is a **force**.

- Mass and Weight - the difference! - What is weight and what is mass? An explanation of the difference between weight and mass.

Specific Weight can be expressed as

$\gamma = \rho\, g$ (2)

where

γ = *specific weight (kN/m^3)*

g = acceleration of gravity (m/s^2)

The SI-units of specific weight are kN/m^3. The imperial units are lb/ft^3. The local acceleration *g* is under normal conditions 9.807 m/s^2 in SI-units and 32.174 ft/s^2 in imperial units.

Example - Specific Weight Water

Specific weight for water at 60 °F is 62.4 lb/ft^3 in imperial units and 9.80 kN/m^3 in SI-units.

Example - Specific Weight Some other Materials

Product	Specific Weight - γ	
	Imperial Units (lb/ft^3)	SI Units (kN/m^3)
Ethyl Alcohol	49.3	7.74
Gasoline	42.5	6.67
Glycerin	78.6	12.4
Mercury	847	133
SAE 20 Oil	57	8.95
Seawater	64	10.1
Water	62.4	9.80

Static Head: The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point

Static Pressure: The pressure in a fluid at rest.

Static Pressure and Pressure Head in Fluids: The pressure indicates the normal force per unit area at a given point acting on a given plane. Since there is no shearing stresses present in a fluid at rest - the pressure in a fluid is independent of direction.

For fluids - liquids or gases - at rest the pressure gradient in the vertical direction depends only on the specific weight of the fluid.

How pressure changes with elevation can be expressed as

$dp = - \gamma\, dz$ *(1)*

where
dp *= change in pressure*
dz *= change in height*
γ *= specific weight*

The pressure gradient in vertical direction is negative - the pressure decrease upwards.

Specific Weight: Specific Weight can be expressed as:

$\gamma = \rho\, g$ *(2)*

where
γ *= specific weight*
g *= acceleration of gravity*

In general the specific weight - γ - is constant for fluids. For gases the specific weight - γ - varies with the elevation.

Static Pressure in a Fluid: For an incompressible fluid - as a liquid - the pressure difference between two elevations can be expressed as:

$p_2 - p_1 = - \gamma (z_2 - z_1)$ *(3)*

where
p_2 *= pressure at level 2*
p_1 *= pressure at level 1*
z_2 *= level 2*
z_1 *= level 1*

(3) can be transformed to:

$p_1 - p_2 = \gamma (z_2 - z_1)$ *(4)*
or
$p_1 - p_2 = \gamma h$ *(5)*

where
$h = z_2 - z_1$ *difference in elevation - the depth down from location* z_2*.*
or
$p_1 = \gamma h + p_2$ *(6)*

Static Pressure and Pressure Head in Fluids Continued:

The Pressure Head

(6) can be transformed to:

$h = (p_2 - p_1) / \gamma$ *(6)*

h express **the pressure head** - the height of a column of fluid of specific weight - γ - required to give a pressure difference of ($p_2 - p_1$).

Example - Pressure Head

A pressure difference of 5 psi (lbf/in^2) is equivalent to

5 (lbf/in^2) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 62.4 (lb/ft^3) = 11.6 ft of water

5 (lbf/in^2) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 847 (lb/ft^3) = 0.85 ft of mercury

when specific weight of water is 62.4 (lb/ft^3) and specific weight of mercury is 847 (lb/ft^3).

Streamline - Stream Function: A streamline is the path that an imaginary particle would follow if it was embedded in the flow.

Strouhal Number: A quantity describing oscillating flow mechanisms. **The Strouhal Number** is a dimensionless value useful for analyzing oscillating, unsteady fluid flow dynamics problems.

The Strouhal Number can be expressed as

$St = \omega l / v$ (1)

where

St = Strouhal Number

ω = oscillation frequency

l = characteristic length

v = flow velocity

The Strouhal Number represents a measure of the ratio of inertial forces due to the unsteadiness of the flow or local acceleration to the inertial forces due to changes in velocity from one point to another in the flow field.

The vortices observed behind a stone in a river, or measured behind the obstruction in a vortex flow meter, illustrate these principles.

Stuffing Box: That portion of the pump which houses the packing or mechanical seal.

Submerged: To cover with water or liquid substance.

Supersonic Flow: Flow with speed above the speed of sound, 1,225 km/h at sea level, is said to be supersonic.

Surface Tension: Surface tension is a force within the surface layer of a liquid that causes the layer to behave as an elastic sheet. The cohesive forces between liquid molecules are responsible for the phenomenon known as surface tension. The molecules at the surface do not have other like molecules on all sides of them and consequently they cohere more strongly to those directly associated with them on the surface. This forms a surface "film" which makes it more difficult to move an object through the surface than to move it when it is completely submersed. Surface tension is typically measured in dynes/cm, the force in dynes required to break a film of length 1 cm. Equivalently, it can be stated as surface energy in ergs per square centimeter. Water at 20°C has a surface tension of 72.8 dynes/cm compared to 22.3 for ethyl alcohol and 465 for mercury.

Surface tension is typically measured in *dynes/cm* or *N/m*.

Liquid	Surface Tension	
	N/m	dynes/cm
Ethyl Alcohol	0.0223	22.3
Mercury	0.465	465
Water 20^{o}C	0.0728	72.75
Water 100^{o}C	0.0599	58.9

Surface tension is the energy required to stretch a unit change of a surface area. Surface tension will form a drop of liquid to a sphere since the sphere offers the smallest area for a definite volume.

Surface tension can be defined as

$\sigma = F_s / l$ (1)

where
σ = *surface tension (N/m)*
F_s = *stretching force (N)*
l = *unit length (m)*

Alternative Units

Alternatively, surface tension is typically measured in dynes/cm, which is

- the force in dynes required to break a film of length 1 cm

or as surface energy J/m^2 or alternatively ergs per square centimeter.

- 1 dynes/cm = 0.001 N/m = 0.0000685 lb_f/ft = 0.571 10^{-5} lb_f/in = 0.0022 poundal/ft = 0.00018 poundal/in = 1.0 mN/m = 0.001 J/m^2 = 1.0 erg/cm^2 = 0.00010197 kg_f/m

Common Imperial units used are lb/ft and lb/in.

Water surface tension at different temperatures can be taken from the table below:

Temperature (^{o}C)	Surface Tension - σ - (N/m)
0	0.0757
10	0.0742
20	0.0728
30	0.0712
40	0.0696
50	0.0679
60	0.0662
70	0.0644
80	0.0626
90	0.0608
100	0.0588

Surface Tension of some common Fluids

- benzene : 0.0289 (N/m)

- diethyl ether : 0.0728 (N/m)
- carbon tetrachloride : 0.027 (N/m)
- chloroform : 0.0271 (N/m)
- ethanol : 0.0221 (N/m)
- ethylene glycol : 0.0477 (N/m)
- glycerol : 0.064 (N/m)
- mercury : 0.425 (N/m)
- methanol : 0.0227 (N/m)
- propanol : 0.0237 (N/m)
- toluene : 0.0284 (N/m)
- water at 20°C : 0.0729 (N/m)

Surge Tanks: Surge tanks can be used to control Water Hammer. A limitation of hydropneumatic tanks is that they do not provide much storage to meet peak demands during power outages and you have very limited time to do repairs on equipment.

T

Telemetering Systems: The following are common pressure sensing devices: Helical Sensor, Bourdon Tube, and Bellows Sensor. The most frequent problem that affects a liquid pressure-sensing device is air accumulation at the sensor. A diaphragm element being used as a level sensor would be used in conjunction with a pressure sensor. Devices must often transmit more than one signal. You can use several types of systems including: Polling, Scanning and Multiplexing. Transmitting equipment requires installation where temperature will not exceed 130 degrees F.

Thixotropic Fluids: Shear Thinning Fluids or **Thixotropic Fluids** reduce their viscosity as agitation or pressure is increased at a constant temperature. Ketchup and mayonnaise are examples of thixotropic materials. They appear thick or viscous but are possible to pump quite easily.

Transonic: Flow with speed at velocities just below and above the speed of sound is said to be transonic.

Turbidity: A measure of the cloudiness of water caused by suspended particles.

U

U-Tube Manometer: Pressure measuring devices using liquid columns in vertical or inclined tubes are called manometers. One of the most common is the water filled u-tube manometer used to measure pressure difference in pitot or orifices located in the airflow in air handling or ventilation systems.

V

Valve: A device that opens and closes to regulate the flow of liquids. Faucets, hose bibs, and Ball are examples of valves.

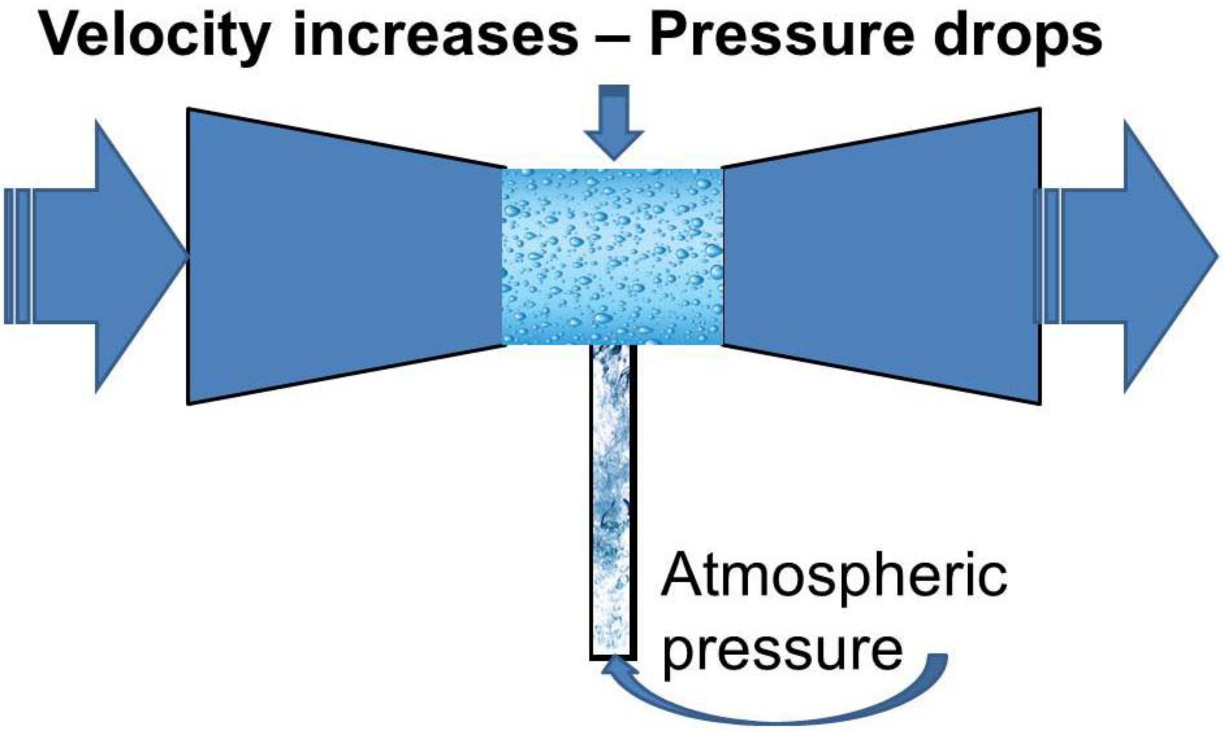
Vane: That portion of an impeller which throws the water toward the volute.

Vapor Pressure: For a particular substance at any given temperature there is a pressure at which the vapor of that substance is in equilibrium with its liquid or solid forms.

Velocity Head: The vertical distance a liquid must fall to acquire the velocity with which it flows through the piping system. For a given quantity of flow, the velocity head will vary indirectly as the pipe diameter varies.

Venturi: A system for speeding the flow of the fluid, by constricting it in a cone-shaped tube. Venturi are used to measure the speed of a fluid, by measuring the pressure changes from one point to another along the venture. A venturi can also be used to inject a liquid or a gas into another liquid. A pump forces the liquid flow through a tube connected to:

- A venturi to increase the speed of the fluid (restriction of the pipe diameter)
- A short piece of tube connected to the gas source
- A second venturi that decrease the speed of the fluid (the pipe diameter increase again)
- After the first venturi the pressure in the pipe is lower, so the gas is sucked in the pipe. Then the mixture enters the second venturi and slow down. At the end of the system a mixture of gas and liquid appears and the pressure rise again to its normal level in the pipe.
- This technique is used for ozone injection in water.



The newest injector design causes complete mixing of injected materials (air, ozone or chemicals), eliminating the need for other in-line mixers. Venturi injectors have no moving parts and are maintenance free. They operate effectively over a wide range of pressures (from 1 to 250 psi) and require only a minimum pressure difference to initiate the vacuum at the suction part. Venturis are often built in thermoplastics (PVC, PE, PVDF), stainless steel or other metals.

The cavitation effect at the injection chamber provides an instantaneous mixing, creating thousands of very tiny bubbles of gas in the liquid. The small bubbles provide and increased gas exposure to the liquid surface area, increasing the effectiveness of the process (i.e. ozonation).

Vibration: A force that is present on construction sites and must be considered. The vibrations caused by backhoes, dump trucks, compactors and traffic on job sites can be substantial.

Viscosity: Informally, viscosity is the quantity that describes a fluid's resistance to flow. Fluids resist the relative motion of immersed objects through them as well as to the motion of layers with differing velocities within them. Formally, viscosity (represented by the symbol η "eta") is the ratio of the shearing stress (F/A) to the velocity gradient ($\Delta v_x/\Delta z$ or dv_x/dz) in a fluid.

$$\eta = \left(\frac{F}{A}\right) \div \left(\frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta z}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad \eta = \left(\frac{F}{A}\right) \div \left(\frac{dv_x}{dz}\right)$$

The more usual form of this relationship, called Newton's equation, states that the resulting shear of a fluid is directly proportional to the force applied and inversely proportional to its viscosity. The similarity to Newton's second law of motion ($F = ma$) should be apparent.

$$\frac{F}{A} = \eta\frac{\Delta v_x}{\Delta z} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{F}{A} = \eta\frac{dv_x}{dz}$$

$$\Updownarrow \qquad\qquad \Updownarrow$$

$$F = m\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} \quad \text{or} \quad F = m\frac{dv}{dt}$$

The SI unit of viscosity is the pascal second [Pa·s], which has no special name. Despite its self-proclaimed title as an international system, the International System of Units has had very little international impact on viscosity. The pascal second is rarely used in scientific and technical publications today. The most common unit of viscosity is the dyne second per square centimeter [dyne·s/cm^2], which is given the name poise [P] after the French physiologist Jean Louis Poiseuille (1799-1869). Ten poise equal one pascal second [Pa·s] making the centipoise [cP] and millipascal second [mPa·s] identical.

1 pascal second = 10 poise = 1,000 millipascal second
1 centipoise = 1 millipascal second

There are actually two quantities that are called viscosity. The quantity defined above is sometimes called dynamic viscosity, absolute viscosity, or simple viscosity to distinguish it from the other quantity, but is usually just called viscosity. The other quantity called kinematic viscosity (represented by the symbol v "nu") is the ratio of the viscosity of a fluid to its density.

$$v = \underline{\eta}$$

ρ

Kinematic viscosity is a measure of the resistive flow of a fluid under the influence of gravity. It is frequently measured using a device called a capillary viscometer -- basically a graduated can with a narrow tube at the bottom. When two fluids of equal volume are placed in identical capillary viscometers and allowed to flow under the influence of gravity, a viscous fluid takes longer than a less viscous fluid to flow through the tube. Capillary viscometers are discussed in more detail later in this section. The SI unit of kinematic viscosity is the square meter per second [m^2/s], which has no special name. This unit is so large that it is rarely used. A more common unit of kinematic viscosity is the square centimeter per second [cm^2/s], which is given the name stoke [St] after the English scientist George Stoke. This unit is also a bit too large and so the most common unit is probably the square millimeter per second [mm^2/s] or centistoke [cSt].

Viscosity and Reference Temperatures: The viscosity of a fluid is highly temperature dependent and for either dynamic or kinematic viscosity to be meaningful, the **reference temperature** must be quoted. In ISO 8217 the reference temperature for a residual fluid is 100°C. For a distillate fluid the reference temperature is 40°C.

- For a liquid - the kinematic viscosity will **decrease** with higher temperature.
- For a gas - the kinematic viscosity will **increase** with higher temperature.

Volute: The spiral-shaped casing surrounding a pump impeller that collects the liquid discharged by the impeller.

Vorticity: Vorticity is defined as the circulation per unit area at a point in the flow field.

Vortex: A vortex is a whirlpool in the water.

W

Water Freezing: The effects of water freezing in storage tanks can be minimized by alternating water levels in the tank.

Water Storage Facility Inspection: During an inspection of your water storage facility, you should inspect the Cathodic protection system including checking the anode's condition and the connections. The concentration of polyphosphates that is used for corrosion control in storage tanks is typically 5 mg/L or less. External corrosion of steel water storage facilities can be reduced with Zinc or aluminum coatings. All storage facilities should be regularly sampled to determine the quality of water that enters and leaves the facility. One tool or piece of measuring equipment is the Jackson turbidimeter, which is a method to measure cloudiness in water.

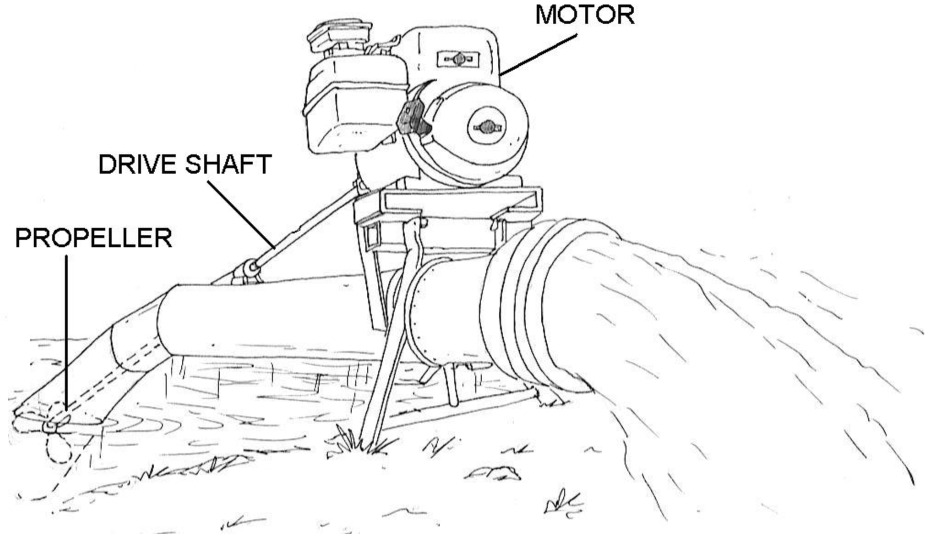
Wave Drag: Wave drag refers to a sudden and very powerful drag that appears on aircrafts flying at high-subsonic speeds.

Water Purveyor: The individuals or organization responsible to help provide, supply, and furnish quality water to a community.

Water Works: All of the pipes, pumps, reservoirs, dams and buildings that make up a water system.

Waterborne Diseases: A disease, caused by a virus, bacterium, protozoan, or other microorganism, capable of being transmitted by water (e.g., typhoid fever, cholera, amoebic dysentery, gastroenteritis).

Weber Number: A dimensionless value useful for analyzing fluid flows where there is an interface between two different fluids. Since the Weber Number represents an index of the inertial force to the surface tension force acting on a fluid element, it can be useful analyzing thin films flows and the formation of droplets and bubbles.



Appendixes and Charts

Density of Common Liquids

The density of some common liquids can be found in the table below:

Liquid	Temperature - *t* - (^{o}C)	Density - *ρ* - (kg/m^3)
Acetic Acid	25	1049
Acetone	25	785
Acetonitrile	20	782
Alcohol, ethyl	25	785
Alcohol, methyl	25	787
Alcohol, propyl	25	780
Ammonia (aqua)	25	823
Aniline	25	1019
Automobile oils	15	880 - 940
Beer (varies)	10	1010
Benzene	25	874
Benzyl	15	1230
Brine	15	1230
Bromine	25	3120
Butyric Acid	20	959
Butane	25	599
n-Butyl Acetate	20	880
n-Butyl Alcohol	20	810
n-Butylhloride	20	886
Caproic acid	25	921
Carbolic acid	15	956
Carbon disulfide	25	1261
Carbon tetrachloride	25	1584
Carene	25	857
Castor oil	25	956
Chloride	25	1560
Chlorobenzene	20	1106
Chloroform	20	1489
Chloroform	25	1465
Citric acid	25	1660
Coconut oil	15	924
Cotton seed oil	15	926
Cresol	25	1024
Creosote	15	1067
Crude oil, 48^{o} API	60^{o}F	790
Crude oil, 40^{o} API	60^{o}F	825
Crude oil, 35.6^{o} API	60^{o}F	847

Crude oil, 32.6^{o} API	60^{o}F	862
Crude oil, California	60^{o}F	915
Crude oil, Mexican	60^{o}F	973
Crude oil, Texas	60^{o}F	873
Cumene	25	860
Cyclohexane	20	779
Cyclopentane	20	745
Decane	25	726
Diesel fuel oil 20 to 60	15	820 - 950
Diethyl ether	20	714
o-Dichlorobenzene	20	1306
Dichloromethane	20	1326
Diethylene glycol	15	1120
Dichloromethane	20	1326
Dimethyl Acetamide	20	942
N,N-Dimethylformamide	20	949
Dimethyl Sulfoxide	20	1100
Dodecane	25	755
Ethane	-89	570
Ether	25	73
Ethylamine	16	681
Ethyl Acetate	20	901
Ethyl Alcohol	20	789
Ethyl Ether	20	713
Ethylene Dichloride	20	1253
Ethylene glycol	25	1097
Fluorine refrigerant R-12	25	1311
Formaldehyde	45	812
Formic acid 10%oncentration	20	1025
Formic acid 80%oncentration	20	1221
Freon - 11	21	1490
Freon - 21	21	1370
Fuel oil	60^{o}F	890
Furan	25	1416
Furforol	25	1155
Gasoline, natural	60^{o}F	711
Gasoline, Vehicle	60^{o}F	737
Gas oils	60^{o}F	890
Glucose	60^{o}F	1350 - 1440
Glycerin	25	1259
Glycerol	25	1126
Heptane	25	676
Hexane	25	655
Hexanol	25	811

Hexene	25	671
Hydrazine	25	795
Iodine	25	4927
Ionene	25	932
Isobutyl Alcohol	20	802
Iso-Octane	20	692
Isopropyl Alcohol	20	785
Isopropyl Myristate	20	853
Kerosene	60°F	817
Linolenic Acid	25	897
Linseed oil	25	929
Methane	-164	465
Methanol	20	791
Methyl Isoamyl Ketone	20	888
Methyl Isobutyl Ketone	20	801
Methyl n-Propyl Ketone	20	808
Methyl t-Butyl Ether	20	741
N-Methylpyrrolidone	20	1030
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	20	805
Milk	15	1020 - 1050
Naphtha	15	665
Naphtha, wood	25	960
Napthalene	25	820
Ocimene	25	798
Octane	15	918
Olive oil	20	800 - 920
Oxygen (liquid)	-183	1140
Palmitic Acid	25	851
Pentane	20	626
Pentane	25	625
Petroleum Ether	20	640
Petrol, natural	60°F	711
Petrol, Vehicle	60°F	737
Phenol	25	1072
Phosgene	0	1378
Phytadiene	25	823
Pinene	25	857
Propane	-40	583
Propane, R-290	25	494
Propanol	25	804
Propylenearbonate	20	1201
Propylene	25	514
Propylene glycol	25	965
Pyridine	25	979

Pyrrole	25	966
Rape seed oil	20	920
Resorcinol	25	1269
Rosin oil	15	980
Sea water	25	1025
Silane	25	718
Silicone oil		760
Sodium Hydroxide (caustic soda)	15	1250
Sorbaldehyde	25	895
Soya bean oil	15	924 - 928
Stearic Acid	25	891
Sulphuric Acid 95%onc.	20	1839
Sugar solution 68 brix	15	1338
Sunflower oil	20	920
Styrene	25	903
Terpinene	25	847
Tetrahydrofuran	20	888
Toluene	20	867
Toluene	25	862
Triethylamine	20	728
Trifluoroacetic Acid	20	1489
Turpentine	25	868
Water - pure	4	1000
Water - sea	77^{o}F	1022
Whale oil	15	925
o-Xylene	20	880

1 kg/m^3 = 0.001 g/cm^3 = 0.0005780 oz/in^3 = 0.16036 oz/gal (Imperial) = 0.1335 oz/gal (U.S.) = 0.0624 lb/ft^3 = 0.000036127 lb/in^3 = 1.6856 lb/yd^3 = 0.010022 lb/gal (Imperial) = 0.008345 lb/gal (U.S) = 0.0007525 ton/yd^3

Dynamic or Absolute Viscosity Units Converting Table

The table below can be used to convert between common dynamic or absolute viscosity units.

Multiply by	Convert to				
Convert from	Poiseuille (Pa s)	Poise (dyne s/ cm^2 = g / cm s)	centiPoise	kg / m h	kg$_f$ s / m^2
Poiseuille (Pa s)	1	10	10^3	3.63 10^3	0.102
Poise (dyne s / cm^2 = g / cm s)	0.1	1	100	360	0.0102
centiPoise	0.001	0.01	1	3.6	0.00012
kg / m h	2.78 10^{-4}	0.00278	0.0278	1	2.83 10^{-5}
kg$_f$ s / m^2	9.81	98.1	9.81 10^3	3.53 10^4	1
lb$_f$ s / inch^2	6.89 10^3	6.89 10^4	6.89 10^6	2.48 10^7	703
lb$_f$ s / ft^2	47.9	479	4.79 10^4	1.72 10^5	0.0488
lb$_f$ h / ft^2	1.72 10^5	1.72 10^6	1.72 10^8	6.21 10^8	1.76 10^4
lb / ft s	1.49	14.9	1.49 10^3	5.36 10^3	0.152
lb / ft h	4.13 10^{-4}	0.00413	0.413	1.49	4.22 10^{-5}

Multiply by	Convert to				
Convert from	lb$_f$ s / inch^2	lb$_f$ s / ft^2	lb$_f$ h / ft^2	lb / ft s	lb / ft h
Poiseuille (Pa s)	1.45 10^{-4}	0.0209	5.8 10^{-6}	0.672	2.42 10^3
Poise (dyne s / cm^2 = g / cm s)	1.45 10^{-5}	0.00209	5.8 10^{-7}	0.0672	242
centiPoise	1.45 10^{-7}	2.9 10^{-5}	5.8 10^{-9}	0.000672	2.42
kg / m h	4.03 10^{-8}	5.8 10^{-6}	1.61 10^{-9}	0.000187	0.672
kg$_f$ s / m^2	0.00142	20.5	5.69 10^{-5}	6.59	2.37 10^4
lb$_f$ s / inch^2	1	144	0.04	4.63 10^3	1.67 10^7
lb$_f$ s / ft^2	0.00694	1	0.000278	32.2	1.16 10^5
lb$_f$ h / ft^2	25	3.6 10^3	1	1.16 10^5	4.17 10^8
lb / ft s	0.000216	0.0311	8.63 10^{-6}	1	3.6 10^3
lb / ft h	6 10-^{8}	1.16 10^5	2.4 10^{-9}	0.000278	1

Friction Loss Chart

The table below can be used to indicate the friction loss - feet of liquid per 100 feet of pipe - in standard schedule 40 steel pipes.

Pipe Size (inches)	Flow Rate		Kinematic Viscosity - SSU					
	(gpm)	(l/s)	31 (Water)	100 (~Cream)	200 (~Vegetable oil)	400 (~SAE 10 oil)	800 (~Tomato juice)	1500 (~SAE 30 oil)
1/2	3	0.19	10.0	25.7	54.4	108.0	218.0	411.0
3/4	3	0.19	2.5	8.5	17.5	35.5	71.0	131.0
	5	0.32	6.3	14.1	29.3	59.0	117.0	219.0
1	3	0.19	0.8	3.2	6.6	13.4	26.6	50.0
	5	0.32	1.9	5.3	11.0	22.4	44.0	83.0
	10	0.63	6.9	11.2	22.4	45.0	89.0	165.0
	15	0.95	14.6	26.0	34.0	67.0	137.0	
	20	1.26	25.1	46	46.0	90.0	180.0	
1 1/4	5	0.32	0.5	1.8	3.7	7.6	14.8	26.0
	10	0.63	1.8	3.6	7.5	14.9	30.0	55.0
	15	0.95	3.7	6.4	11.3	22.4	45.0	84.0
1 1/2	10	0.63	0.8	1.9	4.2	8.1	16.5	31.0
	15	0.95	1.7	2.8	6.2	12.4	25.0	46.0
	20	1.26	2.9	5.3	8.1	16.2	33.0	61.0
	30	1.9	6.3	11.6	12.2	24.3	50.0	91.0
	40	2.5	10.8	19.6	20.8	32.0	65.0	121.0
2	20	1.26	0.9	1.5	3.0	6.0	11.9	22.4
	30	1.9	1.8	3.2	4.4	9.0	17.8	33.0
	40	2.5	3.1	5.8	5.8	11.8	24.0	44.0
	60	3.8	6.6	11.6	13.4	17.8	36.0	67.0
	80	5.0	1.6	3.0	3.2	4.8	9.7	18.3
2 1/2	30	1.9	0.8	1.4	2.2	4.4	8.8	16.6
	40	2.5	1.3	2.5	3.0	5.8	11.8	22.2
	60	3.8	2.7	5.1	5.5	8.8	17.8	34.0
	80	5.0	4.7	8.3	9.7	11.8	24.0	44.0
	100	6.3	7.1	12.2	14.1	14.8	29.0	55.0
3	60	3.8	0.9	1.8	1.8	3.7	7.3	13.8
	100	6.3	2.4	4.4	5.1	6.2	12.1	23.0
	125	7.9	3.6	6.5	7.8	8.1	15.3	29.0
	150	9.5	5.1	9.2	10.4	11.5	18.4	35.0
	175	11.0	6.9	11.7	13.8	15.8	21.4	40.0
	200	12.6	8.9	15.0	17.8	20.3	25.0	46.0
4	80	5.0	0.4	0.8	0.8	1.7	3.3	6.2
	100	6.3	0.6	1.2	1.3	2.1	4.1	7.8
	125	7.9	0.9	1.8	2.1	2.6	5.2	9.8
	150	9.5	1.3	2.4	2.9	3.1	6.2	11.5

	175	11.0	1.8	3.2	4.0	4.0	7.4	13.7
	200	12.6	2.3	4.2	5.1	5.1	8.3	15.5
	250	15.8	3.5	6.0	7.4	8.0	10.2	19.4
6	125	7.9	0.1	0.3	0.3	0.52	1.0	1.9
	150	9.5	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.6	1.2	2.3
	175	11.0	0.2	0.4	0.5	0.7	1.4	2.6
	200	12.6	0.3	0.6	0.7	0.8	1.6	3.0
	250	15.8	0.5	0.8	1.0	1.0	2.1	3.7
	300	18.9	1.1	8.5	10.0	11.6	12.4	23.0
	400	25.2	1.1	1.9	2.3	2.8	3.2	6.0
8	250	15.8	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.7	1.2
	300	18.9	0.3	1.2	1.4	1.5	2.5	4.6
	400	25.2	0.3	0.5	0.6	0.7	1.1	2.0
10	300	18.9	0.1	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.8	1.5
	400	25.2	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.4	0.8

Hazen-Williams Coefficients

Hazen-Williams factor for some common piping materials. Hazen-Williams coefficients are used in the Hazen-Williams equation for friction loss calculation in ducts and pipes. Coefficients for some common materials used in ducts and pipes can be found in the table below:

Material	Hazen-Williams Coefficient - *C* -
Asbestos Cement	140
Brass	130 - 140
Brick sewer	100
Cast-Iron - new unlined (CIP)	130
Cast-Iron 10 years old	107 - 113
Cast-Iron 20 years old	89 - 100
Cast-Iron 30 years old	75 - 90
Cast-Iron 40 years old	64-83
Cast-Iron, asphalt coated	100
Cast-Iron, cement lined	140
Cast-Iron, bituminous lined	140
Cast-Iron, wrought plain	100
Concrete	100 - 140
Copper or Brass	130 - 140
Ductile Iron Pipe (DIP)	140
Fiber	140
Galvanized iron	120
Glass	130
Lead	130 - 140
Plastic	130 - 150
Polyethylene, PE, PEH	150
PVC, CPVC	150
Smooth Pipes	140
Steel new unlined	140 - 150
Steel	
Steel, welded and seamless	100
Steel, interior riveted, no projecting rivets	100
Steel, projecting girth rivets	100
Steel, vitrified, spiral-riveted	90 - 100
Steel, corrugated	60
Tin	130
Vitrified Clays	110
Wood Stave	110 - 120

Pressure Head

A pressure difference of 5 psi (lbf/in^2) is equivalent to

5 (lbf/in^2) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 62.4 (lb/ft^3) = *11.6* *ft of water*

5 (lbf/in^2) 12 (in/ft) 12 (in/ft) / 847 (lb/ft^3) = *0.85* *ft of mercury*

When specific weight of water is 62.4 (lb/ft^3) and specific weight of mercury is 847 (lb/ft^3).

Heads at different velocities can be taken from the table below:

Velocity (ft/sec)	Head Water (ft)
0.5	0.004
1.0	0.016
1.5	0035
2.0	0.062
2.5	0.097
3.0	0.140
3.5	0.190
4.0	0.248
4.5	0.314
5.0	0.389
5.5	0.470
6.0	0.560
6.5	0.657
7.0	0.762
7.5	0.875
8.0	0.995
8.5	1.123
9.0	1.259
9.5	1.403
10.0	1.555
11.0	1.881
12.0	2.239
13.0	2.627
14.0	3.047
15.0	3.498
16.0	3.980
17.0	4.493
18.0	5.037
19.0	5.613
20.0	6.219
21.0	6.856
22.0	7.525

1 ft (foot) = 0.3048 m = 12 in = 0.3333 yd

Thermal Properties of Water

Temperature - *t* - (°C)	Absolute pressure - *p* - (kN/m^2)	Density - *ρ* - (kg/m^3)	Specific volume - *v* - (m^3/kgx10^{-3})	Specific Heat - c_p - (kJ/kgK)	Specific entropy - *e* - (kJ/kgK)
0	0.6	1000	100	4.217	0
5	0.9	1000	100	4.204	0.075
10	1.2	1000	100	4.193	0.150
15	1.7	999	100	4.186	0.223
20	2.3	998	100	4.182	0.296
25	3.2	997	100	4.181	0.367
30	4.3	996	100	4.179	0.438
35	5.6	994	101	4.178	0.505
40	7.7	991	101	4.179	0.581
45	9.6	990	101	4.181	0.637
50	12.5	988	101	4.182	0.707
55	15.7	986	101	4.183	0.767
60	20.0	980	102	4.185	0.832
65	25.0	979	102	4.188	0.893
70	31.3	978	102	4.190	0.966
75	38.6	975	103	4.194	1.016
80	47.5	971	103	4.197	1.076
85	57.8	969	103	4.203	1.134
90	70.0	962	104	4.205	1.192
95	84.5	962	104	4.213	1.250
100	101.33	962	104	4.216	1.307
105	121	955	105	4.226	1.382
110	143	951	105	4.233	1.418
115	169	947	106	4.240	1.473
120	199	943	106	4.240	1.527
125	228	939	106	4.254	1.565
130	270	935	107	4.270	1.635
135	313	931	107	4.280	1.687
140	361	926	108	4.290	1.739
145	416	922	108	4.300	1.790
150	477	918	109	4.310	1.842
155	543	912	110	4.335	1.892
160	618	907	110	4.350	1.942
165	701	902	111	4.364	1.992
170	792	897	111	4.380	2.041
175	890	893	112	4.389	2.090
180	1000	887	113	4.420	2.138
185	1120	882	113	4.444	2.187

190	1260	876	114	4.460	2.236
195	1400	870	115	4.404	2.282
200	1550	863	116	4.497	2.329
220					
225	2550	834	120	4.648	2.569
240					
250	3990	800	125	4.867	2.797
260					
275	5950	756	132	5.202	3.022
300	8600	714	140	5.769	3.256
325	12130	654	153	6.861	3.501
350	16540	575	174	10.10	3.781
360	18680	526	190	14.60	3.921

See a cross-connection?

Viscosity Converting Chart

The viscosity of a fluid is its resistance to shear or flow, and is a measure of the fluid's adhesive/cohesive or frictional properties. This arises because of the internal molecular friction within the fluid producing the frictional drag effect. There are two related measures of fluid viscosity which are known as **dynamic** and **kinematic** viscosity.

Dynamic viscosity is also termed "**absolute viscosity**" and is the tangential force per unit area required to move one horizontal plane with respect to the other at unit velocity when maintained a unit distance apart by the fluid.

Centipoise (CPS) Millipascal (mPas)	Poise (P)	Centistokes (cSt)	Stokes (S)	Saybolt Seconds Universal (SSU)
1	0.01	1	0.01	31
2	0.02	2	0.02	34
4	0.04	4	0.04	38
7	0.07	7	0.07	47
10	0.1	10	0.1	60
15	0.15	15	0.15	80
20	0.2	20	0.2	100
25	0.24	25	0.24	130
30	0.3	30	0.3	160
40	0.4	40	0.4	210
50	0.5	50	0.5	260
60	0.6	60	0.6	320
70	0.7	70	0.7	370
80	0.8	80	0.8	430
90	0.9	90	0.9	480
100	1	100	1	530
120	1.2	120	1.2	580
140	1.4	140	1.4	690
160	1.6	160	1.6	790
180	1.8	180	1.8	900
200	2	200	2	1000
220	2.2	220	2.2	1100
240	2.4	240	2.4	1200
260	2.6	260	2.6	1280
280	2.8	280	2.8	1380
300	3	300	3	1475
320	3.2	320	3.2	1530
340	3.4	340	3.4	1630
360	3.6	360	3.6	1730

380	3.8	380	3.8	1850
400	4	400	4	1950
420	4.2	420	4.2	2050
440	4.4	440	4.4	2160
460	4.6	460	4.6	2270
480	4.8	480	4.8	2380
500	5	500	5	2480
550	5.5	550	5.5	2660
600	6	600	6	2900
700	7	700	7	3380
800	8	800	8	3880
900	9	900	9	4300
1000	10	1000	10	4600
1100	11	1100	11	5200
1200	12	1200	12	5620
1300	13	1300	13	6100
1400	14	1400	14	6480
1500	15	1500	15	7000
1600	16	1600	16	7500
1700	17	1700	17	8000
1800	18	1800	18	8500
1900	19	1900	19	9000
2000	20	2000	20	9400
2100	21	2100	21	9850
2200	22	2200	22	10300
2300	23	2300	23	10750
2400	24	2400	24	11200

Various Flow Section Channels and their Geometric Relationships: Area, wetted perimeter and hydraulic diameter for some common geometric sections like

- rectangular channels
- trapezoidal channels
- triangular channels
- circular channels.

Rectangular Channel

Flow Area

Flow area of a rectangular channel can be expressed as

$A = b\ h$ *(1)*

where

A *= flow area* (m^2, in^2)

b *= width of channel (m, in)*

h *= height of flow (m, in)*

Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a rectangular channel can be expressed as

$P = b + 2\ h$ *(1b)*

where

P *= wetted perimeter (m, in)*

Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a rectangular channel can be expressed as

$R_h = b\ h / (b + 2\ y)$ *(1c)*

where

R_h *= hydraulic radius (m, in)*

Trapezoidal Channel

Flow Area

Flow area of a trapezoidal channel can be expressed as

$A = (a + z\ h)\ h$ *(2)*

where

z *= see figure above (m, in)*

Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a trapezoidal channel can be expressed as

$P = a + 2\ h\ (1 + z^2)^{1/2}$ *(2b)*

Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a trapezoidal channel can be expressed as

$R_h = (a + z\ h)\ h / a + 2\ h\ (1 + z^2)^{1/2}$ *(2c)*

Triangular Channel

Flow Area

Flow area of a triangular channel can be expressed as

$A = z h^2$ *(3)*

where

z = see figure above (m, in)

Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a triangular channel can be expressed as

$P = 2 h (1 + z^2)^{1/2}$ *(3b)*

Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a triangular channel can be expressed as

$R_h = z h / 2 (1 + z^2)^{1/2}$ *(3c)*

Circular Channel

Flow Area

Flow area of a circular channel can be expressed as

$A = D^2/4 (\alpha - \sin(2 \alpha)/2)$ *(4)*

where

D = diameter of channel

$\alpha = \cos^{-1}(1 - h/r)$

Wetted Perimeter

Wetted perimeter of a circular channel can be expressed as

$P = \alpha D$ *(4b)*

Hydraulic Radius

Hydraulic radius of a circular channel can be expressed as

$R_h = D/8 [1 - \sin(2 \alpha) / (2 \alpha)]$ *(4c)*

Velocity Head: Velocity head can be expressed as

$h = v^2/2g$ *(1)*

where

v = velocity (ft, m)

g = acceleration of gravity $(32.174 \text{ ft/s}^2, 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2)$

Heads at different velocities can be taken from the table below:

Velocity - *v* - (ft/sec)	Velocity Head - $v^2/2g$ - (ft Water)
0.5	0.004
1.0	0.016
1.5	0035
2.0	0.062
2.5	0.097
3.0	0.140
3.5	0.190
4.0	0.248
4.5	0.314
5.0	0.389
5.5	0.470
6.0	0.560
6.5	0.657
7.0	0.762
7.5	0.875
8.0	0.995
8.5	1.123
9.0	1.259
9.5	1.403
10.0	1.555
11.0	1.881
12.0	2.239
13.0	2.627
14.0	3.047
15.0	3.498
16.0	3.980
17.0	4.493
18.0	5.037
19.0	5.613
20.0	6.219
21.0	6.856
22.0	7.525

Reynolds Number

Turbulent or laminar flow is determined by the dimensionless **Reynolds Number.**

The Reynolds number is important in analyzing any type of flow when there is substantial velocity gradient (i.e., shear.) It indicates the relative significance of the viscous effect compared to the inertia effect. The Reynolds number is proportional to inertial force divided by viscous force.

A definition of the Reynolds' Number.
The flow is

- **laminar** if Re < 2300
- **transient** if 2300 < Re < 4000
- **turbulent** if 4000 < Re

The table below shows Reynolds Number for one liter of water flowing through pipes of different dimensions:

Pipe Size										
(inches)	1	1 ?	2	3	4	6	8	10	12	18
(mm)	25	40	50	75	100	150	200	250	300	450
Reynolds number with **one (1) liter/min**	835	550	420	280	210	140	105	85	70	46
Reynolds number with **one (1) gal/min**	3800	2500	1900	1270	950	630	475	380	320	210

Linear Motion Formulas

Velocity can be expressed as (velocity = constant):

$v = s / t$ *(1a)*

where
v = *velocity (m/s, ft/s)*
s = *linear displacement (m, ft)*
t = *time (s)*

Velocity can be expressed as (acceleration = constant):
$v = V_0 + a\,t$ *(1b)*

where
V_0 = *linear velocity at time zero (m/s, ft/s)*

Linear displacement can be expressed as (acceleration = constant):
$s = V_0\,t + 1/2\,a\,t^2$ *(1c)*

Combining 1a and 1c to express velocity
$v = (V_0^2 + 2\,a\,s)^{1/2}$ *(1d)*

Velocity can be expressed as (velocity variable)
$v = ds / dt$ *(1f)*

where
ds = *change of displacement (m, ft)*
dt = *change in time (s)*

Acceleration can be expressed as
$a = dv / dt$ *(1g)*

where
dv = *change in velocity (m/s, ft/s)*

Water - Dynamic and Kinematic Viscosity

Dynamic and Kinematic Viscosity of Water in Imperial Units (BG units):

Temperature - *t* - (°F)	Dynamic Viscosity - *μ* - 10^{-5} (lb.s/ft^2)	Kinematic Viscosity - *ν* - 10^{-5} (ft^2/s)
32	3.732	1.924
40	3.228	1.664
50	2.730	1.407
60	2.344	1.210
70	2.034	1.052
80	1.791	0.926
90	1.500	0.823
100	1.423	0.738
120	1.164	0.607
140	0.974	0.511
160	0.832	0.439
180	0.721	0.383
200	0.634	0.339
212	0.589	0.317

Dynamic and Kinematic Viscosity of Water in SI Units:

Temperature - *t* - (°C)	Dynamic Viscosity - *μ* - 10^{-3} (N.s/m^2)	Kinematic Viscosity - *ν* - 10^{-6} (m^2/s)
0	1.787	1.787
5	1.519	1.519
10	1.307	1.307
20	1.002	1.004
30	0.798	0.801
40	0.653	0.658
50	0.547	0.553
60	0.467	0.475
70	0.404	0.413
80	0.355	0.365
90	0.315	0.326
100	0.282	0.294

Water and Speed of Sound

Speed of sound in water at temperatures between 32 - 212°F (0-100°C) - imperial and SI units. Speed of Sound in Water - in imperial units (BG units)

Temperature - *t* - (°F)	Speed of Sound - *c* - (ft/s)
32	4,603
40	4,672
50	4,748
60	4,814
70	4,871
80	4,919
90	4,960
100	4,995
120	5,049
140	5,091
160	5,101
180	5,095
200	5,089
212	5,062

Speed of Sound in Water - in SI units

Temperature - *t* - (°C)	Speed of Sound - *c* - (m/s)
0	1,403
5	1,427
10	1,447
20	1,481
30	1,507
40	1,526
50	1,541
60	1,552
70	1,555
80	1,555
90	1,550
100	1,543

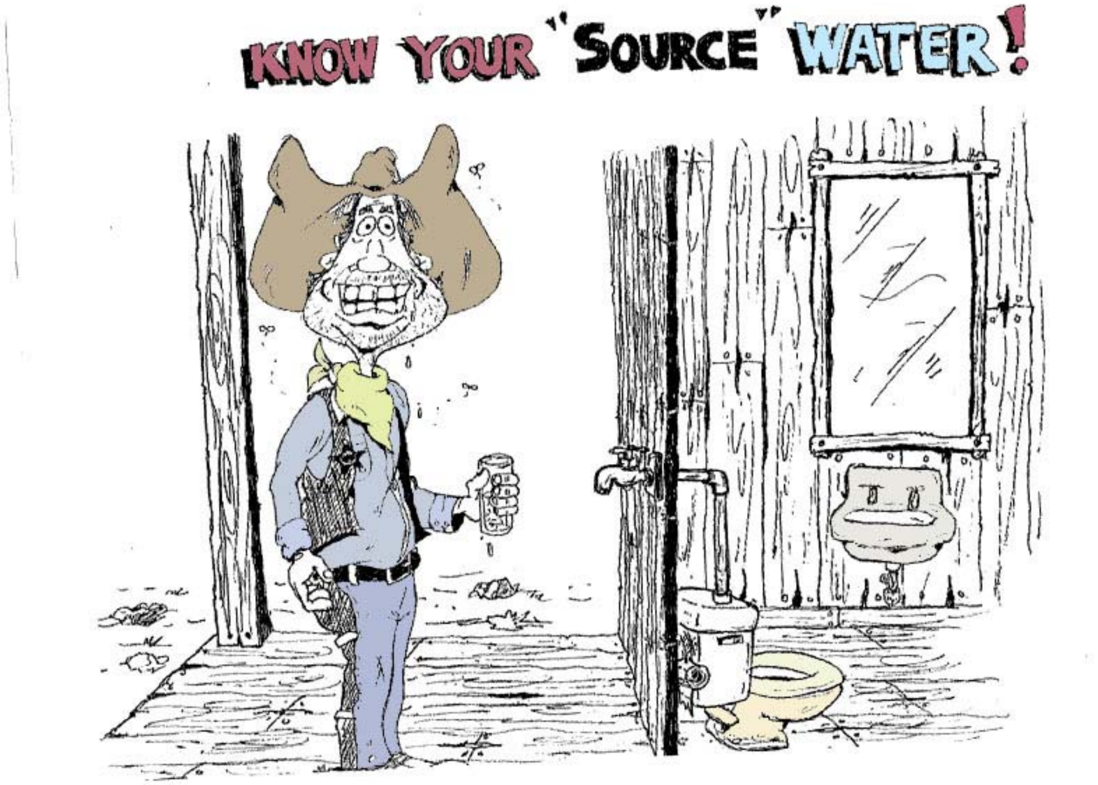
Some Commonly used Thermal Properties for Water

- Density at 4 °C - 1,000 kg/m^3, 62.43 Lbs./Cu.Ft, 8.33 Lbs./Gal., 0.1337 Cu.Ft./Gal.
- Freezing temperature - 0 °C
- Boiling temperature - 100 °C
- Latent heat of melting - 334 kJ/kg
- Latent heat of evaporation - 2,270 kJ/kg
- Critical temperature - 380 - 386 °C
- Critical pressure - 23.520 kN/m^2
- Specific heat capacity water - 4.187 kJ/kgK
- Specific heat capacity ice - 2.108 kJ/kgK
- Specific heat capacity water vapor - 1.996 kJ/kgK
- Thermal expansion from 4 °C to 100 °C - 4.2x10^{-2}

Bulk modulus elasticity - 2,068,500 kN/m^2

References

Benenson, Abram S., editor. 1990. *Control of Communicable Diseases in Man.* 15th ed. Baltimore: Victor Graphics, Inc.
Foster, Laurence, M.D. 1985. **"Waterborne Disease - It's Our Job to Prevent It"**. PIPELINE newsletter, Oregon Health Division, Drinking Water Program, Portland, Oregon 1(4): 1-3.
Foster, Laurence, M.D. 1990. "Waterborne *Disease," Methods for the Investigation and Prevention of Waterborne Disease Outbreaks.* Ed. Gunther F.Craun. Cincinnati: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
ACGIH [1991]. Documentation of the threshold limit values and biological exposure indices. 6th ed. Cincinnati, OH: American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.
ACGIH [1994]. 1994-1995 Threshold limit values for chemical substances and physical agents and biological exposure indices. Cincinnati, OH: American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.
ATS [1987]. Standardization of spirometry -- 1987 update. American Thoracic Society. Am Rev Respir Dis
CFR. Code of Federal regulations. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, Office of the Federal Register.
Clayton G, Clayton F [1981-1982]. Patty's industrial hygiene and toxicology. 3rd rev. ed. New York, NY: John Wiley & Sons.
DOT [1993]. 1993 Emergency response guidebook, guide 20. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation, Office of Hazardous Materials Transportation, Research and Special Programs Administration.
Forsberg K, Mansdorf SZ [1993]. Quick selection guide to chemical protective clothing. New York, NY: Van Nostrand Reinhold.
Genium [1992]. Material safety data sheet No. 53. Schenectady, NY: Genium Publishing Corporation.
Grant WM [1986]. Toxicology of the eye. 3rd ed. Springfield, IL: Charles C Thomas.
Hathaway GJ, Proctor NH, Hughes JP, and Fischman ML [1991]. Proctor and Hughes' chemical hazards of the workplace. 3rd ed. New York, NY: Van Nostrand Reinhold.
Lewis RJ, ed. [1993]. Lewis condensed chemical dictionary. 12th ed. New York, NY: Van Nostrand Reinhold Company.
Lide DR [1993]. CRC handbook of chemistry and physics. 73rd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, Inc.
Mickelsen RL, Hall RC [1987]. A breakthrough time comparison of nitrile and neoprene glove materials produced by different glove manufacturers. Am Ind Hyg Assoc J 941-947
Mickelsen RL, Hall RC, Chern RT, Myers JR [1991]. Evaluation of a simple weight-loss method for determining the permeation of organic liquids through rubber films. Am Ind Hyg Assoc J 445-447
NFPA [1986]. Fire protection guide on hazardous materials. 9th ed. Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association.
NIOSH [1987a]. NIOSH guide to industrial respiratory protection. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 87-116.
NIOSH [1987b]. NIOSH respirator decision logic. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 87-108.
NIOSH [1992]. Recommendations for occupational safety and health: Compendium of policy documents and statements. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 92-100.
NIOSH [1994]. NIOSH manual of analytical methods. 4th ed. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 94-113.
NIOSH [1995]. Registry of toxic effects of chemical substances: Chlorine. Cincinnati, OH: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Division of Standards Development and Technology Transfer, Technical Information Branch.
NJDH [1992]. Hazardous substance fact sheet: Chlorine. Trenton, NJ: New Jersey Department of Health.
NLM [1995]. Hazardous substances data bank: Chlorine. Bethesda, MD: National Library of Medicine.
Water Treatment, Second Edition
Principles and Practices of Water Supply Operations,C.D. Morelli, ed. 1996.
Basic Principles of Water Treatment, Littleton, Colorado. Tall Oaks Publishing Inc.



FILTRATION: Is the process of passing water through materials with very small holes to strain out particles. Most conventional water treatment plants used filters composed of gravel, sand, and anthracite. These materials settle into a compact mass that forms very small holes. Particles are filtered out as treated water passes through these holes. These holes are small enough to remove microorganisms including algae, bacteria, and protozoans, but not viruses. Viruses are eliminated from drinking water through the process of disinfection using chlorine.

Common Water Treatment and Distribution Chemicals

Chemical Name	Common Name	Chemical Formula
Aluminum hydroxide		$Al(OH)_3$
Aluminum sulfate	Alum, liquid	$AL_2(SO_4)3 . 14(H_2O)$
Ammonia		NH_3
Ammonium		NH_4
Bentonitic clay	Bentonite	
Calcium bicarbonate		$Ca(HCO_3)2$
Calcium carbonate	Limestone	$CaCO_3$
Calcium chloride		$CaCl_2$
Calcium Hypochlorite	HTH	$Ca(OCl)_2 . 4H_2O$
Calcium hydroxide	Slaked Lime	$Ca(OH)_2$
Calcium oxide	Unslaked (Quicklime)	CaO
Calcium sulfate	Gypsum	$CaSO_4$
Carbon	Activated Carbon	C
Carbon dioxide		CO_2
Carbonic acid		$H2CO_3$
Chlorine gas		Cl_2
Chlorine Dioxide		ClO_2
Copper sulfate	Blue vitriol	$CuSO_4 . 5H_2O$
Dichloramine		$NHCl_2$
Ferric chloride	Iron chloride	$FeCl_3$
Ferric hydroxide		$Fe(OH)_3$
Ferric sulfate	Iron sulfate	$Fe_2(SO_4)_3$
Ferrous bicarbonate		$Fe(HCO_3)_2$
Ferrous hydroxide		$Fe(OH)_3$
Ferrous sulfate	Copperas	$FeSO_4.7H_20$
Hydrofluorsilicic acid		H_2SiF_6
Hydrochloric acid	Muriatic acid	HCl
Hydrogen sulfide		H_2S
Hypochlorus acid		HOCL
Magnesium bicarbonate		$Mg(HCO_3)2$
Magnesium carbonate		$MgCO_3$
Magnesium chloride		$MgCl_2$
Magnesium hydroxide		$Mg(OH)_2$
Magnesium dioxide		MgO_2
Manganous bicarbonate		$Mn(HCO_3)2$
Manganous sulfate		$MnSO_4$
Monochloramine		NH_2Cl
Potassium bicarbonate		$KHCO_3$
Potassium permanganate		$KMnO_4$

Chemical Name	Common Name	Chemical Formula
Sodium carbonate	Soda ash	Na_2CO_3
Sodium chloride	Salt	$NaCl$
Sodium chlorite		$NaClO_2$
Sodium fluoride		NaF
Sodium fluorsilicate		Na_2SiF_6
Sodium hydroxide	Lye	$NaOH$
Sodium hypochlorite		$NaOCl$
Sodium Metaphosphate	Hexametaphosphate	$NaPO_3$
Sodium phosphate	Disodium phosphate	Na_3PO_4
Sodium sulfate		Na_2SO_4
Sulfuric acid		H_2SO_4

A. **Fluoride.** Many communities add fluoride to their drinking water to promote dental health. Each community makes its own decision about whether or not to add fluoride. The EPA has set an enforceable drinking water standard for fluoride of 4 mg/L (some people who drink water containing fluoride in excess of this level over many years could develop bone disease, including pain and tenderness of the bones). The EPA has also set a secondary fluoride standard of 2 mg/L to protect against dental fluorosis.

Number	Element	Valence
1	Hydrogen	(-1), +1
2	Helium	0
3	Lithium	+1
4	Beryllium	+2
5	Boron	-3, +3
6	Carbon	(+2), +4
7	Nitrogen	-3, -2, -1, (+1), +2, +3, +4, +5
8	Oxygen	-2
9	Fluorine	-1, (+1)
10	Neon	0
11	Sodium	+1
12	Magnesium	+2
13	Aluminum	+3
14	Silicon	-4, (+2), +4
15	Phosphorus	-3, +1, +3, +5
16	Sulfur	-2, +2, +4, +6
17	Chlorine	-1, +1, (+2), +3, (+4), +5, +7
18	Argon	0
19	Potassium	+1
20	Calcium	+2
21	Scandium	+3
22	Titanium	+2, +3, +4
23	Vanadium	+2, +3, +4, +5
24	Chromium	+2, +3, +6
25	Manganese	+2, (+3), +4, (+6), +7
26	Iron	+2, +3, (+4), (+6)
27	Cobalt	+2, +3, (+4)
28	Nickel	(+1), +2, (+3), (+4)
29	Copper	+1, +2, (+3)
30	Zinc	+2
31	Gallium	(+2). +3
32	Germanium	-4, +2, +4
33	Arsenic	-3, (+2), +3, +5
34	Selenium	-2, (+2), +4, +6
35	Bromine	-1, +1, (+3), (+4), +5
36	Krypton	0
37	Rubidium	+1
38	Strontium	+2
39	Yttrium	+3
40	Zirconium	(+2), (+3), +4
41	Niobium	(+2), +3, (+4), +5
42	Molybdenum	(+2), +3, (+4), (+5), +6
43	Technetium	+6
44	Rubidium	(+2), +3, +4, (+6), (+7), +8
45	Rhodium	(+2), (+3), +4, (+6)
46	Palladium	+2, +4, (+6)
47	Silver	+1, (+2), (+3)
48	Cadmium	(+1), +2
49	Indium	(+1), (+2), +3
50	Tin	+2, +4
51	Antimony	-3, +3, (+4), +5

52	Tellurium	-2, (+2), +4, +6
53	Iodine	-1, +1, (+3), (+4), +5, +7
54	Xenon	0
55	Cesium	+1
56	Barium	+2
57	Lanthanum	+3
58	Cerium	+3, +4
59	Praseodymium	+3
60	Neodymium	+3, +4
61	Promethium	+3
62	Samarium	(+2), +3
63	Europium	(+2), +3
64	Gadolinium	+3
65	Terbium	+3, +4
66	Dysprosium	+3
67	Holmium	+3
68	Erbium	+3
69	Thulium	(+2), +3
70	Ytterbium	(+2), +3
71	Lutetium	+3
72	Hafnium	+4
73	Tantalum	(+3), (+4), +5
74	Tungsten	(+2), (+3), (+4), (+5), +6
75	Rhenium	(-1), (+1), +2, (+3), +4, (+5), +6, +7
76	Osmium	(+2), +3, +4, +6, +8
77	Iridium	(+1), (+2), +3, +4, +6
78	Platinum	(+1), +2, (+3), +4, +6
79	Gold	+1, (+2), +3
80	Mercury	+1, +2
81	Thallium	+1, (+2), +3
82	Lead	+2, +4
83	Bismuth	(-3), (+2), +3, (+4), (+5)
84	Polonium	(-2), +2, +4, (+6)
85	Astatine	?
86	Radon	0
87	Francium	?
88	Radium	+2
89	Actinium	+3
90	Thorium	+4
91	Protactinium	+5
92	Uranium	(+2), +3, +4, (+5), +6

B. Reference: *Lange's Handbook of Chemistry, 8th Ed.*, Norbert A. Lange (Ed.), Handbook Publishers, Inc. 1952.

Common Used Products	Chemical Name
acetone	dimethyl ketone
acid of sugar	oxalic acid
alcohol, grain	ethyl alcohol
alcohol, wood	methyl alcohol
alum	aluminum potassium sulfate
alumina	aluminum oxide
antichlor	sodium thiosulfate
aqua ammonia	aqueous solution of ammonium hydroxide
aqua regia	nitrohydrochloric acid
aqua fortis	nitric acid
aromatic spirit of ammonia	ammonia in alcohol
asbestos	magnesium silicate
aspirin	acetylsalicylic acid
baking soda	sodium bicarbonate
banana oil (artificial)	isoamyl acetate
benzol	benzene
bichloride of mercury	mercuric chloride
black copper oxide	cupric oxide
black lead	graphite (carbon)
bleaching powder	chlorinated lime
blue vitriol	copper sulfate
bluestone	copper sulfate
borax	sodium borate
brimstone	sulfur
brine	aqueous sodium chloride solution
butter of antimony	antimony trichloride
butter of tin	anhydrous stannic chloride
calomel	mercury chloride
carbolic acid	phenol
carbonic acid gas	carbon dioxide
caustic potash	potassium hydroxide
caustic soda	sodium hydroxide
chalk	calcium carbonate
Chile saltpeter	sodium nitrate
chrome, alum	chromic potassium sulfate
chrome, yellow	lead (VI) chromate
copperas	ferrous sulfate
cream of tartar	potassium bitartrate
crocus powder	ferric oxide
emery powder	impure aluminum oxide
Epsom salts	magnesium sulfate
ethanol	ethyl alcohol
fluorspar	natural calcium fluoride
formalin	aqueous formaldehyde solution
French chalk	natural magnesium silicate
galena	natural lead sulfide
Glauber's salt	sodium sulfate
gypsum	natural calcium sulfate
hydrocyanic acid	hydrogen cynanide
hypo (photography)	sodium thiosulfate solution
lime	calcium oxide

Common Used Products	**Chemical Name**
limewater	aqueous solution of calcium hydroxide
lunar caustic	silver nitrate
magnesia	magnesium oxide
mercury oxide, black	mercurous oxide
methanol	methyl alcohol
methylated spirits	methyl alcohol
muriatic acid	hydrochloric acid
oil of vitriol	sulfuric acid
oil of wintergreen (artificial)	methyl salicylate
Paris green	copper acetoarsenite
Paris white	powdered calcium carbonate
pear oil (artificial)	isoamyl acetate
pearl ash	potassium carbonate
plaster of Paris	calcium sulfate
plumbago	graphite
potash	potassium carbonate
potassa	potassium hydroxide
Prussic acid	hydrogen cyanide
pyro	tetrasodium pyrophosphate
quicklime	calcium oxide
quicksilver	mercury
red lead	lead tetraoxide
Rochelle salt	potassium sodium tartrate
rouge, jeweler's	ferric oxide
rubbing alcohol	isopropyl alcohol
sal ammoniac	ammonium chloride
sal soda	sodium carbonate
salt, table	sodium chloride
salt of lemon	potassium binoxalate
salt of tartar	potassium carbonate
saltpeter	potassium nitrate
silica	silicon dioxide
soda ash	sodium carbonate
soda lye	sodium hydroxide
soluble glass	sodium silicate
spirit of hartshorn	ammonium hydroxide solution
sugar, table	sucrose
talc or talcum	magnesium silicate
vinegar	impure dilute acetic acid
vitamin C	ascorbic acid
washing soda	sodium carbonate
water glass	sodium silicate

Math Conversion Factors

1 PSI = 2.31 Feet of Water
1 Foot of Water = .433 PSI
1.13 Feet of Water = 1 Inch of Mercury
454 Grams = 1 Pound
1 Gallon of Water = 8.34 lbs/gallon
1 mg/L = 1 PPM
17.1 mg/L = 1 Grain/Gallon
1% = 10,000 mg/L
694 Gallons per Minute = MGD
1.55 Cubic Feet per Second = 1 MGD
60 Seconds = 1 Minute
1440 Minutes = 1 Day
.746 kW = 1 Horsepower

LENGTH
12 Inches = 1 Foot
3 Feet = 1 Yard
5,280 Feet = 1 Mile

AREA
144 Square Inches = 1 Square Foot
43,560 Square Feet = 1 Acre

VOLUME
1000 Milliliters = 1 Liter
3.785 Liters = 1 Gallon
231 Cubic Inches = 1 Gallon
7.48 Gallons = 1 Cubic Foot of Water
62.38 Pounds = 1 Cubic Foot of Water

Dimensions

SQUARE: Area (sq. ft.) = Length X Width
Volume (cu.ft) = Length (ft) X Width (ft) X Height (ft)

CIRCLE: Area (sq. ft.) = 3.14 X Radius (ft) X Radius (ft)

CYLINDER: Volume (Cu. Ft.) = 3.14 X Radius (ft) X Radius (ft) X Depth (ft)

SPHERE: $\frac{(3.14)\ (\text{Diameter})^3}{(6)}$ Circumference = 3.14 X Diameter

General

POUNDS PER DAY AKA SOLIDS APPLIED =
Concentration (mg/L) X Flow (MG) X 8.34

Percent Efficiency = $\frac{\text{In} - \text{Out}}{\text{In}} \times 100$

TEMPERATURE: $^0F = (^0C \times 9/5) + 32$
$^0C = (^0F - 32) \times 5/9$

CONCENTRATION: Conc. (A) X Volume (A) = Conc. (B) X Volume (B)

FLOW RATE (Q): Q = A X V (Quantity = Area X Velocity)

FLOW RATE (gpm): $$\text{Flow Rate (gpm)} = \frac{2.83\ (\text{Diameter, in})^2\ (\text{Distance, in})}{\text{Height, in}}$$

$$\text{ACTUAL LEAKAGE} = \frac{\text{Leak Rate (GPD)}}{\text{Length (mi.)} \times \text{Diameter (in)}}$$

$$\text{VELOCITY} = \frac{\text{Distance (ft)}}{\text{Time (Sec)}}$$

$$\text{WATER HORSEPOWER} = \frac{\text{Flow (gpm)} \times \text{Head (ft)}}{3960}$$

$$\text{BRAKE HORSEPOWER} = \frac{\text{Flow (gpm)} \times \text{Head (ft)}}{3960 \times \text{Pump Efficiency}}$$

$$\text{MOTOR HORSEPOWER} = \frac{\text{Flow (gpm)} \times \text{Head (ft)}}{3960 \times \text{Pump Eff.} \times \text{Motor Eff.}}$$

$$\text{MEAN OR AVERAGE} = \frac{\text{Sum of the Values}}{\text{Number of Values}}$$

TOTAL HEAD (ft) = Suction Lift (ft) X Discharge Head (ft)

$$\underset{\text{(gal/min/sq.ft)}}{\text{SURFACE LOADING RATE}} = \frac{\text{Flow Rate (gpm)}}{\text{Surface Area (sq. ft)}}$$

$$\text{MIXTURE STRENGTH (\%)} = \frac{(\text{Volume 1, gal})(\text{Strength 1, \%}) + (\text{Volume 2, gal})(\text{Strength 2,\%})}{(\text{Volume 1, gal}) + (\text{Volume 2, gal})}$$

$$\underset{(\%)}{\text{FLUORIDE ION PURITY}} = \frac{(\text{Molecular weight of Fluoride})\ (100\%)}{\text{Molecular weight of Chemical}}$$

$$\text{INJURY FREQUENCY RATE} = \frac{(\text{Number of Injuries})\ 1{,}000{,}000}{\text{Number of hours worked per year}}$$

$$\text{DETENTION TIME (hrs)} = \frac{\text{Volume of Basin (gals)} \times 24\ \text{hrs}}{\text{Flow (GPD)}}$$

$$\text{BY-PASS WATER (gpd)} = \frac{\text{Total Flow (GPD)} \times \text{Plant Effluent Hardness (gpg)}}{\text{Filtered Hardness (gpg)}}$$

Hardness

$$\text{HARDNESS (mg/L as CaCO}_3\text{)} = \frac{\text{A (mls of titrant) X 1000}}{\text{Mls of Sample}}$$

$$\text{Ca HARDNESS as mg/L CaCo}_3 = 2.5 \text{ X (Ca, mg/L)}$$

$$\text{Mg HARDNESS as mg/L CaCo}_3 = 4.12 \text{ (Mg, mg/L)}$$

$$\underset{\text{(mg/L)}}{\text{ALKALINITY-TOTAL}} = \frac{\text{Mls of Titrant X Normality X 50,000}}{\text{Mls of Sample}}$$

EXCHANGE CAPACITY (grains) = Resin Volume (cu. ft.) X Removal Capacity

$$\text{HARDNESS TO GRAIN/GALLON} = \frac{\text{Hardness (mg/L) X gr./gal}}{\text{17.1 mg/L}}$$

$$\text{LANGELIER INDEX} = \text{pH} - \text{pH}_s$$

Chemical Addition

$$\text{CHEMICAL FEED RATE} = \frac{\text{Chemical Feed (ml/min)}}{\text{(gpm) 3785 ml/gal}}$$

CHLORINE DOSE (mg/L) = Chlorine Demand (mg/L) + Chlorine Residual (mg/L)

$$\text{POLYMER \%} = \frac{\text{Dry Polymer (lbs.)}}{\text{Dry Polymer (lbs.) + Water (lbs.)}}$$

$$\underset{\text{(lbs./MG)}}{\text{DESIRED PAC}} = \frac{\text{Volume (MG) X Dose (mg/L) X 8.34}}{\text{1 MG}}$$

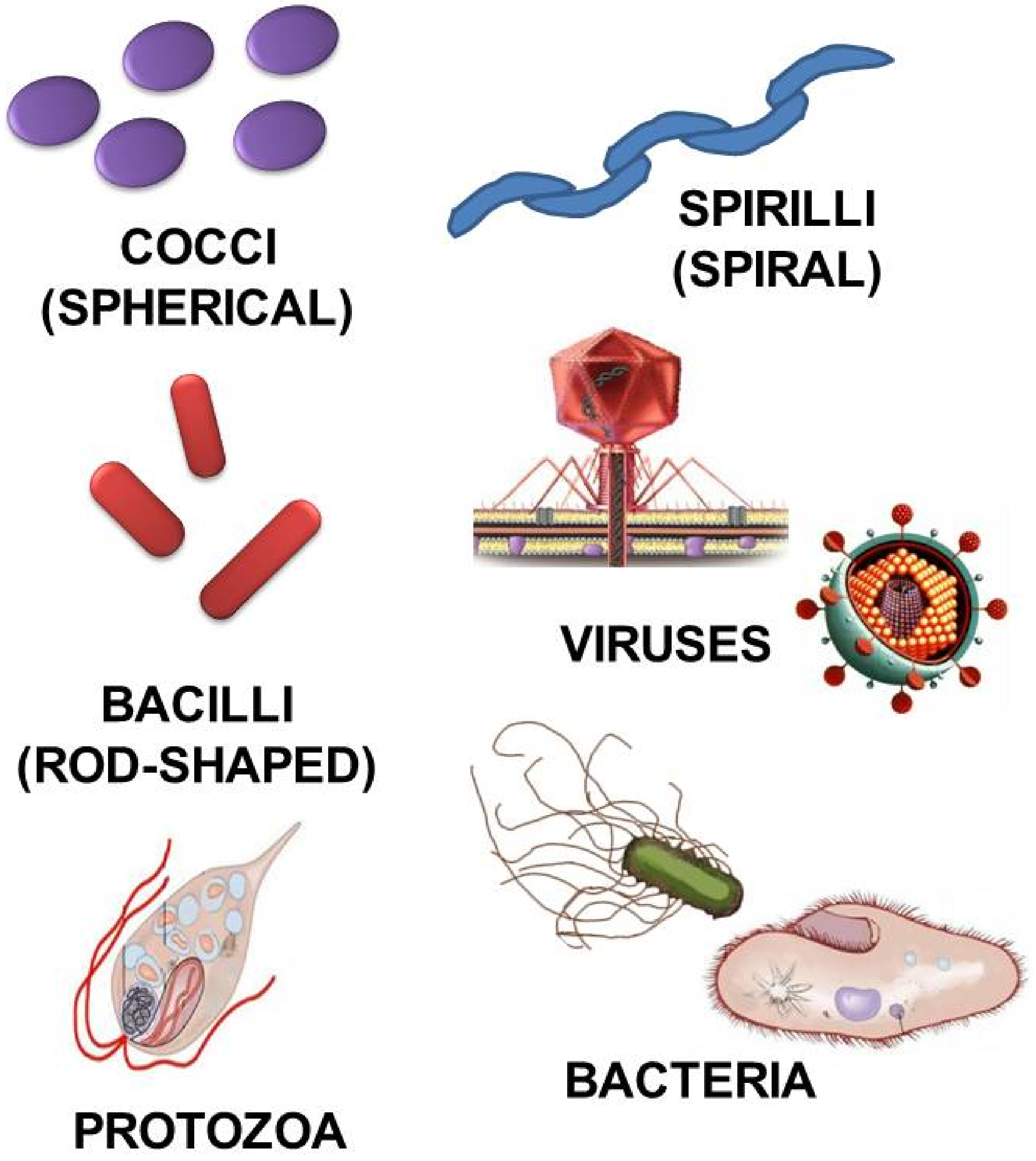
$$\text{PAC (lbs./gal)} = \frac{\text{PAC (mg/L) X 3.785 (1/gallon)}}{\text{1000 (mg/g) X 454 (g/lb.)}}$$

Filtration

$$\underset{\text{(gpm/sq. ft)}}{\text{FILTRATION RATE}} = \frac{\text{Flow Rate (gpm)}}{\text{Surface Area (sq. ft.)}}$$

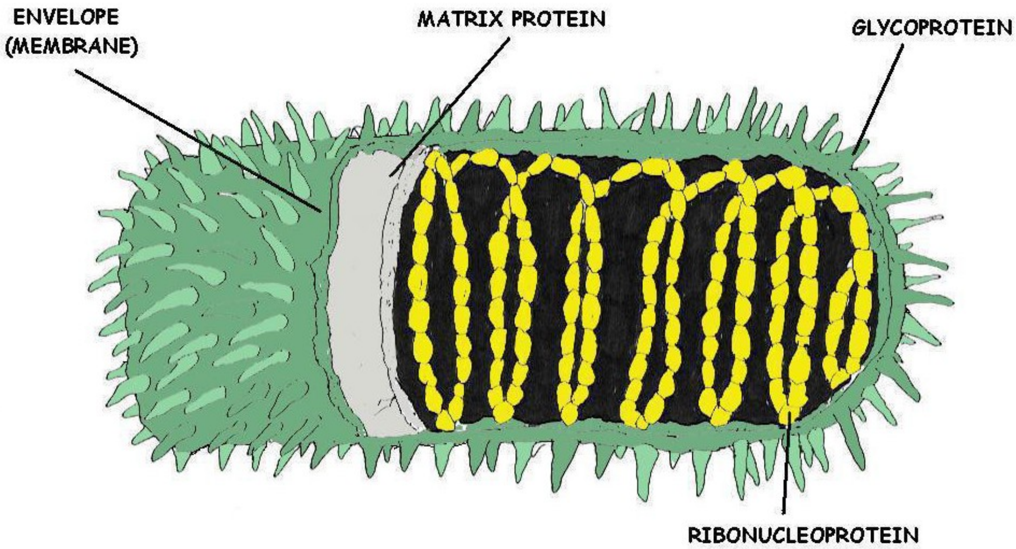
$$\underset{\text{(gpm)}}{\text{BACKWASH PUMPING RATE}} = \text{Filter Area (sq. ft) X Backwash Rate (gpm/sq. ft)}$$

Microorganism Appendix



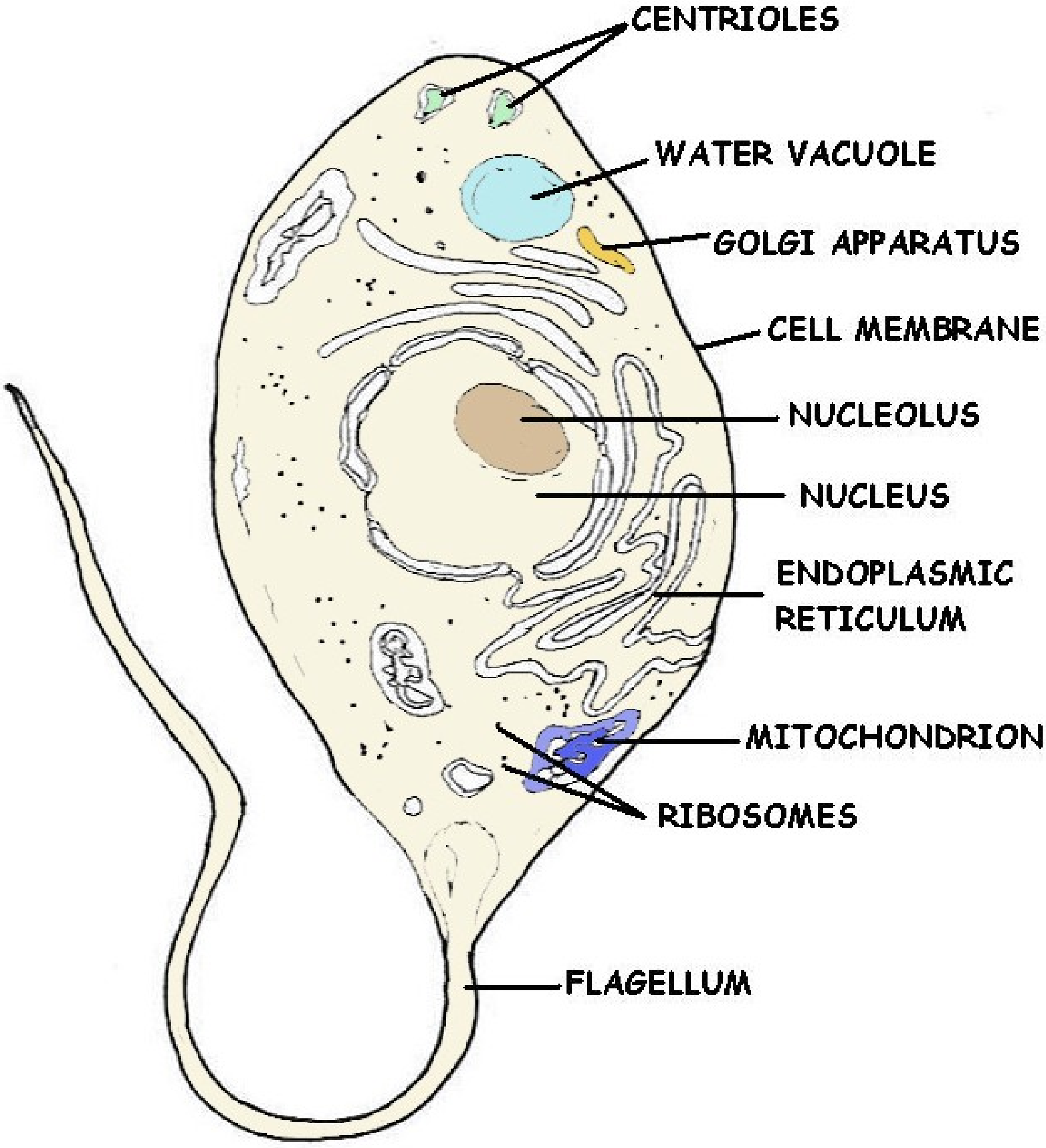
BACTERIA TYPES

This section will give a close-up and short explanation of the major microorganisms found in water and in wastewater.



VIRUS

Protozoa



PROTOZOAN CELL

Protozoa are around 10–50 micrometer, but can grow up to 1 mm and can easily be seen under a microscope. Protozoa exist throughout aqueous environments and soil. Protozoa occupy a range of trophic levels. As predators, they prey upon unicellular or filamentous algae, bacteria, and microfungi.

Protozoa play a role both as herbivores and as consumers in the decomposer link of the food chain. Protozoa also play a vital role in controlling bacteria populations and biomass. As components of the micro- and meiofauna, protozoa are an important food source for microinvertebrates. Thus, the ecological role of protozoa in the transfer of bacterial and algal production to successive trophic levels is important. Protozoa such as the malaria parasites (Plasmodium spp.), trypanosomes and leishmania are also important as parasites and symbionts of multicellular animals.

Most protozoa exist in 5 stages of life which are in the form of trophozoites and cysts. As cysts, protozoa can survive harsh conditions, such as exposure to extreme temperatures and harmful chemicals, or long periods without access to nutrients, water, or oxygen for a period of time. Being a cyst enables parasitic species to survive outside of the host, and allows their transmission from one host to another. When protozoa are in the form of trophozoites (Greek, tropho=to nourish), they actively feed and grow. The process by which the protozoa takes its cyst form is called encystation, while the process of transforming back into trophozoite is called excystation.

Protozoa can reproduce by binary fission or multiple fission. Some protozoa reproduce sexually, some asexually, and some both (e.g. Coccidia). An individual protozoan is hermaphroditic.

Classification

Protozoa were commonly grouped in the kingdom of Protista together with the plant-like algae and fungus-like water molds and slime molds. In the 21st-century systematics, protozoans, along with ciliates, mastigophorans, and apicomplexans, are arranged as animal-like protists. However, protozoans are neither Animalia nor Metazoa (with the possible exception of the enigmatic, moldy Myxozoa).

Sub-groups

Protozoa have traditionally been divided on the basis of their means of locomotion, although this is no longer believed to represent genuine relationships:

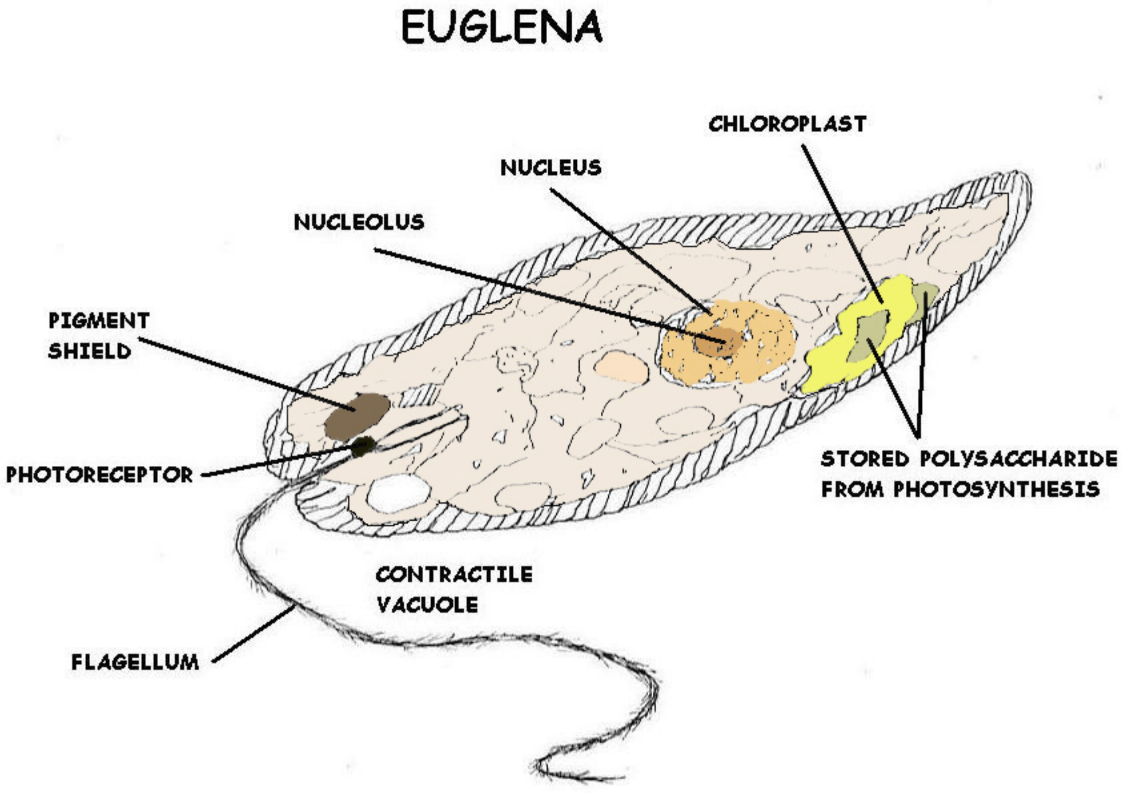
* Flagellates (e.g. Giardia lambia)
* Amoeboids (e.g. Entamoeba histolytica)
* Sporozoans (e.g. Plasmodium knowlesi)
* Apicomplexa
* Myxozoa
* Microsporidia
* Ciliates (e.g. Balantidium coli)

There are many ways that infectious diseases can spread. Pathogens usually have specific routes by which they are transmitted, and these routes may depend on the type of cells and tissue that a particular agent targets. For example, because cold viruses infect the respiratory tract, they are dispersed into the air via coughing and sneezing.

Once in the air, the viruses can infect another person who is unlucky enough to inhale air containing the virus particles.

Agents vary greatly in their stability in the environment. Some viruses may survive for only a few minutes outside of a host, while some spore-forming bacteria are extremely durable and may survive in a dormant state for a decade or more.

Protozoa Section



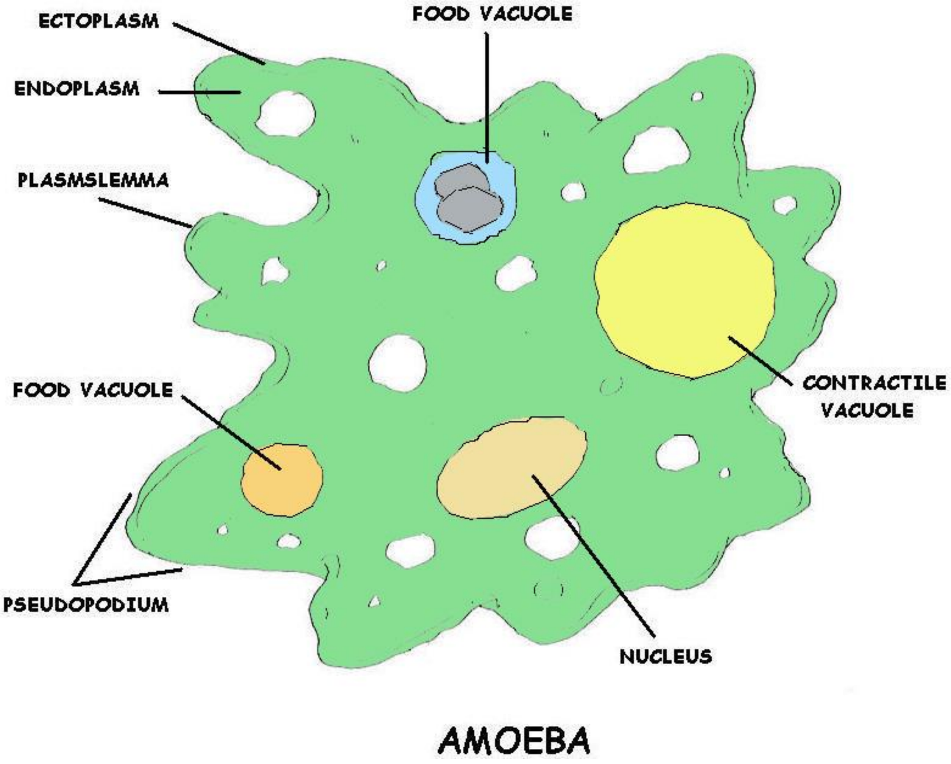
The diverse assemblage of organisms that carry out all of their life functions within the confines of a single, complex eukaryotic cell are called protozoa.

Paramecium, Euglena, and Amoeba are well-known examples of these major groups of organisms. Some protozoa are more closely related to animals, others to plants, and still others are relatively unique. Although it is not appropriate to group them together into a single taxonomic category, the research tools used to study any unicellular organism are usually the same, and the field of protozoology has been created to carry out this research. The unicellular photosynthetic protozoa are sometimes also called algae and are addressed elsewhere. This report considers the status of our knowledge of heterotrophic protozoa (protozoa that cannot produce their own food).

Free-living Protozoa

Protozoans are found in all moist habitats within the United States, but we know little about their specific geographic distribution. Because of their small size, production of resistant cysts, and ease of distribution from one place to another, many species appear to be cosmopolitan and may be collected in similar microhabitats worldwide (Cairns and Ruthven 1972). Other species may have relatively narrow limits to their distribution.

Marine ciliates inhabit interstices of sediment and beach sands, surfaces, deep sea and cold Antarctic environments, planktonic habitats, and the algal mats and detritus of estuaries and wetlands.



Amoeba proteus*, pseudopods slowly engulf the small desmid *Staurastrum.

Amoebas

Amoebas (Phylum Rhizopoda) are unicellular protists that are able to change their shape constantly. Each species has its own distinct repertoire of shapes.

How does an amoeba locomote?
Amoebas locomote by way of cytoplasmic movement. (cytoplasm is the cell content around the nucleus of the cell) The amoeba forms pseudopods (false feet) with which they 'flow' over a surface. The cytoplasma not only flows, it also changes from a fluid into a solid state.

These pseudopods are also used to capture prey, they simply engulf the food. They can detect the kind of prey and use different 'engulfing tactics'.

The image from the last page shows several cell organelles. Left from the center we can see aspherical water expelling vesicle and just right of it, the single nucleus of this species can be seen. Other species may have many nuclei. The cell is full of brown food vacuoles and also contains small crystals.

Protozoa Information
Our actual knowledge of salinity, temperature, and oxygen requirements of marine protozoa is poor (although some groups, such as the foraminifera, are better studied than others), and even the broadest outlines of their biogeographic ranges are usually a mystery. In general, freshwater protozoan communities are similar to marine communities except the specialized interstitial fauna of the sand is largely missing. In freshwater habitats, the foraminifera and radiolaria common in marine environments are absent or low in numbers while testate amoebae exist in greater numbers. Relative abundance of species in the marine versus freshwater habitat is unknown.

Soil-dwelling protozoa have been documented from almost every type of soil and in every kind of environment, from the peat-rich soil of bogs to the dry sands of deserts. In general, protozoa are found in greatest abundance near the soil surface, especially in the upper 15 cm (6 in), but occasional isolates can be obtained at depths of a meter (yard) or more.

Protozoa do not constitute a major part of soil biomass, but in some highly productive regions such as forest litter, the protozoa are a significant food source for the microinvertebrates, with a biomass that may reach 20 g/m2 of soil surface area there.

Environmental Quality Indicators
Polluted waters often have a rich and characteristic protozoan fauna. The relative abundance and diversity of protozoa are used as indicators of organic and toxic pollution (Cairns et al. 1972; Foissner 1987; Niederlehner et al. 1990; Curds 1992). Bick (1972), for example, provided a guide to ciliates that are useful as indicators of environmental quality of European freshwater systems, along with their ecological distribution with respect to parameters such as amount of organic material and oxygen levels.

Foissner (1988) clarified the taxonomy of European ciliates as part of a system for classifying the state of aquatic habitats according to their faunas.

Symbiotic Protozoa

Parasites

Protozoa are infamous for their role in causing disease, and parasitic species are among the best-known protozoa. Nevertheless, our knowledge has large gaps, especially of normally free-living protozoa that may become pathogenic in immunocompromised individuals. For example, microsporidia comprise a unique group of obligate, intracellular parasitic protozoa. Microsporidia are amazingly diverse organisms with more than 700 species and 80 genera that are capable of infecting a variety of plant, animal, and even other protist hosts.

They are found worldwide and have the ability to thrive in many ecological conditions. Until the past few years, their ubiquity did not cause a threat to human health, and few systematists worked to describe and classify the species. Since 1985, however, physicians have documented an unusual rise in worldwide infections in AIDS patients caused by four different genera of microsporidia (Encephalitozoon, Nosema, Pleistophora, and Enterocytozoon). According to the Centers for Disease Control in the United States, difficulties in identifying microsporidian species are impeding diagnosis and effective treatment of AIDS patients.

Protozoan Reservoirs of Disease

The presence of bacteria in the cytoplasm of protozoa is well known, whereas that of viruses is less frequently reported. Most of these reports simply record the presence of bacteria or viruses and assume some sort of symbiotic relationship between them and the protozoa. Recently, however, certain human pathogens were shown to not only survive but also to multiply in the cytoplasm of free-living, nonpathogenic protozoa. Indeed, it is now believed that protozoa are the natural habitat for certain pathogenic bacteria. To date, the main focus of attention has been on the bacterium Legionella pneumophila, the causative organism of Legionnaires' disease; these bacteria live and reproduce in the cytoplasm of some free-living amoebae (Curds 1992). More on this subject in the following pages.

Symbionts

Some protozoa are harmless or even beneficial symbionts. A bewildering array of ciliates, for example, inhabit the rumen and reticulum of ruminates and the cecum and colon of equids. Little is known about the relationship of the ciliates to their host, but a few may aid the animal in digesting cellulose.

Data on Protozoa

While our knowledge of recent and fossil foraminifera in the U.S. coastal waterways is systematically growing, other free-living protozoa are poorly known. There are some regional guides and, while some are excellent, many are limited in scope, vague on specifics, or difficult to use. Largely because of these problems, most ecologists who include protozoa in their studies of aquatic habitats do not identify them, even if they do count and measure them for biomass estimates (Taylor and Sanders 1991).

Parasitic protozoa of humans, domestic animals, and wildlife are better known although no attempt has been made to compile this information into a single source. Large gaps in our knowledge exist, especially for haemogregarines, microsporidians, and myxosporidians (see Kreier and Baker 1987).

Museum Specimens

For many plant and animal taxa, museums represent a massive information resource. This is not true for protozoa. In the United States, only the National Natural History Museum (Smithsonian Institution) has a reference collection preserved on microscope slides, but it does not have a protozoologist curator and cannot provide species' identification or verification services. The American Type Culture Collection has some protozoa in culture, but its collection includes relatively few kinds of protozoa.

Ecological Role of Protozoa

Although protozoa are frequently overlooked, they play an important role in many communities where they occupy a range of trophic levels. As predators upon unicellular or filamentous algae, bacteria, and microfungi, protozoa play a role both as herbivores and as consumers in the decomposer link of the food chain. As components of the micro- and meiofauna, protozoa are an important food source for microinvertebrates. Thus, the ecological role of protozoa in the transfer of bacterial and algal production to successive trophic levels is important.

Factors Affecting Growth and Distribution

Most free-living protozoa reproduce by cell division (exchange of genetic material is a separate process and is not involved in reproduction in protozoa). The relative importance for population growth of biotic versus chemical-physical components of the environment is difficult to ascertain from the existing survey data. Protozoa are found living actively in nutrient-poor to organically rich waters and in fresh water varying between 0°C (32°F) and 50°C (122°F). Nonetheless, it appears that rates of population growth increase when food is not constrained and temperature is increased (Lee and Fenchel 1972; Fenchel 1974; Montagnes et al. 1988).

Comparisons of oxygen consumption in various taxonomic groups show wide variation (Laybourn and Finlay 1976), with some aerobic forms able to function at extremely low oxygen tensions and to thereby avoid competition and predation.

Many parasitic and a few free-living species are obligatory anaerobes (grow without atmospheric oxygen). Of the free-living forms, the best known are the plagiopylid ciliates that live in the anaerobic sulfide-rich sediments of marine wetlands (Fenchel et al. 1977). The importance of plagiopylids in recycling nutrients to aerobic zones of wetlands is potentially great.

Because of the small size of protozoa, their short generation time, and (for some species) ease of maintaining them in the laboratory, ecologists have used protozoan populations and communities to investigate competition and predation.

The result has been an extensive literature on a few species studied primarily under laboratory conditions. Few studies have been extended to natural habitats with the result that we know relatively little about most protozoa and their roles in natural communities. Intraspecific competition for common resources often results in cannibalism, sometimes with dramatic changes in morphology of the cannibals (Giese 1973). Field studies of interspecific competition are few and most evidence for such species interactions is indirect (Cairns and Yongue 1977).

Contractile Vacuoles

Many protozoa have contractile vacuoles, which collect and expel excess water, and extrusomes, which expel material used to deflect predators or capture prey. In multicellular organisms, hormones are often produced in vesicles. In higher plants, most of a cell's volume is taken up by a central vacuole or tonoplast, which maintains its osmotic pressure. Many eukaryotes have slender motile projections, usually called flagella when long and cilia when short. These are variously involved in movement, feeding, and sensation. These are entirely distinct from prokaryotic flagella. They are supported by a bundle of microtubules arising from a basal body, also called a kinetosome or centriole, characteristically arranged as nine doublets surrounding two singlets. Flagella also may have hairs or mastigonemes, scales, connecting membranes, and internal rods. Their interior is continuous with the cell's cytoplasm.

Centrioles

Centrioles are often present even in cells and groups that do not have flagella. They generally occur in groups of one or two, called kinetids that give rise to various microtubular roots. These form a primary component of the cytoskeletal structure, and are often assembled over the course of several cell divisions, with one flagellum retained from the parent and the other derived from it. Centrioles may also be associated in the formation of a spindle during nuclear division. Some protists have various other microtubule-supported organelles. These include the radiolaria and heliozoa, which produce axopodia used in flotation or to capture prey, and the haptophytes, which have a peculiar flagellum-like organelle called the haptonema.

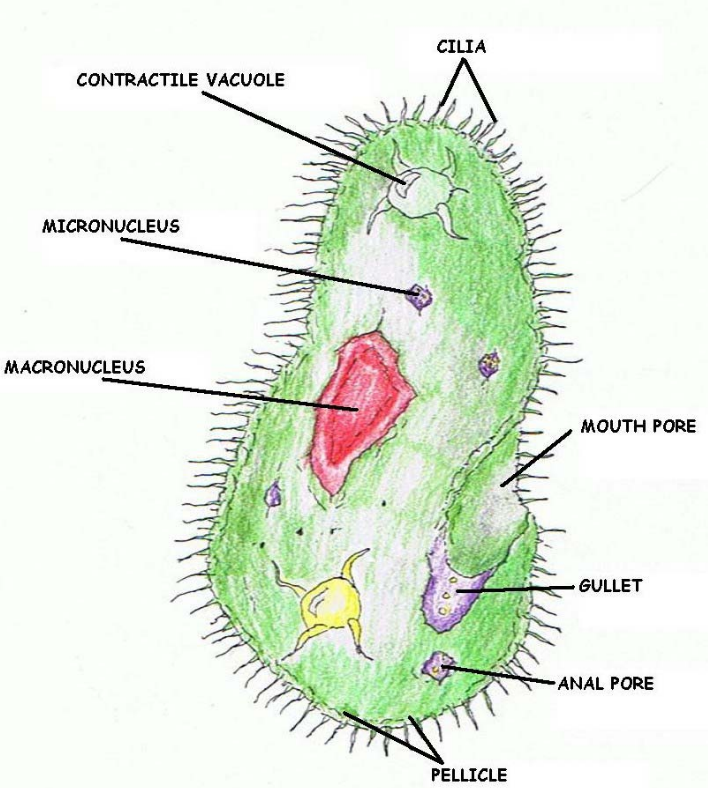
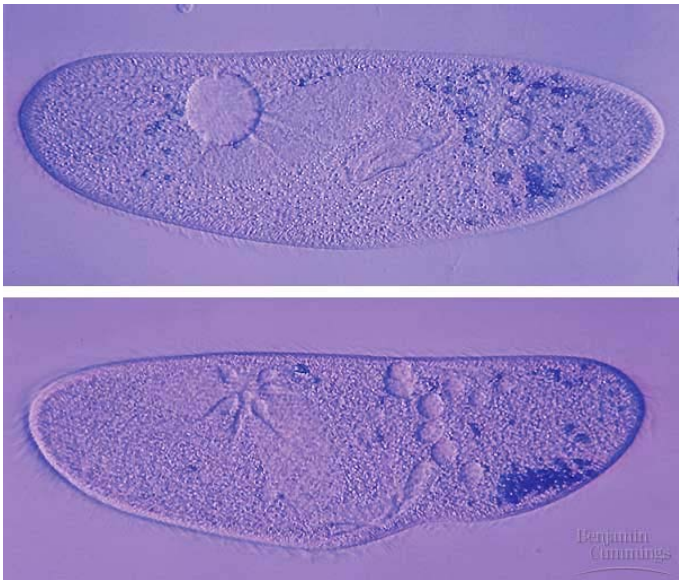


Figure 1. A diagram of *Paramecium* sp. with major organelles indicated.

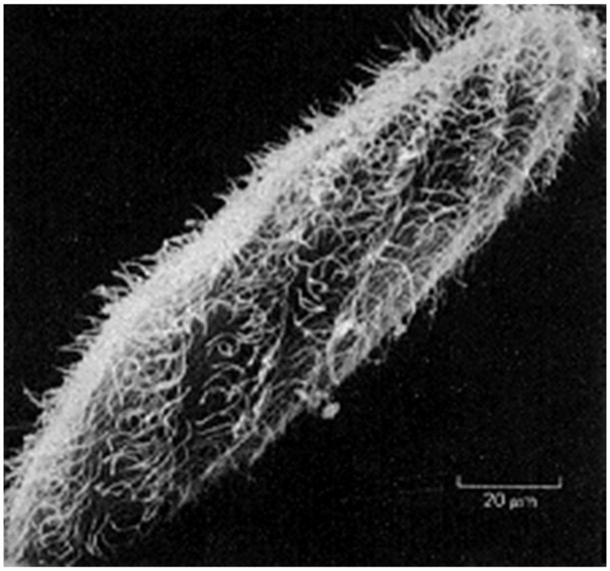


Contractile Vacuoles
Figure 2. The contractile vacuole when full (top) and after contraction (bottom).

Paramecium

Members of the genus *Paramecium* are single-celled, freshwater organisms in the kingdom Protista. They exist in an environment in which the osmotic concentration in their external environment is much lower than that in their cytoplasm. More specifically, the habitat in which they live is **hypotonic** to their cytoplasm. As a result of this, *Paramecium* is subjected to a continuous influx of water, as water diffuses inward to a region of higher osmotic concentration.

If *Paramecium* is to maintain homeostasis, water must be continually pumped out of the cell (against the osmotic gradient) at the same rate at which it moves in. This process, known as **osmoregulation**, is carried out by two organelles in *Paramecium* known as **contractile vacuoles** (Figures 1 and 2).



Here is a wastewater Inspector is utilizing the auto sampler's manual to help adjust the time and adjust for the correct flow for a composite sample. You can see that she is pouring off the pickle jar. This inspector is also the course author.

Protozoan Diseases

Protozoan pathogens are larger than bacteria and viruses, but still microscopic. They invade and inhabit the gastrointestinal tract. Some parasites enter the environment in a dormant form, with a protective cell wall called a "***cyst***." The cyst can survive in the environment for long periods of time and be extremely resistant to conventional disinfectants such as chlorine. Effective filtration treatment is therefore critical to removing these organisms from water sources.

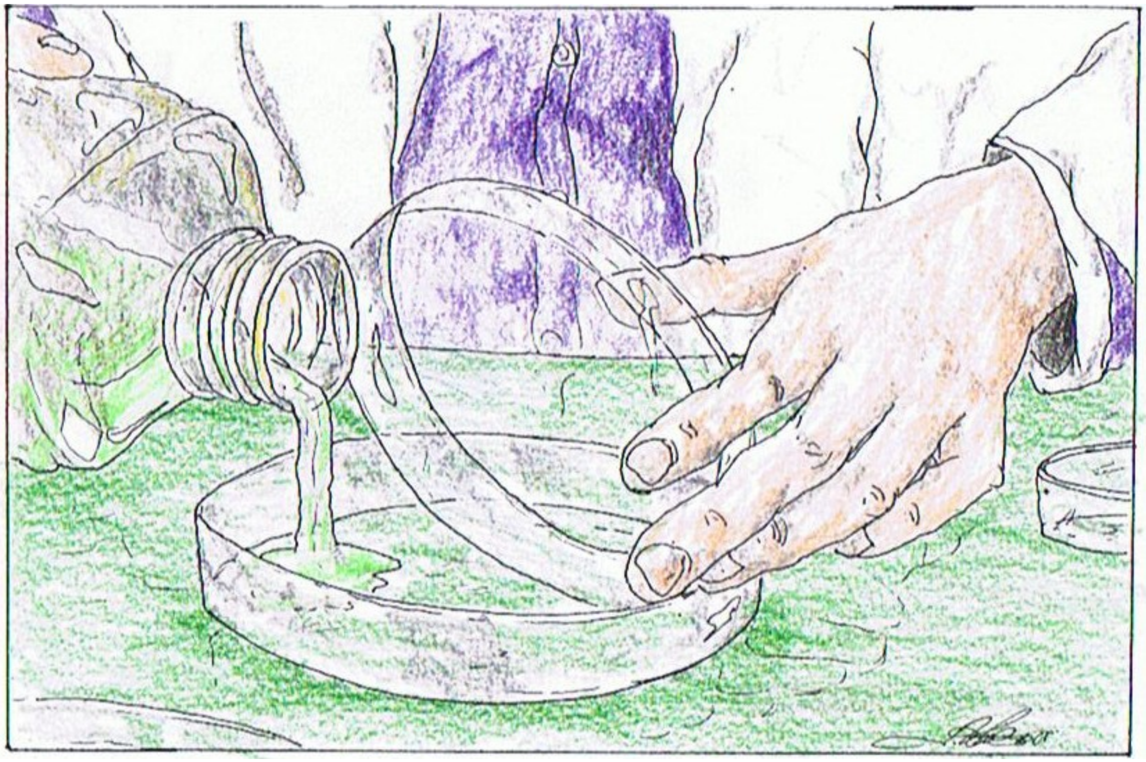
Giardiasis

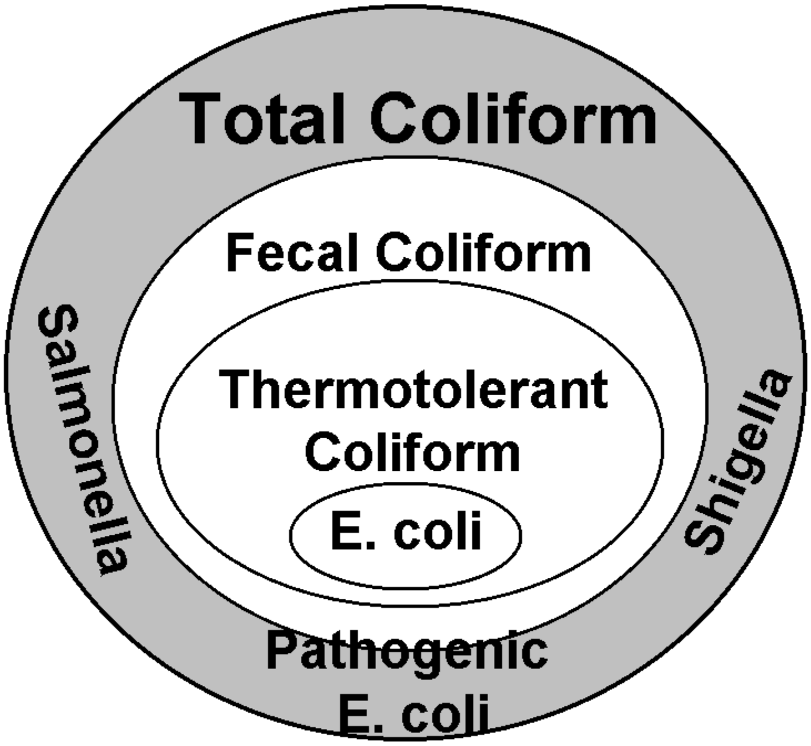
Giardiasis is a commonly reported protozoan-caused disease. It has also been referred to as "***backpacker's disease***" and "***beaver fever***" because of the many cases reported among hikers and others who consume untreated surface water. Symptoms include chronic diarrhea, abdominal cramps, bloating, frequent loose and pale greasy stools, fatigue and weight loss. The incubation period is 5-25 days or longer, with an average of 7-10 days. Many infections are asymptomatic (no symptoms). Giardiasis occurs worldwide. Waterborne outbreaks in the United States occur most often in communities receiving their drinking water from streams or rivers without adequate disinfection or a filtration system. The organism, ***Giardia lamblia,*** has been responsible for more community-wide outbreaks of disease in the U.S. than any other pathogen. Drugs are available for treatment but are not 100% effective.

Cryptosporidiosis

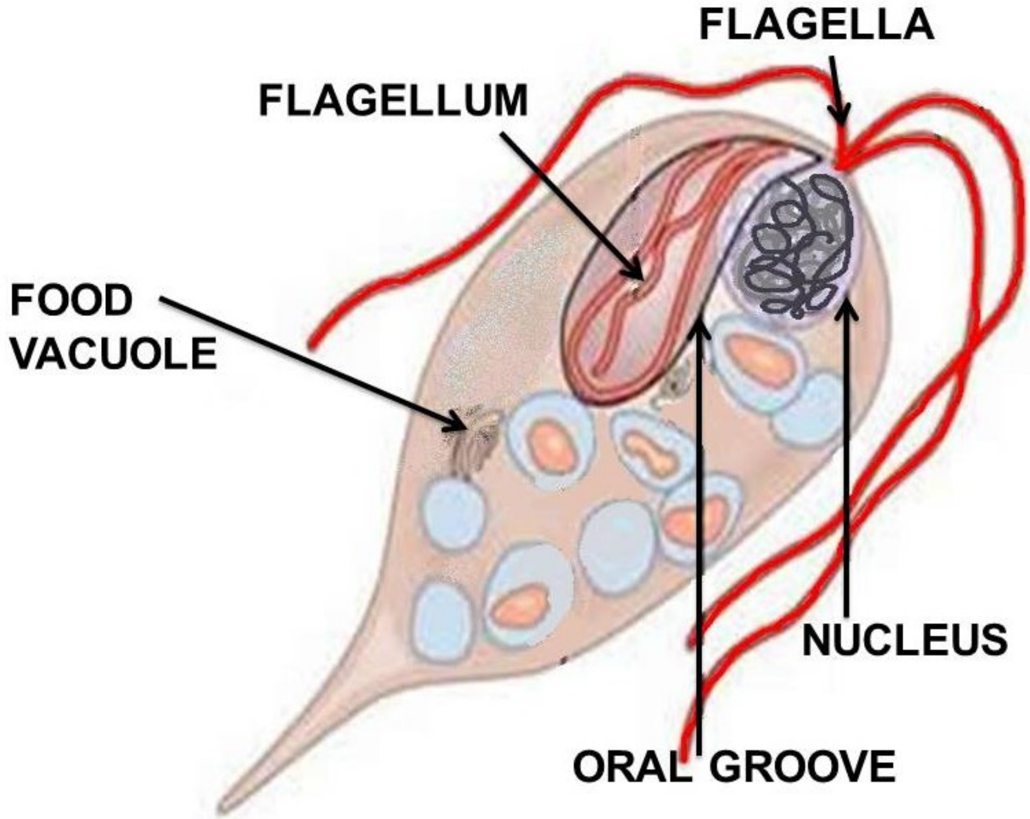
Cryptosporidiosis is an example of a protozoan disease that is common worldwide, but was only recently recognized as causing human disease. The major symptom in humans is diarrhea, which may be profuse and watery. The diarrhea is associated with cramping abdominal pain. General malaise, fever, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting occur less often. Symptoms usually come and go, and end in fewer than 30 days in most cases. The incubation period is 1-12 days, with an average of about seven days. ***Cryptosporidium*** organisms have been identified in human fecal specimens from more than 50 countries on six continents. The mode of transmission is fecal-oral, either by person-to-person or animal-to-person. There is no specific treatment for ***Cryptosporidium*** infections.

All of these diseases, with the exception of hepatitis A, have one symptom in common: diarrhea. They also have the same mode of transmission, fecal-oral, whether through person-to-person or animal-to-person contact, and the same routes of transmission, being either foodborne or waterborne. Although most pathogens cause mild, self-limiting disease, on occasion, they can cause serious, even life threatening illness. Particularly vulnerable are persons with weak immune systems such as those with HIV infections or cancer. By understanding the nature of waterborne diseases, the importance of properly constructed, operated and maintained public water systems becomes obvious. While water treatment cannot achieve sterile water (no microorganisms), the goal of treatment must clearly be to produce drinking water that is as pathogen-free as possible at all times. For those who operate water systems with inadequate source protection or treatment facilities, the potential risk of a waterborne disease outbreak is real. For those operating systems that currently provide adequate source protection and treatment, operating and maintaining the system at a high level on a continuing basis is critical to prevent disease.




Total Coliform
Fecal Coliform
Thermotolerant Coliform
E. coli
Salmonella
Shigella
Pathogenic E. coli

Giardia Lamblia



GIARDIA LAMBLIA

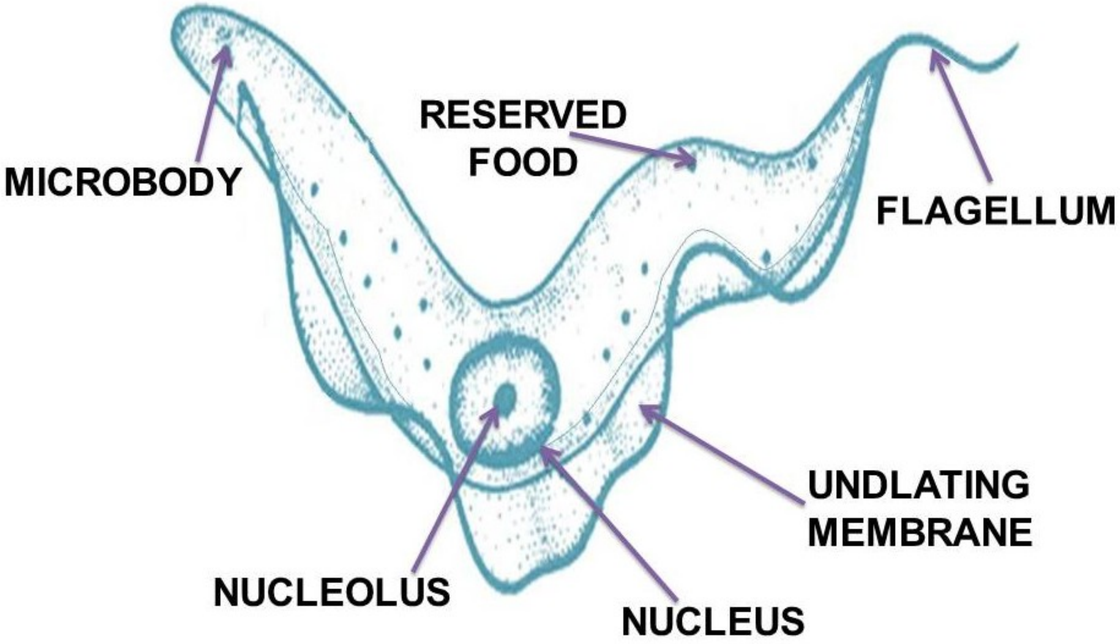
Giardia lamblia (synonymous with Lamblia intestinalis and Giardia duodenalis) is a flagellated protozoan parasite that colonizes and reproduces in the small intestine, causing giardiasis. The giardia parasite attaches to the epithelium by a ventral adhesive disc, and reproduces via binary fission. Giardiasis does not spread via the bloodstream, nor does it spread to other parts of the gastro-intestinal tract, but remains confined to the lumen of the small intestine. Giardia trophozoites absorb their nutrients from the lumen of the small intestine, and are anaerobes.

Giardia infection can occur through ingestion of dormant cysts in contaminated water, or by the fecal-oral route (through poor hygiene practices). The Giardia cyst can survive for weeks to months in cold water and therefore can be present in contaminated wells and water systems, and even clean-looking mountain streams, as well as city reservoirs, as the Giardia cysts are resistant to conventional water treatment methods, such as chlorination and ozonolysis. Zoonotic transmission is also possible, and therefore Giardia infection is a concern for people camping in the wilderness or swimming in contaminated streams or lakes, especially the artificial lakes formed by beaver dams (hence the popular name for giardiasis, "Beaver Fever"). As well as water-borne sources, fecal-oral transmission can also occur, for example in day care centers, where children may have poorer hygiene practices.

Those who work with children are also at risk of being infected, as are family members of infected individuals. Not all Giardia infections are symptomatic, so some people can unknowingly serve as carriers of the parasite.

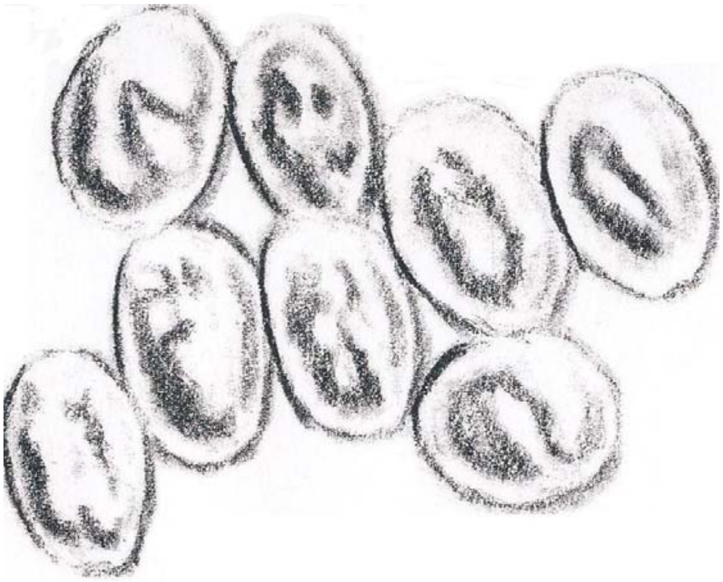
The life cycle begins with a non-infective cyst being excreted with feces of an infected individual. Once out in the environment, the cyst becomes infective. A distinguishing characteristic of the cyst is 4 nuclei and a retracted cytoplasm. Once ingested by a host, the trophozoite emerges to an active state of feeding and motility. After the feeding stage, the trophozoite undergoes asexual replication through longitudinal binary fission. The resulting trophozoites and cysts then pass through the digestive system in the feces. While the trophozoites may be found in the feces, only the cysts are capable of surviving outside of the host.

Distinguishing features of the trophozoites are large karyosomes and lack of peripheral chromatin, giving the two nuclei a halo appearance. Cysts are distinguished by a retracted cytoplasm. This protozoa lacks mitochondria, although the discovery of the presence of mitochodrial remnant organelles in one recent study "indicate that Giardia is not primitively amitochondrial and that it has retained a functional organelle derived from the original mitochondrial endosymbiont"



PROTOZOAN PARASITE

Cryptosporidium



Cryptosporidium is a protozoan pathogen of the Phylum Apicomplexa and causes a diarrheal illness called cryptosporidiosis. Other apicomplexan pathogens include the malaria parasite Plasmodium, and Toxoplasma, the causative agent of toxoplasmosis. Unlike Plasmodium, which transmits via a mosquito vector, Cryptosporidium does not utilize an insect vector and is capable of completing its life cycle within a single host, resulting in cyst stages which are excreted in feces and are capable of transmission to a new host.

A number of species of Cryptosporidium infect mammals. In humans, the main causes of disease are C. parvum and C. hominis (previously C. parvum genotype 1). C. canis, C. felis, C. meleagridis, and C. muris can also cause disease in humans. In recent years, cryptosporidiosis has plagued many commercial Leopard gecko breeders. Several species of the Cryptosporidium family (C. serpentes and others) are involved, and outside of geckos it has been found in monitor lizards, iguanas, tortoises as well as several snake species.

Cryptosporidiosis is typically an acute short-term infection but can become severe and non-resolving in children and immunocompromised individuals. The parasite is transmitted by environmentally hardy cysts (oocysts) that, once ingested, excyst in the small intestine and result in an infection of intestinal epithelial tissue.

The genome of Cryptosporidium parvum was sequenced in 2004 and was found to be unusual amongst Eukaryotes in that the mitochondria seem not to contain DNA. A closely-related species, C. hominis, also has its genome sequence available. CryptoDB.org is a NIH-funded database that provides access to the Cryptosporidium genomics data sets.

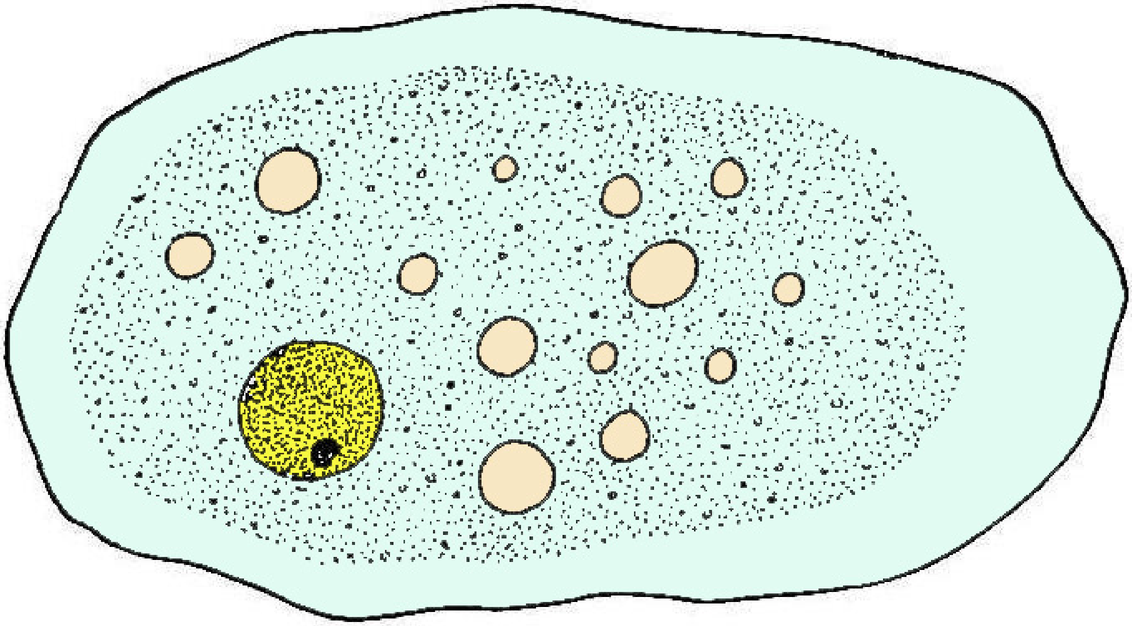
CRYPTO-PARVUM

When *C. parvum* was first identified as a human pathogen, diagnosis was made by a biopsy of intestinal tissue (Keusch, *et al*., 1995). However, this method of testing can give false negatives due the "patchy" nature of the intestinal parasitic infection (Flanigan and Soave, 1993). Staining methods were then developed to detect and identify the oocysts directly from stool samples. The modified acid-fast stain is traditionally used to most reliably and specifically detect the presence of cryptosporidial oocysts.

There have been six major outbreaks of cryptosporidiosis in the United States as a result of contamination of drinking water (Juranek, 1995). One major outbreak in Milwaukee in 1993 affected over 400,000 persons. Outbreaks such as these usually result from drinking water taken from surface water sources such as lakes and rivers (Juranek, 1995). Swimming pools and water park wave pools have also been associated with outbreaks of cryptosporidiosis. Also, untreated groundwater or well water public drinking water supplies can be sources of contamination.

The highly environmentally resistant cyst of *C. parvum* allows the pathogen to survive various drinking water filtrations and chemical treatments such as chlorination. Although municipal drinking water utilities may meet federal standards for safety and quality of drinking water, complete protection from cryptosporidial infection is not guaranteed. In fact, *all* waterborne outbreaks of cryptosporidiosis have occurred in communities where the local utilities met all state and federal drinking water standards (Juranek, 1995).

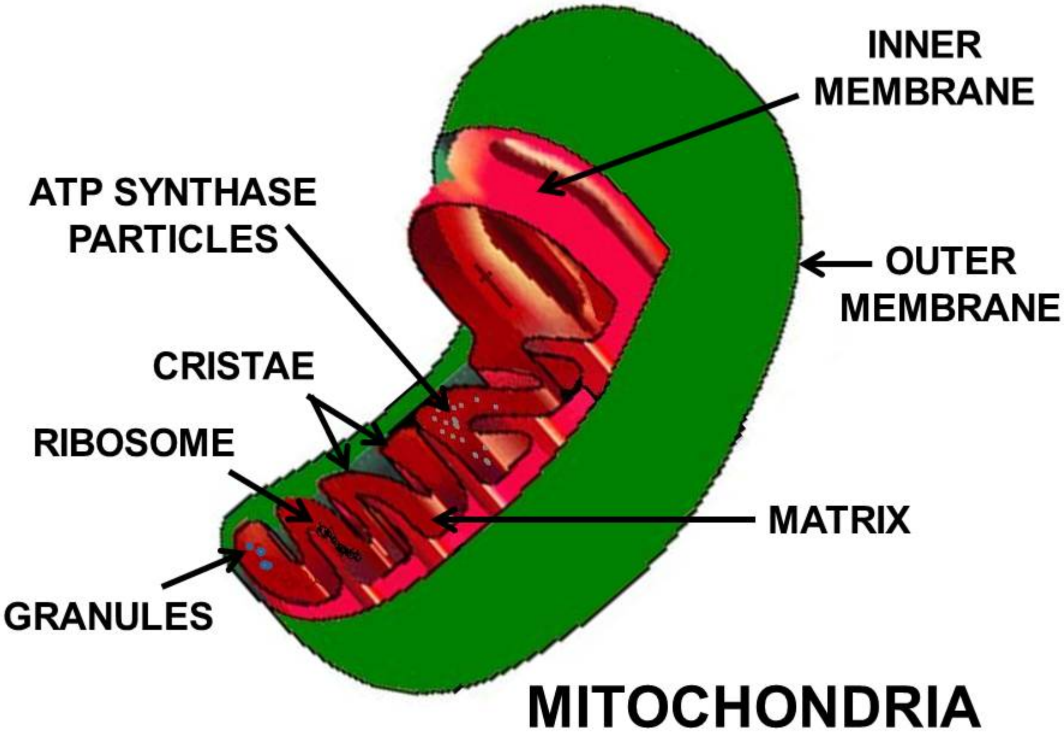
Entamoeba histolytica



Entamoeba histolytica, another water-borne pathogen, can cause diarrhea or a more serious invasive liver abscess. When in contact with human cells, these amoebae are cytotoxic. There is a rapid influx of calcium into the contacted cell, it quickly stops all membrane movement save for some surface blebbing. Internal organization is disrupted, organelles lyse, and the cell dies. The ameba may eat the dead cell or just absorb nutrients released from the cell.

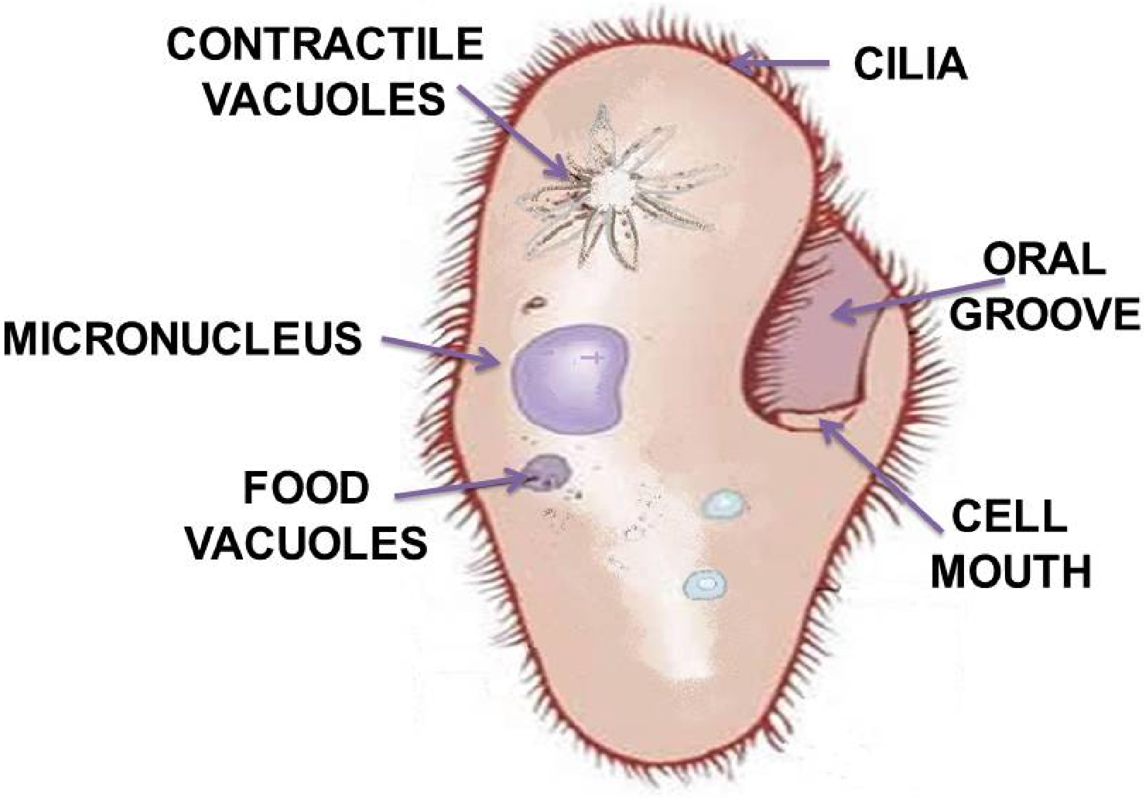
On average, about one in 10 people who are infected with *E. histolytica* becomes sick from the infection. The symptoms often are quite mild and can include loose stools, stomach pain, and stomach cramping. Amebic dysentery is a severe form of amebiasis associated with stomach pain, bloody stools, and fever. Rarely, *E. histolytica* invades the liver and forms an abscess. Even less commonly, it spreads to other parts of the body, such as the lungs or brain.

Scientific classification
Domain: Eukaryota
Phylum: Amoebozoa
Class: Archamoebae
Genus: Entamoeba
Species: E. histolytica



Mitochondria

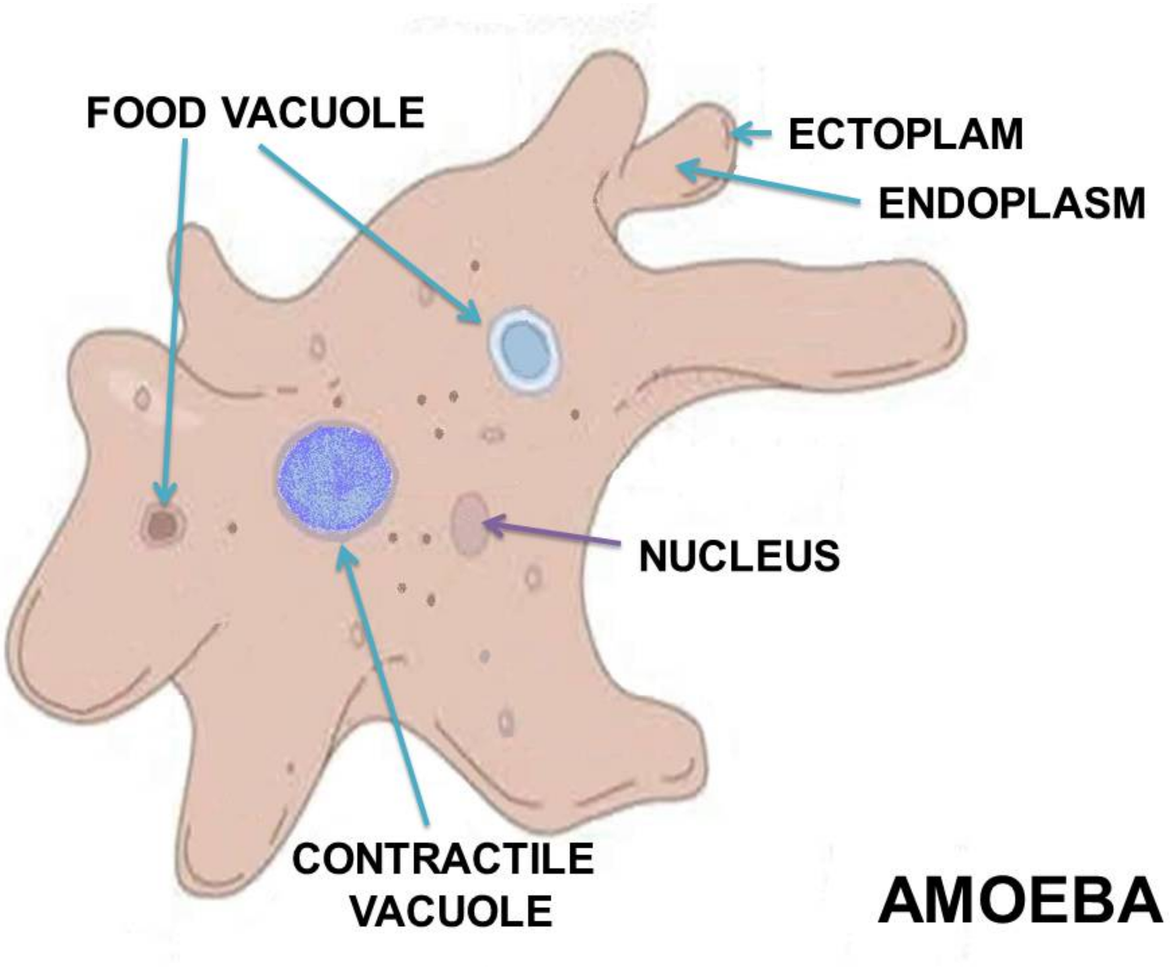
The bacterial cell is surrounded by a lipid membrane, or cell membrane, which encloses the contents of the cell and acts as a barrier to hold nutrients, proteins and other essential components of the cytoplasm within the cell. As they are prokaryotes, bacteria do not tend to have membrane-bound organelles in their cytoplasm and thus contain few large intracellular structures. They consequently lack a nucleus, mitochondria, chloroplasts and the other organelles present in eukaryotic cells, such as the Golgi apparatus and endoplasmic reticulum.



PARAMECIUM

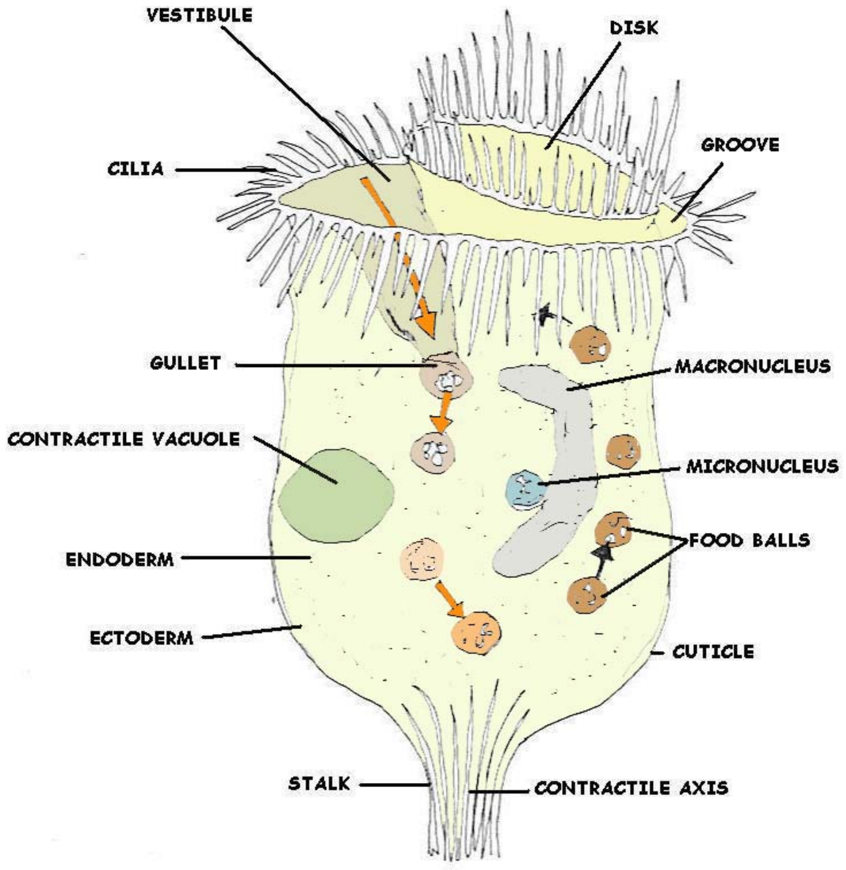
Paramecia

Paramecia are a group of unicellular ciliate protozoa formerly known as slipper animalcules from their slipper shape. They are commonly studied as a representative of the ciliate group. Simple cilia cover the body which allows the cell to move with a synchronous motion (like a caterpilla). There is also a deep oral groove containing inconspicuous compound oral cilia (as found in other peniculids) that is used to draw food inside. They generally feed upon bacteria and other small cells. Osmoregulation is carried out by a pair of contractile vacuoles, which actively expel water absorbed by osmosis from their surroundings. Paramecia are widespread in freshwater environments, and are especially common in scums. Paramecia are attracted by acidic conditions. Certain single-celled eukaryotes, such as Paramecium, are examples for exceptions to the universality of the genetic code (translation systems where a few codons differ from the standard ones).



Amoeba

Amoeba (sometimes amœba or ameba, plural amoebae) is a genus of protozoa that moves by means of pseudopods, and is well-known as a representative unicellular organism. The word amoeba or ameba is variously used to refer to it and its close relatives, now grouped as the Amoebozoa, or to all protozoa that move using pseudopods, otherwise termed amoeboids.



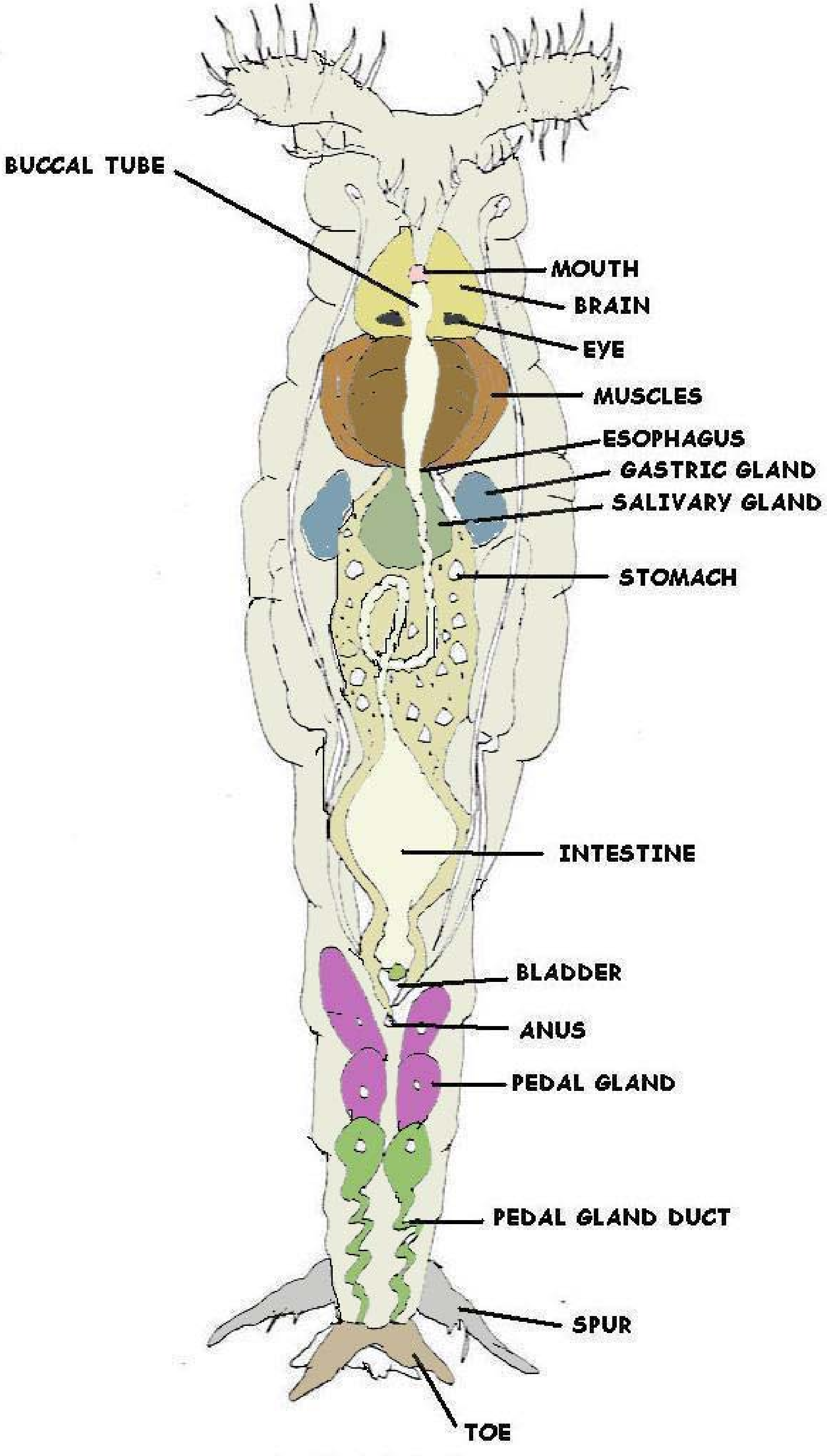
VORTICELLA

(TYPE OF PROTOZOAN FOUND IN STAGNANT WATER)

Vorticella

Vorticella is a genus of protozoa, with over 100 known species. They are stalked inverted bell-shaped ciliates, placed among the peritrichs. Each cell has a separate stalk anchored onto the substrate, which contains a contracile fibril called a myoneme. When stimulated this shortens, causing the stalk to coil like a spring. Reproduction is by budding, where the cell undergoes longitudinal fission and only one daughter keeps the stalk. Vorticella mainly lives in freshwater ponds and streams - generally anywhere protists are plentiful. Other genera such as Carchesium resemble Vorticella but are branched or colonial.

Domain: Eukaryota
Phylum: Ciliophora
Class: Oligohymenophorea
Subclass: Peritrichia
Order: Sessilida
Family: Vorticellidae
Genus: Vorticella


BUCCAL TUBE
MOUTH
BRAIN
EYE
MUSCLES
ESOPHAGUS
GASTRIC GLAND
SALIVARY GLAND
STOMACH
INTESTINE
BLADDER
ANUS
PEDAL GLAND
PEDAL GLAND DUCT
SPUR
TOE

ROTIFER

Rotifer

The rotifers make up a phylum of microscopic and near-microscopic pseudocoelomate animals. They were first described by John Harris in 1696 (Hudson and Gosse, 1886). Leeuwenhoek is mistakenly given credit for being the first to describe rotifers but Harris had produced sketches in 1703. Most rotifers are around 0.1-0.5 mm long, and are common in freshwater throughout the world with a few saltwater species. Rotifers may be free swimming and truly planktonic, others move by inch worming along the substrate, whilst some are sessile, living inside tubes or gelatinous holdfasts. About 25 species are colonial (e.g. Sinantherina semibullata), either sessile or planktonic.

Rotifers get their name (derived from Greek and meaning "wheel-bearer"; they have also been called wheel animalcules) from the corona, which is composed of several ciliated tufts around the mouth that in motion resemble a wheel. These create a current that sweeps food into the mouth, where it is chewed up by a characteristic pharynx (called the mastax) containing a tiny, calcified, jaw-like structure called the trophi. The cilia also pull the animal, when unattached, through the water. Most free-living forms have pairs of posterior toes to anchor themselves while feeding. Rotifers have bilateral symmetry and a variety of different shapes. There is a well-developed cuticle which may be thick and rigid, giving the animal a box-like shape, or flexible, giving the animal a worm-like shape; such rotifers are respectively called loricate and illoricate.

Like many other microscopic animals, adult rotifers frequently exhibit eutely - they have a fixed number of cells within a species, usually on the order of one thousand. Males in the class Monogononta may be either present or absent depending on the species and environmental conditions. In the absence of males, reproduction is by parthenogenesis and results in clonal offspring that are genetically identical to the parent. Individuals of some species form two distinct types of parthenogenetic eggs; one type develops into a normal parthenogenetic female, while the other occurs in response to a changed environment and develops into a degenerate male that lacks a digestive system, but does have a complete male reproductive system that is used to inseminate females thereby producing fertilized 'resting eggs'. Resting eggs develop into zygotes that are able to survive extreme environmental conditions such as may occur during winter or when the pond dries up. These eggs resume development and produce a new female generation when conditions improve again. The life span of monogonont females varies from a couple of days to about three weeks.

Bdelloid rotifers are unable to produce resting eggs, but many can survive prolonged periods of adverse conditions after desiccation. This facility is termed anhydrobiosis, and organisms with these capabilities are termed anhydrobionts. Under drought conditions, bdelloid rotifers contract into an inert form and lose almost all body water; when rehydrated, however, they resume activity within a few hours. Bdelloids can survive the dry state for prolonged periods, with the longest well-documented dormancy being nine years. While in other anhydrobionts, such as the brine shrimp, this desiccation tolerance is thought to be linked to the production of trehalose, a non-reducing disaccharide (sugar), bdelloids apparently lack the ability to synthesize trehalose. Bdelloid rotifer genomes contain two or more divergent copies of each gene. Four copies of hsp82 are, for example, found. Each is different and found on a different chromosome, excluding the possibility of homozygous sexual reproduction.

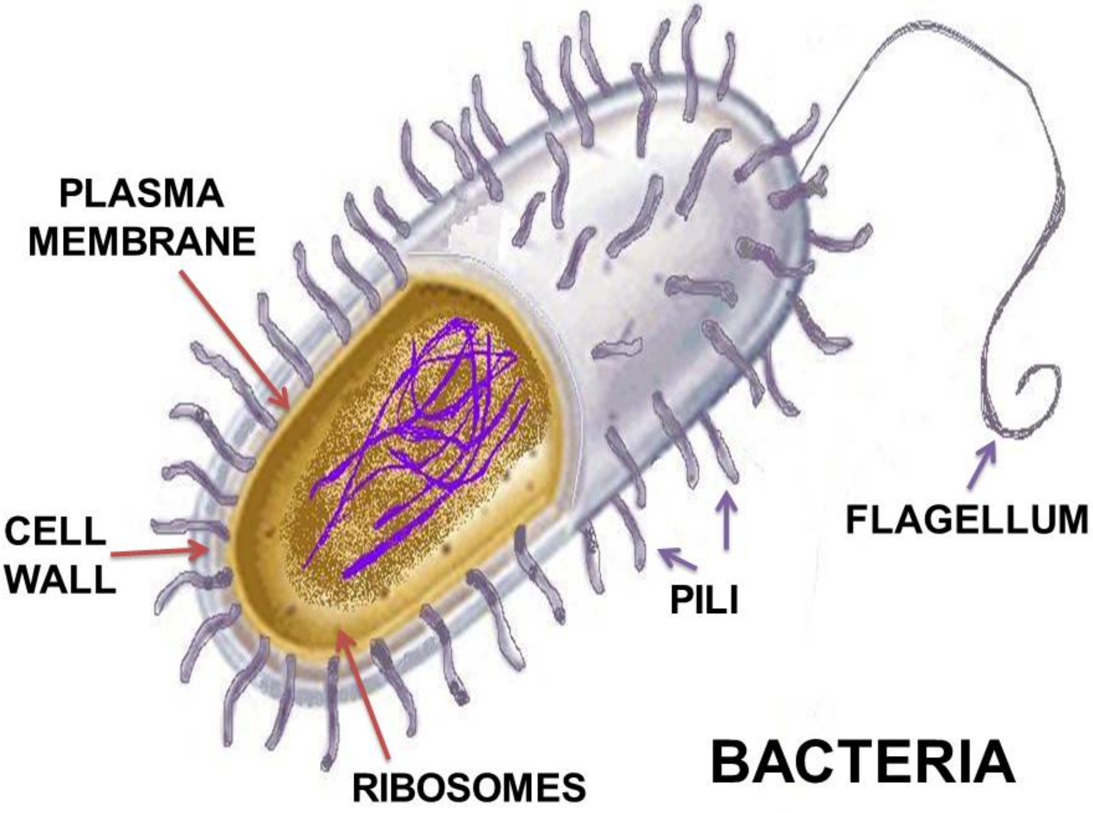
Waterborne Diseases

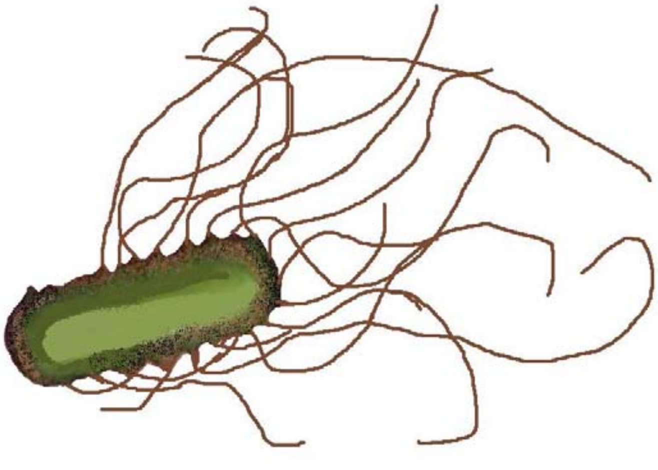
Name	**Causative organism**	**Source of organism**	**Disease**
Viral gastroenteritis	**Rotavirus** (mostly in young children)	Human feces	Diarrhea or vomiting
Norwalk Agent	**Noroviruses** (genus *Norovirus*, family *Caliciviridae*) [*1]	Human feces; also, shellfish; lives in polluted waters	Diarrhea and vomiting
Salmonellosis	***Salmonella*** (bacterium)	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea or vomiting
Gastroenteritis Escherichia *coli*	-- ***E. coli O1* 57:H7** (bacterium): Other *E. coli* organisms:	Human feces	Symptoms vary with type caused
Typhoid	***Salmonella typhi*** (bacterium)	Human feces, urine	Inflamed intestine, enlarged spleen, high temperature-sometimes fatal
Shigellosis	***Shigella*** (bacterium)	Human feces	Diarrhea
Cholera	***Vibrio choleras*** (bacterium)	Human feces; also, shellfish; lives in many coastal waters	Vomiting, severe diarrhea, rapid dehydration, mineral loss-high mortality
Hepatitis A	**Hepatitis A** virus	Human feces; shellfish grown in polluted waters	Yellowed skin, enlarged liver, fever, vomiting, weight loss, abdominal pain-low mortality, lasts up to four months
Amebiasis	***Entamoeba histolytica*** (protozoan)	Human feces	Mild diarrhea, dysentery, extra intestinal infection
Giardiasis	***Giardia lamblia*** (protozoan)	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea, cramps, nausea, and general weakness — lasts one week to months
Cryptosporidiosis	***Cryptosporidium parvum***	Animal or human feces	Diarrhea, stomach pain — lasts (protozoan) days to weeks

Notes:

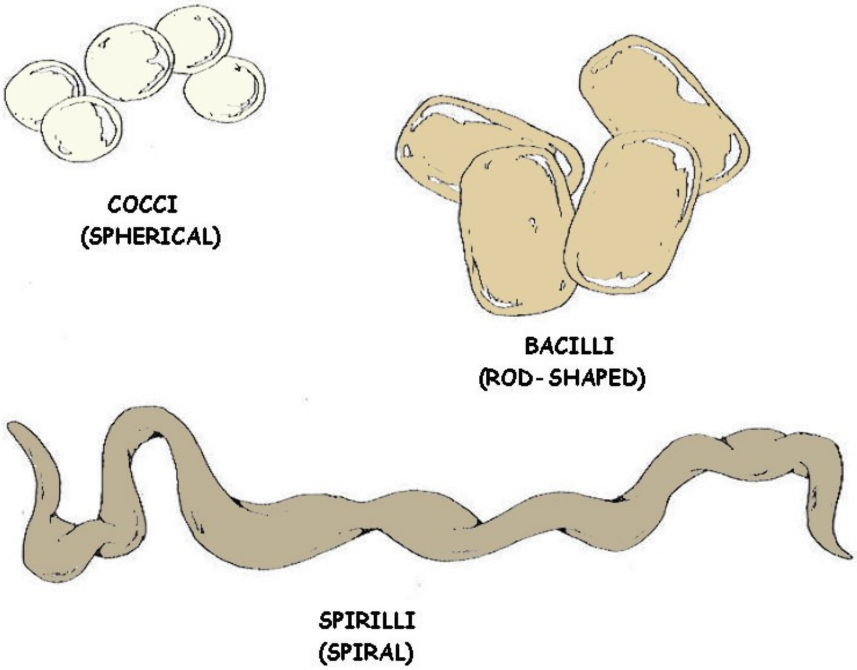
*1 http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/revb/gastro/norovirus.htm
http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5009a1.htm

Bacteria Section





Peritrichous Bacteria



BACTERIA TYPES

Microbiologists broadly classify bacteria according to their shape: spherical, rod-shaped, and spiral-shaped. Pleomorphic bacteria can assume a variety of shapes. Bacteria may be further classified according to whether they require oxygen (aerobic or anaerobic) and how they react to a test with Gram's stain. Bacteria in which alcohol washes away Gram's stain are called gram-negative, while bacteria in which alcohol causes the bacteria's walls to absorb the stain are called gram-positive.

COLORLESS FILAMENTOUS
SULFUR BACTERIA

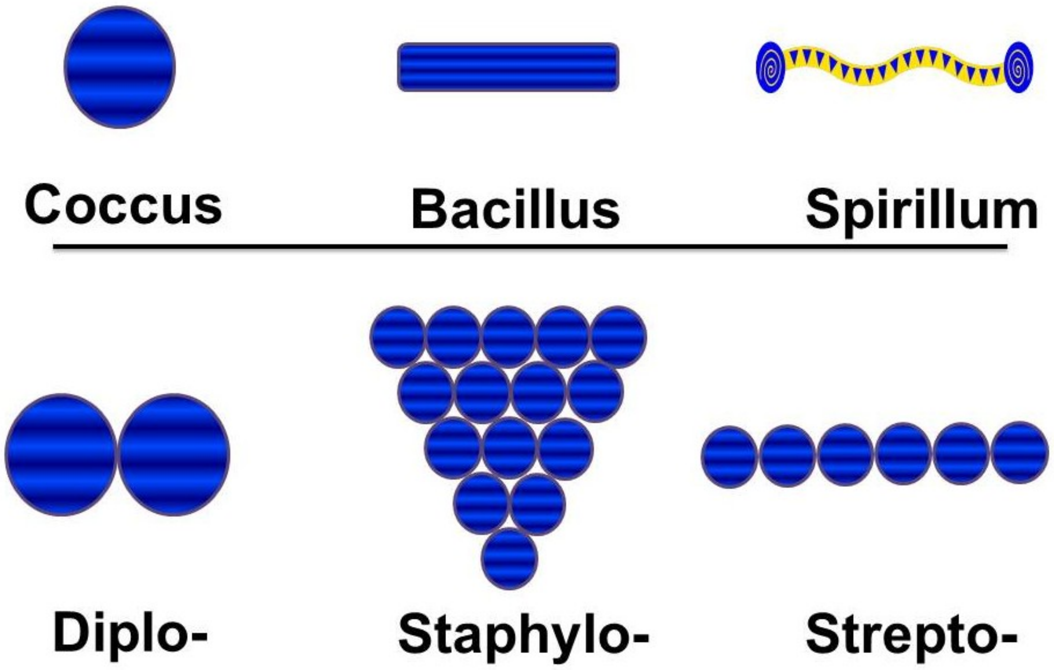
Shigella dysenteriae

Shigella dysenteriae is a species of the rod-shaped bacterial genus Shigella. Shigella can cause shigellosis (bacillary dysentery). Shigellae are Gram-negative, non-spore-forming, facultatively anaerobic, non-motile bacteria.

S. dysenteriae, spread by contaminated water and food, causes the most severe dysentery because of its potent and deadly Shiga toxin, but other species may also be dysentery agents. Shigella infection is typically via ingestion (fecal–oral contamination); depending on age and condition of the host as few as ten bacterial cells can be enough to cause an infection. Shigella causes dysentery that result in the destruction of the epithelial cells of the intestinal mucosa in the cecum and rectum. Some strains produce enterotoxin and Shiga toxin, similar to the verotoxin of E. coli O157:H7. Both Shiga toxin and verotoxin are associated with causing hemolytic uremic syndrome.

Shigella invades the host through epithelial cells of the large intestine. Using a Type III secretion system acting as a biological syringe, the bacterium injects IpaD protein into cell, triggering bacterial invasion and the subsequent lysis of vacuolar membranes using IpaB and IpaC proteins. It utilizes a mechanism for its motility by which its IcsA protein triggers actin polymerization in the host cell (via N-WASP recruitment of Arp2/3 complexes) in a "rocket" propulsion fashion for cell-to-cell spread.

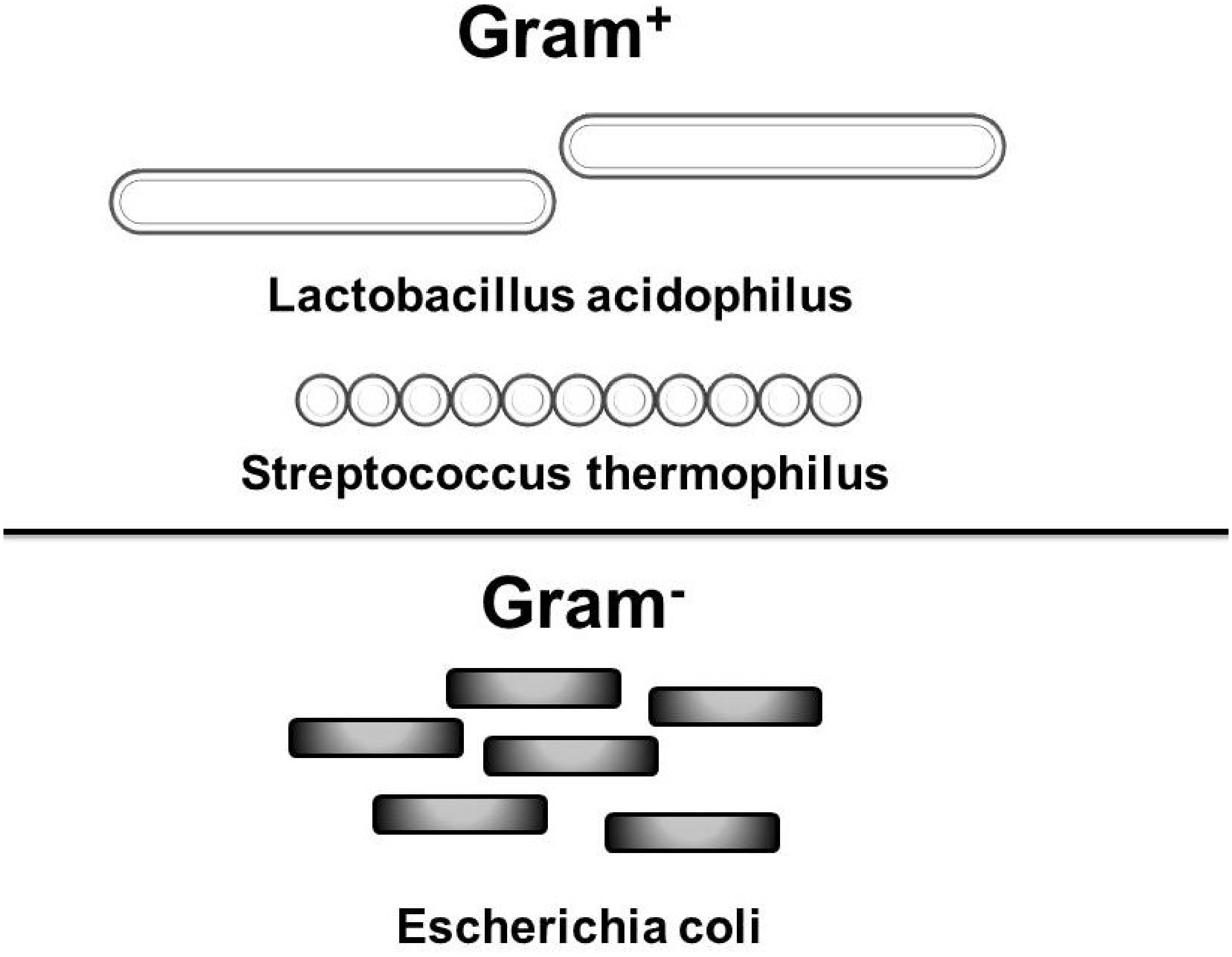
The most common symptoms are diarrhea, fever, nausea, vomiting, stomach cramps, and straining to have a bowel movement. The stool may contain blood, mucus, or pus (e.g. dysentery). In rare cases, young children may have seizures. Symptoms can take as long as a week to show up, but most often begin two to four days after ingestion. Symptoms usually last for several days, but can last for weeks. Shigella is implicated as one of the pathogenic causes of reactive arthritis worldwide.



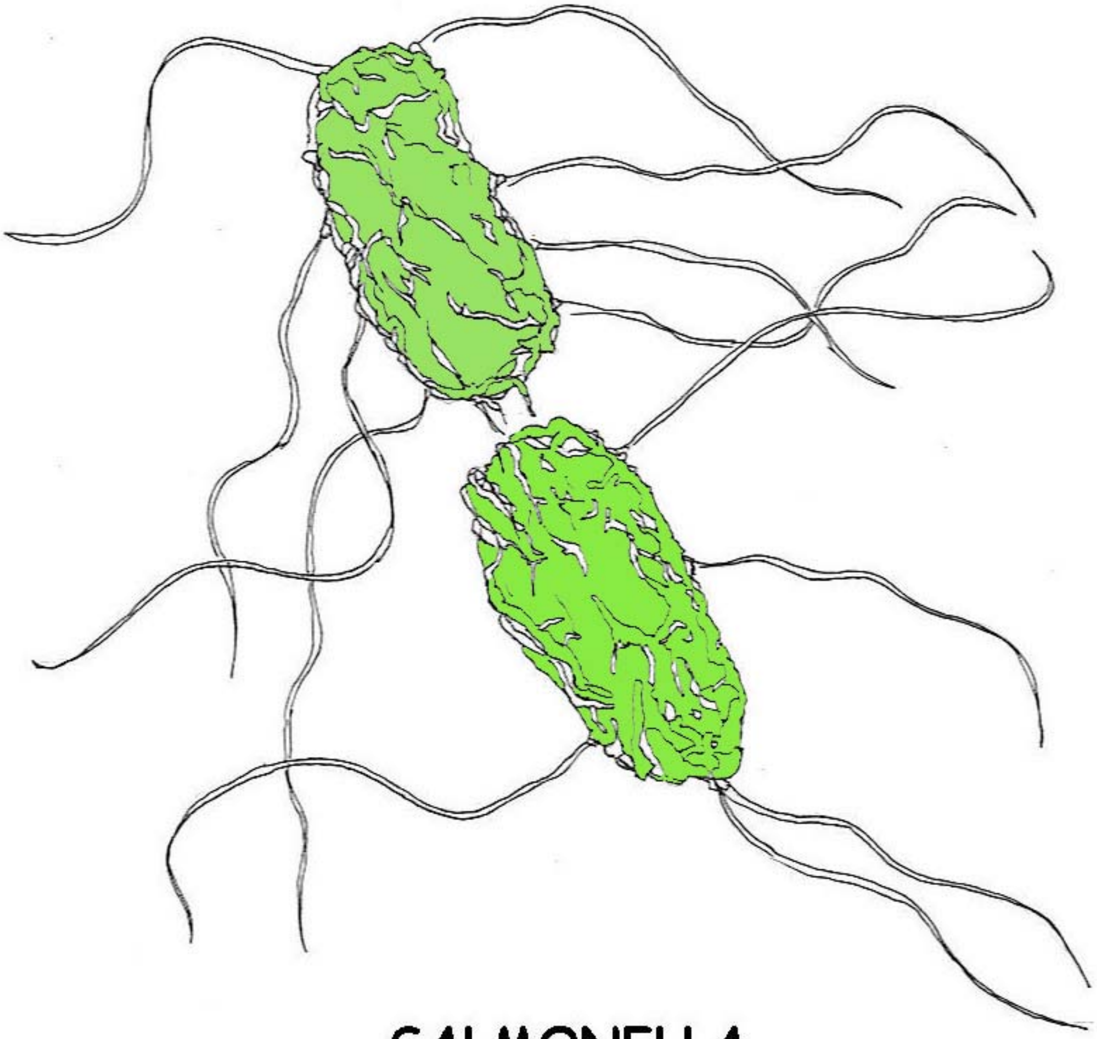
Bacteria Types

Type	Characteristics
Acetic acid	Rod-shaped, gram-negative, aerobic; highly tolerant of acidic conditions; generate organic acids
Actinomycete	Rod-shaped or filamentous, gram-positive, aerobic; common in soils; essential to growth of many plants; source of much of original antibiotic production in pharmaceutical industry
Coccoid	Spherical, sometimes in clusters or strings, gram-positive, aerobic and anaerobic; resistant to drying and high-salt conditions; *Staphylococcus* species common on human skin, certain strains associated with toxic shock syndrome
Coryneform	Rod-shaped, form club or V shapes, gram-positive, aerobic; found in wide variety of habitats, particularly soils; highly resistant to drying; include *Arthrobacter,* among most common forms of life on earth
Endospore-forming	Usually rod-shaped, can be gram-positive or gram-negative; have highly adaptable, heat-resistant spores that can go dormant for long periods, possibly thousands of years; include *Clostridium* (anaerobic) and *Bacillus* (aerobic)
Enteric	Rod-shaped, gram-negative, aerobic but can live in certain anaerobic conditions; produce nitrite from nitrate, acids from glucose; include *Escherichia coli, Salmonella* (over 1000 types), and *Shigella*
Gliding	Rod-shaped, gram-negative, mostly aerobic; glide on secreted slimy substances; form colonies, frequently with complex fruiting structures
Lactic acid	Gram-positive, anaerobic; produce lactic acid through fermentation; include *Lactobacillus*, essential in dairy product formation, and *Streptococcus*, common in humans
Mycobacterium	Pleomorphic, spherical or rod-shaped, frequently branching, no gram stain, aerobic; commonly form yellow pigments; include *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* cause of tuberculosis
Mycoplasma	Spherical, commonly forming branching chains, no gram stain, aerobic but can live in certain anaerobic conditions; without cell walls yet structurally resistant to lysis; among smallest of bacteria; named for superficial resemblance to fungal hyphae (*myco-* means 'fungus')
Nitrogen-fixing	Rod-shaped, gram-negative, aerobic; convert atmospheric nitrogen gas to ammonium in soil; include *Azotobacter,* a common genus
Propionic acid	Rod-shaped, pleomorphic, gram-positive, anaerobic; ferment lactic acid; fermentation produces holes in Swiss cheese from the production of carbon dioxide
Pseudomonad	Rod-shaped (straight or curved) with polar flagella, gram-negative, aerobic; can use up to 100 different compounds for carbon and energy
Rickettsia	Spherical or rod-shaped, gram-negative, aerobic; cause Rocky Mountain spotted fever and typhus; closely related to *Agrobacterium,* a common gall-causing plant bacterium
Sheathed	Filamentous, gram-negative, aerobic; 'swarmer' (colonizing) cells form and break out of a sheath; sometimes coated with metals from environment

Spirillum	Spiral-shaped, gram-negative, aerobic; include *Bdellovibrio,* predatory on other bacteria
Spirochete	Spiral-shaped, gram-negative, mostly anaerobic; common in moist environments, from mammalian gums to coastal mudflats; complex internal structures convey rapid movement; include *Treponemapallidum,* cause of syphilis
Sulfate- and Sulfur-reducing	Commonly rod-shaped, mostly gram-negative, anaerobic; include *Desulfovibrio,* ecologically important in marshes
Sulfur- and iron-oxidizing	Commonly rod-shaped, frequently with polar flagella, gram-negative, mostly anaerobic; most live in neutral (nonacidic) environment
Vibrio	Rod- or comma-shaped, gram-negative, aerobic; commonly with a single flagellum; include *Vibrio cholerae,* cause of cholera, and luminescent forms symbiotic with deep-water fishes and squids



Salmonella



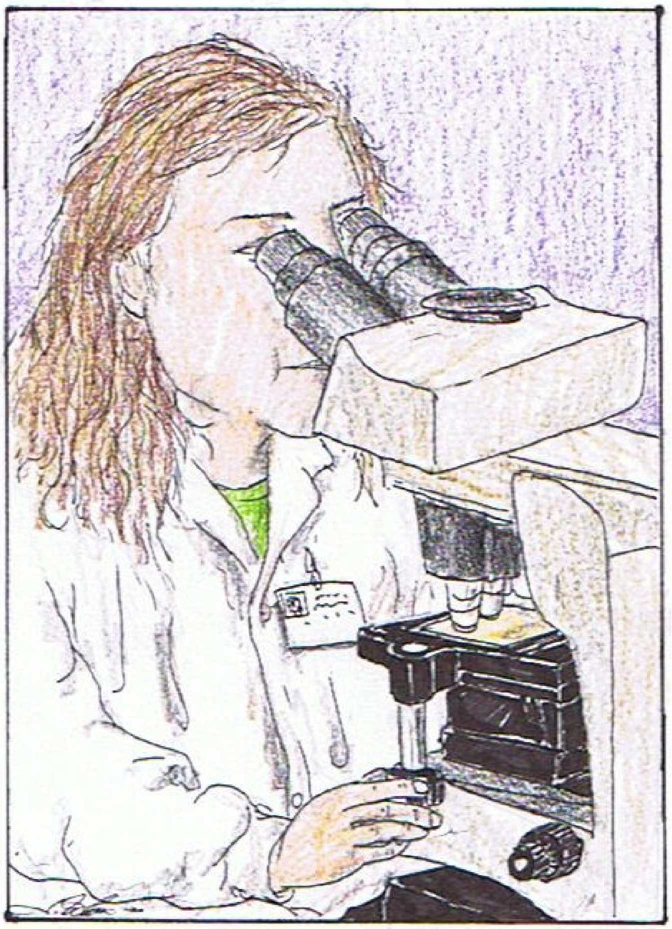
SALMONELLA

Salmonella is a Gram-negative bacterium. It is found in many turtles and other reptiles. In clinical laboratories, it is usually isolated on MacConkey agar, XLD agar, XLT agar, DCA agar, or Önöz agar. Because they cause intestinal infections and are greatly outnumbered by the bacteria normally found in the healthy bowel, primary isolation requires the use of a selective medium, so use of a relatively non-selective medium such as CLED agar is not often practiced. Numbers of salmonella may be so low in clinical samples that stools are routinely also subjected to "enrichment culture", where a small volume of stool is incubated in a selective broth medium, such as selenite broth or Rappaport Vassiliadis soya peptone broth, overnight. These media are inhibitory to the growth of the microbes normally found in the healthy human bowel, while allowing salmonellae to become enriched in numbers. Salmonellae may then be recovered by inoculating the enrichment broth on one or more of the primary selective media. On blood agar, they form moist colonies about 2 to 3 mm in diameter.

When the cells are grown for a prolonged time at a range of 25—28°C, some strains produce a biofilm, which is a matrix of complex carbohydrates, cellulose and proteins. The ability to produce biofilm (a.k.a. "rugose", "lacy", or "wrinkled") can be an indicator of dimorphism, which is the ability of a single genome to produce multiple phenotypes in response to environmental conditions. Salmonellae usually do not ferment lactose; most of them produce hydrogen sulfide which, in media containing ferric ammonium citrate, reacts to form a black spot in the centre of the creamy colonies.

Classification

Salmonella taxonomy is complicated. As of December 7, 2005, there are two species within the genus: S. bongori (previously subspecies V) and S. enterica (formerly called S. choleraesuis), which is divided into six subspecies:



* I—enterica
* II—salamae
* IIIa—arizonae
* IIIb—diarizonae
* IV—houtenae
* V—obsolete (now designated S. bongori)
* VI—indica

There are also numerous (over 2500) serovars within both species, which are found in a disparate variety of environments and which are associated with many different diseases. The vast majority of human isolates (>99.5%) are subspecies S. enterica. For the sake of simplicity, the CDC recommends that Salmonella species be referred to only by their genus and serovar, e.g.

Salmonella Typhi instead of the more technically correct designation, Salmonella enterica subspecies enterica serovar Typhi.

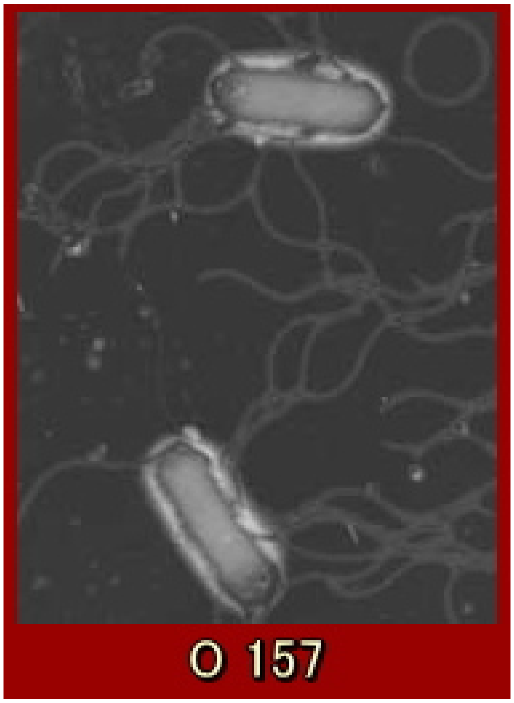
Escherichia Coli Section

Fecal Coliform Bacteria

Fecal coliform bacteria are microscopic organisms that live in the intestines of warm-blooded animals. They also live in the waste material, or feces, excreted from the intestinal tract. When fecal coliform bacteria are present in high numbers in a water sample, it means that the water has received fecal matter from one source or another. Although not necessarily agents of disease, fecal coliform bacteria may indicate the presence of disease-carrying organisms, which live in the same environment as the fecal coliform bacteria.

Reasons for Natural Variation

Unlike the other conventional water quality parameters, fecal coliform bacteria are living organisms. They do not simply mix with the water and float straight downstream. Instead they multiply quickly when conditions are favorable for growth, or die in large numbers when conditions are not. Because bacterial concentrations are dependent on specific conditions for growth, and these conditions change quickly, fecal coliform bacteria counts are not easy to predict. For example, although winter rains may wash more fecal matter from urban areas into a stream, cool water temperatures may cause a major die-off. Exposure to sunlight (with its ultraviolet disinfection properties) may have the same effect, even in the warmer water of summertime.



Expected Impact of Pollution

The primary sources of fecal coliform bacteria to fresh water are wastewater treatment plant discharges, failing septic systems, and animal waste. Bacteria levels do not necessarily decrease as a watershed develops from rural to urban. Instead, urbanization usually generates new sources of bacteria. Farm animal manure and septic systems are replaced by domestic pets and leaking sanitary sewers. In fact, stormwater runoff in urbanized areas has been found to be surprisingly high in fecal coliform bacteria concentrations.

The presence of old, disintegrating storm and sanitary sewers, misplaced sewer pipes, and good breeding conditions are common explanations for the high levels measured.

Coliform Standards (in colonies/100ml)

Drinking water	1FC
Total body contact (swimming)	200FC
Partial body contact (boating)	1000FC
Threatened sewage effluent	not to exceed 200 FC

*Total coliform (TC) includes bacteria from cold-blooded animals and various soil organisms. According to recent literature, total coliform counts are normally about 10 times higher than fecal coliform (FC) counts.

Indicator Connection Varies

General coliforms, E. Coli, and Enterococcus bacteria are the "indicator" organisms generally measured to assess microbiological quality of water. However, these aren't generally what get people sick. Other bacteria, viruses, and parasites are what we are actually worried about.

Because it is so much more expensive and tedious to do so, actual pathogens are virtually never tested for. Over the course of a professional lifetime pouring over indicator tests, in a context where all standards are based on indicators, water workers tend to forget that the indicators are not the things we actually care about.

What are these indicators? More information in the Laboratory section.

- **General coliforms** indicate that the water has come in contact with plant or animal life. General coliforms are universally present, including in pristine spring water. They are of little concern at low levels, except to indicate the effectiveness of disinfection. Chlorinated water and water from perfectly sealed tube wells is the only water I've tested which had zero general coliforms. At very high levels they indicate there is what amounts to a lot of compost in the water, which could easily include pathogens (Ten thousand general coliform bacteria will get you a beach closure, compared to two or four hundred fecal coliforms, or fifty enterococcus).
- **Fecal coliforms**, particularly E. coli, indicate that there are mammal or bird feces in the water.
- **Enterococcus bacteria** also indicate that there are feces from warm blooded animals in the water. Enterococcus are a type of fecal streptococci. They are another valuable indicator for determining the amount of fecal contamination of water.

  According to studies conducted by the EPA, enterococci have a greater correlation with swimming-associated gastrointestinal illness in both marine and fresh waters than other bacterial indicator organisms, and are less likely to "die off" in saltwater.

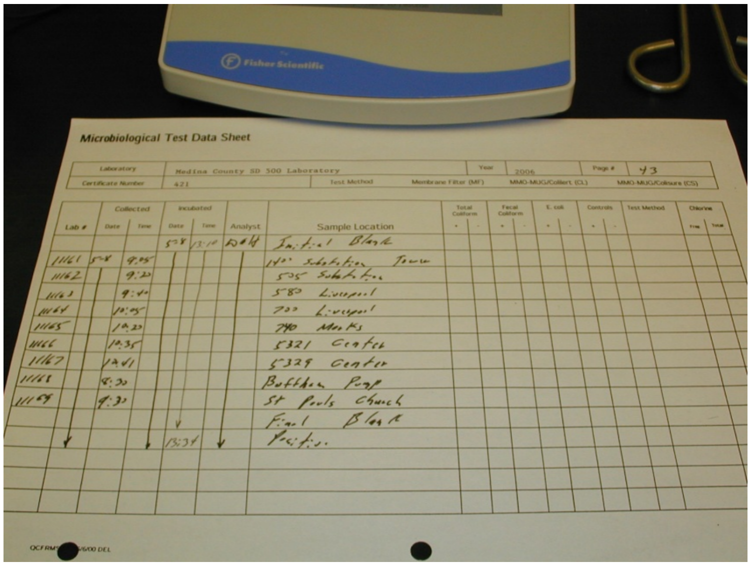
The more closely related the animal, the more likely pathogens excreted with their feces can infect us. Human feces are the biggest concern, because anything which infects one human could infect another. There isn't currently a quantitative method for measuring specifically human fecal bacteria (expensive genetic studies can give a presence/absence result). Ingesting a human stranger's feces via contaminated water supply is a classic means for infections to spread rapidly. The more pathogens an individual carries, the more hazardous their feces. Ingesting feces from someone who is not carrying any pathogens may gross you out, but it can't infect you. Infection rates are around 5% in the US, and approach 100% in areas with poor hygiene and contaminated water supplies. Keep in the back of your mind that **the ratio of indicators to actual pathogens is not fixed**. It will always be different, sometimes very different. Whenever you are trying to form a mental map of reality based on water tests, you should include in the application of your water intuition an adjustment factor for your best guess of the ratio between indicators and actual pathogens.

Membrane Filter Total Coliform Technique

The membrane filter total Coliform technique is used at Medina County for drinking water quality testing. The following is a summary of this test. A sampling procedure sheet is given to all sample takers by Medina County.

The samples are taken in sterile 100 mL containers. These containers, when used for chlorinated water samples, have a sodium thiosulfate pill or solution to dechlorinate the sample.

The sample is placed in cold storage after proper sample taking procedures are followed. (See sample procedures below)



Microbiological Test Data Sheet

Laboratory	Medina County SD 500 Laboratory	Year	2006	Page #	43
Certificate Number	421	Test Method	Membrane Filter (MF)	MMO-MUG/Colilert (CL)	MMO-MUG/Colisure (CS)

Lab #	Collected		Incubated		Analyst	Sample Location	Total Coliform		Fecal Coliform		E. coli		Controls		Test Method	Chlorine	
	Date	Time	Date	Time			+	-	+	-	+	-	+	-		Free	Total
			5-8	13:10	DWH	Initial Blank											
11161	5-8	9:05				140 Substation Tower											
11162		9:20				505 Substation											
11163		9:40				580 Liverpool											
11164		10:05				700 Liverpool											
11165		10:20				740 Marks											
11166		10:35				5321 Center											
11167		14:41				5329 Center											
11168		8:30				Buffham Pump											
11169		9:30				St Pauls Church											
						Final Blank											
				13:34		Positive											

QCFRM /6/00 DEL

The samples are taken to the laboratory with a chain of custody to assure no tampering of samples can occur.

These samples are logged in at the laboratory.

No longer than 30 hours can lapse between the time of sampling and time of test incubation. (8 hours for heterotrophic, nonpotable 6 hours, others not longer than 24 hours)

All equipment is sterilized by oven and autoclave.
Glassware in oven at 170°C ± 10°C with foil (or other suitable wrap) loosely fitting and secured immediately after sterilization.

Filtration units in autoclave at 121°C for 30 minutes.

Use sterile petri dishes, grid, and pads bought from a reliable company – certified, quality assured - test for satisfactory known positive amounts.

Incubators – 35°C ± .5°C (60% relative humidity)
M-endo medium is prepared and heated to near boiling removed from heat cooled to 45°C pH adjusted to 7.2 ± .2 and immediately dispensed 8ml to plates. Keep refrigerated and discard after 2 weeks.

Plates can be stored in a dated box with expiration date and discarded if not used. No denatured alcohol should be used. Everclear or 95% proof alcohol or absolute methyl may be used for sterilizing forceps by flame.

Procedure:

Counters are alcohol wiped.
Bench sheets are filled out.
Samples are removed from refrigeration.
Sterile wrapped utensils are placed on counters.
Filtration units are placed onto sterile membrane filters by aseptic technique using sterile forceps.
Sterile petri dishes are labeled.
The samples closures are clipped.
The sample is shaken 25 times 1 foot in length within 7 seconds.
100 mL is filtered and rinsed with sterile distilled water 3 times.
The membrane filter is aseptically removed from filter holder.
A sterile padded petri dish is used and the membrane filter is rolled onto the pad making sure no air bubbles form.
The sterile labeled lid is placed on the petri dish.
2 blanks and a known is run with each series of samples.
The samples are placed in the $35^oC \pm .5^oC$ incubator stacked no higher than 3 for 22 – 24 hours (Humidity can be maintained by saturated paper towels placed under containers holding petri dishes.)
After 22- 24 hours view the petri dishes under a 10 –15 power magnification with cool white fluorescent light.
Count all colonies that appear pink to dark red with a <u>metallic surface sheen</u> – the sheen may vary in size from a pin head to complete coverage.
Report as Total Coliform per 100 mL.
If no colonies are present report as <1 coliform/100mL.

Anything greater than 1 is over the limit for drinking water for 2 samples taken 24 hours apart. Further investigation may be necessary – follow Standard Methods accordingly.

Photograph and Credits to Mary McPherson
Aran^{TM} Aqua Analytical Laboratory Director.

Escherichia coli EPEC

Two types of pathogenic Escherichia coli, enteropathogenic E. coli (EPEC) and enterohemorrhagic E. coli (EHEC), cause diarrheal disease by disrupting the intestinal environment through the intimate attachment of the bacteria to the intestinal epithelium.

E. coli O157:H7

E. coli O157:H7 (bacterium) found in human feces. Symptoms vary with type caused gastroenteritis.

Escherichia coli O157:H7 is an emerging cause of foodborne illness. An estimated 73,000 cases of infection and 61 deaths occur in the United States each year. Infection often leads to bloody diarrhea, and occasionally to kidney failure. Most illnesses have been associated with eating undercooked, contaminated ground beef. Person-to-person contact in families and child care centers is also an important mode of transmission. Infection can also occur after drinking raw milk and after swimming in or drinking sewage-contaminated water.

Consumers can prevent *E. coli* O157:H7 infection by thoroughly cooking ground beef, avoiding unpasteurized milk, and washing hands carefully. Because the organism lives in the intestines of healthy cattle, preventive measures on cattle farms and during meat processing are being investigated.

What is *Escherichia coli* O157:H7?

E. coli O157:H7 is one of hundreds of strains of the bacterium Escherichia coli. Although most strains are harmless and live in the intestines of healthy humans and animals, this strain produces a powerful toxin and can cause severe illness.

E. coli O157:H7 was first recognized as a cause of illness in 1982 during an outbreak of severe bloody diarrhea; the outbreak was traced to contaminated hamburgers. Since then, most infections have come from eating undercooked ground beef.

The combination of letters and numbers in the name of the bacterium refers to the specific markers found on its surface and distinguishes it from other types of *E. coli.*

Currently, there are four recognized classes of enterovirulent *E. coli* (collectively referred to as the EEC group) that cause gastroenteritis in humans. Among these is the enterohemorrhagic (EHEC) strain designated *E. coli* O157:H7. *E. coli* is a normal inhabitant of the intestines of all animals, including humans. When aerobic culture methods are used, *E. coli* is the dominant species found in feces.

Normally *E. coli* serves a useful function in the body by suppressing the growth of harmful bacterial species and by synthesizing appreciable amounts of vitamins. A minority of *E. coli* strains are capable of causing human illness by several different mechanisms. *E. coli* serotype O157:H7 is a rare variety of *E. coli* that produces large quantities of one or more related, potent toxins that cause severe damage to the lining of the intestine. These toxins [verotoxin (VT), shiga-like toxin] are closely related or identical to the toxin produced by *Shigella dysenteriae*.

How does *E. coli* or other fecal coliforms get in the water?

E. coli comes from human and animal wastes. During rainfalls, snow melts, or other types of precipitation, *E. coli* may be washed into creeks, rivers, streams, lakes, or groundwater. When these waters are used as sources of drinking water and the water is not treated or inadequately treated, *E. coli* may end up in drinking water.

How is water treated to protect me from *E. coli*?

The water can be treated using chlorine, ultra-violet light, or ozone, all of which act to kill or inactivate *E. coli.* Systems using surface water sources are required to disinfect to ensure that all bacterial contamination such as *E. coli*. is inactivated. Systems using ground water sources are not required to disinfect, although many of them do.

How does the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulate *E. coli*?

According to EPA regulations, a system that operates at least 60 days per year, and serves 25 people or more or has 15 or more service connections, is regulated as a public water system under the Safe Drinking Water Act. If a system is not a public water system as defined by EPA regulations, it is not regulated under the Safe Drinking Water Act, although it may be regulated by state or local authorities.

Under the Safe Drinking Water Act, the EPA requires public water systems to monitor for coliform bacteria. Systems analyze first for total coliform, because this test is faster to produce results. Any time that a sample is positive for total coliform, the same sample must be analyzed for either fecal coliform or *E. coli*. Both are indicators of contamination with animal waste or human sewage.

The largest public water systems (serving millions of people) must take at least 480 samples per month. Smaller systems must take at least five samples a month unless the state has conducted a sanitary survey – a survey in which a state inspector examines system components and ensures they will protect public health – at the system within the last five years.

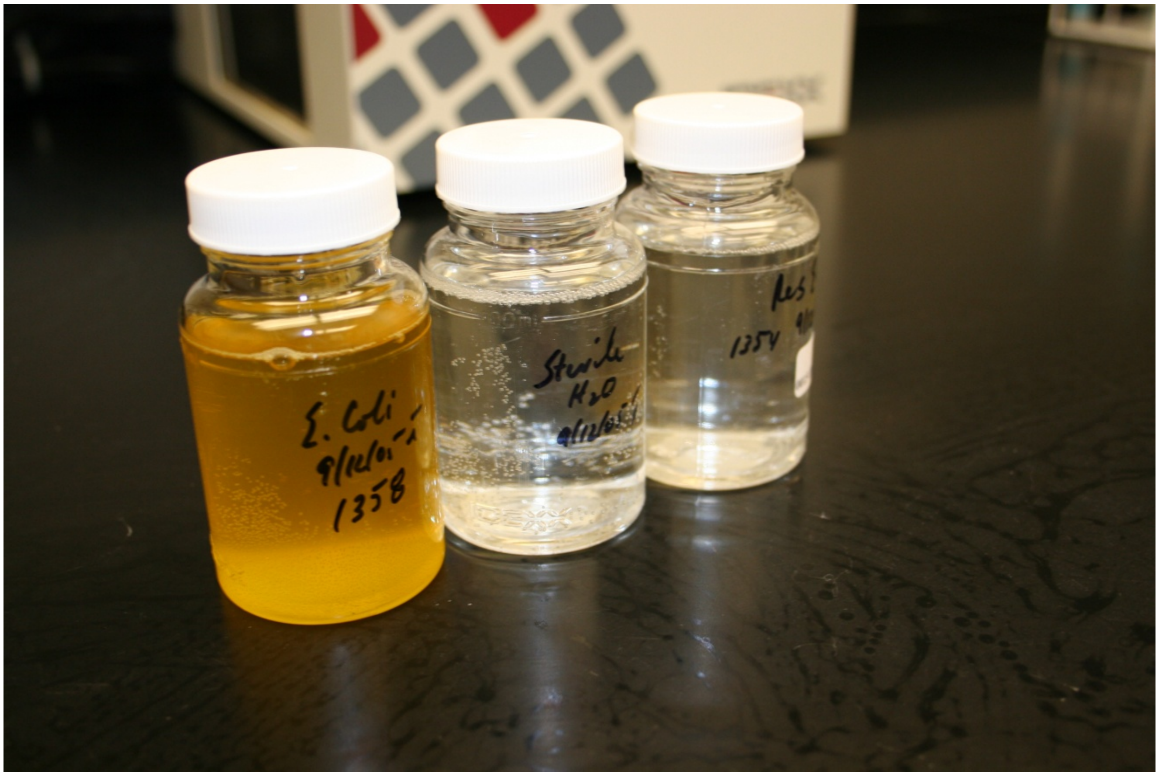
Systems serving 25 to 1,000 people typically take one sample per month. Some states reduce this frequency to quarterly for ground water systems if a recent sanitary survey shows that the system is free of sanitary defects. Some types of systems can qualify for annual monitoring. Systems using surface water, rather than ground water, are required to take extra steps to protect against bacterial contamination because surface water sources are more vulnerable to such contamination. At a minimum, all systems using surface waters must disinfect. Disinfection will kill *E. coli* O157:H7.

What can I do to protect myself from *E. coli* O157:H7 in drinking water?

Approximately 89 percent of Americans are receiving water from community water systems that meet all health-based standards. Your public water system is required to notify you if, for any reason, your drinking water is not safe. If you wish to take extra precautions, you can boil your water for one minute at a rolling boil, longer at higher altitudes. To find out more information about your water, see the Consumer Confidence Report from your local water supplier or contact your local water supplier directly. You can also obtain information about your local water system on the EPA's website at www.epa.gov/safewater/dwinfo.htm.

Positive Tests

If you draw water from a private well, you can contact your state health department to obtain information on how to have your well tested for total coliforms, and *E. coli* contamination. If your well tests positive for *E. coli*, there are several steps that you should take: (1) begin boiling all water intended for consumption, (2) disinfect the well according to procedures recommended by your local health department, and (3) monitor your water quality to make certain that the problem does not recur. If the contamination is a recurring problem, you should investigate the feasibility of drilling a new well or install a point-of-entry disinfection unit, which can use chlorine, ultraviolet light, or ozone.



How is *E. coli* O157:H7 spread?

The organism can be found on a small number of cattle farms and can live in the intestines of healthy cattle. Meat can become contaminated during slaughter, and organisms can be thoroughly mixed into beef when it is ground. Bacteria present on a cow's udders or on equipment may get into raw milk. Eating meat, especially ground beef that has not been cooked sufficiently to kill *E. coli* O157:H7 can cause infection. Contaminated meat looks and smells normal. Although the number of organisms required to cause disease is not known, it is suspected to be very small.

Among other known sources of infection are consumption of sprouts, lettuce, salami, unpasteurized milk and juice, and swimming in or drinking sewage-contaminated water. Bacteria in diarrheal stools of infected persons can be passed from one person to another if hygiene or hand washing habits are inadequate. This is particularly likely among toddlers who are not toilet trained. Family members and playmates of these children are at high risk of becoming infected. Young children typically shed the organism in their feces for a week or two after their illness resolves. Older children rarely carry the organism without symptoms.

What illness does *E. coli* O157:H7 cause?

E. coli O157:H7 infection often causes severe bloody diarrhea and abdominal cramps; sometimes the infection causes non-bloody diarrhea or no symptoms. Usually little or no fever is present, and the illness resolves in 5 to 10 days. Hemorrhagic colitis is the name of the acute disease caused by *E. coli* O157:H7.

In some persons, particularly children under 5 years of age and the elderly, the infection can also cause a complication called hemolytic uremic syndrome, in which the red blood cells are destroyed and the kidneys fail. About 2%-7% of infections lead to this complication. In the United States, hemolytic uremic syndrome is the principal cause of acute kidney failure in children, and most cases of hemolytic uremic syndrome are caused by *E. coli* O157:H7.

How is *E. coli* O157:H7 infection diagnosed?

Infection with *E. coli* O157:H7 is diagnosed by detecting the bacterium in the stool. Most laboratories that culture stool do not test for *E. coli* O157:H7, so it is important to request that the stool specimen be tested on sorbitol-MacConkey (SMAC) agar for this organism. All persons who suddenly have diarrhea with blood should get their stool tested for *E. coli* O157:H7.

How is the illness treated?

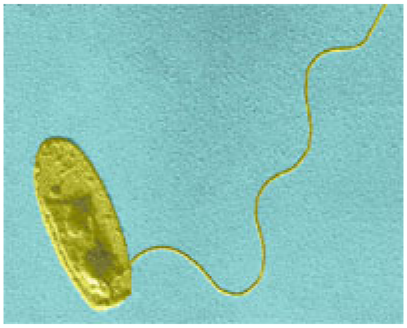
Most persons recover without antibiotics or other specific treatment in 5-10 days. There is no evidence that antibiotics improve the course of disease, and it is thought that treatment with some antibiotics may precipitate kidney complications. Antidiarrheal agents, such as loperamide (Imodium), should also be avoided. Hemolytic uremic syndrome is a life-threatening condition usually treated in an intensive care unit. Blood transfusions and kidney dialysis are often required. With intensive care, the death rate for hemolytic uremic syndrome is 3%-5%.

Legionnaires' Disease Legionella Section

Introduction **Genus: *Legionella* Species: *pneumophila***

The first discovery of bacteria from genus Legionella came in 1976 when an outbreak of pneumonia at an American Legion convention led to 29 deaths. The causative agent, what would come to be known as Legionella pneumophila, was isolated and given its own genus. The organisms classified in this genus are Gram-negative bacteria that are considered intracellular parasites. The disease has two distinct forms:

- Legionnaires' disease, the more severe form of infection which includes pneumonia, and
- Pontiac fever, a milder illness.



What have been the water sources for Legionnaires' disease?

The major source is water distribution systems of large buildings, including hotels and hospitals. Cooling towers have long been thought to be a major source for *Legionella*, but new data suggest that this is an overemphasized mode of transmission. Other sources include mist machines, humidifiers, whirlpool spas, and hot springs. Air conditioners are not a source for Legionnaires' disease. They were suspected to be the source in the original American Legion outbreak in a Philadelphia hotel, but new data now suggests that the water in the hotel was the actual culprit.

Legionnaire’s disease is caused most commonly by the inhalation of small droplets of water or fine aerosol containing Legionella bacteria. Legionella bacteria are naturally found in environmental water sources such as rivers, lakes and ponds and may colonize man-made water systems that include air conditioning systems, humidifiers, cooling tower waters, hot water systems, spas and pools.

How do people contract Legionella?

The most popular theory is that the organism is aerosolized in water and people inhale the droplets containing *Legionella*. However, new evidence suggests that another way of contracting *Legionella* is more common. "Aspiration" is the most common way that bacteria enter into the lungs to cause pneumonia. Aspiration means choking such that secretions in the mouth get past the choking reflexes and instead of going into the esophagus and stomach, mistakenly, enter the lung. The protective mechanisms to prevent aspiration is defective in patients who smoke or have lung disease. Aspiration now appears to be the most common mode of transmission.

Legionella may multiply to high numbers in cooling towers, evaporative condensers, air washers, humidifiers, hot water heaters, spas, fountains, and plumbing fixtures. Within one month, Legionella can multiply, in warm water-containing systems, from less than 10 per milliliter to over 1,000 per milliliter of water. Once high numbers of Legionella have been found, a relatively simple procedure for disinfecting water systems with chlorine and detergent is available. This procedure is not part of a routine maintenance program because equipment may become corroded. Property owners have been sued for the spread of Legionella, resulting in expensive settlements. Regular monitoring with a battery of DFA monoclonal antibodies for several serogroups and species of Legionella morphologically intact bacteria provides a means for exercising 'reasonable care' to deter potential litigation.

Currently, there are no United States government regulations concerning permissible numbers of legionella in water systems and there are no federal or state certification programs for laboratories that perform legionella testing of environmental samples.

Epifluorescence Microscopy DFA Method

The epifluorescence microscopy DFA method that most labs use was published in the British Journal, Water Research 19:839-848, 1985 "Disinfection of circulating water systems by ultraviolet light and halogenation", R. Gilpin, et al. so we can count viable-but-nonculturable (VBNC) legionella.

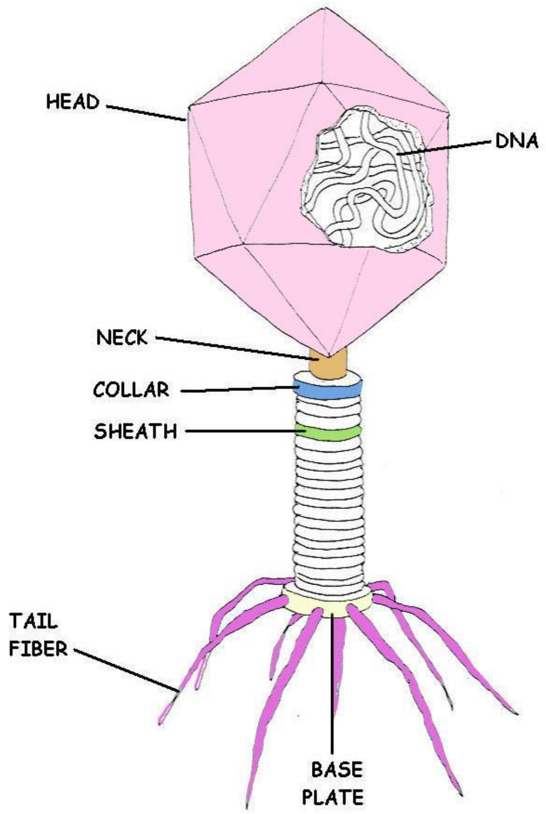
Most labs will provide a quantitative epifluorescence microscopic analysis of your cooling tower and potable water samples for 14 serogroups of Legionella pneumophila and 15 other Legionella species (listed below).

Legionella anisa	*Legionella bozemanii* sg 1 & 2
Legionella dumoffi	*Legionella feeleii* sg 1 & 2
Legionella gormanii	*Legionella hackeliae* sg 1 & 2
Legionella jordanis	*Legionella longbeachae* sg 1& 2
Legionella maceachernii	*Legionella micdadei*
Legionella oakridgensis	*Legionella parisiensis*
Legionella pneumophila sg 1-14	*Legionella sainthelensi*
Legionella santicrucis	*Legionella wadsworthii*

Heterotrophic bacterial CFU are often inversely proportional to numbers of Legionella in cooling tower samples, in our experience. Routine biocide treatments will not eradicate Legionella bacteria in the environment, only in laboratory studies. Culture methods are good during outbreaks for bio-typing; but culture methods lack sensitivity for routine, quantitative monitoring. Many factors will inhibit growth or identification of legionella on BCYE with or without antimicrobial agents, heat or acid treatment.

Culture methods will not identify non-culturable legionella that can still cause outbreaks (non-culturable, viable legionella have been reported in several peer-reviewed journals). Only DFA tests performed by trained laboratory personnel can identify these legionella. Direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) tests using a battery of monoclonal antibodies provide more useful routine monitoring information than culture methods. Legionella species of bacteria cause Legionnaire's disease. They are gram negative (but stain poorly), strictly aerobic rods.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and the U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration recommend routine maintenance of water-containing equipment. Most State health departments recommend monthly testing for Legionella as part of a routine maintenance program.



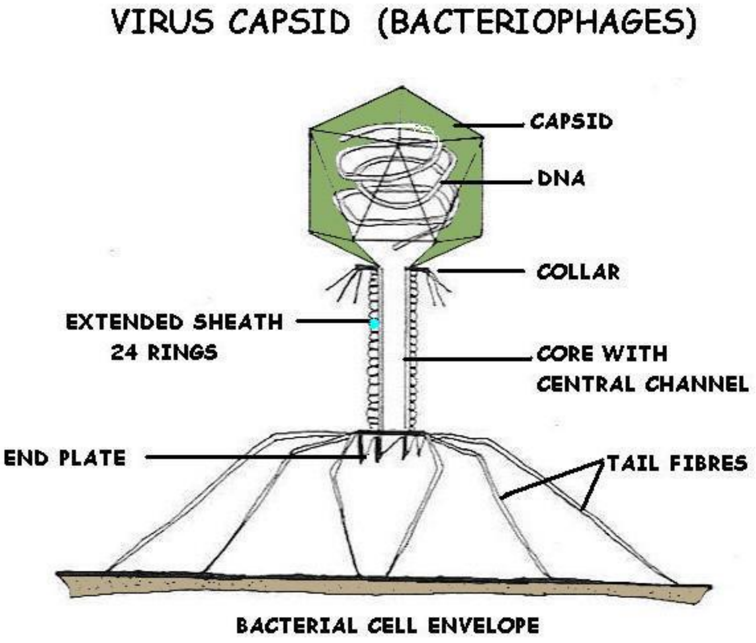
BACTERIOPHAGE

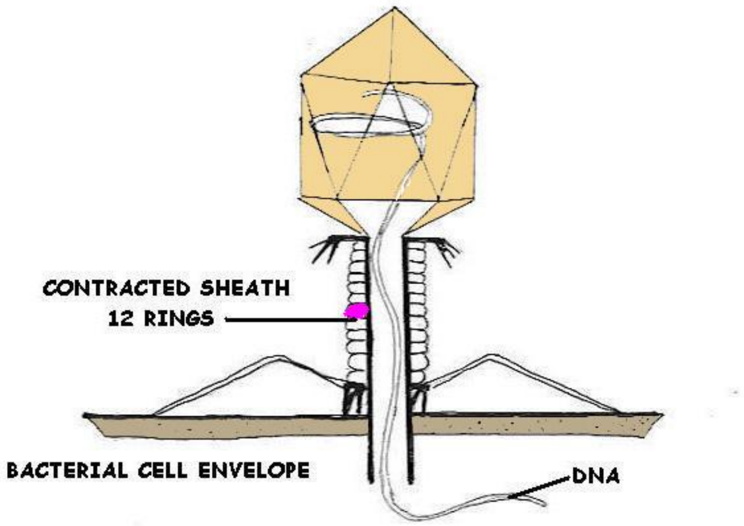
Bacteriophage

A bacteriophage (from 'bacteria' and Greek phagein, 'to eat') is any one of a number of viruses that infect bacteria. The term is commonly used in its shortened form, phage.

Typically, bacteriophages consist of an outer protein hull enclosing genetic material. The genetic material can be ssRNA (single stranded RNA), dsRNA, ssDNA, or dsDNA between 5 and 500 kilo base pairs long with either circular or linear arrangement. Bacteriophages are much smaller than the bacteria they destroy - usually between 20 and 200 nm in size.

Phages are estimated to be the most widely distributed and diverse entities in the biosphere. Phages are ubiquitous and can be found in all reservoirs populated by bacterial hosts, such as soil or the intestine of animals. One of the densest natural sources for phages and other viruses is sea water, where up to 9×108 virions per milliliter have been found in microbial mats at the surface, and up to 70% of marine bacteria may be infected by phages.



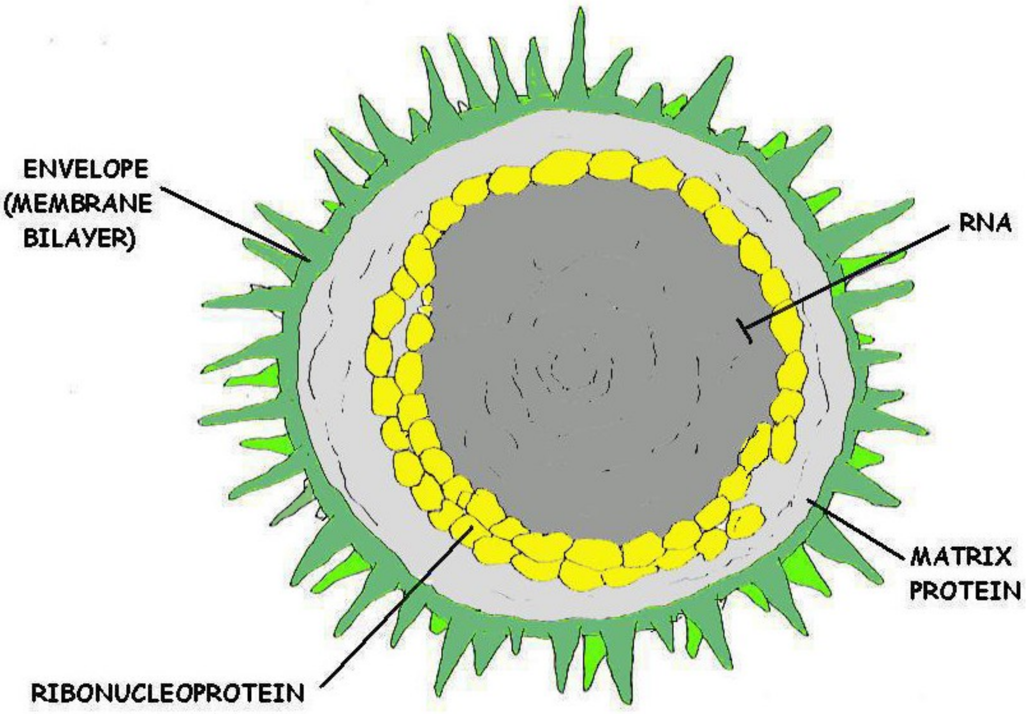


Release of Virions

Phages may be released via cell lysis or by host cell secretion. In the case of the T4 phage, in just over twenty minutes after injection upwards of three hundred phages will be released via lysis within a certain timescale. This is achieved by an enzyme called endolysin which attacks and breaks down the peptidoglycan. In contrast, "lysogenic" phages do not kill the host but rather become long-term parasites and make the host cell continually secrete more new virus particles. The new virions bud off the plasma membrane, taking a portion of it with them to become enveloped viruses possessing a viral envelope. All released virions are capable of infecting a new bacterium.

Viruses

Viruses are acellular microorganisms. They are made up of only genetic material and a protein coat. Viruses depend on the energy and metabolic machinery of the host cell to reproduce. A virus is an infectious agent found in virtually all life forms, including humans, animals, plants, fungi, and bacteria. Viruses consist of genetic material—either deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA)—surrounded by a protective coating of protein, called a capsid, with or without an outer lipid envelope. Viruses are between 20 and 100 times smaller than bacteria and hence are too small to be seen by light microscopy.



CROSS SECTIONAL VIEW

Viruses vary in size from the largest poxviruses of about 450 nanometers (about 0.000014 in) in length to the smallest polioviruses of about 30 nanometers (about 0.000001 in). Viruses are not considered free-living, since they cannot reproduce outside of a living cell; they have evolved to transmit their genetic information from one cell to another for the purpose of replication. Viruses often damage or kill the cells that they infect, causing disease in infected organisms. A few viruses stimulate cells to grow uncontrollably and produce cancers. Although many infectious diseases, such as the common cold, are caused by viruses, there are no cures for these illnesses. The difficulty in developing antiviral therapies stems from the large number of variant viruses that can cause the same disease, as well as the inability of drugs to disable a virus without disabling healthy cells. However, the development of antiviral agents is a major focus of current research, and the study of viruses has led to many discoveries important to human health.

Virions

Individual viruses, or virus particles, also called virions, contain genetic material, or genomes, in one of several forms. Unlike cellular organisms, in which the genes always are made up of DNA, viral genes may consist of either DNA or RNA. Like cell DNA, almost all viral DNA is double-stranded, and it can have either a circular or a linear arrangement. Almost all viral RNA is single-stranded; it is usually linear, and it may be either segmented (with different genes on different RNA molecules) or non-segmented (with all genes on a single piece of RNA).

Capsids

The viral protective shell, or capsid, can be either helical (spiral-shaped) or icosahedral (having 20 triangular sides). Capsids are composed of repeating units of one or a few different proteins. These units are called protomers or capsomers. The proteins that make up the virus particle are called structural proteins. Viruses also carry genes for making proteins that are never incorporated into the virus particle and are found only in infected cells. These viral proteins are called nonstructural proteins; they include factors required for the replication of the viral genome and the production of the virus particle.

Capsids and the genetic material (DNA or RNA) they contain are together referred to as nucleocapsids. Some virus particles consist only of nucleocapsids, while others contain additional structures.

Some icosahedral and helical animal viruses are enclosed in a lipid envelope acquired when the virus buds through host-cell membranes. Inserted into this envelope are glycoproteins that the viral genome directs the cell to make; these molecules bind virus particles to susceptible host cells.

Bacteriophages

The most elaborate viruses are the bacteriophages, which use bacteria as their hosts. Some bacteriophages resemble an insect with an icosahedral head attached to a tubular sheath. From the base of the sheath extend several long tail fibers that help the virus attach to the bacterium and inject its DNA to be replicated, direct capsid production, and virus particle assembly inside the cell.

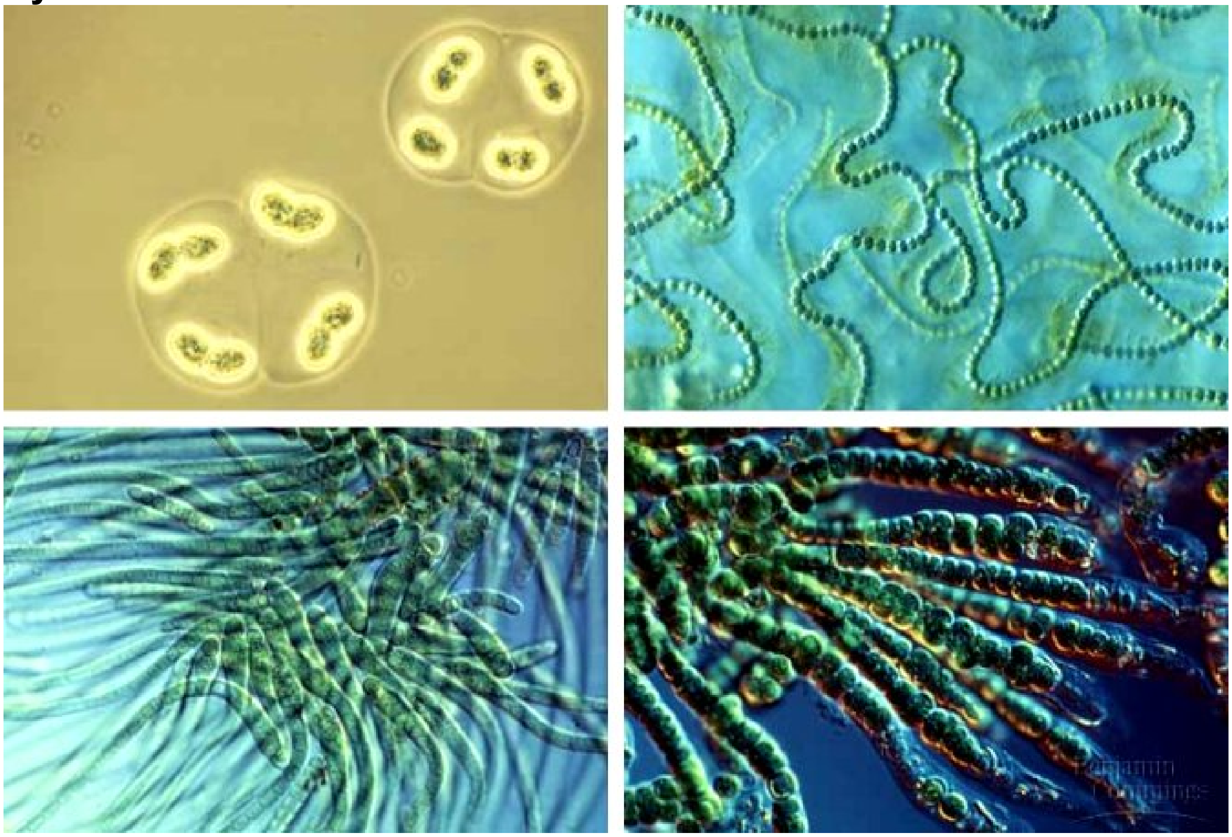
Viroids and Prions

Viroids and prions are smaller than viruses, but they are similarly associated with disease. Viroids are plant pathogens that consist only of a circular, independently replicating RNA molecule. The single-stranded RNA circle collapses on itself to form a rod-like structure. The only known mammalian pathogen that resembles plant viroids is the deltavirus (hepatitis D), which requires hepatitis B virus proteins to package its RNA into virus particles. Co-infection with hepatitis B and D can produce more severe disease than can infection with hepatitis B alone. Prions are mutated forms of a normal protein found on the surface of certain animal cells.

Virus Classification

Viruses are classified according to their type of genetic material, their strategy of replication, and their structure. The International Committee on Nomenclature of Viruses (ICNV), established in 1966, devised a scheme to group viruses into families, subfamilies, genera, and species. The ICNV report published in 1995 assigned more than 4000 viruses into 71 virus families. Hundreds of other viruses remain unclassified because of the lack of sufficient information.

Cyanobacteria



Cyanobacteria

Cyanobacteria, also known as blue-green algae, blue-green bacteria or Cyanophyta, is a phylum of bacteria that obtain their energy through photosynthesis. The name "cyanobacteria" comes from the color of the bacteria (Greek: kyanós = blue). They are a significant component of the marine nitrogen cycle and an important primary producer in many areas of the ocean, but are also found on land.

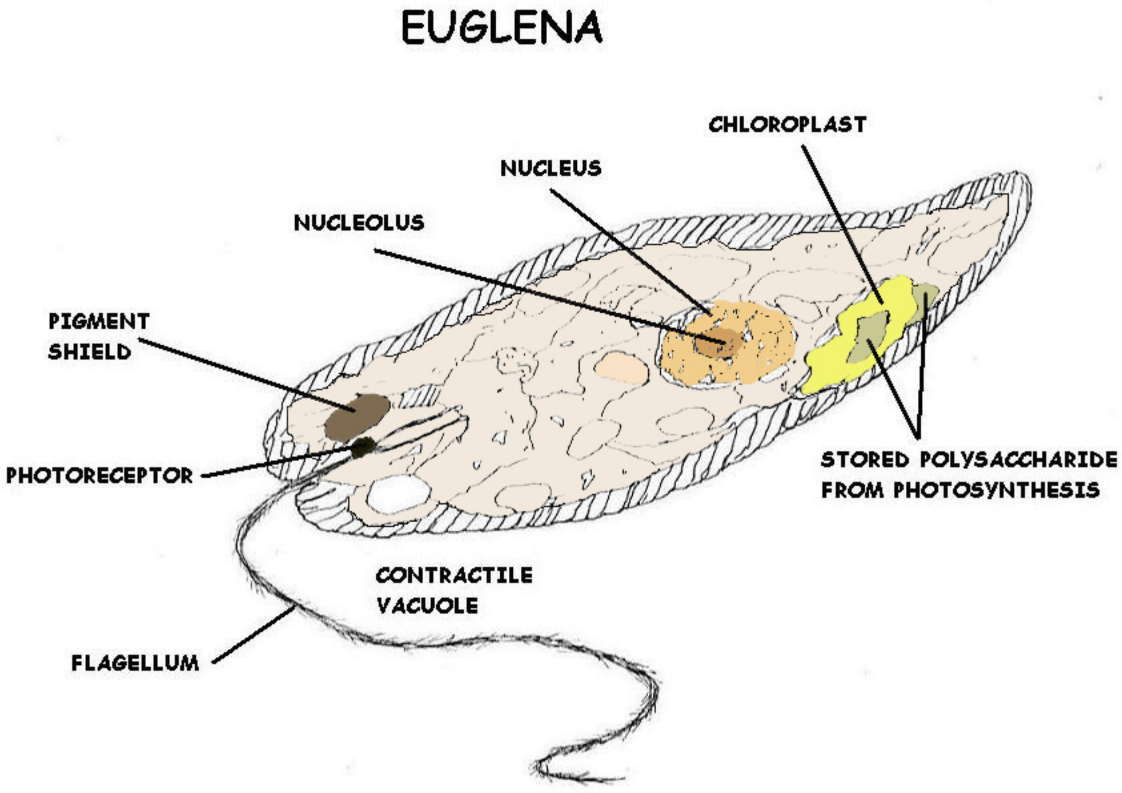
Cyanobacteria include unicellular and colonial species. Colonies may form filaments, sheets or even hollow balls. Some filamentous colonies show the ability to differentiate into several different cell types: vegetative cells, the normal, photosynthetic cells that are formed under favorable growing conditions; akinetes, the climate-resistant spores that may form when environmental conditions become harsh; and thick-walled heterocysts, which contain the enzyme nitrogenase, vital for nitrogen fixation. Heterocysts may also form under the appropriate environmental conditions (anoxic) wherever nitrogen is necessary. Heterocyst-forming species are specialized for nitrogen fixation and are able to fix nitrogen gas, which cannot be used by plants, into ammonia (NH_3), nitrites (NO_2) or nitrates (NO_3), which can be absorbed by plants and converted to protein and nucleic acids.

The rice paddies of Asia, which produce about 75% of the world's rice, could not do so were it not for healthy populations of nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria in the rice paddy fertilizer too.

Many cyanobacteria also form motile filaments, called hormogonia, that travel away from the main biomass to bud and form new colonies elsewhere. The cells in a hormogonium are often thinner than in the vegetative state, and the cells on either end of the motile chain may be tapered. In order to break away from the parent colony, a hormogonium often must tear apart a weaker cell in a filament, called a necridium.

Each individual cell of a cyanobacterium typically has a thick, gelatinous cell wall. They differ from other gram-negative bacteria in that the quorum sensing molecules autoinducer-2[4] and acyl-homoserine lactones are absent. They lack flagella, but hormogonia and some unicellular species may move about by gliding along surfaces. In water columns some cyanobacteria float by forming gas vesicles, like in archaea.

TAKING A SAMPLE FROM A STREAM



Euglena

Euglenas are common protists, of the class Euglenoidea of the phylum Euglenophyta. Currently, over 1000 species of Euglena have been described. Marin et al. (2003) revised the genus so, and including several species without chloroplasts, formerly classified as Astasia and Khawkinea. Euglena sometimes can be considered to have both plant and animal features.

Euglena gracilis has a long hair-like thing that stretches from its body. You need a very powerful microscope to see it. This is called a flagellum, and the euglena uses it to swim. It also has a red eyespot. Euglena gracilis uses its eyespot to locate light. Without light, it cannot use its chloroplasts to make itself food. In order for Euglena gracilis to make more Euglena gracilis it will complete a process called mitosis. That means it can split itself in half and become two Euglena gracilis. It can only do this if it is well-fed and if the temperature is right. Euglena gracilis can reproduce better in warm temperatures.

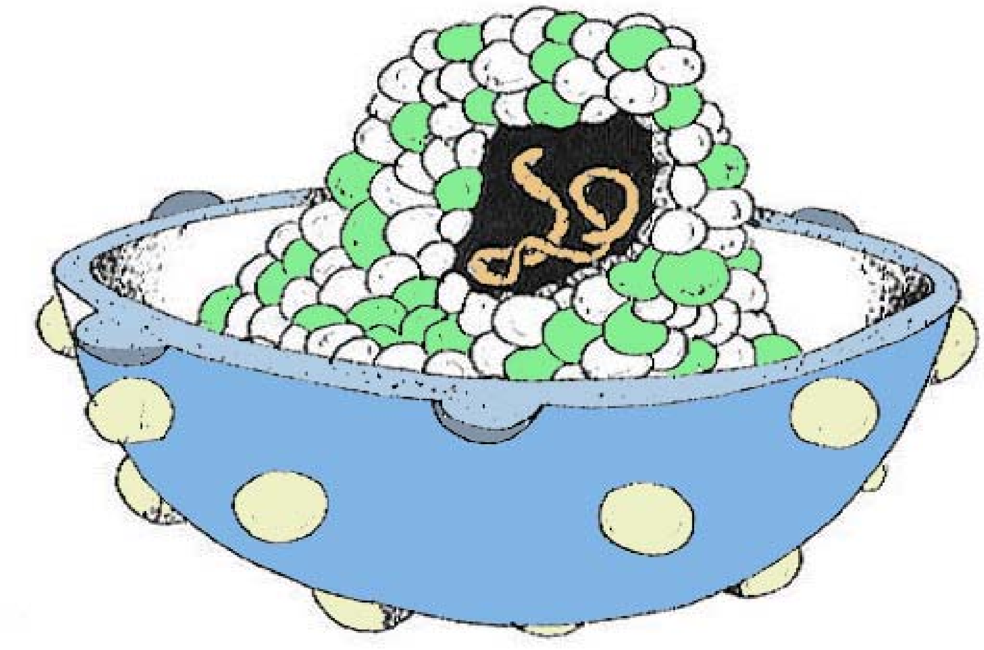
Euglena gracilis, and other euglena, are harmless to people, but they are often signs that water is polluted, since they do well where there is a lot of green algae to eat. Green algae does well where there is a lot of nitrogen (comes from waste) in the water. If you don't clean your swimming pool, leaves and twigs get in the water and turn into waste. Then algae and euglena show up.

KINGDOM: Protist, PHYLUM: Euglenophyta, CLASS: Euglenophyceae, ORDER: Euglenales, FAMILY: Euglenidae, GENUS: Euglena, SPECIES: Euglena gracilis

Peptidoglycan

Peptidoglycan, also known as murein, is a polymer consisting of sugars and amino acids that forms a mesh-like layer outside the plasma membrane of eubacteria. The sugar component consists of alternating residues of β-(1,4) linked N-acetylglucosamine and N-acetylmuramic acid residues. Attached to the N-acetylmuramic acid is a peptide chain of three to five amino acids. The peptide chain can be cross-linked to the peptide chain of another strand forming the 3D mesh-like layer.

Hepatitis



HEPATITUS VIRUS

There are five types of hepatitis -- A through E -- all of which cause inflammation of the liver. Type D affects only those who also have hepatitis B, and hepatitis E is extremely rare in the United States.

- Type A hepatitis is contracted through anal-oral contact, by coming in contact with the feces of someone with hepatitis A, or by eating or drinking hepatitis A contaminated food or water.
- Type B hepatitis can be contracted from infected blood, seminal fluid, vaginal secretions, or contaminated drug needles, including tattoo or body-piercing equipment. It can also be spread from a mother to her newborn.
- Type C hepatitis is not easily spread through sex. You're more likely to get it through contact with infected blood, contaminated razors, needles, tattoo and body-piercing equipment, or manicure or pedicure tools that haven't been properly sanitized, and a mother can pass it to her baby during delivery.
- Type D hepatitis can be passed through contact with infected blood, contaminated needles, or by sexual contact with an HIV-infected person.
- Type E hepatitis is most likely to be transmitted in feces, through oral contact, or in water that's been contaminated.

Common Water Quality and Sampling Statements

These statements will be more explained in the previous chapters.

1. What are the correct procedures to follow in collecting bacteriological samples?

Use a sterile plastic or glass bottle. Sodium thiosulfate should be added to neutralize the chorine residual. Refrigerate the sample to 4^{o} C. The regulations call for a minimum of five samples for the month from any system that has positive sample results. Small systems that take only one sample per month have to take four (4) repeats when they get a total coliform positive test result. If any system has to take repeat samples, it must also take a minimum of five (5) routine samples the following month. Small systems that normally take less than 5 samples/month will have to increase the number to 5 samples. They can return to normal sampling schedules the following month if no repeats are required.

2. What are the proper sampling techniques for microbiological sampling?

Proper sampling techniques are extremely important in obtaining accurate water quality information. An improperly taken coliform sample may indicate bacteriological contamination of your water when the water is actually safe. You can avoid the cost of additional testing by using good sampling procedures. Carefully follow these steps in taking a sample for bacteriological testing:
1. Select the sampling point. The sampling point must be a faucet from which water is commonly taken for public use.
The sampling point should be a non-swivel faucet.
Remove any aerator or screen and flush.
It should not be a faucet that leaks, permitting water to run over the outside of the faucet. Leaking faucets can promote bacterial growth.
If an outside faucet must be used, disconnect any hoses or other attachments and be sure to flush the line thoroughly.
Do not use fire hydrants as sampling points. Do not dip the bottle in reservoirs, spring boxes or storage tanks in order to collect the sample.

3. What do the following abbreviations stand for and what do they mean: gpm, MGD, TTHM, psi, HAA, NTU, and mg/L.

Gallons per minute- Million Gallons a Day - Total Trihalomethanes – Pounds Per Square Inch –Haloacetic acids - Nephelometric turbidity unit -Milligrams Per Liter

4. What is the relationship between mg/L and ppm; ug/L and ppb?

Milligram per liter: Milligram per liter of substance and part per million are equals amounts in water. While you can easily convert between micrograms/liter and milligrams/liter, and between PPM and PPB, its not so easy to convert between the different types of units such as milligrams/liter to PPM.

To convert micrograms per liter to milligrams per liter, divide by 1000.

To convert to PPM, you would first need to know the density of the substance, and the density of what the substance is in.

5. Ug/L: Represents the concentration of something in water or soil. One ppb represents one microgram of something per liter of water (ug/l), or one microgram of something per kilogram of soil (ug/kg).

Parts per million (ppm) or Milligrams per liter (mg/l) - one part per million corresponds to one minute in two years or a single penny in $10,000.

Parts per billion (ppb) or Micrograms per liter - one part per billion corresponds to one minute in 2,000 years, or a single penny in $10,000,000.

Parts per trillion (ppt) or Nanograms per liter (nanograms/l) - one part per trillion corresponds to one minute in 2,000,000 years, or a single penny in $10,000,000,000.

6. What do the following terms represent in reference to water quality.
Total coliform: The coliform family has been divided into two groups. Results may come back as either total coliform positive (TC positive) or fecal coliform positive, or (FC positive or *E. coli* positive.) Total coliform positive means that no human coliform are present.

7. Fecal Coliform: Fecal coliform positive indicates the presence of *E. coli*, which means there is a greater chance of pathogens being present. The laboratory tests for coliform include the MPN method, the Membrane Filter test, the Colilert test, and the presence-absence test.

8. Presence-absence Test: Presence-Absence Broth is used for the detection of coliform bacteria in water treatment plants or distribution systems using the presence-absence coliform test.

9. Physical Characteristics of Water: A characteristic of water defined by the temperature, turbidity, color, taste, and odor of the water.

10. Point-of-entry sample (POE): A type of water sample taken after treatment and before reaching the first consumer.

11. Acute Health Effect: An immediate (i.e. within hours or days) effect that may result from exposure to certain drinking water contaminants (e.g., pathogens).

12. Non-acute violation: If the MCL is exceeded and none of the positive results indicated a presence of Fecal Coliform, a Tier 2 violation has occurred. This level of violation used to be called a non-acute violation.

13. Routine Sample: Samples collected on a routine basis to monitor for contamination. Collection should be in accordance with an approved sampling plan.

14. Repeat Sample: Short answer… Samples collected following a '***coliform present'*** routine sample. The number of repeat samples to be collected is based on the number of routine samples you normally collect. Long Answer. Anytime a microbiological sample result comes back positive, indicating the presence of total or fecal coliform/ E.coli, repeat samples must be taken. Three repeats are usually required. One must be taken at the site of the positive sample. The two samples must be taken upstream and downstream of the original site (within five service connections). These repeat samples must be taken within 24 hours of notification of positive results. They must be identified as a Repeat Sample on the sample form. Repeat samples may be required to be sealed with a red evidentiary seal tape. The tape must cover the cap and extend down the sides of the bottle. The sample forms must also include the reference number for the positive sample.

There is an important exception to the three repeat samples rule. The regulations also state that when repeats are taken the minimum number of samples is raised to five for the month. A system that collects just one sample a month must collect four repeat samples, when the sample is positive, in order to have five samples as required.

Whenever a system has to take repeat samples, a minimum of five routine samples must also be submitted the following month. This is only an issue for systems that normally turn in four or fewer samples each month. If the five samples are negative the system can return to its normal sampling schedule the next month.

Small systems that have fewer than four sampling sites have a problem complying with the "upstream and downstream" aspects of the repeat sampling requirements. In this case, samples should be taken at as many separate sites as possible and then wait a minimum of 2 hours before resampling enough sites to get the required number of samples. Repeat sample with red seal tape.

15. Treatment technique: An enforceable procedure or level of technical performance which public water systems must follow to ensure control of a contaminant.

16. Action level: The level of lead or copper which, if exceeded, triggers treatment or other requirements that a water system must follow.

17. What does the membrane filter test analyze with regards to bacteriological sampling?

Membrane Filter Technique: A standard test used for measuring coliform numbers (quantity) in water is the membrane filter technique. This technique involves filtering a known volume of water through a special sterile filter. These filters are made of nitrocellulose acetate and polycarbonate, are 150 μm thick, and have 0.45 μm diameter pores. A grid pattern is printed on these filter disks in order to facilitate colony counting. When the water sample is filtered, bacteria (larger than 0.45 μm) in the sample are trapped on the surface of the filter. The filter is then carefully removed, placed in a sterile petri plate on a pad saturated with a liquid medium, and incubated for 20-24 hours at 37°C.

One assumes that each bacterium trapped on the filter will then grow into a separate colony. By counting the colonies one can directly determine the number of bacteria in the water sample that was filtered. The broth medium usually employed in detecting total coliforms is M-Endo Broth MF. Total coliform colonies will be pink to dark red in color and will appear to have a golden green color.

18. What do the following terms mean in relation to drinking water quality: disinfection, pathogenic, toxic, pH, aesthetic, culinary and potable.
Disinfection: The chemical process of killing or inactivating most microorganisms in water. See also Sterilization.

19. Pathogenic: Organisms or bugs that cause disease. These include bacteria, viruses, cysts and anything capable of causing disease in humans, like cryptosporidiosis, typhoid, cholera and so on. There are other organisms that do not create disease, these are called non-pathogenic organisms.

20. Toxic: Stuff that will kill you. A substance which is poisonous to living organisms.

21. pH: A measure of the acidity of water. The pH scale runs from 0 to 14 with 7 being the mid point or neutral. A pH of less than 7 is on the acid side of the scale with 0 as the point of greatest acid activity. A pH of more than 7 is on the basic (alkaline) side of the scale with 14 as the point of greatest basic activity. For example, the acidity of a sample with a pH of **5** is ten times greater than that of a sample with a pH of **6**. A difference of 2 units, from **6** to **4**, would mean that the acidity is one hundred times greater, and so on. Normal rain has a pH of **5.6** – slightly acidic because of the carbon dioxide picked up in the earth's atmosphere by the rain.

22. Aesthetic: Attractive or appealing water or things in water that will not make you sick but may appear to change the water's color or taste.

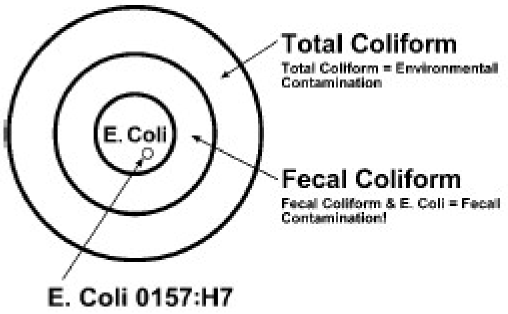
23. Culinary: Having to do with cooking food. Potable water is often called culinary water.

24. Potable: Water that is free of objectionable pollution, contamination, or infective agents. Generally speaking, we serve only potable water and not palatable water. Palatable is pleasant tasting water.

25. What is hardness in water and what chemicals cause it?
Hardness: Water that contains high amounts of dissolved minerals, specifically calcium and magnesium. **Ion Exchange:** A method of water softening where hardness causing ions are exchanged with sodium ions; also effective in removing many inorganic contaminants such as nitrates, copper, and lead; and treating aesthetic water problems.

26. What is Escherichia Coliform and what does it indicate in relation to drinking water?
E. coli is a sub-group of the fecal coliform group. Most *E. coli* bacteria are harmless and are found in great quantities in the intestines of people and warm-blooded animals. Some strains, however, can cause illness. The presence of *E. coli* in a drinking water sample almost always indicates recent fecal contamination meaning there is a greater risk that pathogens are present.

TOTAL COLIFORM, FECAL COLIFORM AND E. COLI



Total coliform, fecal coliform, and *E. coli* are all indicators of drinking water quality. The total coliform group is a large collection of different kinds of bacteria. Fecal coliforms are types of total coliform that mostly exist in feces. *E. coli* is a sub-group of fecal coliform. When a water sample is sent to a lab, it is tested for total coliform. If total coliform is present, the sample will also be tested for either fecal coliform or *E. coli*, depending on the lab testing method.

27. What problems are associated with Hydrogen Sulfide in the water?
Hydrogen sulfide is a gas which, when dissolved in water, gives it a “rotten egg” odor. Chlorination will remove this gas from the water but the effectiveness of the chlorine for disinfection is lessened.

28. When Hydrogen sulfide reacts with chlorine, it produces Sulfuric acid and elemental Sulfur: It is therefore recommended that aeration be applied prior to the addition of chlorine for the most effective disinfection.

29. Why is it important to know what the turbidity of the water is when using chlorine?
To be careful not to overdose with chlorine or properly dose with chlorine.

30. What is the log removal for Cryptosporidium?
The LT1ESWTR extends further this necessary protection from Cryptosporidium to communities of fewer than 10,000 persons. Today's rule for the first time establishes Cryptosporidium control requirements for systems serving less than 10,000 persons by requiring a minimum 2-log removal for Cryptosporidium. The rule also strengthens filter performance requirements to ensure 2-log Cryptosporidium removal, establishes individual filter monitoring to minimize poor performance in individual units, includes Cryptosporidium in the definition of GWUDI, and explicitly considers unfiltered system watershed control provisions. The rule also reflects a commitment to the importance of maintaining existing levels of microbial protection in public water systems as plants take steps to comply with newly applicable DBP standards.

31. What is the log removal?

This log-reduction terminology was developed by engineers as a way to express levels of decreased biological contamination in water by factors of 10 that could be easily converted to percent reduction. The most commonly used logarithmic base is 10 because it is compatible with our base-10 decimal system. The log of 10 in the base 10 logarithmic system is 1 and the log of 100 is 2, with the log of 1000 being 3, etc. A 1-log reduction is nine out of 10 and would be equivalent to a 90 percent reduction. A 2-log reduction would be 99 out of 100 or 99 percent reduction and a 3-log reduction would be 999 out of 1000 or 99.9 percent reduction. A 99.99 percent reduction would be called a 4-log reduction.

32. What are the turbidity requirements for Direct and Conventional filtration plants?

For conventional and direct filtration systems (including those systems utilizing in-line filtration), the turbidity level of representative samples of a system's filtered water (measured every four hours) must be less than or equal to ***0.3 NTU*** in at least 95 percent of the measurements taken each month. The turbidity level of representative samples of a system's filtered water must not exceed ***1 NTU*** at any time. Conventional filtration is defined as a series of processes including coagulation, flocculation, sedimentation, and filtration resulting in substantial particulate removal. Direct filtration is defined as a series of processes including coagulation and filtration but excluding sedimentation resulting in substantial particle removal.

33. What are chloramines, how are they formed, and do they have any beneficial use?

Chloramines: Ammonia and Chlorine are combined. Cl_2NH_3 Yes, limited use and this chemical will create less THMS than chlorine alone. Chloramine is a disinfectant used to treat drinking water. It is formed by mixing chlorine with ammonia. Although it is a weaker disinfectant than chlorine, it is more stable and extends disinfectant benefits throughout a water utility's distribution system (a system of pipes water is delivered to homes through). Some water systems use chloramine as a secondary disinfectant to maintain a disinfectant residual throughout the distribution system so that drinking water remains safe as it travels from the treatment facility to the customer. Chloramine has been used by water systems for almost 90 years, and its use is closely regulated. Since chloramine is not as reactive as chlorine, it forms fewer disinfection byproducts. Some disinfection byproducts, such as the trihalomethanes (THMs) and haloacetic acids (HAAs), may have adverse health effects and are closely regulated. Because a chloramine residual is more stable and longer lasting than free chlorine, it provides better protection against bacterial regrowth in systems with large storage tanks and dead-end water mains. Chloramine, like chlorine, is effective in controlling biofilm, which is a coating in the pipe caused by bacteria. Controlling biofilm also tends to reduce coliform bacteria concentrations and biofilm-induced corrosion of pipes.

REFERENCES

Benenson, Abram S., editor. 1990. *Control of Communicable Diseases in Man.* 15th ed. Baltimore: Victor Graphics, Inc.

Bick, H. 1972. Ciliated protozoa. An illustrated guide to the species used as biological indicators in freshwater biology. World Health Organization, Geneva. 198 pp.

Born, Stephen M., Douglas A. Yanggen, and Alexander Zaporozec. *A Guide to Groundwater Quality Planning and Management for Local Governments*. Wisconsin Geological and Natural History Survey, Madison, WI, 1987.

Cairns, J., and J.A. Ruthven. 1972. A test of the cosmopolitan distribution of fresh-water protozoans. Hydrobiologia 39:405-427.

Cairns, J., and W.H. Yongue. 1977. Factors affecting the number of species of freshwater protozoan communities. Pages 257-303 in J. Cairns, ed. Aquatic microbial communities. Garland, New York.

Cairns, J., G.R. Lanza, and B.C. Parker. 1972. Pollution related structural and functional changes in aquatic communities with emphasis on freshwater algae and protozoa. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 124:79-127.

Concern, Inc. *Groundwater: A Community Action Guide*. Washington, D.C., 1989.

Cross, Brad L and Jack Schulze. *City of Hurst (A Public Water Supply Protection Strategy)*. Texas Water Commission, Austin, TX, 1989.

Curds, C.R. 1992. Protozoa and the water industry. Cambridge University Press, MA. 122 pp.

Curtis, Christopher and Teri Anderson. *A Guidebook for Organizing a Community Collection Event: Household Hazardous Waste*. Pioneer Valley Planning Commission and Western Massachusetts Coalition for Safe Waste Management, West Springfield, MA, 1984.

Curtis, Christopher, Christopher Walsh, and Michael Przybyla. *The Road Salt Management Handbook: Introducing a Reliable Strategy to Safeguard People & Water Resources*. Pioneer Valley Planning Commission, West Springfield, MA, 1986.

Fenchel, T. 1974. Intrinsic rate increase: the relationship with body size. Oecologia 14:317-326.

Fenchel, T., T. Perry, and A. Thane. 1977. Anaerobiosis and symbiosis with bacteria in free-living ciliates. Journal of Protozoology 24:154-163.

Foissner, W. 1987. Soil protozoa: fundamental problems, ecological significance, adaptations in ciliates and testaceans, bioindicators, and guide to the literature. Progress in Protistology 2:69-212.

Foissner, W. 1988. Taxonomic and nomenclatural revision of Stádecek's list of ciliates (Protozoa: Ciliophora) as indicators of water quality. Hydrobiologia 166:1-64.

Foster, Laurence, M.D. 1985. “Waterborne Disease - It’s Our Job to Prevent It”. PIPELINE newsletter, Oregon Health Division, Drinking Water Program, Portland, Oregon 1(4): 1-3.

Foster, Laurence, M.D. 1990. “Waterborne *Disease,” Methods for the Investigation and Prevention of Waterborne Disease Outbreaks.* Ed. Gunther F. Craun. Cincinnati: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Giese, A.C. 1973. Blepharisma. Stanford University Press, CA. 366 pp.

Gordon, Wendy. *A Citizen's Handbook on Groundwater Protection*. Natural Resources Defense Council, New York, NY 1984.

Harrison, Ellen Z. and Mary Ann Dickinson. *Protecting Connecticut's Groundwater: A Guide to Groundwater Protection for Local Officials*. Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection, Hartford, CT, 1984.

Hrezo, Margaret and Pat Nickinson. *Protecting Virginia's Groundwater A Handbook for Local Government Officials*. Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, VA, 1986.
Jaffe, Martin and Frank Dinovo. *Local Groundwater Protection*. American Planning Association, Chicago, IL, 1987.
Kreier, J.P., and J.R. Baker. 1987. Parasitic protozoa. Allen and Unwin, Boston, MA. 241 pp.
Laybourn, J., and B.J. Finlay. 1976. Respiratory energy losses related to cell weight and temperature in ciliated protozoa. Oecologia 44:165-174.
Lee, C.C., and T. Fenchel. 1972. Studies on ciliates associated with sea ice from Antarctica. II. Temperature responses and tolerances in ciliates from Antarctica, temperate and tropical habitats. Archive für Protistenkunde 114:237-244.
Loomis, George and Yael Calhoon. "Natural Resource Facts: Maintaining Your Septic System." University of Rhode Island, Providence, RI, 1988.
Macozzi, Maureen. *Groundwater- Protecting Wisconsin's Buried Treasure*. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Madison, WI, 1989.
Maine Association of Conservation Commissions. *Ground Water... Maine's Hidden Resource*. Hallowell, ME, 1985.
Massachusetts Audubon Society "Local Authority for Groundwater Protection." Groundwater Information Flyer #4. Lincoln, MA, 1984.
Massachusetts Audubon Society. "Groundwater and Contamination: From the Watershed into the Well." Groundwater Information Flyer # 2. Lincoln, MA, 1984.
Massachusetts Audubon Society. "Mapping Aquifers and Recharge Areas." Groundwater Information Flyer # 3. Lincoln, MA, 1984.
Massachusetts Audubon Society. "Road Salt and Groundwater Protection." Groundwater Information Flyer # 9. Lincoln, MA, 1987.
McCann, Alyson and Thomas P Husband. "Natural Resources Facts: Household Hazardous Waste." University of Rhode Island, Providence, RI; 1988.
Miller, David W. *Groundwater Contamination: A Special Report*. Geraghty & Miller, Inc., Syosset, NY 1982.
Montagnes, D.J.S., D.H. Lynn, J.C. Roff, and W.D. Taylor. 1988. The annual cycle of heterotrophic planktonic ciliates in the waters surrounding the Isles of Shoals, Gulf of Maine: an assessment of their trophic role. Marine Biology 99:21-30.
Mullikin, Elizabeth B. *An Ounce of Prevention: A Ground Water Protection Handbook for Local Officials*. Vermont Departments of Water Resources and Environmental Engineering, Health, and Agriculture, Montpelier, VT, 1984.
Murphy, Jim. "Groundwater and Your Town: What Your Town Can Do Right Now." Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection, Hartford, CT.
National Research Council. *Ground Water Quality Protection: State and Local Strategies.* National Academy Press, Washington, D.C., 1986.
New England Interstate Water Pollution Control Commission. "Groundwater: Out of Sight Not Out of Danger." Boston, MA, 1989.
Niederlehner, B.R., K.W. Pontasch, J.R. Pratt, and J. Cairns. 1990. Field evaluation of predictions of environmental effects from multispecies microcosm toxicity test. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 19:62-71.
Noake, Kimberly D. Guide to *Contamination Sources for Wellhead Protection*. Draft. Massachusetts Department of Environmental Quality Engineering, Boston, MA, 1988.
Office of Drinking Water. *A Local Planning Process for Groundwater Protection*. U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1989.
Office of Ground-Water Protection. *Guidelines for Delineation of Wellhead Protection Areas*. U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1987.

Office of Ground-Water Protection. *Survey of State Ground Water Quality Protection Legislation Enacted From 1985 Through 1987*. U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1988.
Office of Ground-Water Protection. *Wellhead Protection Programs. - Tools for Local Governments.* U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1989.
Office of Ground-Water Protection. *Wellhead Protection: A Decision-Makers' Guide.* U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1987
Office of Pesticides and Toxic Substances. *Citizen's Guide to Pesticides.* U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1989.
Office of Underground Storage Tanks. *Musts for USGS. - A Summary of the New Regulations for Underground Storage Tank Systems.* U.S. EPA, Washington, D.C., 1988.
Ohio Environmental Protection Agency. *Ground Water.* Columbus, OH.
Redlich, Susan. *Summary of Municipal Actions for Groundwater Protection in the New England/New York Region.* New England Interstate Water Pollution Control Commission, Boston, MA, 1988.
Southern Arizona Water Resources Association. "Water Warnings: Our Drinking Water.... It Takes Everyone to Keep It Clean." Tucson, AZ.
Sponenberg, Torsten D. and Jacob H. Kahn. *A Groundwater Primer for Virginians.* Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, Blacksburg, VA, 1984.
Taylor, W., and R. Sanders. 1991. Protozoa. Pages 37-93 in J.H. Thorp and A.P. Covich, eds. Ecology and classification of North American freshwater invertebrates. Academic Press, New York.
Texas Water Commission. "On Dangerous Ground: The Problem of Abandoned Wells in Texas." Austin, TX, 1989.
Texas Water Commission. *The Underground Subject: An Introduction to Ground Water Issues in Texas.* Austin, TX, 1989.
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. *Seminar Publication: Protection of Public Water Supplies from Ground-Water Contaminants.* Center for Environmental Research Information, Cincinnati, OH, 1985.
Waller, Roger M. *Ground Water and the Rural Homeowner.* U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, VA, 1988.

We welcome you to complete the assignment in Microsoft Word. You can easily find the assignment at www.abctlc.com. Once complete, just simply fax or e-mail the answer key along with the registration page to us and allow two weeks for grading. Once we grade it, we will mail a certificate of completion to you. Call us if you need any help. If you need your certificate back within 48 hours, you may be asked to pay a rush service fee.

You can download the assignment in Microsoft Word from TLC's website under the Assignment Page. www.abctlc.com You will have 90 days in order to successfully complete this assignment with a score of 70% or better. If you need any assistance, please contact TLC's Student Services. Once you are finished, please mail, e-mail or fax your answer sheet along with your registration form.